kaspersky

Kaspersky SD-WAN

© 2025 AO Kaspersky Lab

Contents

Kaspersky SD-WAN Help

About Kaspersky SD-WAN

- Distribution kit
- Hardware and software requirements
- Ensuring security
- What's new

Architecture of the solution

Deploying Kaspersky SD-WAN

- Redundancy of solution components
- About the installation archive
- About the attended, unattended, and partially attended action modes
- Preparing the administrator device
- Managing passwords
  - Manually generating passwords
  - Changing passwords
- Preparing the configuration file
- Replacing the graphics of the orchestrator web interface
- Replacement of a failed controller node
- Upgrading Kaspersky SD-WAN
- Removing Kaspersky SD-WAN

Logging in and out of the orchestrator web interface

Licensing of Kaspersky SD-WAN

- About the End User License Agreement
- About data provision

User interface of the solution

- Setting and resetting the default page
- Switching between light and dark modes of the orchestrator web interface
- Changing the language of the orchestrator web interface
- Managing solution component tables

Navigating to the orchestrator API

Managing the Kaspersky SD-WAN infrastructure

- Managing domains
  - Creating a domain
  - Editing a domain
  - Deleting a domain
- Managing data centers
  - Adding a data center
  - Editing a data center
  - Migrating a data center to a different domain
  - Deleting a data center
- Managing management subnets
  - Creating a management subnet
  - Editing a management subnet

- Deleting a management subnet
- Managing controllers
  - Editing a controller
  - Reprovisioning a controller
  - Restoring controller settings
  - Enabling or disabling the maintenance mode on a controller
  - Deleting a controller
  - Managing controller properties
    - Description of editable controller properties
    - Editing a controller property
    - Deleting planning values of controller properties
    - Resetting controller properties to default values
  - Viewing information about controller nodes
- Managing a VIM
  - Configuring a VIM deployed in a data center
  - Configuring a VIM deployed on a uCPE device
  - Editing a VIM deployed in a data center
  - Viewing computing resources being used by a VIM
  - Deleting a VIM
- Managing users and their access permissions
  - Managing access permissions
    - Creating access permissions
    - Editing access permissions
    - Cloning access permissions
    - Removing an access permission
  - Managing LDAP connections
    - Creating an LDAP connection
    - Editing an LDAP connection
    - Changing the password of an LDAP connection
    - Deleting an LDAP connection
  - Managing users
    - Creating a user
    - Activating or blocking a user
    - Editing a user
    - Changing the password of a local user
    - Repeated two-factor authentication of a user
    - Deleting a user
  - Managing LDAP user groups
    - Creating an LDAP user group
    - Editing an LDAP user group
    - Deleting an LDAP user group
  - Enabling or disabling two-factor authentication for all users
  - Managing confirmation requests
  - Managing user sessions
- Multitenancy
  - Scenario: Deploying an SD-WAN instance for a tenant
  - Managing tenants

- Creating a tenant
- Assigning a user to a tenant
- Assigning an LDAP user group to a tenant
- Assigning compute resources to a tenant
- Assigning network service components to a tenant
- Assigning a VIM to a tenant
- Logging in to the tenant self-service portal
- Editing a tenant
- Deleting a tenant
- Managing SD-WAN instance templates
  - Creating an SD-WAN instance template
  - Setting the default SD-WAN instance template
  - Selecting the number of controller nodes for an SD-WAN instance
  - Adding a tenant to an SD-WAN instance template
  - Removing a tenant from an SD-WAN instance template
  - Deleting an SD-WAN instance template
- Working with SD-WAN instances
  - Configuring controller nodes of an SD-WAN instance
  - Viewing the usage of an SD-WAN instance
  - Viewing the topology of an SD-WAN instance
  - Adding a tenant to an SD-WAN instance
  - Removing a tenant from an SD-WAN instance
  - Deleting an SD-WAN instance
- Managing SD-WAN instance pools
  - Creating a pool of SD-WAN instances
  - Adding an SD-WAN instance to an SD-WAN instance pool
  - Removing an SD-WAN instance from an SD-WAN instance pool
  - Deleting a pool of SD-WAN instances

Managing CPE devices

- About the interaction of the CPE device and the orchestrator
- About the interaction of the CPE device and the controller
- Default credentials of KESR CPE devices
- Registering CPE devices
  - Scenario: Automatic registration of a CPE device using the Zero Touch Provisioning technology.
  - Scenario: Deploying a vCPE device on the VMware virtualization platform and registering it using the Zero Touch Provisioning technology
  - Scenario: Re-registering a CPE device
  - Resuming CPE device registration in case of an error
- Managing CPE templates
  - Creating a CPE template
  - Importing a CPE template
  - Cloning a CPE template
  - Exporting orchestrator and controller connection settings and SD-WAN interfaces from a CPE template
  - Exporting network interfaces from a CPE template
  - Viewing the usage of a CPE template
  - Deleting a CPE template
- Managing CPE devices

- Adding a CPE device
- Generating an URL with basic CPE device settings
- Manually registering a CPE device
- Unregistering a CPE device
- Specifying the address of a CPE device
- Enabling and disabling a CPE device
- Restarting a CPE device
- Shutting down a CPE device
- Connecting to the CPE device console
- Viewing the password of a CPE device
- Exporting orchestrator and controller connection settings and SD-WAN interfaces from a CPE device
- Exporting network interfaces from a CPE device
- Changing the DPID of a CPE device
- Deleting CPE devices

Two-factor authentication of a CPE device

Managing certificates

- Uploading a certificate using the orchestrator web interface
- Manually installing certificates on CPE devices
- Scenario: installing certificates on a CPE device with firmware version 23.07
- Exporting a certificate
- Deleting certificates

Automatically deleting and disabling CPE devices

Grouping CPE devices using tags

- Assigning a tag to CPE devices
- Removing a CPE device tag

Configuring logs on CPE devices

Specifying NTP servers on CPE devices

Managing modems

Updating firmware

- Manually updating firmware on a CPE device
- Uploading firmware to the orchestrator web interface
- Scheduling firmware updates on selected CPE devices
- Scheduling firmware updates on CPE devices with specific tags
- Restoring firmware of a KESR-M1 CPE device
- Restoring firmware of a KESR-M2-5 CPE device
- Correspondence of CPE device models with firmware versions
- Deleting firmware

Additional configuration of CPE devices using scripts

- Adding a script to CPE devices
- Manually running a script on CPE devices
- Scheduling scripts on CPE devices
- Editing a script on CPE devices
- Deleting a script on CPE devices

Managing network interfaces

- Creating network interfaces
  - Creating a network interface with automatic assignment of an IP address via DHCP
  - Creating a network interface with a static IPv4 address

- Creating a network interface with a static IPv6 address
- Creating a network interface for connecting to an LTE network
- Creating a network interface for connecting to a PPPoE server
- Creating a network interface without an IP address
- Editing a network interface
- Disabling or enabling a network interface
- Canceling the application of network interface settings to a CPE device
- Deleting a network interface

Configuring the connection of a CPE device to the orchestrator and controller

Managing SD-WAN interfaces

- About sending information about SD-WAN interfaces of the WAN type to the controller
- Package fragmentation
- Traffic queues on SD-WAN interfaces
- Creating an SD-WAN interface of the WAN type
- Editing an SD-WAN interface
- Disabling or enabling an SD-WAN interface
- Deleting an SD-WAN interface of the WAN type

Managing service interfaces

- Creating a service interface
- Creating an ACL interface
- Viewing the usage of a service interface and an ACL interface
- Deleting a service interface or an ACL interface

Managing OpenFlow port groups

- Creating an OpenFlow port group
- Editing an OpenFlow port group
- Deleting an OpenFlow port group

Configuring a UNI for connecting CPE devices to network services

- Managing UNI templates
  - Creating a UNI template
  - Deleting a UNI template
- Managing UNIs
  - Creating a UNI
  - Viewing UNI usage
  - Editing a UNI
  - Deleting a UNI

Adding a static route

- Table of correspondence of administrative distances and routing protocols

Filtering routes and traffic packets

- Managing access control lists (ACLs)
  - Creating an access-control list
  - Editing an access control list
  - Deleting an access control list
- Managing prefix lists
  - Creating a prefix list
  - Editing a prefix list
  - Deleting a prefix list
- Managing route maps

- Creating a route map
- Editing a route map
- Deleting a route map

Policy-based routing (PBR)
- Managing IP routing rules
  - Creating an IP rule
  - Editing an IP rule
  - Deleting an IP rule

Route exchange over BGP
- Basic BGP settings
- Managing BGP peers
  - Creating a BGP peer
  - Editing a BGP peer
  - Deleting a BGP peer
- Managing BGP peer groups
  - Creating a BGP peer group
  - Editing a BGP peer group
  - Deleting a BGP peer group
- Configuring Inter-VRF Route Leaking

Route exchange over OSPF
- Basic OSPF settings
- Managing OSPF areas
  - Creating an OSPF area
  - Editing an OSPF area
  - Deleting an OSPF area
- Managing OSPF interfaces
  - Creating an OSPF interface
  - Editing an OSPF interface
  - Deleting an OSPF interface

Using BFD to detect routing failures
- Enabling or disabling the BFD protocol
- Creating a BFD peer
- Editing a BFD peer
- Deleting a BFD peer

Ensuring high availability with VRRP
- Enabling or disabling the VRRP protocol
- Managing VRRP instances
  - Creating a VRRP instance
  - Editing a VRRP instance
  - Deleting a VRRP instance
- Managing VRRP instance groups
  - Creating a group of VRRP instances
  - Editing a VRRP instance group
  - Deleting a VRRP instance group

Transmission of multicast traffic using PIM and IGMP protocols
- Basic PIM settings
- Managing multicast interfaces

Creating a multicast interface
Editing a multicast interface
Deleting a multicast interface
Managing virtual routing and forwarding (VRF) tables
Specifying kernel settings related to virtual routing tables
Creating a virtual routing and forwarding table
Modifying the virtual routing and forwarding table
Deleting a virtual routing and forwarding table
Monitoring traffic packet information using the NetFlow protocol
Managing NetFlow templates
Creating a NetFlow template
Selecting an assigned NetFlow template
Importing a NetFlow template
Cloning a NetFlow template
Viewing the usage of a NetFlow template
Deleting a NetFlow template
Basic NetFlow settings
Changing the NetFlow template of a CPE Device
Diagnosing a CPE device
Requesting diagnostic information
Enabling interactive mode
Running the ping utility
Running the traceroute utility
Running the tcpdump utility
Running the iperf utility
Running the sweep utility
Running the OpenFlow dump utility
Managing reports
Downloading a report
Deleting a report
Running tasks on CPE devices
Creating a task
Manually running a task
Deleting a task
IP address and subnet ranges for CPE devices
Managing IP address ranges
Creating a range of IP addresses
Editing an IP address range
Viewing the usage of an IP address range
Deleting IP address ranges
Managing subnet ranges
Creating a subnet range
Editing a subnet range
Viewing the usage of a subnet range
Deleting subnet ranges
Managing the firewall
Managing firewall zones

- Creating a firewall zone
- Cloning a firewall common zone
- Viewing the usage of a firewall common zone
- Editing a firewall zone
- Deleting a firewall zone
- Managing firewall templates
  - Creating a firewall template
  - Selecting an assigned firewall template
  - Importing a firewall template
  - Cloning a firewall template
  - Viewing the usage of a firewall template
  - Deleting a firewall template
- Basic firewall settings
- Configuring DPI marking
- Managing firewall rules
  - Creating a firewall rule
  - Configuring the order of firewall rules
  - Enabling or disabling a firewall rule
  - Editing a firewall rule
  - Deleting a firewall rule
- Managing IP sets
  - Creating an IP set
  - Disabling or enabling an IP set
  - Editing an IP set
  - Deleting an IP set
- Managing DNAT rules
  - Creating a DNAT rule
  - Configuring the order of DNAT rules
  - Disabling or enabling a DNAT rule
  - Editing a DNAT rule
  - Deleting a DNAT rule
- Managing SNAT rules
  - Creating a SNAT rule
  - Configuring the order of SNAT rules
  - Disabling or enabling a SNAT rule
  - Editing a SNAT rule
  - Deleting a SNAT rule
- Managing forwarding
  - Creating a forwarding
  - Deleting a forwarding
- Changing the firewall template of a CPE device

Managing network services and virtualization of network functions

- Managing network service templates
  - Creating a network service template
  - Editing a network service template
  - Deleting a network service template
- Managing network services

- Creating a network service
- Editing a network service
- Deploying a network service
- Checking the consistency of a network service
- Redeploying a network service
- Disabling or enabling auto-healing for a network service
- Viewing the network service log
- Deleting a network service

Scenario: Deploying a virtual network function

Scenario: Deploying a physical network function

Managing VNF and PNF packages

- Configuring the VNF descriptor
- Configuring the PNF descriptor
- Protection of VNF and PNF packages against substitution and modification
- Uploading a VNF or PNF package to the orchestrator web interface

Specifying a brief description of a shared network service

Managing virtual network functions

- Selecting the flavour of a virtual network function
- Configuring external connection points of a virtual network function
- Basic settings of a virtual network function
- Hosting the virtual network function in a data center and on a uCPE device
- Stopping or starting a virtual network function or a VDU that is part of it
- Pausing or unpausing a virtual network function or a VDU that is part of it
- Suspending or unsuspending a virtual network function or a VDU that is part of it
- Soft rebooting a virtual network function or a VDU that is part of it
- Hard rebooting of a virtual network function or a VDU that is part of it
- Redeploying a virtual network function or a VDU that is part of it
- Auto-healing a virtual network function or a VDU that is part of it
- Managing VDU snapshots
  - Creating a VDU snapshot
  - Restoring VDU settings using a snapshot
  - Editing a VDU snapshot
  - Deleting a VDU snapshot

Managing physical network functions

- Selecting the flavour of a physical network function
- Basic settings of a physical network function

Configuring a P2P service

Configuring a P2M service

Configuring an M2M service

Configuring a shared network (OS 2 SHARED)

Configuring a virtual router (OS vRouter)

Configuring a VLAN

Configuring a VXLAN

Configuring a flat network

Configuring a UNI

Monitoring solution components

Specifying the Zabbix server

- Specifying the Zabbix proxy server
- Configuring CPE device monitoring
- Viewing monitoring results
- Viewing problems
- Viewing the status of the solution and its components
- Viewing logs
- Viewing and deleting service requests
- Sending CPE device notifications to users
  - Specifying the SMTP Server
  - Configuring notifications
- Selecting the Docker container log verbosity
- Monitoring CPE, VNF, and PNF devices using SNMP
  - Configuring the connection of the SNMP manager to SNMP agents
  - Creating a trap
  - Editing a trap
  - Deleting a trap
- Link monitoring

Building an SD-WAN network between CPE devices

- About the Hub-and-Spoke topology
- About Full-Mesh and Partial-Mesh topologies
- Assigning a role to a CPE device
- Assigning a topology tag to a CPE device
- Configuring paths
- Managing links
  - Specifying the cost of a link
  - Enabling Dampening
  - Enabling Forward Error Correction
  - Determining the MTU value
  - Traffic encryption
    - Enabling traffic encryption on a CPE device
    - Enabling traffic encryption on a link
  - Connectivity Fault Management (CFM)
    - Enabling CFM on a CPE device
    - Enabling CFM on a link
- Managing segments
  - Creating a Manual-TE path
  - Editing a Manual-TE path
  - Deleting a Manual-TE path

Quality of Service (QoS)

- Managing traffic classes
- Managing traffic classifiers
  - Creating a traffic classifier
  - Editing a traffic classifier
  - Deleting a traffic classifier
- Managing quality of service rules
  - Creating a quality of service rule
  - Editing a quality of service rule

- Deleting a quality of service rule
- Managing Manual-TE constraints
  - Creating a Manual-TE constraint
  - Editing a Manual-TE constraint
  - Deleting a Manual-TE constraint
- Managing threshold constraints
  - Creating a threshold constraint
  - Editing a threshold constraint
  - Deleting a threshold constraint
- Managing traffic classification rules
  - Creating a traffic classification rule
  - Editing a traffic classification rule
  - Deleting a traffic classification rule
- Managing traffic filters
  - Creating a traffic filter
  - Editing a traffic filter
  - Deleting a traffic filter

Transmission of traffic between CPE devices and client devices using transport services

- Traffic packet duplication
- Scenario: Directing application traffic to a transport service
- Scenario: Establishing L2 connectivity between CPE devices
- Managing Point-to-Point (P2P) transport services
  - Creating a P2P service
  - Viewing statistics of a P2P service
  - Viewing and configuring the display of a P2P service topology
  - Editing a P2P service
  - Restarting a P2P service
  - Deleting a P2P service
- Managing Point-to-Multipoint (P2M) transport services
  - Creating a P2M service
  - Viewing statistics of a P2M service
  - Viewing the MAC table of a P2M service
  - Viewing and configuring the display of a P2M service topology
  - Editing a P2M service
  - Restarting a P2M service
  - Deleting a P2M service
- Managing Multipoint-to-Multipoint (M2M) transport services
  - Creating an M2M service
  - Viewing statistics of an M2M service
  - Viewing the MAC table of an M2M service
  - Viewing and configuring the display of an M2M service topology
  - Editing an M2M service
  - Restarting an M2M service
  - Deleting an M2M service
- Managing IP multicast transport services
  - Creating an IP multicast service
  - Viewing statistics of an IP multicast service

- Editing an IP multicast service
- Deleting an IP multicast service
- Managing L3 VPN transport services
- Creating an L3 VPN service
- Managing the ARP table of an L3 VPN service
- Creating a static record in the ARP table of an L3 VPN service
- Editing a static record in the ARP table of an L3 VPN service
- Deleting a static record in the ARP table of an L3 VPN service
- Viewing the routing and forwarding table of an L3 VPN service
- Editing an L3 VPN service
- Restarting an L3 VPN service
- Deleting an L3 VPN service
- Managing transport services in an SD-WAN instance template
- Creating a P2M service or an M2M service in an SD-WAN instance template
- Creating an L3 VPN service in an SD-WAN instance template
- Editing a transport service in an SD-WAN instance template
- Deleting a transport service in an SD-WAN instance template
- Managing transport services in a CPE template
- Adding a transport service to a CPE template
- Editing a transport service in a CPE template
- Deleting a transport service from a CPE template
- Traffic mirroring and forwarding between CPE devices
- Managing traffic destinations
- Creating a traffic destination
- Deleting a traffic destination
- Managing TAP services
- Creating a TAP service
- Viewing statistics of a TAP service
- Editing a TAP service
- Deleting a TAP service

Integration with Kaspersky CyberSecurity for Networks

Appendices

Glossary

- Control plane
- Controller
- Customer Premise Equipment (CPE)
- Data plane
- Open vSwitch (OVS)
- Orchestrator
- Physical Network Function (PNF)
- PNF package
- Port security
- SD-WAN Gateway
- SD-WAN instance
- Software-Defined Networking (SDN)
- Software-Defined Wide Area Network (SD-WAN)
- Switch Operating System (SWOS)

Tenant
Transport strategy
Universal CPE (uCPE)
Virtual Deployment Unit (VDU)
Virtual Infrastructure Manager (VIM)
Virtual Network Function (VNF)
Virtual Network Function Manager (VNFM)
VNF Package
Contacting Technical Support
How to obtain Technical Support
Technical Support via Kaspersky CompanyAccount
Information about third-party code
Trademark notices

Kaspersky SD-WAN Help

New features

What's new in each version of Kaspersky SD-WAN

Hardware and software requirements

Review the hardware and software requirements

Getting started

- Deploying Kaspersky SD-WAN
- Managing the corporate infrastructure
- Managing users and their access permissions
- Multitenancy

Monitoring and reports

- Configuring logs on CPE devices
- Monitoring traffic packet information using the NetFlow protocol
- Diagnosing CPE devices
- Monitoring solution components

Updating

Update Kaspersky SD-WAN from a previous version

Additional features

- Managing the firewall
- Quality of Service (QoS)
- Traffic mirroring

Appendices

Get information about Kaspersky SD-WAN from additional guides

About Kaspersky SD-WAN

Kaspersky SD-WAN is used to build Software-Defined Wide Area Networks (Software Defined WAN; SD-WAN). In SD-WAN networks, routes with the lowest latency and the greatest bandwidth are determined automatically. Traffic is routed using the SDN (Software Defined Networking) technology.

The *SDN technology* separates the control plane from the data plane and allows managing the network infrastructure using an orchestrator (using the web interface or the API). Separating the control plane from the data plane makes it possible to *virtualize network functions* (Network Function Virtualization; NFV), wherein network functions such as firewalls, routers, and load balancers are deployed on standard equipment. Network function virtualization in the solution is compliant with the NFV MANO specification (NFV Management and Network Orchestration) standards of the European Telecommunications Standards Institute (ETSI).

Building an SD-WAN network does not depend on transport technologies. You can also send traffic over multiple links based on application requirements regarding bandwidth and quality of service. The following underlay network types are supported:

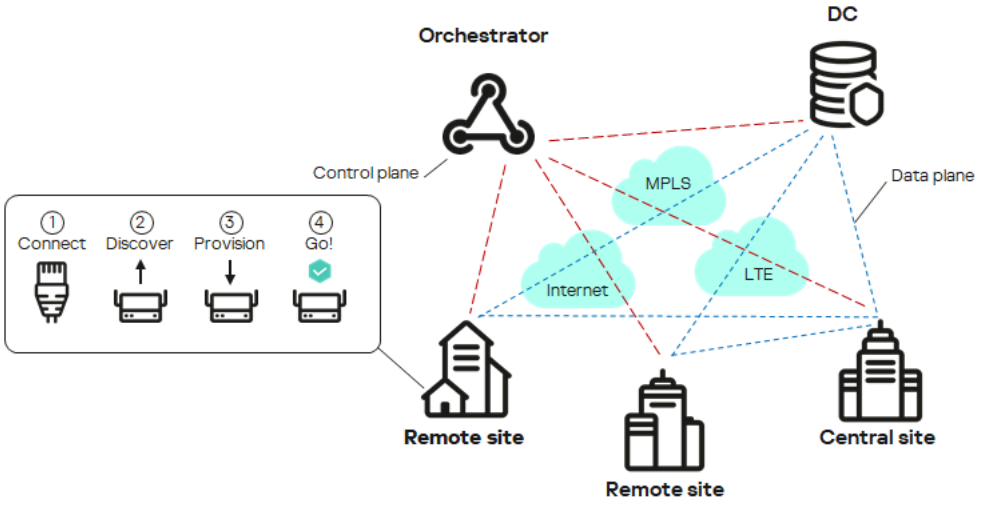
- MPLS transport networks
- Broadband links for connecting to the Internet
- Leased communication lines
- Wireless connections including 3G, 4G, and LTE
- Satellite links

The solution is intended for service providers and organizations with a large branch network; it replaces standard routers in distributed networks with Customer Premise Equipment devices (hereinafter referred to as CPE devices, CPEs).

Kaspersky SD-WAN lets you do the following:

- Intelligent traffic management
- Automatic CPE device configuration
- Central management of solution components using the web interface
- Network monitoring
- Automatically responding to changes in QoS policies to meet requirements of applications

The figure below shows a diagram of an SD-WAN network built using the Kaspersky SD-WAN solution.



testtest

SD-WAN network diagram

Distribution kit

To learn more about purchasing the solution, please visit the Kaspersky website (https://www.kaspersky.com) or contact partner companies.

The distribution kit includes the following components:

- knaas-installer_<version information> in the TAR.GZ format (hereinafter also referred to as the installation archive) for solution deployment.
- Docker containers for deploying Kaspersky SD-WAN components:
  - knaas-ctl
  - knaas-orc
  - knaas-www
  - knass-vnfm
  - knaas-vnfm-proxy
  - mockpnf

  You must download the following containers from the common Docker repository:
  - mariaDB
  - mongo
  - redis
  - syslog-ng
  - zabbix-proxy-mysql
  - zabbix-server-mysql
  - zabbix-web-nginx-mysql
- CPE device firmware.
- A file with the text of the End User License Agreement, which stipulates the terms and conditions that you must accept to use the solution.
- Kaspersky SD-WAN Online Help files that let you read documentation without an Internet connection.

The content of the distribution kit may differ depending on the region in which the solution is distributed.

Hardware and software requirements

Kaspersky SD-WAN has the following hardware and software requirements:

Hardware requirements depend on the number of CPE devices being managed (see the recommended deployment scenarios below). If you need to calculate hardware requirements for a specific deployment scheme more precisely, we recommend contacting Kaspersky Technical Support.

1. Recommended computing resources for solution components version 2.4 and higher.

The following are supported specifications for instances of Kaspersky SD-WAN Orchestrator (ORC), Kaspersky SD-WAN Controller (CTL), the monitoring component (MON), and the Kaspersky Deployment Toolkit (KDT) utility; these are valid as long as identical components and software versions are used.

1.1. SD-WAN Orchestrator

Table 1. ORC instance type definitions

Instance type	Number of CPE devices	Specifications (approximate)				
		CPU*	RAM	Storage size**	Storage IOPS**	Network adapter
Small ORC	1000	16 cores	32 GB	256 GB	3,000	2 x 1 Gbps
Medium ORC	5,000	24 cores	64 GB	512 GB	5,000	2 x 1 Gbps
Large ORC	10,000	16 cores	128 GB	1 TB	10,000	2 x 10 Gbps

* CPU without Hyper-Threading. Recommendations:

- Xeon Silver 4314 for Small ORC instances
- Xeon Gold 5318Y, Xeon Gold 5418Y, or higher for Medium ORC instances
- Xeon Gold 6414U, Xeon Gold 6438Y+, or higher for Large ORC instances

** SSD

1.2. SD-WAN Controller

Table 2. CTL instance type definitions

Instance type	Number of CPE devices	Specifications (approximate)				
		CPU*	RAM	Storage size**	Storage IOPS**	Network adapter
Small CTL	250	16 cores	32 GB	64 GB	3,000	2 x 1 Gbps
Medium CTL	500	24 cores	48 GB	128 GB	5,000	2 x 1 Gbps
Large CTL	1000	32 cores	64 GB	256 GB	10,000	2 x 10 Gbps

* CPU without Hyper-Threading. Recommendations:

- Xeon Silver 4314 for Small CTL instances
- Xeon Gold 5318Y, Xeon Gold 5418Y, or higher for Medium CTL instances
- Xeon Gold 6414U, Xeon Gold 6438Y+, or higher for Large CTL instances

** SSD

1.3. SD-WAN monitoring component

Table 3. MON instance type definitions

Instance type	Number of CPE devices	Specifications (approximate)				
		CPU*	RAM	Storage size**	Storage IOPS**	Network adapter

Small MON	1,000	8 cores	16 GB	1 TB	3,000	2 x 1 Gbps
Medium MON	5,000	24 cores	64 GB	5 TB	5,000	2 x 1 Gbps
Large MON	10,000	16 cores	96 GB	10 TB	10,000	2 x 10 Gbps

* CPU without Hyper-Threading. Recommendations:

- Xeon Silver 4309Y for Small MON instances
- Xeon Gold 5318Y, Xeon Gold 5418Y, or higher for Medium MON instances
- Xeon Gold 6414U, Xeon Gold 6438Y+, or higher for Large MON instances

**SSD, RAID 10

1.4. SD-WAN All-in-One

An SD-WAN All-in-One (AIO) instance includes the following administration components: Kaspersky SD-WAN Orchestrator (ORC), Kaspersky SD-WAN Controller (CTL), and Kaspersky SD-WAN monitoring component (MON). The following instance specifications are supported:

Table 4. AIO instance type definitions

Instance type	Number of CPE devices	Specifications (approximate)				
		CPU*	RAM	Storage size**	Storage IOPS**	Network adapter
Small AIO	50	16 cores	32 GB	256 GB	3,000	1 Gbps
Medium AIO	100	24 cores	48 GB	512 GB	5,000	2 x 1 Gbps
Large AIO	250	32 cores	64 GB	1024 GB	10,000	2 x 10 Gbps

1.5. Host for SD-WAN deployment

To deploy and update the management components of the solution in High Availability and Distributed Deployment scenarios, you need a dedicated host with the Kaspersky Deployment Toolkit (KDT).

Table 5. KDT instance type definitions

Deployment scenario	Specifications (approximate)				
	CPU*	RAM	Storage size**	Storage IOPS**	Network adapter
High Availability and Distributed Deployment	8 cores	16 GB	512 GB	5,000	1 Gbps

* CPU without Hyper-Threading. Recommendations:

- Xeon Silver 4309Y for KDT instances

** SSD

2. Administration system deployment scenarios

2.1. Standalone deployment

The standalone deployment scenario of the Kaspersky SD-WAN administration system is intended for demonstration purposes only and is not recommended for a production environment.

2.2. High Availability deployment

Deploying the Kaspersky SD-WAN administration system in a High Availability (HA) scenario requires three AIO instances (HA3). The hardware requirements of the instances are specified in Table 4. The following table lists sizing recommendations for HA3 deployment.

Table 6. Requirements of instances for HA3 deployment

Number of CPE devices	HA3 instance
50	3 x Small AIO
100	3 x Medium AIO
250	3 x Large AIO

2.3. Distributed Deployment

Deploying the Kaspersky SD-WAN administration system in a Distributed Deployment scenario requires three dedicated ORC instances, three dedicated CTL instances, three dedicated MON instances, and one KDT host.

Table 7. Requirements of instances for deployment

Number of CPE devices	ORC	CTL	MON	KDT
250	3 x Small ORC	3 x Small CTL	3 x Small MON	1 x KDT
500	3 x Small ORC	3 x Medium CTL	3 x Small MON	1 x KDT
1,000	3 x Small ORC	3 x Large CTL	3 x Small MON	1 x KDT
2,500	3 x Small ORC	15 x Medium CTL	3 x Small MON	1 x KDT
5,000	3 x Medium ORC	30 x Medium CTL	3 x Medium MON	1 x KDT
7,500	3 x Medium ORC	45 x Medium CTL	3 x Medium MON	1 x KDT
10,000	3 x Large ORC	60 x Medium CTL	3 x Large MON	1 x KDT
20,000	6 x Large ORC	120 x Medium CTL	6 x Large MON	1 x KDT
25,000	9 x Large ORC	150 x Medium CTL	9 x Large MON	1 x KDT

3. Third-party solution requirements

The following third-party solutions are required to deploy Kaspersky SD-WAN:

- The Zabbix monitoring system versions 5.0.26 or 6.0.0. For details, please refer to the official documentation of the Zabbix solution.
- The Docker cloud platform version 1.5 or later for deploying Docker containers of solution components. For details, please refer to the official documentation of the Docker cloud platform.
- The OpenStreetMap service for viewing the transport service topology overlaid on a map. If the infrastructure of your organization does not provide for an Internet connection, you can use offline maps. Offline maps take up additional disk space:
  - The offline map (central-fed-district-latest.osm.pbf) takes up approximately 100 GB.
  - Geocoding data takes up approximately 10 GB.

  For detailed information, please refer to the official documentation of the OpenStreetMap service.

Operating system requirements

The following 64-bit operating systems are supported:

- Ubuntu 22.04 LTS.
- Astra Linux 1.7 (security level: "Orel").
- RED OS 7.3 "MUROM".

Requirements for links between nodes of solution components

When deploying Kaspersky SD-WAN, you can deploy multiple nodes of solution components. The following requirements apply to links between nodes of solution components:

- Requirements for links between controller nodes:
  - Bandwidth: 1 Gbps
  - RTT (Round Trip Time): 200 ms or less
  - Packet loss: 0%
- Requirements for links between MongoDB database nodes:
  - Bandwidth: 1 Gbps
  - RTT: 50 ms or less
  - Packet loss: 0%
- Requirements for links between Redis database nodes:
  - Bandwidth: 1 Mbps
  - RTT: 50 ms or less
  - Packet loss: 0%

Browser requirements

The following browsers are supported for managing the orchestrator web interface:

- Google Chrome 100 or later
- Firefox 100 or later
- Microsoft Edge 100 or later
- Opera 90 or later
- Safari 15 or later

CPE device requirements

The following CPE device models are supported:

- KESR-M1-R-5G-2L-W
- KESR-M2-K-5G-1L-W
- KESR-M2-K-5G-1S
- KESR-M3-K-4G-4S
- KESR-M4-K-2X-1CPU
- KESR-M4-K-8G-4X-1CPU
- KESR-M5-K-8G-4X-2CPU
- KESR-M5-K-8X-2CPU

CPE devices of the KESR model are based on x86 (Intel 80x86) and MIPS (Microprocessor without Interlocked Pipeline Stages) processor architectures.

KESR M3–M5 CPE devices have Intel network adapters that are compatible with Intel SFP transceivers. For details about supported SFP transceivers, you can use the Intel Product Compatibility Tool

https://compatibleproducts.intel.com/ProductDetails?activeModule=Intel%C2%AE%20Ethernet#
(in the territory of the Russian Federation, the link is accessible only via VPN). When using the Intel Product Compatibility Tool, you need to select one of the following product categories:

- **500 Series** to view SFP transceivers that are compatible with KESR M3 CPE devices.
- **700 Series** to view SFP transceivers that are compatible with KESR M4–M5 CPE devices.

Kaspersky experts carried out tests to confirm the functionality of CPE devices when providing the L3 VPN service (see the table below). DPI (Deep Packet Inspection) was not used on the tested devices, and traffic encryption was disabled.

Model	Packet size (bytes)	Bandwidth (Mbps)
KESR-M1	IMIX (417)	30
	Large (1300)	115
KESR-M2	IMIX (417)	165
	Large (1300)	241
KESR-M3	IMIX (417)	805
	Large (1300)	1150
KESR-M4	IMIX (417)	1430
	Large (1300)	2870

For detailed information about the characteristics of CPE devices, please refer to the official page of the solution.

You can deploy uCPE devices on servers with x86 (Intel 80x86) or ARM64 processor architectures.

vCPE device requirements

The distribution kit includes the following firmware for deploying vCPE devices:

- vKESR-M1
- vKESR-M2
- vKESR-M3
- vKESR-M4

The following virtualization environments are supported for vCPE devices:

- VMware 7.0 or later
- KVM with kernel version 5.15 or later

> Only the original KVM virtualization environment without additional orchestration tools is supported.

The following table lists the virtual resource requirements for deploying vCPE devices.

Firmware	CPU	RAM, GB	Disk, GB
vKESR-M1	2	0.5	1
vKESR-M2	4	8	1
vKESR-M3	12	16	1
vKESR-M4	24	32	1

When upgrading Kaspersky SD-WAN from version 2.2 to 2.3, you need to make sure that your previously deployed vCPE devices satisfy the requirements of the new version, after which you can update your vCPE devices using the vKESR-M1-5 firmware.

Ensuring security

Security in Kaspersky SD-WAN is ensured in the data plane, control plane, and orchestration plane. The security level of the solution as a whole is determined by the security level of each of these planes, as well as the security of their interaction. The following processes take place in each plane:

- User authentication and authorization
- Use of secure management protocols
- Encryption of control traffic
- Secure connection of CPE devices

Secure management protocols

We recommend using HTTPS when communicating with the SD-WAN network through the orchestrator web interface or API. You can upload your own certificates to the web interface or use automatically generated self-signed certificates. The solution uses several protocols to transmit control traffic to components (see the table below).

Interacting components	Protocol	Additional security measures
Orchestrator and controller	gRPC	TLS is used for authentication and traffic encryption between the client and server.
Orchestrator and CPE device	HTTPS	Certificate verification and a token are used for authentication and traffic encryption between the orchestrator and the CPE device.
Controller and CPE device	OpenFlow 1.3.4	TLS is used for authentication and traffic encryption between the controller and the CPE device.

Secure connection of CPE devices

The solution uses the following mechanisms for secure connection of CPE devices:

- Discovery of CPE devices by DPIDs (datapath identifiers).
- Deferred registration. You can select the state of the CPE device after successful registration: **Enabled** or **Disabled**. A disabled CPE device must be enabled after making sure it is installed at the location.
- Two-factor authentication.

Using virtual network functions

You can provide an additional layer of security with virtual network functions deployed in the data center and/or on uCPEs. For example, traffic can be relayed from a CPE device to a virtual network function that acts as a firewall or proxy server. Virtual network functions can perform the following SD-WAN protection functions:

- Next-Generation Firewall (NGFW)
- Protection from DDoS (Distributed Denial of Service) attacks
- Intrusion Detection System (IDS) and Intrusion Prevention System (IPS)
- Anti-Virus
- Anti-Spam
- Content Filtering and URL filtering system
- DLP (Data Loss Prevention) system for preventing confidential information leaks
- Secure Web Proxy

What's new

Kaspersky SD-WAN has the following new and improved functionality:

- Integration with Kaspersky KSC/OSMP is supported (with some limitations; see **Known limitations** below).
- Improved CPE scaling to a cluster of controllers thanks to the Active-Active Multi-Master architecture.
- Added support for Policy-based Routing.
- Static DHCP reservation is supported.
- Connecting a CPE to the controller and orchestrator via a LAN port is now supported.
- Added BGP support for additional VRF tables.
- A CPE can be reset to default settings using a button (for KESR M1–M3 models).
- The graphical interface of the orchestrator has been improved by replacing modal windows with side panes.
- Improved Link State Control mechanism: the controller is asynchronously notified about failure or recovery of tunnel links.
- Firmware metadata now includes its type (OVS/SWOS).
- The controller/orchestrator connectivity status is indicated by an LED on the CPE panel (only for special device versions).
- Reservation of MAC address allocation for overlay interfaces.
- Added the OpenFlow packet prioritizing mechanism.
- The optimized view of tunnels between CPE and controllers now displays full information about links, including the NAT and WAN Disjoint topology attributes.
- The route metric for network interfaces with **sdwan0**–**sdwan3** aliases is assigned automatically: the **sdwan0** gets the highest priority, and **sdwan3** gets the lowest priority. The **Route metric** value is blocked for manual editing for interfaces with **sdwan0**–**sdwan9** aliases.

Known limitations

Kaspersky SD-WAN has the following limitations:

- Limitations when integrating the solution with Kaspersky KSC/OSMP:
  - Available for new installations only
  - SSH console is not supported
  - VNC console is not supported
- Firewall rules do not work in user-created virtual routing and forwarding tables.
- When static routes are modified, the FRR daemon is restarted.
- NetFlow flows are not distributed across network interfaces.

Architecture of the solution

Kaspersky SD-WAN includes the following main components:

- Orchestrator

  Controls the solution infrastructure, functions as an NFV orchestrator (NFVO), and manages network services and distributed VNF managers (VNFMs). You can manage the orchestrator via the web interface or REST API when using external northbound systems.

- Controller

  Centrally manages the overlay network:

  - Builds the network topology.
  - Creates transport services.
  - Manages CPE devices using the OpenFlow protocol.
  - Balances traffic between links.
  - Monitors links and automatically switches traffic to a backup link if the primary link fails.

  To deploy the controller, you need to deploy the physical network function of the controller, which is contained in the installation archive. The controller is managed by the orchestrator.

- CPE devices

  These are installed at remote locations to relay traffic and form an SDN fabric in the form of an overlay network. You can assign the SD-WAN Gateway role or the standard CPE device role o the CPE device. SD-WAN Gateways establish links with all standard CPE devices and other SD-WAN Gateways. Standard CPE devices establish links only with SD-WAN Gateways. By default, all CPE devices have the standard CPE device role.

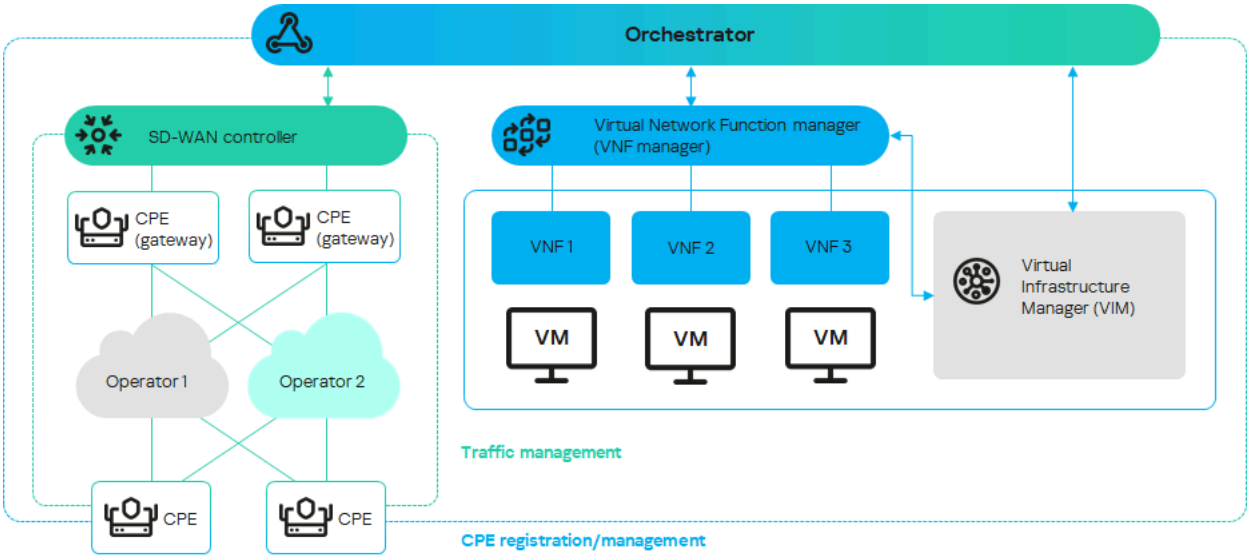
  If you want a link to be established between two standard CPE devices, you need to assign the same topology tag to them. You can make a standard CPE device a transit device to allow other CPE devices to establish links through it.

- VNFM (Virtual Network Function Manager)

  Manages the lifecycle of virtual network functions using SSH, Ansible playbooks, scripts, and Cloud-init attributes.

If virtual network functions are used, the architecture of the solution includes a Virtual Infrastructure Manager (VIM) that manages compute, network, and storage resources within the NFV infrastructure. A VIM connects virtual network functions using virtual links, subnets, and ports. The OpenStack cloud platform is used as the VIM.

Kaspersky SD-WAN has a distributed microservice architecture based on Docker containers (see the figure below). A controller can include one, three, or five nodes. For fault tolerance, you can deploy controller nodes on separate virtual machines or physical servers. You can specify virtual machines or physical servers for deployment of controller nodes when deploying the solution, in the `ctl` section of the configuration file.



Architecture of Kaspersky SD-WAN

Deploying Kaspersky SD-WAN

You can deploy Kaspersky SD-WAN using the knaas-installer_<version information> installation archive that is part of the distribution kit. Before following this procedure, you must prepare a solution deployment scenario. If you have any problems with preparing a deployment scenario, we recommend contacting Kaspersky Technical Support.

A solution deployment scenario consists of the following steps:

1. **Preparing the administrator device**

   Prepare the administrator device for solution deployment. You can use a local or remote virtual machine, or a personal computer as the administrator device. When deploying a Kaspersky SD-WAN testbed in accordance with the all-in-one deployment scenario, you must use a virtual machine as the administrator device.

2. **Ensuring network connectivity between the administrator device and solution components**

   Ensure network connectivity between the administrator device and the virtual machines or physical servers on which you want to deploy Kaspersky SD-WAN components. If you plan to deploy multiple nodes of solution components, make sure that the links between virtual machines or physical servers satisfy the hardware and software requirements.

   > Virtual machines or physical servers must be deployed in a trusted network segment to avoid compromising the transmitted traffic.

3. **Manually generating passwords**

   If necessary, manually generate passwords to ensure the security of Kaspersky SD-WAN components and their SSL certificates.

4. **Preparing the configuration file**

   Prepare the configuration file in accordance with the chosen deployment scenario. You can use example configuration files for typical deployment scenarios in the /inventory/external/pnf and /inventory/external/vnf directories of the installation archive.

5. **Replacing the graphics of the orchestrator web interface**

   If necessary, replace the graphics of the orchestrator web interface. For example, you can replace the image that is displayed in the background when an error occurs while logging into the orchestrator web interface.

6. **Deploying Kaspersky SD-WAN**

   Do the following on the administrator device:

   1. Accept the End User License Agreement by running the following command:

      ```
      export KNAAS_EULA_AGREED="true"
      ```

   2. Go to the directory with the extracted installation archive.

   3. If you want to deploy Kaspersky SD-WAN in attended mode, do one of the following:

      - If you have generated passwords manually, run the command:

        ```
        ansible-playbook -i inventory/generic -e "@< path to configuration file >" -e
        "@inventory/external/images.yml" -K --ask-vault-pass knaas/knaas-install.yml
        ```

        When running the command, enter the root account password and the generated master password.

- If you have not generated passwords manually, run the command:

  ```
  ansible-playbook -i inventory/generic -e "@< path to configuration file >" -e
  "@inventory/external/images.yml" -K knaas/knaas-install.yml
  ```

4. If you want to deploy Kaspersky SD-WAN in unattended mode, do one of the following:

   We recommend using this mode only in a trusted environment, because otherwise hackers may intercept your passwords.

   - If you have generated passwords manually, run the command:

     ```
     ansible-playbook -i inventory/generic -e "@< path to configuration file >" -e
     "@inventory/external/images.yml" -e "ansible_become_password=yourSudoPassword" --
     vault-password-file ./passwords/vault_password.txt knaas/knaas-install.yml
     ```

   - If you have not generated passwords manually, run the command:

     ```
     ansible-playbook -i inventory/generic -e "@< path to configuration file >" -e
     "@inventory/external/images.yml" -e "ansible_become_password=yourSudoPassword"
     knaas/knaas-install.yml
     ```

   The Kaspersky SD-WAN components are deployed on the virtual machines or physical servers that you specified in the configuration file. A successful deployment message is displayed in the console of the administrator device.

If a network connectivity issue occurs with one of the virtual machines or physical servers during the deployment of solution components, an error message is displayed in the administrator device console, and the solution is not deployed. In that case, you need to restore network connectivity, clean up the virtual machines or physical servers, and then run the deployment command again.

Redundancy of solution components

About redundancy schemes for solution components

Kaspersky SD-WAN supports two deployment scenarios for solution components:

- In the *N+1* deployment scenario, you deploy two nodes of the solution component. If one node fails, the second node provides the functionality of the solution component.
- In the *2N+1* deployment scenario, you deploy multiple nodes of the solution component. One node is the primary node and the rest are secondary nodes. If the primary node fails, a randomly chosen secondary node takes its place. This redundancy scheme allows solution components to remain operational even when multiple failures occur in a row.

The table below lists the solution components and the deployment scenarios that are applicable to them.

Solution component	Redundancy scheme
Database of the Zabbix monitoring system	2N+1
Zabbix server	N+1
Frontend part of the Zabbix monitoring system	N+1

Zabbix proxy server	N+1
MongoDB database	2N+1
Redis database: • Redis replica server • Redis Sentinel system	2N+1
Controller	2N+1
Frontend part of the solution	N+1
Orchestrator	N+1
Virtual Network Function Manager	N+1
Virtual Network Function Manager proxy	N+1

You can specify the number of nodes you want to deploy for each solution component in the configuration file.

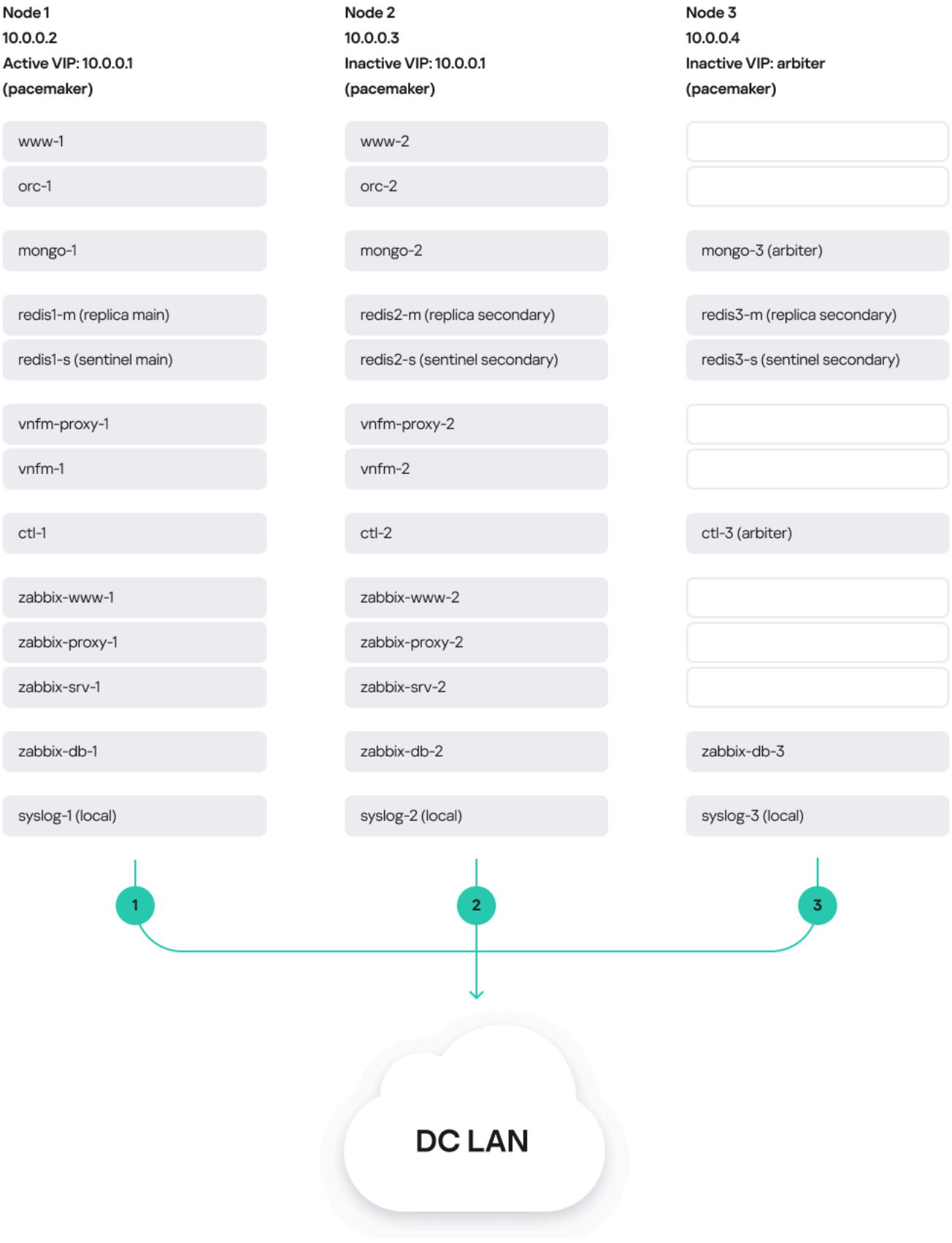
When you configure the deployment settings for the MongoDB database or the controller node in accordance with the 2N+1 deployment scenario, the last node you specify becomes the arbiter node. The *arbiter node* is linked to other nodes and is used to choose the primary node. A node that has lost contact with the arbiter node enters standby mode. One of the nodes that have retained contact with the arbiter node stays or becomes the primary node. An arbiter node cannot become a primary node and does not store data.

Failure scenarios of solution component nodes

The figure below shows a diagram of Kaspersky SD-WAN deployed on three virtual machines in a data center. The diagram uses the following symbols:

- 'www' is the frontend part of the solution
- 'orc' is the orchestrator
- 'mongo' is the MongoDB database
- 'redis-m' is a Redis replica server
- 'redis-s' is a Redis Sentinel system
- 'vnfm-proxy' is a virtual network functions manager proxy
- 'vnfm' is a Virtual Network Function Manager
- 'ctl' is the controller and its database
- 'zabbix-www' is the frontend part of the Zabbix monitoring system
- 'zabbix-proxy' is the Zabbix proxy server
- 'zabbix-srv' is the Zabbix server
- 'zabbix-db' is the database of the Zabbix monitoring system
- 'syslog' is the syslog server

Users and CPE devices gain access to the web interface of the orchestrator and the web interface of the Zabbix monitoring system using a virtual IP address. The virtual IP address is assigned to virtual machine 1.



Solution deployed on three virtual machines

In this deployment scenario, the following failure modes are possible:

- Failure of virtual machine 1 or its link.

  If virtual machine 1 or its link fails, the solution remains operational. The following changes occur in the state of the nodes of solution components:

  - The virtual IP address is assigned to virtual machine 2.
  - The www-1 node of the frontend part of solution is unavailable; www-2 is available. The orchestrator web interface is displayed in the browser.
  - The orc-1 orchestrator node is unavailable; orc-2 is available. The backend part of the solution is functional, users can log into the orchestrator web interface and manage it.
  - The mongo-1 node of the MongoDB database is unavailable; mongo-2 and mongo-3 are available; mongo-2 becomes the primary node because mongo-3 is the arbiter node and cannot become the primary node. The orchestrator continues using the MongoDB database.
  - State of the Redis database:
    - The redis1-m node of the Redis replica server is unavailable; redis2-m and redis3-m are available.
    - The redis1-s node of the Redis Sentinel system is unavailable; redis2-s and redis3-s are available; redis2-s becomes the primary node and randomly assigns either the redis2-m or the redis3-m node of the Redis replica server as the primary node.

    The orchestrator continues using the Redis database.
  - States of the Virtual Network Function Manager:
    - The vnfm-proxy-1 node of the virtual network function manager proxy is unavailable; vnfm-proxy-2 is available.
    - The vnfm-1 Virtual Network Function Manager node is unavailable; vnfm-2 is available.

    SSH consoles of the solution components are operational.
  - The ctl-1 node of the controller is unavailable; ctl-2 and ctl-3 are available; ctl-2 becomes the primary node because ctl-3 is the arbiter node and cannot become the primary node. Physical connectivity between CPE devices is maintained.
  - State of the Zabbix monitoring system:
    - The zabbix-www-1 node of the frontend part of solution is unavailable; zabbix-www-2 is available.
    - The zabbix-proxy-1 node of the Zabbix proxy server is unavailable; zabbix-proxy-2 is available.
    - The zabbix-srv-1 node of the Zabbix server is unavailable; zabbix-srv-2 is available.
    - The zabbix-db-1 node of the Zabbix monitoring system database is unavailable; zabbix-db-2 is available.

    The Zabbix monitoring system is operational.

- **Failure of virtual machine 2 or 3, or its link**.

  If virtual machine 2 or 3 or its link fails, nodes of solution components that are deployed on virtual machine 1 stay primary, and the solution remains operational.

- **Simultaneous failure of virtual machines 1 and 3 or 2 and 3, or their links**.

  If virtual machines 1 and 3 or virtual machines 2 and 3, or their links fail simultaneously, the solution stops working. The following changes occur in the state of the nodes of solution components:

  - The orchestrator web interface is not displayed in the browser. Users cannot log into the orchestrator web interface and manage it.
  - The Zabbix monitoring system stops working.
  - Network connectivity between CPE devices and the network devices connected to them is maintained; traffic continues to be transmitted.
  - Network connectivity within the P2P services and TAP services is maintained.
  - Network connectivity within P2M services and M2M services is maintained for established sessions. For new sessions, network connectivity is maintained if, when creating the P2P service or M2M service, in the **MAC learn mode** drop-down list, you selected **Learn and flood**.
  - CPE devices use a reordering compensation mechanism to reduce the number of duplicate packets on network devices connected to CPE devices.
  - The load on the CPE devices and the SD-WAN network increases proportionately to the number of CPE devices and links.

  If links are restored, the solution is also restored and resumes normal operation.

  If virtual machines 1 and 3 or virtual machines 2 and 3 fail simultaneously, the configuration of solution components is lost. To restore the configuration of solution components, you can contact Kaspersky Professional Services.

- **Simultaneous failure of virtual machines 1 and 2**

  If virtual machines 1 and 2 fail simultaneously, the configuration of the solution components is irreversibly lost because virtual machine 3 has arbiter that do not store data. To avoid this situation, we recommend deploying databases and controllers on separate virtual machines or physical servers and making regular backups.

About the installation archive

The knaas-installer_<version information> installation archive has the TAR format and is used for solution deployment. You can download the installation archive from the root directory of the distribution kit. The installation archive has the following structure:

We do not recommend editing system files because this may cause errors when deploying the solution.

- ansible.cfg file is a system file with Ansible settings.
- CHANGELOG.md is the file change log in YAML format.
- /docs contains the installation archive documentation.
- /images contains images of the solution components.
- /inventory:
  - /external:
    - /pnf contains example configuration files for typical solution deployment scenarios with the controller as a physical network function.
    - /vnf contains example configuration files for typical solution deployment scenarios with the controller as a virtual network function.
- /generic contains common system files.
- /knaas contains system files with playbooks for deploying the solution.
- /oem contains default graphics of the orchestrator web interface.
- /pnfs contains physical network functions for deployment of one, three, or five controller nodes.
- README.md contains instructions for deploying the solution using the installation archive.
- requirements.txt is a system file with Python requirements.

About the attended, unattended, and partially attended action modes

When you perform actions on the administrator device when deploying Kaspersky SD-WAN, you may need to enter the root password as well as the master password. How the passwords are entered depends on the mode in which you are performing the action. The following action modes are supported:

- In the attended mode, an employee must take part in the action. To perform an action, you must manually enter the root password and the master password. This is the safest mode that avoids saving any passwords on the administrator device.
- In the unattended mode, the action is performed without involving an employee. To perform an action, the root password and the master password are entered automatically. In this mode, you can run automated tests.

  We recommend using this mode only in a trusted environment, because otherwise hackers may intercept your passwords.

- In the partially attended mode, the action is performed with partial involvement of an employee. When performing an action, you must enter the root password, but the master password is entered automatically.

Preparing the administrator device

You can use a local or remote virtual machine, or a personal computer as the administrator device. When deploying a Kaspersky SD-WAN testbed in accordance with the all-in-one deployment scenario, you must use a virtual machine as the administrator device.

If you experience any problems while preparing the administrator device, we recommend contacting Kaspersky Technical Support.

To prepare the administrator device:

1. Make sure the administrator device satisfies the hardware and software requirements.
2. Make sure that the same root account is used on the administrator device and the virtual machines or physical servers on which you want to deploy Kaspersky SD-WAN components. After deploying the solution, you can use a different root account on the virtual machines or physical servers.
3. Download the knaas-installer_<version information> installation archive from the root directory of the distribution kit and extract the installation archive on the administrator device.

4. Go to the directory with the extracted installation archive and prepare the administrator device:

   a. Make sure the pip package management tool is installed by running the command:

   ```
   python3 -m pip -V
   ```

   b. If the pip package management tool is not present, do one of the following:

   - If the administrator device is running Ubuntu:

     ```
     apt-get install python3-pip
     ```

   - If the administrator device is running RED OS 8:

     ```
     yum install python3-pip
     ```

   c. Install the Ansible tool and its dependencies:

   ```
   python 3 -m pip install -U --user -r requirements.txt
   ```

   d. Update the PATH variable:

   1. `echo 'export PATH=$PATH:$HOME/.local/bin' >> ~/.bashrc`
   2. `source ~/.bashrc`

   e. Verify that the Ansible tool is ready for use:

   ```
   ansible --version
   ```

   f. Install the operating system packages for Kaspersky SD-WAN deployment on the administrator device:

   ```
   ansible-playbook -K knaas/utilities/toolserver_prepare/bootstrap.yml
   ```

   Enter the root password when running the command.

   You only need to complete this step when initially deploying the solution.

5. Make sure the administrator device is ready for use:

   a. Restart the administrator device.

   b. Go to the extracted installation archive and start the automatic check of the administrator device:

   ```
   ansible-playbook knaas/utilities/pre-flight.yml
   ```

6. If you want to deploy Kaspersky SD-WAN on multiple virtual machines or physical servers:

   a. Make sure SSH keys have been generated on the administrator device. If the SSH keys do not exist, generate them.

   b. Place the SSH keys on virtual machines or physical servers:

   ```
   ssh-copy-id user@< IP address of the virtual machine or physical server >
   ```

   If you are deploying a Kaspersky SD-WAN testbed in accordance with the all-in-one deployment scenario, skip this step.

The administrator device is prepared for Kaspersky SD-WAN deployment.

Managing passwords

Passwords help ensure the security of deployed Kaspersky SD-WAN components. You can manually generate the passwords. If you do not manually generate the passwords, they are generated automatically when you deploy the solution.

Passwords are contained in the following files:

- keystore.yml contains passwords of Kaspersky SD-WAN components and their SSL certificates.
- vault_password.txt contains the master password.

We recommend storing password files in a protected directory because they can be used to gain access to the deployed solution.

After deployment, the generated passwords are automatically placed in the Docker containers of Kaspersky SD-WAN components. Solution components exchange passwords when interacting with each other.

Manually generating passwords

To manually generate the passwords:

1. Create the /passwords directory on the administrator device. Specify the path to the created directory in the `external` section of the configuration file using the `vault_password_dirname` setting.
2. Create a keystore.yml file and in that file, specify the passwords using the following settings:
   - `ZABBIX_DB_SECRET` is the root password of the Zabbix monitoring system database.
   - `MONGO_ADMIN_SECRET` is the administrator password of the MongoDB database.
   - `MONGO_USER_SECRET` is the user password of the MongoDB database. This password is used by the orchestrator.
   - `CTL_CERT_SECRET` is the password of the controller SSL certificate.
   - `ORC_CERT_SECRET` is the password of the orchestrator SSL certificate.
   - `ORC_ENC_SECRET` is the password for encrypting confidential data in the MongoDB database. Minimum length: 32 characters.
   - `VNFM_CERT_SECRET` is the password of the VNFM SSL certificate.

   For all passwords except `ORC_ENC_SECRET`, we recommend specifying at least 16 characters.

3. Create the vault_password.txt file and in that file, specify the master password.

4. Encrypt the keystore.yml file:

   - If you want to encrypt the keystore.yml file in attended mode:

     ```
     ansible-vault encrypt --ask-vault-pass keystore.yml
     ```

   - If you want to encrypt the keystore.yml file in unattended mode:

     ```
     ansible-vault encrypt --vault-password-file vault_password.txt keystore.yml
     ```

The passwords are generated and encrypted.

Changing passwords

To change the passwords:

1. Decrypt the keystore.yml file:

   - If you want to decrypt the keystore.yml file in attended mode:

     ```
     ansible-vault decrypt --vault-password-file vault_password.txt keystore.yml
     ```

   - If you want to decrypt the keystore.yml file in unattended mode:

     ```
     ansible-vault encrypt --ask-vault-pass keystore.yml
     ```

2. Change the following passwords in the keystore.yml file:

   - `ZABBIX_DB_SECRET` is the root password of the Zabbix monitoring system database.
   - `MONGO_ADMIN_SECRET` is the administrator password of the MongoDB database.
   - `MONGO_USER_SECRET` is the user password of the MongoDB database. This password is used by the orchestrator.
   - `CTL_CERT_SECRET` is the password of the controller SSL certificate.
   - `ORC_CERT_SECRET` is the password of the orchestrator SSL certificate.
   - `ORC_ENC_SECRET` is the password for encrypting confidential data in the MongoDB database. Minimum length: 32 characters.
   - `VNFM_CERT_SECRET` is the password of the VNFM SSL certificate.

   > For all passwords except `ORC_ENC_SECRET`, we recommend specifying at least 16 characters.

3. Encrypt the keystore.yml file:

   - If you want to encrypt the keystore.yml file in attended mode:

     ```
     ansible-vault encrypt --ask-vault-pass keystore.yml
     ```

   - If you want to encrypt the keystore.yml file in unattended mode:

     ```
     ansible-vault encrypt --vault-password-file vault_password.txt keystore.yml
     ```

The passwords are changed and encrypted.

Preparing the configuration file

Specify the Kaspersky SD-WAN deployment settings in the YAML configuration file on the administrator device. The path to the configuration file must be specified when deploying the solution. You can use example configuration files for typical deployment scenarios in the inventory/external/pnf and inventory/external/vnf directories of the installation archive.

The configuration file consists of two main sections:

- The `nodes` section specifies virtual machines or physical servers for deploying Kaspersky SD-WAN components. When deploying the solution to virtual machines or physical servers, iptables rules for interaction between solution components are automatically generated.
- The `external` section specifies Kaspersky SD-WAN deployment settings.

> We do not recommend changing the default settings.

The `nodes` section has the following structure:

Section/setting			Description
`node_< number of virtual machine or physical server >`			Deployment settings of virtual machine or physical server.
	`ip`		IP address of the virtual machine or physical server. Enter a value in the `XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX` format, for example: `192.168.110.126`
	`vip`		Virtual IP address of the virtual machine or physical server. Enter a value in the `XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX` format, for example: `192.168.110.126` This setting must be specified for all virtual machines or physical servers on which you plan to use virtual IP addresses.
	`knaas_aio_int`		Settings for connecting Docker containers of Kaspersky SD-WAN components to the local virtual network of the virtual machine or physical server.
		`base`	The first three octets of the local virtual network IP address. Default value: `10.11.11`. Enter a value in the `XXX.XXX.XXX` format, for example: `192.168.110` You can change the first three octets of the default IP address if they overlap with your address space.
		`mode`	Operating mode of the local virtual network. Possible values: • `bridge` means a Linux bridge is created on the virtual machine or physical server. Docker containers connect to the Linux bridge over an L3 network using NAT and iptables. • `vlan` means Docker containers connect to the interface of the virtual machine or physical server over an L2 network using the macvlan driver. We recommend choosing this option only when using a trusted L2 network, because in this case no firewall is used on the virtual machine or physical server.
		`iface`	Name of the virtual machine or physical server interface for connecting Docker containers over the L2 network, for example: `enp6s0` This parameter must be specified if for `mode`, you chose `vlan`.
		`vlan`	VLAN tag of the L2 network. Enter a value in the range of 1 to 4095. If you do not want to use a VLAN tag, enter `0`. This parameter must be specified if for `mode`, you chose `vlan`.
	`knaas_os_man`		Settings for connecting Docker containers of Kaspersky SD-WAN components to the management virtual network or physical server of the virtual machine.
		`base`	The first three octets of the management virtual network IP address. Default value: `10.11.11`. Enter a value in the `XXX.XXX.XXX` format, for example: `192.168.110` You can change the first three octets of the default IP address if they overlap with your address space.
		`mode`	Operating mode of the management virtual network. Possible values: • `bridge` means a Linux bridge is created on the virtual machine or physical server. Docker containers connect to the Linux bridge over an L3 network using NAT and iptables. • `vlan` means Docker containers connect to the interface of the virtual machine or physical server over an L2 network using the macvlan driver. We recommend choosing this option only when using a trusted L2 network, because in this case no firewall is used on the virtual machine or physical server.
		`iface`	Name of the virtual machine or physical server interface for connecting Docker containers over the L2 network, for example: `enp6s0` This parameter must be specified if for `mode`, you chose `vlan`.
		`vlan`	VLAN tag of the L2 network. Enter a value in the range of 1 to 4095. If you do not want to use a VLAN tag, enter `0`. This parameter must be specified if for `mode`, you chose `vlan`.

The `external` section has the following structure:

Section/setting			Description
vault_passwords_dirname			Path to the /passwords directory on the administrator device with manually generated passwords. If you do not generate passwords manually, they are automatically generated during solution deployment and placed in the /passwords directory of the extracted installation archive on the administrator device.
ansible_user			Name of the user account on the administrator device and on virtual machines or physical servers for running playbooks during solution deployment.
ssl			Settings of SSL certificates of Kaspersky SD-WAN components.
	san_list		Information that is added to SSL certificates.
		ip	IP addresses that are added to SSL certificates. Specify a list of values in the XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX format, for example: ip - 192.168.2.0 - 192.168.2.1
		dns	Domain names that are added to SSL certificates. Specify a list of values, for example: dns: - sdwan.kaspersky.com - kaspersky.sdwan.com
	path_local		Path to the directory on the administrator device that contains manually generated SSL certificates. If you do not generate SSL certificates manually, they are automatically generated during solution deployment and placed in the /ssl directory of the extracted installation archive on the administrator device.
	path_remote		Path to the directory on the virtual machines or physical servers that contains manually generated SSL certificates. If you do not generate SSL certificates manually, they are automatically generated during solution deployment and placed in the /ssl directory on virtual machines or physical servers.
syslog			syslog server settings.
	docker_memory_limit		Amount of RAM in megabytes for Docker containers of the syslog server.
	max_log_size		Amount of RAM in gigabytes for the syslog server logs.
	state		Deploying a syslog server on virtual machines or physical servers. Possible values: • enabled • disabled
zabbix			Settings of the Zabbix monitoring system. For details, please refer to the official documentation of the Zabbix solution.

syslog_server_address			Web address of the syslog server to which Docker containers of the Zabbix monitoring system send logs. Enter a value in the < protocol >://< IP address >:< port number > format, for example: udp://192.168.2.15:1514 You can specify syslog server settings in the syslog section.
db_docker_memory_limit			Amount of RAM in megabytes for Docker containers of the Zabbix monitoring system database.
srv_docker_memory_limit			Amount of RAM in megabytes for Docker containers of the Zabbix server.
www_docker_memory_limit			Amount of RAM in megabytes for Docker containers of the Zabbix monitoring system front end.
proxy_docker_memory_limit			Amount of RAM in megabytes for Docker containers of the Zabbix proxy server.
cachesize			Amount of RAM in gigabytes for the Zabbix monitoring system cache. Enter a value in the < gigabytes >G format, for example: 8G
zabbix_<1-3>			Deployment settings of Zabbix monitoring system nodes. You can deploy one Zabbix monitoring system node without high availability or three nodes with high availability.
	ansible_host		IP address of the virtual machine or physical server from the nodes section for deploying the Zabbix monitoring system. Possible values: • Value in the XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX format, for example: 192.168.110.126 • Ansible variable, for example: {{ nodes.node_1.ip }}
	db		Deployment settings of the Zabbix monitoring system database.
		inventory_hostname	Host name of the Zabbix monitoring system database. Default value: zabbix-db-<1-3>.
		state	Deployment of the database of the Zabbix monitoring system on a virtual machine or physical server. Possible values: • enabled • disabled
	srv		Deployment settings of the Zabbix server. When deploying three nodes of the Zabbix monitoring system, you only need to specify these settings for two of the nodes.
		inventory_hostname	Host name of the Zabbix server. Default value: zabbix-srv-<1-3>.
		state	Deploying the Zabbix server on a virtual machine or physical server. Possible values: • enabled • disabled
	www		Deployment settings of the frontend part of the Zabbix monitoring system. When deploying three nodes of the Zabbix monitoring system, you only need to specify these settings for two of the nodes.
		inventory_hostname	Host name of the frontend part of the Zabbix monitoring system. Default value: zabbix-www-<1-3>.
		state	Deployment of the frontend part of the Zabbix monitoring system on a virtual machine or physical server. Possible values: • enabled • disabled
	proxy		Deployment settings of the Zabbix proxy server. When deploying three nodes of the Zabbix monitoring system, you only need to specify these settings for two of the nodes.
		inventory_hostname	Host name of the Zabbix proxy server. Default value: zabbix-proxy-<1-3>.
		state	Deploying the Zabbix proxy server on a virtual machine or physical server. Possible values: • enabled • disabled

`mongo`			MongoDB database settings. For details, please refer to the official documentation of the MongoDB database.
	`syslog_server_address`		Web address of the syslog server to which Docker containers of the MongoDB database send logs. Enter a value in the `< protocol >://< IP address >:< port number >` format, for example: `udp://192.168.2.15:1514` You can specify syslog server settings in the `syslog` section.
	`docker_memory_limit`		Amount of RAM in megabytes for Docker containers of the MongoDB database.
	`mongo_<1-3>`		Deployment settings of MongoDB database nodes. You can deploy one MongoDB database node without high availability or three nodes with high availability. If you deploy three MongoDB database nodes, the last node becomes the arbiter node.
		`inventory_hostname`	Host name of the MongoDB database. Default value: `mongo-<1-3>`
		`state`	Deploying the MongoDB database on a virtual machine or physical server. Possible values: • `enabled` • `disabled`
		`ansible_host`	IP address of the virtual machine or physical server from the `nodes` section for deploying the MongoDB database. Possible values: • Value in the `XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX` format, for example: `192.168.110.126` • Ansible variable, for example: `{{ nodes.node_1.ip }}`
`redis`			Redis database settings. For details, please refer to the official documentation of the Redis database.

	`syslog_server_address`		Web address of the syslog server to which Docker containers of the Redis database send logs. Enter a value in the `< protocol >://< IP address >:< port number >` format, for example: `udp://192.168.2.15:1514` You can specify syslog server settings in the `syslog` section.
	`docker_memory_limit`		Amount of RAM in megabytes for Docker containers of the Redis database.
	`redis_<1-3>m`		Deployment settings for nodes of the Redis replica server. You can deploy one Redis replica server node without high availability or three nodes with high availability.
		`inventory_hostname`	Host name of the Redis replica server. Default value: `redis-<1-3>m`.
		`state`	Deploying the Redis replica server on a virtual machine or physical server. Possible values: • `enabled` • `disabled`
		`ansible_host`	IP address of the virtual machine or physical server from the `nodes` section for deploying the Redis replica server. Possible values: • Value in the `XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX` format, for example: `192.168.110.126` • Ansible variable, for example: `{{ nodes.node_1.ip }}`
	`redis_<1-3>s`		Deployment settings of Redis Sentinel system nodes. If you are deploying three Redis replica server nodes with high availability, you also need to deploy three nodes of the Redis Sentinel system.
		`inventory_hostname`	Host name of the Redis Sentinel system. Default value: `redis-<1-3>s`.
		`state`	Deploying the Redis Sentinel system on a virtual machine or physical server. Possible values: • `enabled` • `disabled`
		`ansible_host`	IP address of the virtual machine or physical server from the `nodes` section for deploying the Redis Sentinel system. Possible values: • Value in the `XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX` format, for example: `192.168.110.126` • Ansible variable, for example: `{{ nodes.node_1.ip }}`
`ctl`			Deployment settings of the controller. To deploy an SD-WAN instance for a tenant, you need to deploy the controller as a physical network function. Together with each controller node, the MOCKPNF component is automatically deployed on the virtual machine or physical server to ensure the security of the Docker container configuration of the controller node.

	tenants		Settings for tenants for which you are deploying SD-WAN instances.
	- name		Name of the tenant.
		state	Creating a tenant and deploying the controller on a virtual machine or physical server. Possible values: • enabled • disabled.
		ctl_base	The first three octets of the IP address of the controller's virtual network. Enter a value in the XXX.XXX.XXX format, for example: 192.168.110 When deploying a Kaspersky SD-WAN testbed in accordance with the all-in-one deployment scenario, the value of this setting may be the same as the value of the base setting in the nodes section.
		mock_base	The first three octets of the IP address of the controller's management virtual network. Enter a value in the XXX.XXX.XXX format, for example: 192.168.110
		hosts	Deployment settings of the controller. You can deploy one controller node without high availability, or alternatively, three or five nodes with high availability. If you deploy three or five controller nodes, the last node becomes the arbiter node.
		- inventory_hostname	Host name of the controller node. Default value: ctl-<1-5>.
		ansible_host	IP address of the virtual machine or physical server from the nodes section for deploying the controller node. Possible values: • Value in the XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX format, for example: 192.168.110.126 • Ansible variable, for example: {{ nodes.node_1.ip }}
		docker_memory_limit	Amount of RAM in megabytes for Docker containers of the controller.
		JAVA_OPTS	RAM settings of the Java virtual machine.
		Xms	The minimum amount of heap memory that the Java VM can allocate to the controller. Enter a value in one of the following formats: • < amount of RAM >m is the amount of RAM in megabytes, for example: 512m • < amount of RAM >g is the amount of RAM in gigabytes, for example: 2g We recommend specifying a value half as large as the Xmx setting.
		Xmx	The maximum amount of heap memory that the Java VM can allocate to the controller. Enter a value in one of the following formats: • < amount of RAM >m is the amount of RAM in megabytes, for example: 512m • < amount of RAM >g is the amount of RAM in gigabytes, for example: 4g We recommend specifying a value half as large as the docker_memory_limit setting.
		MaxDirectMemorySize	The maximum amount of direct memory that the Java VM can allocate to the controller. Enter a value in one of the following formats: • < amount of RAM >m is the amount of RAM in megabytes, for example: 512m • < amount of RAM >g is the amount of RAM in gigabytes, for example: 4g We recommend specifying a value half as large as the docker_memory_limit setting.
	syslog_server_address		Web address of the syslog server to which Docker containers of the controller send logs. Enter a value in the < protocol >://< IP address >:< port number > format, for example: udp://192.168.2.15:1514 You can specify syslog server settings in the syslog section.
www			Settings of the frontend part of the solution.

	syslog_server_address		Web address of the syslog server to which Docker containers of the frontend part of the solution send logs. Enter a value in the < protocol >://< IP address >:< port number > format, for example: udp://192.168.2.15:1514 You can specify syslog server settings in the syslog section.
	docker_memory_limit		Amount of RAM in megabytes for Docker containers of the frontend part of the solution.
	oem		Display settings of the graphics of the orchestrator web interface This section lets you change the graphics of the orchestrator web interface.
		state	Replacing the default graphics of the orchestrator web interface Possible values: • enabled • disabled.
		path_local	Path to the directory on the administrator device with the graphics of the orchestrator web interface. You can find the default graphics of the orchestrator web interface in the /oem directory of the extracted installation archive on the administrator device.
		path_remote	Path to the directory on virtual machines or physical servers with the graphics of the orchestrator web interface.
		title	The title that is displayed in the background when logging into the orchestrator web interface. Default value: Kaspersky SD-WAN. Recommended length: no more than 128 characters.
		support	The web address that is displayed at the lower part of the orchestrator web interface. Default value: support.kaspersky.com. Recommended length: no more than 128 characters.
		assets	The default graphics for the orchestrator web interface are replaced with the ones that you placed in this directory on the administrator device. Possible values: • enabled • disabled In the path_local parameter, specify the directory on the administrator device that contains the orchestrator web interface graphics.
	www_<1-2>		Deployment settings of nodes of the frontend part of the solution. You can deploy one node of the frontend part of the solution without high availability or two nodes with high availability. You must deploy the solution frontend nodes and the orchestrator nodes on the same virtual machines or physical servers. For example, you must deploy the first node of the solution frontend on the same virtual machine or physical server as the first node of the orchestrator. You can specify orchestrator settings in the orc section.
		inventory_hostname	Host name of the frontend part of the solution. Default value: www-<1-2>.
		state	Deployment of the frontend part of the solution on a virtual machine or physical server. Possible values: • enabled • disabled
		ansible_host	IP address of the virtual machine or physical server from the nodes section for deploying the frontend part of the solution. Possible values: • Value in the XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX format, for example: 192.168.110.126 • Ansible variable, for example: {{ nodes.node_1.ip }}
orc			Orchestrator settings.

	`syslog_server_address`		Web address of the syslog server to which Docker containers of the orchestrator send logs. Enter a value in the `< protocol >://< IP address >:< port number >` format, for example: `udp://192.168.2.15:1514` You can specify syslog server settings in the `syslog` section.
	`docker_memory_limit`		Amount of RAM in megabytes for Docker containers of the orchestrator.
	`JAVA_OPTS`		RAM settings of the Java virtual machine.
		`Xms`	The minimum amount of heap memory that the Java VM can allocate to the orchestrator. Enter a value in one of the following formats: • `< amount of RAM >m` is the amount of RAM in megabytes, for example: `512m` • `< amount of RAM >g` is the amount of RAM in gigabytes, for example: `4g` We recommend specifying a value half as large as the `Xmx` setting.
		`Xmx`	The maximum amount of heap memory that the Java VM can allocate to the orchestrator. Enter a value in one of the following formats: • `< amount of RAM >m` is the amount of RAM in megabytes, for example: `512m` • `< amount of RAM >g` is the amount of RAM in gigabytes, for example: `4g` We recommend specifying a value half as large as the `docker_memory_limit` setting.
	`orc_<1-2>`		Deployment settings of orchestrator nodes. You can deploy one node of the orchestrator without high availability or two nodes with high availability. You must deploy the orchestrator nodes and the solution frontend nodes on the same virtual machines or physical servers. For example, you must deploy the first orchestrator node on the same virtual machine or physical server as the first node of the solution frontend. You can specify the settings of the solution frontend in the `www` section.
		`inventory_hostname`	Host name of the orchestrator. Default value: `orc-<1-2>`.
		`state`	Deploying the orchestrator on a virtual machine or physical server. Possible values: • `enabled` • `disabled`
		`ansible_host`	IP address of the virtual machine or physical server from the `nodes` section for deploying the orchestrator. Possible values: • Value in the `XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX` format, for example: `192.168.110.126` • Ansible variable, for example: `{{ nodes.node_1.ip }}`
`vnfm`			Settings of the Virtual Network Function Manager.

	syslog_server_address		Web address of the syslog server to which Docker containers of the Virtual Network Function Manager send logs. Enter a value in the `< protocol >://< IP address >: < port number >` format, for example: `udp://192.168.2.15:1514` You can specify syslog server settings in the `syslog` section.
	docker_memory_limit		Amount of RAM in megabytes for Docker containers of the orchestrator.
	JAVA_OPTS		RAM settings of the Java virtual machine.
		Xms	The minimum amount of heap memory that the Java VM can allocate to the Virtual Network Function Manager. Enter a value in one of the following formats: • `< amount of RAM >m` is the amount of RAM in megabytes, for example: `512m` • `< amount of RAM >g` is the amount of RAM in gigabytes, for example: `4g` We recommend specifying a value half as large as the `Xmx` setting.
		Xmx	The maximum amount of heap memory that the Java VM can allocate to the Virtual Network Function Manager. Enter a value in one of the following formats: • `<amount of RAM>m` is the amount of RAM in megabytes, for example: `512m` • `<amount of RAM>g` is the amount of RAM in gigabytes, for example: `4g` We recommend specifying a value half as large as the `docker_memory_limit` setting.
	vnfm_<1-2>		Deployment settings of Virtual Network Function Manager nodes. You can deploy one Virtual Network Function Manager node without high availability or two nodes with high availability.
		inventory_hostname	Host name of the Virtual Network Function Manager. Default value: `vnfm-<1-2>`.
		state	Deploying the Virtual Network Function Manager on a virtual machine or physical server. Possible values: • `enabled` • `disabled`
		ansible_host	IP address of the virtual machine or physical server from the `nodes` section for deploying the Virtual Network Function Manager. Possible values: • Value in the `XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX` format, for example: `192.168.110.126` • Ansible variable, for example: `{{ nodes.node_1.ip }}`
vnfm_proxy			Settings of the Proxy Virtual Network Function Manager.

	`syslog_server_address`		Web address of the syslog server to which Docker containers of the Proxy Virtual Network Function Manager send logs. Enter a value in the `< protocol >://< IP address >:< port number >` format, for example: `udp://192.168.2.15:1514` You can specify syslog server settings in the `syslog` section.
	`docker_memory_limit`		Amount of RAM in megabytes for Docker containers of the Proxy Virtual Network Function Manager.
	`vnfm_proxy_<1-2>`		Deployment settings of Proxy Virtual Network Function Manager nodes. You can deploy one Proxy Virtual Network Function Manager node without high availability or two nodes with high availability.
		`inventory_hostname`	Host name of the Proxy Virtual Network Function Manager. Default value: `vnfm-proxy-<1-2>`.
		`state`	Deploying the proxy Virtual Network Function Manager on a virtual machine or physical server. Possible values: • `enabled` • `disabled`
		`ansible_host`	IP address of the virtual machine or physical server from the `nodes` section for deploying the proxy Virtual Network Function Manager. Possible values: • Value in the `XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX` format, for example: `192.168.110.126` • Ansible variable, for example: `{{ nodes.node_1.ip }}`

Example of configuration file

```
version: 2.24.03.0
nodes:
 node_1:
 ip: 192.168.2.1
 knaas_aio_int:
 base: 10.11.11
 mode: bridge
 knaas_os_man:
 base: 10.11.12
 mode: bridge
 node_2:
 ip: 192.168.2.2
 knaas_aio_int:
 base: 10.11.11
 mode: bridge
 knaas_os_man:
 base: 10.11.12
 mode: bridge
 node_3:
 ip: 192.168.2.3
 knaas_aio_int:
 base: 10.11.11
 mode: bridge
 knaas_os_man:
 base: 10.11.12
 mode: bridge
external:
 vault_passwords_dirname: ../passwords
 ansible_user: user
 ssl:
 san_list:
 ip:
 - 192.168.2.4
 dns:
 - sdwan.kaspersky.com
 path_local: ../ssl
 path_remote: /home/user/ssl
 docker:
 local_path_to_images: ../images
 remote_path_to_images: /tmp
 syslog:
 docker_memory_limit: 1024
 max_log_size: 32
 state: enabled
 zabbix:
 syslog_server_address: udp://192.168.2.5:1514
 db_docker_memory_limit: 1024
 srv_docker_memory_limit: 1024
 www_docker_memory_limit: 1024
 proxy_docker_memory_limit: 128
 cachesize: 512M
 zabbix_1:
 ansible_host: {{ nodes.node_1.ip }}
 db:
 inventory_hostname: zabbix-db-1
 state: enabled
 srv:
 inventory_hostname: zabbix-srv-1
```

```
state: enabled
www:
inventory_hostname: zabbix-www-1
state: enabled
proxy:
inventory_hostname: zabbix-proxy-1
state: enabled
zabbix_2:
ansible_host: {{ nodes.node_2.ip }}
db:
inventory_hostname: zabbix-db-2
state: enabled
srv:
inventory_hostname: zabbix-srv-2
state: enabled
www:
inventory_hostname: zabbix-www-2
state: enabled
proxy:
inventory_hostname: zabbix-proxy-2
state: enabled
zabbix_3:
ansible_host: {{ nodes.node_3.ip }}
db:
inventory_hostname: zabbix-db-3
state: enabled
mongo:
syslog_server_address: udp://192.168.2.5:1514
docker_memory_limit: 2048
mongo_1:
inventory_hostname: mongo-1
state: enabled
ansible_host: {{ nodes.node_1.ip }}
mongo_2:
inventory_hostname: mongo-2
state: enabled
ansible_host: {{ nodes.node_2.ip }}
mongo_3:
inventory_hostname: mongo-3
state: enabled
ansible_host: {{ nodes.node_3.ip }}
redis:
syslog_server_address: udp://192.168.2.5:1514
docker_memory_limit: 4096
redis_1m:
inventory_hostname: redis-1m
state: enabled
ansible_host: {{ nodes.node_1.ip }}
redis_2m:
inventory_hostname: redis-2m
state: enabled
ansible_host: {{ nodes.node_2.ip }}
redis_3m:
inventory_hostname: redis-3m
state: enabled
ansible_host: {{ nodes.node_3.ip }}
redis_1s:
inventory_hostname: redis-1s
```

```
state: enabled
ansible_host: {{ nodes.node_2.ip }}
redis_2s:
inventory_hostname: redis-2s
state: enabled
ansible_host: {{ nodes.node_3.ip }}
redis_3s:
inventory_hostname: redis-3s
state: enabled
ansible_host: {{ nodes.node_1.ip }}
ctl:
tenants:
- name: ha3
state: enabled
ctl_base: 10.11.11
mock_base: 10.11.12
hosts:
- inventory_hostname: ctl-1
ansible_host: {{ nodes.node_1.ip }}
- inventory_hostname: ctl-2
ansible_host: {{ nodes.node_2.ip }}
- inventory_hostname: ctl-3
ansible_host: {{ nodes.node_3.ip }}
docker_memory_limit: 8192
JAVA_OPTS:
Xms: 2g
Xmx: 4g
MaxDirectMemorySize: 4g
syslog_server_address: udp://192.168.2.5:1514
www:
syslog_server_address: udp://192.168.2.5:1514
docker_memory_limit: 1024
oem:
state: disabled
path_remote: /home/user/oem
path_local: ../../oem
title: OEM Title
support: https://support.support.com
assets: true
www_1:
inventory_hostname: www-1
state: enabled
ansible_host: {{ nodes.node_1.ip }}
www_2:
inventory_hostname: www-2
state: enabled
ansible_host: {{ nodes.node_2.ip }}
orc:
syslog_server_address: udp://192.168.2.5:1514
docker_memory_limit: 4096
JAVA_OPTS:
Xms: 2g
Xmx: 4g
orc_1:
inventory_hostname: orc-1
state: enabled
ansible_host: {{ nodes.node_1.ip }}
orc_2:
```

```
inventory_hostname: orc-2
state: enabled
ansible_host: {{ nodes.node_2.ip }}
vnfm:
syslog_server_address: udp://192.168.2.5:1514
docker_memory_limit: 1024
JAVA_OPTS:
Xms: 512m
Xmx: 1024m
vnfm_1:
inventory_hostname: vnfm-1
state: enabled
ansible_host: {{ nodes.node_1.ip }}
vnfm_2:
inventory_hostname: vnfm-2
state: enabled
ansible_host: {{ nodes.node_2.ip }}
vnfm_proxy:
syslog_server_address: udp://192.168.2.5:1514
docker_memory_limit: 1024
vnfm_proxy_1:
inventory_hostname: vnfm-proxy-1
state: enabled
ansible_host: {{ nodes.node_1.ip }}
vnfm_proxy_2:
inventory_hostname: vnfm-proxy-2
state: enabled
ansible_host: {{ nodes.node_2.ip }}
inventory_hostname: zabbix-db-2
state: enabled
srv:
inventory_hostname: zabbix-srv-2
state: enabled
www:
inventory_hostname: zabbix-www-2
state: enabled
proxy:
inventory_hostname: zabbix-proxy-2
state: enabled
zabbix_3:
ansible_host: {{ nodes.node_3.ip }}
db:
inventory_hostname: zabbix-db-3
state: enabled
mongo:
syslog_server_address: udp://192.168.2.5:1514
docker_memory_limit: 2048
mongo_1:
inventory_hostname: mongo-1
state: enabled
ansible_host: {{ nodes.node_1.ip }}
mongo_2:
inventory_hostname: mongo-2
state: enabled
ansible_host: {{ nodes.node_2.ip }}
mongo_3:
inventory_hostname: mongo-3
state: enabled
```

```
ansible_host: {{ nodes.node_3.ip }}
redis:
syslog_server_address: udp://192.168.2.5:1514
docker_memory_limit: 4096
redis_1m:
inventory_hostname: redis-1m
state: enabled
ansible_host: {{ nodes.node_1.ip }}
redis_2m:
inventory_hostname: redis-2m
state: enabled
ansible_host: {{ nodes.node_2.ip }}
redis_3m:
inventory_hostname: redis-3m
state: enabled
ansible_host: {{ nodes.node_3.ip }}
redis_1s:
inventory_hostname: redis-1s
state: enabled
ansible_host: {{ nodes.node_2.ip }}
redis_2s:
inventory_hostname: redis-2s
state: enabled
ansible_host: {{ nodes.node_3.ip }}
redis_3s:
inventory_hostname: redis-3s
state: enabled
ansible_host: {{ nodes.node_1.ip }}
ctl:
tenants:
- name: ha3
state: enabled
ctl_base: 10.11.11
mock_base: 10.11.12
hosts:
- inventory_hostname: ctl-1
ansible_host: {{ nodes.node_1.ip }}
- inventory_hostname: ctl-2
ansible_host: {{ nodes.node_2.ip }}
- inventory_hostname: ctl-3
ansible_host: {{ nodes.node_3.ip }}
docker_memory_limit: 8192
JAVA_OPTS:
Xms: 2g
Xmx: 4g
MaxDirectMemorySize: 4g
syslog_server_address: udp://192.168.2.5:1514
www:
syslog_server_address: udp://192.168.2.5:1514
docker_memory_limit: 1024
oem:
state: disabled
path_remote: /home/user/oem
path_local: ../../oem
title: OEM Title
support: https://support.support.com
assets: true
www_1:
```

```
  inventory_hostname: www-1
  state: enabled
  ansible_host: {{ nodes.node_1.ip }}
  www_2:
  inventory_hostname: www-2
  state: enabled
  ansible_host: {{ nodes.node_2.ip }}
  orc:
  syslog_server_address: udp://192.168.2.5:1514
  docker_memory_limit: 4096
  JAVA_OPTS:
  Xms: 2g
  Xmx: 4g
  orc_1:
  inventory_hostname: orc-1
  state: enabled
  ansible_host: {{ nodes.node_1.ip }}
  orc_2:
  inventory_hostname: orc-2
  state: enabled
  ansible_host: {{ nodes.node_2.ip }}
  vnfm:
  syslog_server_address: udp://192.168.2.5:1514
  docker_memory_limit: 1024
  JAVA_OPTS:
  Xms: 512m
  Xmx: 1024m
  vnfm_1:
  inventory_hostname: vnfm-1
  state: enabled
  ansible_host: {{ nodes.node_1.ip }}
  vnfm_2:
  inventory_hostname: vnfm-2
  state: enabled
  ansible_host: {{ nodes.node_2.ip }}
  vnfm_proxy:
  syslog_server_address: udp://192.168.2.5:1514
  docker_memory_limit: 1024
  vnfm_proxy_1:
  inventory_hostname: vnfm-proxy-1
  state: enabled
  ansible_host: {{ nodes.node_1.ip }}
  vnfm_proxy_2:
  inventory_hostname: vnfm-proxy-2
  state: enabled
  ansible_host: {{ nodes.node_2.ip }}
```

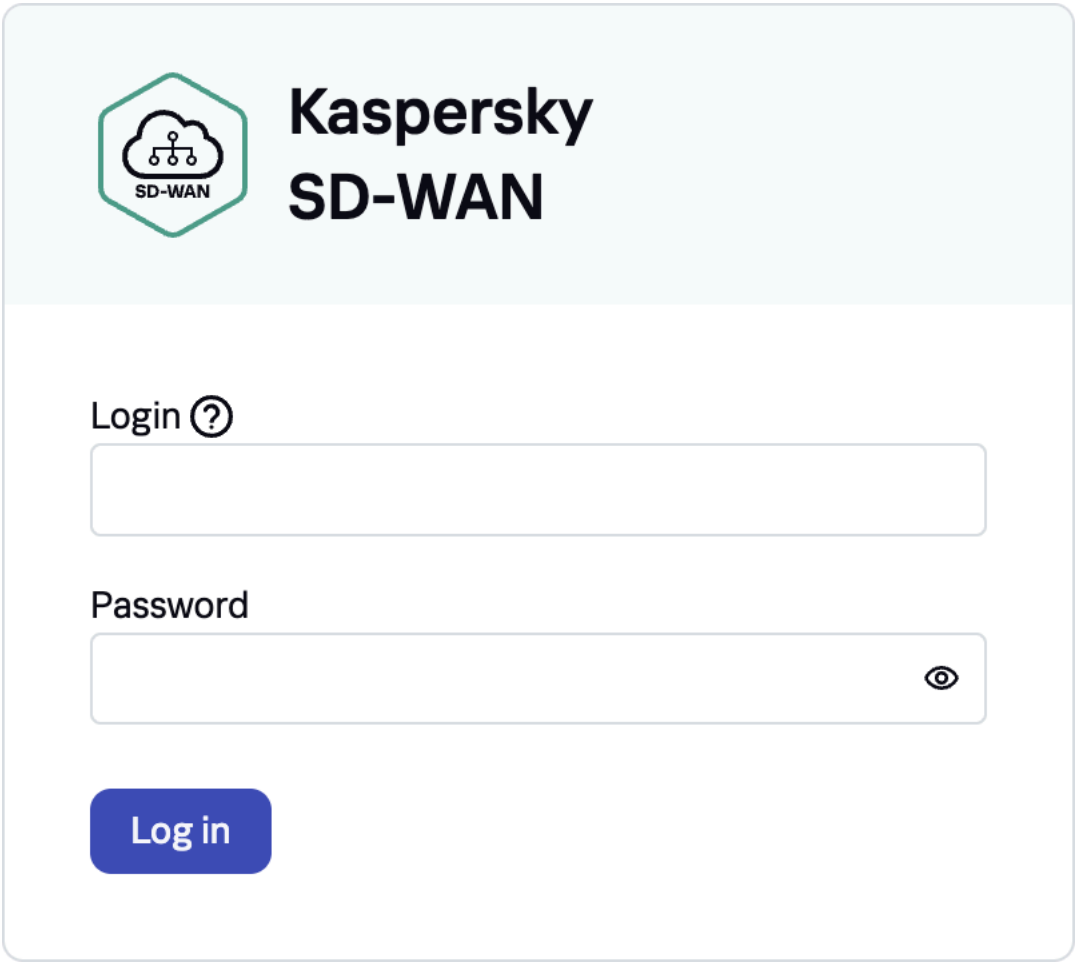
Replacing the graphical elements of the orchestrator web interface

To replace the graphics of the orchestrator web interface:

1. Configure the frontend part of the solution in the `www` section of the configuration file.
2. On the administrator's device, go to the /oem directory of the extracted installation archive. This directory contains the default graphics of the orchestrator web interface. You can replace the following files:
   - favicon.png and favicon.svg is the icon that is displayed on the orchestrator web interface tab.

   - login_logo.svg is the icon that is displayed in the upper part of the window when logging in to the orchestrator web interface.

   - logo_activation.svg is the icon that is displayed during the automatic registration of a CPE device.

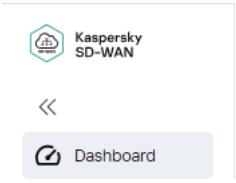


Kaspersky SD-WAN

To apply the configuration to the current KESR click the button below

Apply configuration

- logo.svg and title.svg are the icon and title that are displayed in the upper part of the navigation pane of the orchestrator web interface.



Replacement of a failed controller node

You can deploy a new controller node to replace a controller node that has failed beyond repair. If a controller node fails while in a cluster with other nodes, the new controller node is automatically added to that cluster and synchronized with the existing nodes.

Before running this script, make sure that the IP address of the virtual machine or physical server on which you are deploying the new controller node is the same as the IP address of the virtual machine or physical server where the failed controller node was deployed. You specified the IP addresses of the virtual machines or physical servers for deployment of controller nodes when you deployed the solution, in the `ctl` section of the configuration file.

The scenario for replacing a failed controller node involves the following steps:

1. **Preparing the administrator device**

   Prepare the administrator device for deployment of the new controller node. You can use a local or remote virtual machine, or a personal computer as the administrator device. When deploying a Kaspersky SD-WAN testbed in accordance with the all-in-one deployment scenario, you must use a virtual machine as the administrator device.

2 Ensuring network connectivity between the administrator device, solution components, and the new controller node

Ensure network connectivity between the administrator device, solution components, and the virtual machine or physical server on which you want to deploy the new controller node. You must make sure that the links between virtual machines or physical servers satisfy the hardware and software requirements.

> The virtual machine physical server must be deployed in a trusted network segment to avoid compromising the transmitted traffic.

3 Deploying a controller node

Do the following on the administrator device:

1. Accept the End User License Agreement by running the following command:

   ```
   export KNAAS_EULA_AGREED="true"
   ```

2. Go to the directory with the extracted installation archive.

3. If you want to deploy the new controller node in attended mode, do one of the following:

   - If you have generated passwords manually while deploying the solution, run the following command:

     ```
     ansible-playbook -i inventory/generic -e "@< path to configuration file >" -e
     "@inventory/external/images.yml" -K --ask-vault-pass knaas/knaas-install.yml
     ```

     When running the command, enter the root account password and the generated master password.

   - If you have not generated passwords manually while deploying the solution, run the following command:

     ```
     ansible-playbook -i inventory/generic -e "@< path to configuration file >" -e
     "@inventory/external/images.yml" -K knaas/knaas-install.yml
     ```

4. If you want to deploy the new controller node in unattended mode, do one of the following:

   > We recommend using this mode only in a trusted environment, because otherwise hackers may intercept your passwords.

   - If you have generated passwords manually while deploying the solution, run the following command:

     ```
     ansible-playbook -i inventory/generic -e "@< path to configuration file >" -e
     "@inventory/external/images.yml" -e "ansible_become_password=yourSudoPassword" --
     vault-password-file ./passwords/vault_password.txt knaas/knaas-install.yml
     ```

   - If you have not generated passwords manually while deploying the solution, run the following command:

     ```
     ansible-playbook -i inventory/generic -e "@< path to configuration file >" -e
     "@inventory/external/images.yml" -e "ansible_become_password=yourSudoPassword"
     knaas/knaas-install.yml
     ```

The new controller node is deployed to replace the failed controller node. A successful deployment message is displayed in the console of the administrator device.

If a network connectivity problem occurs with a virtual machine or physical server while deploying the controller node, an error is displayed in the console of the administrator device, and the new controller node is not deployed. In that case, you need to restore network connectivity, clean up the virtual machine or physical server, and then run the deployment command again.

Upgrading Kaspersky SD-WAN

THE UPDATE FUNCTIONALITY (INCLUDING ANTI-VIRUS SIGNATURE UPDATES AND CODE BASE UPDATES), AS WELL AS THE KSN FUNCTIONALITY MAY NOT BE AVAILABLE IN THE SOFTWARE IN THE TERRITORY OF THE USA.

Before updating Kaspersky SD-WAN, make sure that none of the CPE devices have the **Error** status. You can view the status of CPE devices in the CPE device table. We also recommend making backup copies of the solution components:

- If your solution components are deployed on virtual machines, take snapshots of the virtual machines. After updating Kaspersky SD-WAN, you can delete the snapshots of the virtual machines. For details on how to take snapshots of virtual machines, please refer to the official documentation of your virtualization environments.
- If your solution components are deployed on physical servers, you need to make backups of hard drives of the physical servers. When using a RAID (Redundant Array of Independent Disks) controller, you can get information on how to create backup copies of your hard drives from the official documentation provided by the vendor of your RAID controller.

The Kaspersky SD-WAN upgrade scenario involves the following steps:

1. **Preparing the administrator device**

   Prepare the administrator device for solution upgrade. You can use a local or remote virtual machine, or a personal computer as the administrator device. When deploying a Kaspersky SD-WAN testbed in accordance with the all-in-one deployment scenario, you must use a virtual machine as the administrator device.

2. **Preparing the configuration file**

   Set up the configuration file in accordance with the changes that have been made to the new version of Kaspersky SD-WAN. You can view the changes in the in the CHANGELOG.md file in the root directory of the installation archive.

   When upgrading Kaspersky SD-WAN, make sure that you keep the files with passwords and SSL certificates.

3. **Accepting the End User License Agreement**

   Accept the End User License Agreement by running the following command:

   ```
   export KNAAS_EULA_AGREED="true"
   ```

4. **Upgrading Kaspersky SD-WAN**

   Upgrade Kaspersky SD-WAN in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to upgrade the solution in attended mode:

     ```
     ansible-playbook -i inventory/generic -e "@< path to configuration file >" -e
     "@inventory/external/images.yml" -K --ask-vault-pass knaas/knaas-install.yml
     ```

     When running the command, enter the password of the root account on the administrator device and the generated master password.

- If you want to upgrade the solution in partially attended mode:

  ```
  ansible-playbook -i inventory/generic -e "@<path to configuration file>" -e
  "@inventory/external/images.yml" -K --vault-password-file
  ./passwords/vault_password.txt knaas/knaas-install.yml
  ```

  Enter the root password o the administrator device when running the command.

- If you want to upgrade the solution in unattended mode:

  ```
  ansible-playbook -i inventory/generic -e "@<path to configuration file>" -e
  "@inventory/external/images.yml" -e "ansible_become_password=yourSudoPassword" --
  vault-password-file ./passwords/vault_password.txt knaas/knaas-install.yml
  ```

The Kaspersky SD-WAN components are upgraded on the virtual machines or physical servers that you specified in the configuration file. A successful upgrade message is displayed in the console of the administrator device.

If a network connectivity issue occurs with one of the virtual machines or physical servers during the upgrade of solution components, an error message is displayed in the administrator device console, and the solution is not upgraded. In that case, you need to restore network connectivity and then run the upgrade command again.

After upgrading the solution, you must clear your Bash command history.

Removing Kaspersky SD-WAN

The removal of Kaspersky SD-WAN cannot be rolled back.

To remove Kaspersky SD-WAN:

1. On the administrator device, go to the extracted installation archive.
2. Remove Kaspersky SD-WAN in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to remove the solution in attended mode:

     ```
     ansible-playbook -i inventory/generic -e "@<path to configuration file>" -e
     "@inventory/external/images.yml" -K knaas/knaas-teardown.yml
     ```

   - If you want to remove the solution in unattended mode:

     ```
     ansible-playbook -i inventory/generic -e "@<path to configuration file>" -e
     "@inventory/external/images.yml" -e "ansible_become_password=yourSudoPassword"
     knaas/knaas-teardown.yml
     ```

   Kaspersky SD-WAN components are removed from the virtual machines or physical servers. A successful removal message is displayed in the console of the administrator device.

If a network connectivity issue occurs with one of the virtual machines or physical servers during the removal of solution components, an error message is displayed in the administrator device console, and the solution is not removed. In that case, you need to restore network connectivity and then run the removal command again.

Logging in and out of the orchestrator web interface

Logging in to the orchestrator web interface

To log in to the orchestrator web interface:

1. In the address bar of your browser, enter one of the following IP addresses:

   - If you want to log in to the administrator portal, enter the IP address of the virtual machine or physical server on which you deployed the orchestrator or the frontend of the solution. You specified the IP address of the virtual machine or physical server for orchestrator or frontend deployment in the `orc_<1-2>` and `www_<1-2>` sections of the configuration file while deploying the solution. You can also enter the virtual IP address of the orchestrator.

   - If you want to log in to the self-service portal, enter the IP address that you got from your platform administrator.

2. This opens the authentication page; on that page, enter a user name and password. The password must contain at least one uppercase Latin letter (A–Z), one lowercase letter (a–z), one numeral, and one special character. Password length: 8 to 50 characters.

3. Click **Log in**. If two-factor authentication is enabled for your account:

   a. Scan the displayed QR code with a physical or software authenticator that supports the RFC 6238 standard.

   b. Enter and confirm the unique code generated by the authenticator.

After successful authentication, you are taken to the section or subsection that you set as the default page.

Logging out of the orchestrator web interface

To log out of the orchestrator web interface:

1. In the lower part of the menu, click the logout icon.

2. In the confirmation window, click **OK**.

You are logged out of the orchestrator web interface.

Licensing of Kaspersky SD-WAN

This section covers basic concepts of Kaspersky SD-WAN licensing. If you need to scale the solution, you can purchase additional software and hardware licenses.

About the End User License Agreement

The *End User License Agreement* is a binding agreement between you and AO Kaspersky Lab, stipulating the terms on which you may use the program. The text of the End User License Agreement in supported languages is located in the *license <language code>.rtf* files included in the Kaspersky SD-WAN distribution kit.

Read through the terms of the End User License Agreement carefully before you start using Kaspersky SD-WAN.

By confirming that you agree with the End User License Agreement, you signify your acceptance of the terms of the End User License Agreement. You can do this in one of the following ways:

- Initialize the `KNAAS_EULA_AGREED` environment variable before starting the Kaspersky SD-WAN Docker container:

  ```
  export KNAAS_EULA_AGREED=yes
  ```

  In this case, when starting the Kaspersky SD-WAN Docker container, pass the KNAAS_EULA_AGREED environment variable using the `-e` option:

  ```
  docker run -e KNAAS_EULA_AGREED [OPTIONS] IMAGE [COMMAND] [ARG...]
  ```

- Initialize the `KNAAS_EULA_AGREED` environment variable directly when starting the Kaspersky SD-WAN Docker container:

  ```
  docker run -e KNAAS_EULA_AGREED=yes [OPTIONS] IMAGE [COMMAND] [ARG...]
  ```

If the `KNAAS_EULA_AGREED` environment variable is not initialized or is initialized with the value `no` (`KNAAS_EULA_AGREED=no`), this means that you do not agree with the terms of the End User License Agreement. In this case, when starting the Kaspersky SD-WAN Docker container, an error message is displayed, and Kaspersky SD-WAN does not start.

About data provision

The following third-party solutions are integrated into Kaspersky SD-WAN:

- Zabbix monitoring system
- OpenStack platform for creating cloud services and storage
- OpenStreetMap geographic maps

Personal information that might be introduced to Zabbix, OpenStack, or OpenStreetMap as a result of integration is not sent outside the perimeter of the organization's infrastructure.

Kaspersky protects received information in accordance with requirements stipulated by applicable law and Kaspersky policies.

User interface of the solution

Kaspersky SD-WAN is managed using the orchestrator web interface. You can use the menu sections to configure the components of the solution. When you navigate to a section, an additional menu with subsections is displayed in a collapsed form. To expand the menu, hover your mouse cursor over the icon of one of the subsections. You can click the expand icon » to disable the automatic minimization of the menu.

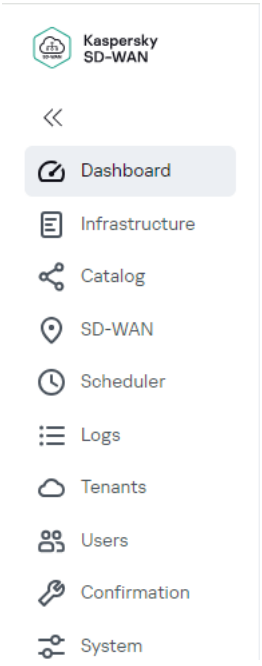
Two variants of the orchestrator web interface are supported:

- The *administrator portal* gives administrators full access to managing the solution components.
- The *self-service portal* gives tenants access to managing the SD-WAN instances that are deployed for them.

Administrators can log in to the self-service portal of a tenant.

Administrator portal

The menu of the administrator portal is shown in the figure below.

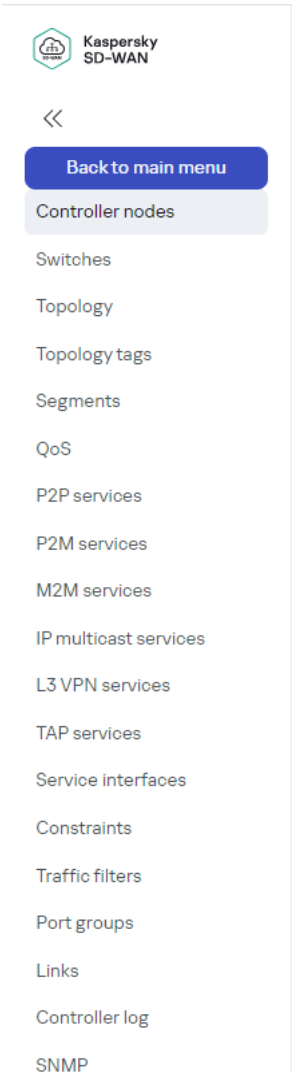


Menu of the administrator portal

Section	Description
Dashboard	Information about the current status of solution components, such as CPE devices, virtual network functions, and physical network functions.
Infrastructure	Corporate infrastructure. In this section, you can configure the following components: • Domains • Data centers • Management subnets • Controllers • VIM
Catalog	Network service templates for centralized configuration of network services

Section	Description
SD-WAN	• **CPE** — CPE devices for relaying traffic. • **CPE templates** — CPE templates for centralized configuration of CPE devices. • **Firewall templates** — firewall templates for centralized configuration of the firewall on CPE devices. • **Firewall zones** — firewall zones for network interfaces and subnets of CPE devices. • **NetFlow templates** — NetFlow templates for monitoring traffic packet information on CPE devices. • **IPAM** — IP address and subnet ranges for CPE devices. • **Firmware** — CPE device firmware. • **Certificates** — certificates of CPE devices. • **SD-WAN instances** — deployed SD-WAN instances. • **SD-WAN instance templates** — SD-WAN instance templates for centralized configuration and deployment of SD-WAN instances. • **SD-WAN instance pools** — SD-WAN instance pools. • **UNI templates** — UNI templates for centralized creation of UNIs on CPE devices.
Scheduler	Tasks that are scheduled to run later.
Logs	Logs of solution components, such as CPE devices, virtual network functions, and physical network functions.
Tenants	Tenants of the solution.
Users	Users of the solution. In this section, you can configure the following components: • Users • Access permissions • LDAP user groups • LDAP connections
Confirmation	Confirmation requests for user actions.
System	• **Monitoring** contains Zabbix server settings for monitoring solution components. • **Notification** contains settings for sending email notifications to users. • **Orchestrator log** is the Docker container log verbosity. • **User sessions** contains user session settings. • **API** is the orchestrator API. • **Other** contains additional settings.

The controller has its own configuration menu (see figure below).



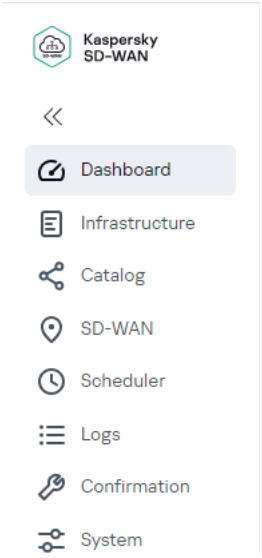
Controller configuration menu on the administrator portal

Section	Description
Controller nodes	Information about the current status of controller nodes.
Switches	Advanced settings of CPE devices and switches.
Topology	Graphical topology of an SD-WAN instance.
Topology tags	Topology tags for establishing links between CPE devices.
Segments	Segments formed from CPE devices and switches.
QoS	Quality of service settings. In this section, you can configure the following components: • Traffic classes • Traffic classifiers • Quality of service rules
P2P services	Point-to-Point transport services.
P2M services	Point-to-Multipoint transport services.
M2M services	Multipoint-to-Multipoint transport services.
IP multicast services	IP multicast transport services.
L3 VPN services	L3 VPN transport services.
TAP services	TAP (Test Access Point) services for traffic mirroring.
Service interfaces	Service interfaces of CPE devices and switches.

Section	Description
Constraints	Manual-TE constraints and threshold constraints for assuring quality of service.
Traffic filters	Traffic filters for enforcing quality of service.
OpenFlow port groups	OpenFlow port groups.
Links	Links between CPE devices and switches, and links between CPE devices.
Logs	Docker container log verbosity level.
SNMP	Settings for monitoring CPE devices, virtual network functions, and physical network functions using SNMP.

Self-service portal

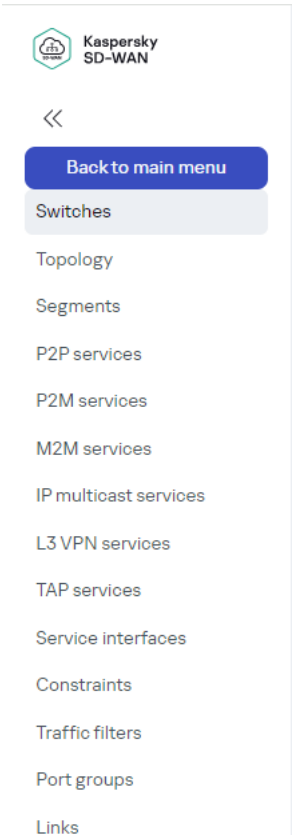
The menu of the self-service portal is shown in the figure below.



Menu of the self-service portal

Section	Description
Dashboard	Information about the current status of solution components such as CPE devices and network functions.
Infrastructure	Corporate infrastructure. In this section, you can configure controllers.
Catalog	Network services for traffic transmission and virtualization of network functions.
SD-WAN	• **CPE** — CPE devices for relaying traffic. • **CPE templates** — CPE templates for centralized configuration of CPE devices. • **Firewall templates** — firewall templates for centralized configuration of the firewall on CPE devices. • **Firewall zones** — firewall zones for network interfaces and subnets of CPE devices. • **NetFlow templates** — NetFlow templates for monitoring traffic packet information on CPE devices. • **IPAM** — IP address and subnet ranges for CPE devices. • **UNI templates** — UNI templates for centralized creation of UNIs on CPE devices.
Scheduler	Tasks that are scheduled to run later.
Logs	Logs of solution components, such as CPE devices, virtual network functions, and physical network functions.
Confirmation	Confirmation requests for user actions.
System	• **Notification** contains settings for sending email notifications to users. • **User sessions** contains user session settings.

The controller has its own configuration menu (see figure below).



Section	Description
Switches	Advanced settings of CPE devices and switches.
Topology	Graphical topology of an SD-WAN instance.
Segments	Segments formed from CPE devices and switches.
P2P services	Point-to-Point transport services.
P2M services	Point-to-Multipoint transport services.
M2M services	Multipoint-to-Multipoint transport services.
IP multicast services	IP multicast transport services.
L3 VPN services	L3 VPN transport services.
TAP services	TAP services for traffic mirroring.
Service interfaces	Service interfaces of CPE devices and switches.
Constraints	Manual-TE constraints and threshold constraints for assuring quality of service.
Traffic filters	Traffic filters for enforcing quality of service.
OpenFlow port groups	OpenFlow port groups.
Links	Links between CPE devices and switches, and links between CPE devices.

Setting and resetting the default page

The default page is a section or subsection of the menu that is automatically displayed after you log into the orchestrator web interface.

To set or reset the default page:

1. In the menu, go to the section or subsection of the orchestrator web interface that you want to set as the default page.
2. In the lower part of the menu, click the settings icon → **Set as default page**.
3. If you want to reset the default page, click the settings icon → **Reset default page**.

   In the upper part of the page, the `Default page is reset` message is displayed. The **Dashboard** section becomes the default page.

Switching between light and dark modes of the orchestrator web interface

To switch between light and dark modes of the orchestrator web interface:

In the lower part of the menu, click the settings icon → **Dark mode** or **Light mode**.

Changing the language of the orchestrator web interface

The orchestrator web interface supports English and Russian languages.

To change the language of the orchestrator web interface,

in the lower part of the menu, click one of the following buttons:

- **EN** to switch the language of the orchestrator web interface to English.
- **RU** to switch the language of the orchestrator web interface to Russian.

Managing solution component tables

Solution components such as users, network interfaces, and BGP peers are displayed in tables. You can use the following controls to manage tables:

- The settings icon, which you can use to do the following:
  - Refresh the table by clicking the settings icon → **Reload**. You can also refresh the table using the refresh icon.
  - Restore default widths of table columns by clicking the settings icon → **Reset columns width**.
  - Select which columns are displayed in the table. To do so, click the settings icon and select the check boxes next to the columns you want to display.
- The search icon which you can click and enter your search criteria. After entering the search criteria, the table displays the relevant entries.
- Status filters for displaying entries with the selected status.
- Time filters for displaying entries for the selected period:
  - **All time**
  - **Last year**
  - **Last month**
  - **Last week**
  - **Last day**

  You can manually specify the period using the fields in the upper part of the table.
- The **Actions** button for applying an action simultaneously to all entries with selected check boxes. For example, in the CPE devices table, you can delete multiple CPE devices at the same time.

You can adjust the width of each column of the table using the three-dot icons between the names of the columns.

Navigating to the orchestrator API

To navigate to the orchestrator API,

1. In the menu, go to the **System** section.

   By default, the **Monitoring** tab is selected, which displays the Zabbix server connection settings.

2. Select the **API** tab.

This opens a list of API commands that can be used to manage the orchestrator.

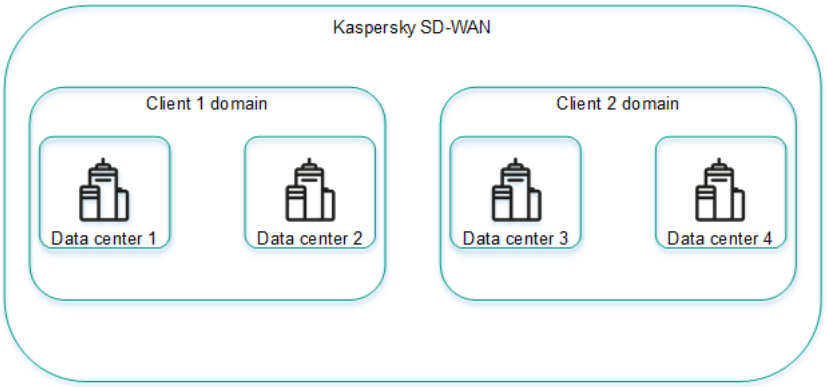
Managing the Kaspersky SD-WAN infrastructure

Locations where you deploy all Kaspersky SD-WAN components other than CPE devices are called *data centers*. You need to add the data centers to the orchestrator web interface to manage controllers and VIMs, and to specify the Zabbix proxy server to configure solution component monitoring.

If you have a large number of data centers, you can add them to domains. *Domains* are logical groupings of data centers based on a certain criterion, such as geographic location. Before adding data centers, you must create at least one domain. You can move data centers between domains.

In each data center, you must create at least one management subnet to assign IP addresses, DNS servers, and static routes to CPE devices and virtual network functions.

The figure below shows a diagram of an organization. Kaspersky SD-WAN components are deployed in four data center. The organization is providing the solution to two clients, each of which has an SD-WAN instance deployed. Two data centers are used to deploy each instance of SD-WAN. Data centers are added to domains that correspond to the clients.



Example of an organization with domains and data centers

Managing domains

You can view the list of domains in the **Infrastructure** section in the **Resources** pane. Under the domains, the list displays data centers added to the domains.

Creating a domain

To create a domain:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. In the upper part of the page, click **+ Domain**.

3. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Name** field, enter the name of the domain. The maximum length of the name is 50 characters.

4. If necessary, in the **Description** field, enter a brief description of the domain. The maximum length of the description is 100 characters.

5. Click **Create**.

   The domain is created and displayed in the **Resources** pane.

You can add data centers to a domain when you add data centers.

Editing a domain

To edit a domain:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. In the **Resources** pane, click the settings icon → **Edit** next to the domain that you want to edit.

3. This opens a window; in that window, if necessary, edit the name and/or description of the domain.

4. Click **Save**.

   The domain is modified and displayed in the **Resources** pane.

Deleting a domain

Before deleting a domain, you need to delete the data centers that have been added to the domain.

Deleted domains cannot be restored.

To delete a domain:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. In the **Resources** pane, click the settings icon → **Delete** next to the domain that you want to delete.

3. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

   The domain is deleted and is no longer displayed in the **Resources** pane.

Managing data centers

Lists of data centers are displayed in the **Infrastructure** in the **Resources** pane under domains. Before adding data centers, you must create at least one domain.

Adding a data center

To add a data center:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. In the upper part of the page, click **+ Data center**.

3. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Name** field, enter the name of the data center. The maximum length of the name is 50 characters.

4. If necessary, in the **Description** field, enter a brief description of the data center. The maximum length of the description is 100 characters.

5. In the **Domain** drop-down list, select the created domain to which you want to add the data center. After adding the data center, you can migrate it to a different domain.

6. If you want to deploy virtual network functions and run scripts on CPE devices, in the **VNFM URL** field, enter the web address of the virtual network function manager to which the orchestrator connects. To verify that the VNFM is available, you can click **Test connection**.

7. If necessary, in the **Location** field, enter the geographical address of the data center.

8. Click **Create**.

The data center is added and displayed in the **Resources** pane.

Editing a data center

To edit a data center:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. In the **Resources** pane, click the settings icon → **Edit** next to the data center you want to edit.

3. This opens a window; in that window, if necessary, edit the following settings:
   - Name of the data center
   - Brief description of the data center
   - URL of the Virtual Network Function Manager
   - Address of the data center
4. Click **Save**.

The data center is modified and updated in the **Resources** pane.

Migrating a data center to a different domain

To migrate a data center to a different domain:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.
2. In the **Resources** pane, click the settings icon → **Migrate** next to the data center you want to migrate to a different domain.
3. This opens a window; in that window, select the created domain to which you want to migrate your data center.
4. Click **Migrate**.

The data center is migrated to the new domain and displayed under the new domain in the **Resources** pane.

Deleting a data center

Deleting a data center makes it impossible to manage controllers, VIMs, and management subnets within the datacenter. It also prevents you from specifying the Zabbix proxy server for configuring solution component monitoring.

Deleted data centers cannot be restored.

To delete a data center:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.
2. In the **Resources** pane, click the settings icon → **Delete** next to the data center you want to delete.
3. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

The data center is deleted and is no longer displayed in the **Resources** pane.

Managing management subnets

To view the table of management subnets, go to the **Infrastructure** menu section, click the added data center, and select the **IPAM** tab. Information about management subnets is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Name** is the name of the management subnet.
- **Type** is the type of the subnet. Only management subnets are presently supported.
- **CIDR** is the IPv4 prefix of the management subnet.
- **Gateway** are IPv4 addresses of gateways that the management subnet assigns to virtual network functions.
- **IP range** are IP address ranges from which the management subnet assigns IP addresses to CPE devices and virtual network functions.
- **DNS** are IPv4 addresses of the DNS servers that the management subnet assigns to virtual network functions.
- **Static routes** are source and destination IPv4 addresses of static routes that the management subnet assigns to virtual network functions.
- **Usage** is the number of IP addresses that the management subnet has assigned to CPE devices and virtual network functions.

You can view a table of CPE devices and virtual network functions to which the management subnet has assigned IP addresses. To do so, select the **Usage** tab. Information about CPE devices and virtual network functions is displayed in the following table columns:

- **Name** is the name of the management subnet that assigned an IP address to the CPE or virtual network function.
- **IP address** is the IP address assigned to the CPE device or virtual network function.
- **Client name** is the name of the CPE device or virtual network function.
- **Client type** is information about whether the control subnet has assigned an IP address to the CPE device or virtual network function:
  - **VNF**
  - **CPE**
- **Tenant** is the tenant to which the CPE device was added or virtual network function was assigned.

The actions you can perform with the tables are described in the Managing solution component tables instructions.

Creating a management subnet

To create a management subnet:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. In the **Resources** pane, select the created domain, then select the added data center in which you want to create the management subnet. After the management subnet is created, it cannot be moved to a different data center.

3. Select the **IPAM** tab.

   By default, the **Subnet** tab is selected, which displays the table of management subnets.

4. In the upper part of the page, click **+ Subnet**.

5. In the **Name** field, enter the name of the management subnet.

6. In the **IP version** drop-down list, select the version of IP addresses in the management subnet:

   - **IPv4**. This is the default setting.
   - **IPv6**.

7. In the **CIDR** field, enter the IPv4 prefix of the management subnet.

8. If you want the management subnet to assign a particular gateway to virtual network functions, enter the IPv4 address of the gateway in the **Gateway** field.

9. Specify the IP address range from which the management subnet assigns IP addresses to CPE devices and virtual network functions. To do so, under **IP range**, click **+ Add** and in the displayed fields, enter the starting and ending values of the IP address range.

   The IP address range is specified and displayed in the **IP range** section. You can specify multiple IP address ranges or delete IP address ranges. To delete an IP address range, click the delete icon ✕ next to it.

10. Specify the DNS server that the management subnet assigns to virtual network functions. To do so, under **DNS**, click **+ Add** and in the displayed field, enter the IPv4 address of the DNS server.

    The DNS server is specified and displayed in the **DNS** section. You can specify multiple DNS servers or delete DNS servers. To delete a DNS server, click the delete icon ✕ next to it.

11. Specify the static route that the management subnet assigns to virtual network functions. To do so, under **Static routes**, click **+ Add** and in the displayed fields, enter the source and destination IPv4 addresses of the static route.

    The static route is specified and displayed in the **Static routes** section. You can specify multiple static routes or delete static routes. To delete a static route, click the delete icon ✕ next to it.

12. Click **Create**.

The management subnet is created and displayed in the table.

Editing a management subnet

To edit a management subnet:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. In the **Resources** pane, select the created domain, then select the added data center in which you created the management subnet.

3. Select the **IPAM** tab.

   By default, the **Subnet** tab is selected, which displays the table of management subnets.

4. Click **Management** → **Edit** next to the management subnet that you want to edit.

5. This opens a window; in that window, if necessary, edit the following settings:

   - Name of the management subnet
   - IPv4 prefix of the management subnet
   - IPv4 addresses of gateways that the management subnet assigns to virtual network functions
   - IP address ranges from which the management subnet assigns IP addresses to CPE devices and virtual network functions
   - DNS servers that the management subnet assigns to virtual network functions
   - Static routes that the management subnet assigns to virtual network functions

6. Click **Save**.

The management subnet is modified and updated in the table.

Deleting a management subnet

Deleted management subnets cannot be restored.

To delete a management subnet:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. In the **Resources** pane, select the created domain, then select the added data center in which you created the management subnet.

3. Select the **IPAM** tab.

   By default, the **Subnet** tab is selected, which displays the table of management subnets.

4. Click **Management** → **Delete** next to the management subnet that you want to delete.

5. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

The management subnet is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

Managing controllers

To view the table of controllers, go to the **Infrastructure** menu section, click the created data center, and select the **Network resources** tab. Information about controllers is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Name** is the name of the controller.
- **Transport/service strategy** is the transport strategy being used.
- **Connection type** is the type of connection of CPE devices to the controller:
  - **Unicast**
  - **Multicast**
- **Cluster status** is the status of the cluster of controller nodes:
  - **Up** means the cluster is operating normally.
  - **Degraded** means an error occurred during the operation of the cluster.
  - **Down** means the cluster is not operational.
- **Controller nodes** are IP addresses of controller nodes.
- **Node statuses** is the status of controller nodes:
  - **Connected** means the node is connected to the controller.
  - **Disconnected** means the node is not connected to the controller.
  - **Unavailable** means the node is not available.
  - **Unknown** means the status of the node is unknown.

- **Role in cluster** is the role of the node in the cluster:
  - **Primary** means the node is connected to the controller and is the primary node in the cluster.
  - **Secondary** means the node is connected to the controller and is a secondary node in the cluster.
  - **Single** means the node is connected to the controller and is the only node in the cluster.
  - **Arbiter** means the node is the arbiter.
  - **Connected (transition)** means the role of the node in the cluster is being changed.
  - **Not in cluster** means the node is not added to a cluster.
  - **Unavailable** means the node is not available.
  - **Unknown** means the status of the node is unknown.
- **Active gRPC read node** indicates whether the node is selected as the priority node for read operations for the purposes of load balancing.

The actions that you can perform with the table are described in the Managing solution component tables article.

Editing a controller

To edit a controller:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Edit** next to the controller that you want to edit.

3. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Name** field, enter the name of the controller. Range of values: 1 to 128 characters.

4. If necessary, in the **Description** field, enter a brief description of the controller.

5. In the **Controller installation on <1>/<3>/<5> servers** field, select the number of controller nodes.

6. In the **Connection type** drop-down list, select the type of connection of CPE devices to the controller:
   - **Unicast**
   - **Multicast**

7. Configure the controller node:

   a. In the **IP address or hostname** field, enter the IP address or hostname of the controller node.

   b. In the **gRPC port** field, enter the gRPC port number of the controller node.

   c. In the **JGroups port** field, enter the jGroups port number of the controller node.

   d. If you want to make the controller node the primary node, select the **Primary** option.

   You can configure multiple controller nodes.

8. If you want to change how the load is distributed between nodes in the controller cluster when reading data, in the **gRPC read load balancing mode** drop-down list, select a balancing mode:

   - **Primary Node Only**.

     Read operations are performed exclusively through the primary cluster node.

   - **Prioritize random secondary node**.

     Read operations are performed with priority given to a randomly chosen secondary cluster node.

   - **Select Manually**.

     Read operations are performed through an explicitly specified prioritized cluster node.

   If you select the **Select Manually** mode, in the **Selected node** list that appears, select the priority node through which you want read operations to be performed.

9. Click **Save**.

The controller is modified and updated in the table.

Reprovisioning a controller

During reprovisioning, controller properties are reset to their default values. This may help resolve errors.

To reprovision the controller:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Reprovision** next to the controller that you want to reprovision.

3. In the confirmation window, click **Reprovision**.

The controller is reprovisioned.

Restoring controller settings

You can download a file with controller settings that you specified in the controller configuration menu. For example, this file contains settings of transport services and quality of service settings. If necessary, you can restore controller settings using the downloaded file.

To restore controller settings:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Download backup file** next to the controller whose settings file you want to download.

   A file with controller settings in YAML format is saved to your local device.

3. Click **Management** → **Restore** next to the controller for which you want to restore settings.

4. This opens a window; in that window, specify the path to the downloaded file with controller settings.

5. Click **Restore**.

The controller is restored with settings from the controller settings file.

Enabling or disabling the maintenance mode on a controller

You can enable maintenance mode on the controller when performing maintenance work related to the SD-WAN network to minimize the impact of the controller on parts of the SD-WAN network that are not affected by the maintenance work. In maintenance mode, the controller monitors the status of the SD-WAN network, but does not take any action when the parameters of the SD-WAN network change. For example, in maintenance mode the controller does not rebuild links and paths, does not rewrite MAC addresses of service interfaces, or change transport services.

When you disable maintenance mode, the controller performs actions corresponding to the changes you made to the parameters of the SD-WAN network.

To enable or disable maintenance mode on the controller:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Do one of the following:

   - If you want to enable maintenance mode on the controller, click **Management** → **Enable maintenance** next to it.

   - If you want to disable maintenance mode on the controller, click **Management** → **Disable maintenance** next to it.

Maintenance mode is enabled or disabled on the controller.

Deleting a controller

Deleted controllers cannot be restored.

To delete a controller:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Delete** next to the controller that you want to delete.

3. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

The controller is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

Managing controller properties

Properties regulate the operation of the controller. Each property has a *change method* that determines whether the property value can be changed and when the change takes effect. The following change methods are available:

- **Read-only** means the property cannot be changed.
- **Reload** means that when a property is changed, the orchestrator commits the new value to the database of the controller. The new value takes effect after the controller is restarted.

  A property value that is in the database, but has not yet taken effect is called a *planning value*. You can delete a planning value before restarting the controller to keep the current value.
- **Runtime** means the new value takes effect immediately when the property is modified.

Modifying properties may lead to unstable operation of the controller, so we recommend contacting Kaspersky Technical Support before managing properties.

You can view the table of all controller properties or only changeable controller properties:

- To view the table of all controller properties, navigate to the **Infrastructure** section, click the added data center, select the **Network resources** tab, and click **Management** → **Properties** next to the controller.
- To view the table of changeable properties of the controller, navigate to the **Infrastructure** section, click the added data center, select the **Network resources** tab, click **Management** → **Properties** next to the controller and select the **Changeable properties** tab.

Information about controller properties is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Change method** is the change method of the property.
- **Property** is the name of the property.

- **Current value** is the current value of the property.
- **Planned value** is the planning value of the property. This column is displayed only on the **Changeable properties** tab.

The actions that you can perform with the table are described in the Managing solution component tables article.

Description of editable controller properties

Modifying properties may lead to unstable operation of the controller, so we recommend contacting Kaspersky Technical Support before managing properties.

Property	Description
`controller.buffers.in`	Buffer size, in bytes, for messages coming in from switches on the controller.
`controller.buffers.out`	Buffer size, in bytes, for messages going out to switches on the controller.
`controller.listen.port`	The starting port number in the range of switch ports. Ports with the next three consecutive numbers are added to the range. For example, if you enter `6553`, the switch port range includes ports 6553, 6554, 6555, 6556.
`controller.sockets.config.nodelay`	Whether the `TCP_NODELAY` parameter is used for management sessions between switches and the controller. Possible values: • `true` • `false`
`controller.sockets.mode.epoll`	Whether the epoll system is used by the controller when managing switches. Possible values: • `true` • `false`
`controller.sockets.timeouts.idle.both`	Time in milliseconds after which management sessions between the switches and the controller go idle in absence of read or write operations. The countdown starts anew whenever a read or write operation is performed.
`controller.sockets.timeouts.idle.read`	Time in milliseconds after which management sessions between the switches and the controller go idle in absence of read operations. The countdown starts anew whenever a read operation is performed.
`controller.sockets.timeouts.idle.write`	Time in milliseconds after which management sessions between the switches and the controller go idle in absence of write operations. The countdown starts anew whenever a write operation is performed.
`controller.threads.affinity`	Netty threads preferentially run on separate CPU cores for separate switches. Possible values: • `true` • `false`
`controller.threads.boss`	Number of Netty threads for handling new switch connections.
`controller.tls.ca.certificate.path`	Path to the PEM file of the root certificate that was used to sign the OpenFlow certificate.
`controller.tls.certificate.path`	Path to the PEM file of the encryption certificate for OpenFlow traffic between the controller and switches.
`controller.tls.private.key.path`	Path to the PEM file with the private key of the OpenFlow certificate.
`controller.watermark.high`	When the Netty buffer of the management session between switches and the controller contains this number of bytes, the queue is used to write to the session.

Property	Description
`controller.watermark.low`	When the Netty buffer of the management session between switches and the controller contains this number of bytes, the queue is no longer used to write to the session. This property is used when the number of bytes reaches the `controller.watermark.high` value.
`core.catcher.meter.value.kbits`	The throughput of the policer on the switches when sending traffic packets through the management session between the switches and the controller. Traffic packets are copied by interception flow rules.
`core.drop.rule.idle.sec`	Time, in seconds, after which flow rules automatically created by the controller when processing the first intercepted traffic packet are deleted on the switches to block subsequent packets. The countdown starts anew every time the flow rule is applied.
`core.link.bonding.enable`	Bonding of parallel links between two switches. Possible values: • `true` • `false`
`core.link.bonding.equal.cost`	Whether the equal cost algorithm is used when bonding links. Possible values: • `true` • `false` If you specify `false`, the unequal cost algorithm is used.
`core.link.bonding.max.links`	Maximum number of links in a bonded link.
`core.link.bonding.mode`	Type of the bonded link group. Possible values: • `BALANCING` means traffic is balanced across links in accordance with a hash value. The hash is calculated based on the `IP Proto`, `IP src-dst`, and `Port src-dst` fields of traffic packets. • `BROADCAST` means traffic is duplicated through all links.
`core.link.check.ports.status`	Whether the controller periodically sends LLDP packets only to enabled ports to detect links between switches. Possible values: • `true` • `false`
`core.link.enabled.ports.only`	Whether the switches relay LLDP packets to the controller only from enabled ports when the controller attempts to discover links between the switches. Possible values: • `true` • `false`
`core.link.liveness.interval`	Interval in milliseconds for the controller sending LLDP packets through the switch links.
`core.link.liveness.timeout`	Interval in milliseconds for the receiving side of switch links to receive LLDP packets and forward the LLDP packets to the controller. If no LLDP packets arrive through the link within the specified time, the controller considers the link unavailable.
`core.lldp.sendrem.enabled`	Whether switches send notifications to the controller whenever flow rules that send traffic packets to the controller are deleted. Possible values: • `true` • `false`
`core.switch.liveness.interval`	Interval in milliseconds for checking the connection of switches to the controller.
`core.switch.liveness.timeout`	Time in milliseconds within which disconnected switches must reconnect to the controller.
`core.tunnel.port.end`	Number of the last virtual network interface (VNI) in the range of switch interfaces.
`core.tunnel.port.start`	Number of the first virtual network interface in the range of switch interfaces.

Property	Description
`dampening.link.enabled`	Whether link Dampening is used. Possible values: • `true` • `false`
`dampening.link.maxSuppressTime.ms`	Maximum time in milliseconds for which access to the link can be restricted. When the specified time elapses, all Dampening counters are reset.
`dampening.link.penalty`	The number by which Penalty is incremented when the link changes state.
`dampening.link.suppressLevel`	The Penalty value at which access to the link is restricted.
`dampening.link.updateInterval.ms`	Time in milliseconds within which the Penalty must reach the `dampening.link.suppressLevel` value for access to the link to be restricted.
`eth.s.type`	The IEEE 802.1Q TPID value that is specified as the inner tag for traffic packets with Q-in-Q traffic classification.
`eth.t.type`	The IEEE 802.1Q TPID value that is specified as the outer tag for traffic packets with Q-in-Q traffic classification.
`inband.statistics.enabled`	Getting statistics on switches. Statistics contain information about network devices to which the switch is connected, as well as the ports being used. Possible values: • `true` • `false`
`inband.swos.cookie`	Value of the `cookie` field in the message for requesting statistics from the switches. Possible values: • `true` • `false` This property must be specified if for `inband.statistics.enabled`, you specified `true`.
`network.control.queue.id`	ID of the LLDP packet queue on the switches.
`notification.all.queue.max.size`	Maximum size of the push notification queue on the switches. If this size is exceeded, the first push notification in the queue is deleted.
`openflow.fail2ban.banTimeSec`	Duration in seconds for which IP addresses and ports of switches are blocked after an attempt to connect to the controller with an invalid TLS certificate.
`openflow.fail2ban.enabled`	Whether IP addresses and ports of switches are blocked after an attempt to connect to the controller with an invalid TLS certificate. Possible values: • `true` • `false`
`openflow.fail2ban.findTimeSec`	Time in seconds within which the switches must make the number of attempts (specified in the `openflow.fail2ban.maxRetry` property) to connect to the controller with an invalid TLS certificate, which causes the IP addresses and ports of these switches to be blocked.
`openflow.fail2ban.maxRetry`	The number of attempts of switches to connect to the controller with an invalid TLS certificate, after which the IP addresses and ports of the switches are blocked.
`openflow.io.cpe.rate.limiter.read.byteps`	This property is no longer used.
`openflow.io.cpe.rate.limiter.write.byteps`	This property is no longer used.
`openflow.io.ovs.meters.enabled`	Whether flow rules send traffic packets to the controller. Possible values: • `true` • `false`
`openflow.io.rate.limiter.switch.type-to-rate`	This property is no longer used.
`openflow.io.switch.latency.monitoring.delay.ms`	Interval in milliseconds for checking the latency between the controller and the switches.

Property	Description
`openflow.io.switch.latency.monitoring.enabled`	Whether latency is checked between the controller and switches. Possible values: • `true` • `false`
`openflow.io.switch.latency.sma.initial.drop.size`	Number of leading traffic packets on the switches, which is not counted towards statistics.
`openflow.io.switch.latency.sma.window.size`	Number of trailing traffic packets on the switches, which is not counted towards statistics.
`openflow.io.switch.messages.chunk.bytes`	Size, in bytes, of chunks of serialized OpenFlow messages that the controller sends to the switches.
`openflow.io.switch.messages.window.size`	Maximum number of blocks of serialized OpenFlow messages in the controller queue.
`openflow.io.switch.rate.limiter.read.byteps`	This property is no longer used.
`openflow.io.switch.rate.limiter.write.byteps`	This property is no longer used.
`openflow.io.vtep.rate.limiter.read.byteps`	This property is no longer used.
`openflow.io.vtep.rate.limiter.write.byteps`	This property is no longer used.
`segment.path.num.max`	Maximum number of paths in a segment.
`segment.path.spf.num.max`	Maximum number of SPF paths for automatic balancing.
`table-miss.mode`	Action that switches perform with traffic packets that are not in any of the OpenFlow tables. Possible values: • `DROP` to drop the traffic packets. • `TO_CTL` to send the traffic packets to the controller.
`topology.cfm.enabled`	Whether Connectivity Fault Management (CFM) is used on links. Possible values: • `true` • `false`
`topology.debug.enabled`	Whether controller debug routines are used involving the gRPC protocol. Possible values: • `true` • `false`
`topology.intervtep.links.enabled`	Establishing links between VTEPs. Possible values: • `true` • `false`
`topology.link.charged`	Using all links as a last resort when routing traffic, regardless of the link quality. Possible values: • `true` • `false`
`topology.link.discovery.groups.enabled`	Link discovery by groups. Possible values: • `true` • `false`
`topology.link.encryption.enabled`	Traffic encryption on links. Possible values: • `true` • `false`
`topology.link.encryption.key.update.interval.minutes`	Interval in minutes for updating the decryption key on links.

Property	Description
`topology.link.error.monitoring.enabled`	Monitoring of errors on links. Possible values: • `true` • `false`
`topology.link.error.threshold.eps`	Threshold value of the number of errors per second on links.
`topology.link.eu.monitoring.delay.sec`	Interval in seconds for measuring the number of errors on links and link utilization.
`topology.link.fec.enable`	Whether Forward Error Correction (FEC) is used on links. Possible values: • `true` • `false`
`topology.link.fec.ratio`	Ratio of original traffic packets to additional packets with redundant code. Enter a value in the `< number of original packets >:< number of additional packets >` format.
`topology.link.fec.timeout`	The maximum time, in milliseconds, during which a traffic packet can stay in the queue for FEC to apply.
`topology.link.jitter.monitoring.enabled`	Monitoring of jitter on links. Possible values: • `true` • `false`
`topology.link.jitter.threshold.ms`	Time threshold of jitter on links, in milliseconds.
`topology.link.latency.monitoring.enabled`	Monitoring of latency on links. Possible values: • `true` • `false`
`topology.link.latency.threshold.ms`	Latency threshold on links, in milliseconds.
`topology.link.ljp.monitoring.delay.sec`	Interval in seconds for comparing the received monitoring figures with the specified thresholds of latency, jitter, and packet loss on links.
`topology.link.ljp.stats.collecting.enabled`	Monitoring of latency, jitter, and traffic packet loss on links. Possible values: • `true` • `false` You can specify the monitoring protocol using the `topology.link.ljp.stats.collecting.method` property.
`topology.link.ljp.stats.collecting.lldp.window`	Size in bytes of the additional buffer in each LLDP packet for latency, jitter, and packet loss monitoring figures. This property must be specified if for `topology.link.ljp.stats.collecting.method`, you specified `GENEVE`.
`topology.link.ljp.stats.collecting.method`	Protocol for monitoring of latency, jitter, and traffic packet loss on links. Possible values: • `LLDP` • `GENEVE`
`topology.link.ljp.stats.collecting.multiplicity`	The multiplier that the controller applies to delay, jitter, and packet loss monitoring figures. This property must be specified if for `topology.link.ljp.stats.collecting.method`, you specified `GENEVE`.
`topology.link.packet.loss.monitoring.enabled`	Monitoring of traffic packet loss on links. Possible values: • `true` • `false`
`topology.link.packet.loss.threshold.percents`	Threshold value of the traffic packet loss percentage on links.
`topology.link.pmtud.scheduler.interval.sec`	Interval in seconds for automatic detection of the MTU figure on links.

Property	Description
`topology.link.pmtud.wait.time.ms`	How long the controller waits for a PMTUD LLDP packet, in milliseconds. If the controller does not receive a PMTUD LLDP packet within this time, the controller concludes that a packet of this size cannot be transmitted over the link.
`topology.link.threshold.monitoring.delay.sec`	Interval in seconds for monitoring of link thresholds.
`topology.link.threshold.monitoring.enabled`	Threshold monitoring on links. Possible values: • `true` • `false`
`topology.link.threshold.monitoring.unban.periods`	Number of successful checks in a row for a link to be unblocked. A check is performed once per second.
`topology.link.util.monitoring.enabled`	Monitoring of link utilization (bandwidth usage). Possible values: • `true` • `false`
`topology.link.util.threshold.percents`	Threshold value of link utilization as a percentage of the bandwidth of service interfaces.
`topology.overlay.lldp.sender.concurrent`	Concurrent sending of LLDP packets by the controller for link discovery. Possible values: • `true` • `false`
`topology.overlay.lldp.sender.core.pool.size`	Minimum number of streams for concurrent sending of LLDP packets by the controller. This property must be specified if for `topology.overlay.lldp.sender.concurrent`, you specified `true`.
`topology.overlay.lldp.sender.max.pool.size`	Maximum number of streams for concurrent sending of LLDP packets by the controller. This property must be specified if for `topology.overlay.lldp.sender.concurrent`, you specified `true`.
`topology.overlay.lldp.sender.max.queue.capacity`	Maximum queue size when the controller is sending LLDP packets concurrently. This property must be specified if for `topology.overlay.lldp.sender.concurrent`, you specified `true`.
`topology.reserve.si.auto.revert.enabled`	The reserve service interface becomes reserve again if the old service interface becomes operational again. Possible values: • `true` • `false`
`topology.throttler.timeout.hard.enabled`	Accumulation of physical operations on the controller, such as connecting a switch or a port, to perform the operations when the specified time elapses. Possible values: • `true` • `false` You can specify the time using the `topology.throttler.timeout.hard.ms` and `topology.throttler.timeout.idle.ms` properties.
`topology.throttler.timeout.hard.ms`	Time in seconds after which the physical operations accumulated on the controller are carried out. This property must be specified if for `topology.throttler.timeout.hard.enabled`, you specified `true`.
`topology.throttler.timeout.idle.ms`	Time in seconds after which the physical operations accumulated on the controller are carried out. The countdown starts anew whenever a physical operation appears. This property can be specified if for `topology.throttler.timeout.hard.enabled`, you specified `true`.

Property	Description
`topology.throttler_future.enable`	System property. Editing this property may render the controller inoperable.
`topology.throttler_future.timeout.sec`	System property. Editing this property may render the controller inoperable.

Editing a controller property

Changes you make to the controller properties with the Runtime change method take effect immediately. Changes you make to controller properties with the Reload change method take effect after the controller is restarted.

To change a controller property:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Properties** next to the controller for which you want to change a property.

   The controller properties page is displayed. By default, the **All properties** tab is selected, which displays a table of all controller properties.

3. Select the **Changeable properties** tab.

   A table of editable properties of the controller is displayed.

4. Click **Management** → **Edit** next to the controller property that you want to edit.

5. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Planned value** field, enter the new value of the controller property.

6. Click **Save**.

The new value of a property with the Runtime method is displayed in the **Current value** column. The new value of a property with the Reload method is displayed in the **Planned value** column.

Deleting planning values of controller properties

You can delete a planning value to undo a controller property change. This action is applicable only to properties that have the Reload method.

Deleted planning values of controller properties cannot be restored.

To delete planning values of controller properties:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of SD-WAN Controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Properties** next to the controller for which you want to delete planning values of properties.

   The controller properties page is displayed. By default, the **All properties** tab is selected, which displays a table of all controller properties.

3. Select the **Changeable properties** tab.

   A table of editable properties of the controller is displayed.

4. Delete the planning values of controller properties in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to delete the planning value of an individual property of the controller, click **Management** → **Delete planned value** next to that property.

   - If you want to delete planning values of all controller properties, in the upper part of the table, click the settings icon → **Delete all planned values**.

5. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

The planning values of controller properties are deleted.

Resetting controller properties to default values

To reset controller properties to default values:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Properties** next to the controller whose properties you want to reset to default values.

   The controller properties page is displayed. By default, the **All properties** tab is selected, which displays a table of all controller properties.

3. Select the **Changeable properties** tab.

   A table of editable properties of the controller is displayed.

4. Reset the controller properties in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to reset an individual property of the controller to its default value, click **Management** → **Reset property** next to that property.

   - If you want to reset all controller properties to their default values, click the settings icon in the upper part of the table → **Reset all properties**.

5. In the confirmation window, click **Reset**.

The controller properties are reset to their default values.

Viewing information about controller nodes

- To view information about controller nodes:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller for which you want to view information about nodes.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes. Information about controller nodes is displayed in the following columns of the table:

   - **Address** is the IP address of the controller node.
   - **Node statuses** is the status of controller nodes:
     - **Connected** means the node is connected to the controller.
     - **Disconnected** means the node is not connected to the controller.
     - **Unavailable** means the node is not available.
     - **Unknown** means the status of the node is unknown.
   - **Role in cluster** is the role of the node in the cluster:
     - **Primary** means the node is connected to the controller and is the primary node in the cluster.
     - **Secondary** means the node is connected to the controller and is a secondary node in the cluster.
     - **Single** means the node is connected to the controller and is the only node in the cluster.
     - **Arbiter** means the node is the arbiter.
     - **Connected (transition)** means the role of the node in the cluster is being changed.
     - **Not in cluster** means the node is not added to a cluster.
     - **Unavailable** means the node is not available.
     - **Unknown** means the status of the node is unknown.
   - **Active gRPC read node** indicates whether the node is selected as the priority node for read operations for the purposes of load balancing.
   - **gRPC port** is the number of the gRPC port of the controller node.
   - **JGroups port** is the JGroups port number of the controller node.
   - **Version** is the version of the controller node software.

The actions that you can perform with the table are described in the Managing solution component tables article.

3. If you want to view statistics for a controller node, click **Management** →**Statistics** next to the node.

4. If you want to view the properties of a controller node, click **Management** → **Node properties** next to the node.

Managing a VIM

You can deploy a VIM in one of your data centers or on a uCPE device. Deploying the VIM in a data center implies centralized management of the virtual network function lifecycle. Deploying the VIM on a uCPE device lets you deliver virtual network functions to remote data centers and manage them locally.

To view the table of VIMs, go to the **Infrastructure** menu section, click the created data center, and select the **IPAM** → **Compute resources** tab. Information about VIMs is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Name** is the name of the VIM.
- **Type** is the type of the VIM. Kaspersky SD-WAN uses the OpenStack cloud platform as the VIM.
- **Function** is the data center or uCPE device on which the VIM is deployed.
- **VIM IP** is the IP address of the VIM.
- **Status** is the connection status of the VIM to the OpenStack cloud platform:
  - **Connected**.
  - **Disconnected**.
- **SDN cluster** is the SDN cluster to which OpenStack is connected.
- **Behind NAT** lets you specify whether the VIM is behind NAT (Network Address Translation):
  - **Yes**.
  - **No**.

The actions that you can perform with the table are described in the Managing solution component tables article.

Configuring a VIM deployed in a data center

To configure a VIM deployed in a data center:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of SD-WAN Controllers.

2. In the **Resources** pane, select the created domain, then select the added data center in which you deployed the VIM.

3. Select the **Compute resources** tab.

   A table of VIMs is displayed.

4. In the upper part of the page, click **+ VIM**.

5. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Name** field, enter the name of the VIM.

6. In the **IP address** field, enter the IP address or domain name for connecting the orchestrator to the VIM.

7. In the **Port** field, enter the port number for connecting the orchestrator to the VIM identification service. Default value: `5000`.

8. In the **Protocol** drop-down list, select the protocol for connecting the orchestrator to the VIM:

   - **http** This is the default setting.
   - **https**.

9. In the **Login** and **Password** fields, enter the user name and password of an account with administrator privileges to authenticate the orchestrator in the OpenStack cloud platform. If authentication is successful, the orchestrator gains access to management of virtual infrastructure that is available to the administrator.

10. Specify advanced orchestrator authentication settings in the OpenStack cloud platform:

    a. In the **Administrator project** field, enter the name of the administrator project for orchestrator authentication in the administrator project.

    b. In the **Domain** field, enter the OpenStack domain name for orchestrator authentication in the OpenStack domain.

11. In the **Behind NAT** drop-down list, select whether the VIM is behind NAT:

    - **Enabled** to indicate that the VIM is behind NAT and network address translation happens when the VIM interacts with the SD-WAN instance.
    - **Disabled** to indicate that the VIM is not behind NAT. This is the default.

12. Specify the overcommitment ratios for physical resources:

    a. In the **CPU overcommitment** field, enter the CPU core overcommitment ratio. Default value: `1`.

    b. In the **RAM overcommitment** field, enter the RAM overcommitment ratio. Default value: `1`.

    c. In the **Disk overcommitment** field, enter the disk space overcommitment ratio. Default value: `1`.

    Overcommitment ratios let you provision virtual machines with more virtual resources than physically present. This is possible because virtual machines do not simultaneously use all available physical resources to the maximum. For example, if you specify a disk space overcommitment factor of `3`, the available virtual disk space can be three times as large as the disk space physically available on the host.

    When configuring overcommitment, you must consider how the capabilities of your hardware relate to the requirements of the virtual machines. If you specify a high overcommitment ratio for physical resources and virtual machines happen to use them up, this may lead to the network lagging and/or parts of network becoming completely unavailable.

13. In the **Parallelism** field, enter the maximum number of simultaneous operations between the orchestrator and the VIM. Default value: `1`. This setting lets you reduce the overall processing time for operations, but creates an additional load on the virtual infrastructure.

    We recommend not changing the default value unless the overall operation processing speed is critical for you.

14. In the **SDN cluster** drop-down list, select the SDN cluster to which OpenStack is connected. If OpenStack is not connected to an SDN cluster, select **None**.

15. In the **Maximum number of VLANs** field, enter the maximum number of VLANs that the VIM may use. This setting lets the orchestrator keep track of the number of segments available for use. Range of values: 0 to 4,094.

16. If the VIM supports SR-IOV, enter the physnet name in the **SR-IOV physical network** field. The orchestrator uses the SR-IOV physical network name to connect virtual machines with the SR-IOV interface type.

17. If you are using a network with the VLAN segmentation type for management, in the **VLAN physical network** field, enter the VLAN tag.

18. If you selected an SDN cluster in the **SDN cluster** drop-down list, configure the connection to that cluster:

    a. If you want to map the logical networks of the SD-WAN instance to a physical network, enter the physnet name in the **OpenStack physical network** field.

    b. In the **Port group** drop-down list, select the port group through which all OpenStack nodes are connected to the SDN cluster.

    c. In the **Control group** drop-down list, select the port group through which the OpenStack control nodes are connected to the SDN cluster.

    d. If necessary, in the **Compute group** drop-down list, select the port group through which OpenStack compute nodes are connected to the SDN cluster.

19. If in the **SDN cluster** drop-down list, you selected **None**, configure the network:

    a. If you want to map the flat networks of the SD-WAN instance to a physical network, enter the physnet name in the **Flat physical network** field.

    b. If you want to map the VXLAN of the SD-WAN instance to a physical network, enter the physnet name in the **VXLAN physical network** field.

    c. In the **Control network segmentation** drop-down list, select the type of segmentation for isolating and securing control plane traffic in the SD-WAN structure:

    - **VLAN**
    - **VXLAN**

    d. In the **Control segment ID** field, enter the segment ID of the management network. The range of values depends on the value selected in the **Control network segmentation** drop-down list:

    - If you selected **VLAN**, the range of values is 0 to 4,095.
    - If you selected **VXLAN**, the range of values is 0 to 16,000,000.

    e. In the **Port security** drop-down list, select whether you want to enable the Port security function:

    - **Enabled**
    - **Disabled**

    f. In the **Permit CIDR** field, enter the IPv4 prefix of the allowed subnet for the management network.

20. Click **Create**.

    The VIM is created and displayed in the table on the **Compute resources** tab.

Configuring a VIM deployed on a uCPE device

To configure a VIM deployed on a uCPE device, you must specify the settings of the VIM in a uCPE template. VIM settings specified in a uCPE template are automatically applied to all CPE devices that are using this uCPE template.

To configure a VIM deployed on a uCPE device:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** section.

   A table of CPE templates is displayed.

2. Click the uCPE template in which you want to configure a VIM.

   The settings area is displayed in the lower part of the page. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon. By default, the **Information** tab is selected, which displays general information about the CPE template.

3. Select the **VIM** tab.

   The VIM settings are displayed.

4. In the **Port** field, enter the port number for connecting the orchestrator to the VIM identification service. Default value: `5000`.

5. In the **Protocol** drop-down list, select the protocol for connecting the orchestrator to the VIM:

   - **http** This is the default setting.
   - **https**.

6. In the **Login** and **Password** fields, enter the user name and password of an account with administrator privileges to authenticate the orchestrator in the OpenStack cloud platform. If authentication is successful, the orchestrator gains access to managing the virtual infrastructure that is available to the administrator.

7. Specify advanced orchestrator authentication settings in the OpenStack cloud platform:

   a. In the **Administrator project** field, enter the name of the administrator project for orchestrator authentication in the administrator project.

   b. In the **Domain** field, enter the OpenStack domain name for orchestrator authentication in the OpenStack domain.

8. If you are using a network with the VLAN segmentation type for management, in the **VLAN physical network** field, enter the VLAN tag.

9. In the **Behind NAT** drop-down list, select whether the VIM is behind NAT:

   - **Enabled** to indicate that the VIM is behind NAT and network address translation happens when it interacts with the SD-WAN instance.
   - **Disabled** to indicate that the VIM is not behind NAT. This is the default.

10. Specify the overcommitment ratios for physical resources:

    a. In the **CPU overcommitment** field, enter the CPU core overcommitment ratio. Default value: `1`.

    b. In the **RAM overcommitment** field, enter the RAM overcommitment ratio. Default value: `1`.

    c. In the **Disk overcommitment** field, enter the disk space overcommitment ratio. Default value: `1`.

    Overcommitment ratios let you provision virtual machines with more virtual resources than physically present. This is possible because virtual machines do not simultaneously use all available physical resources to the maximum. For example, if you specify a disk space overcommitment factor of `3`, the available virtual disk space can be three times as large as the disk space physically available on the host.

    When configuring overcommitment, you must consider how the capabilities of your hardware relate to the requirements of the virtual machines. If you specify a high overcommitment ratio for physical resources and virtual machines happen to use them up, this may lead to the network lagging and/or parts of network becoming completely unavailable.

11. In the **Maximum number of VLANs** field, enter the maximum number of VLANs that the VIM may use. This setting lets the orchestrator keep track of the number of segments available for use. Range of values: 0 to 4,094.

12. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save CPE template settings.

Editing a VIM deployed in a data center

To edit a VIM deployed in a data center:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of SD-WAN Controllers.

2. In the **Resources** pane, select the created domain, then select the added data center in which you deployed the VIM.

3. Select the **Compute resources** tab.

   A table of VIMs is displayed.

4. Click **Management** → **Edit** next to the VIM that you want to edit.

5. This opens a window; in that window, if necessary, edit the VIM settings. For a description of the settings, refer to the instructions for configuring a VIM deployed in a data center.

6. Click **Save**.

The VIM is modified and updated in the table.

Viewing computing resources being used by a VIM

You can view the utilization of the following computing resources by the VIM:

- CPU
- RAM
- Disk space
- Network segments

To view the computing resources used by the VIM:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of SD-WAN Controllers.

2. In the **Resources** pane, select the created domain, then select the added data center in which you deployed the VIM.

3. Select the **Compute resources** tab.

   A table of VIMs is displayed.

4. Click **Management** → **Show usage** next to the VIM.

This opens a window with information about the computing resources used by the VIM.

Deleting a VIM

Deleted VIMs cannot be restored.

To delete a VIM:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of SD-WAN Controllers.

2. In the **Resources** pane, select the created domain, then select the added data center in which you deployed the VIM.

3. Select the **Compute resources** tab.

   A table of VIMs is displayed.

4. Click **Management** → **Delete** next to the VIM that you want to delete.

5. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

The VIM is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

Managing users and their access permissions

To restrict access to the administrator portal and self-service portal, as well as to sections, subsections and functions, the solution implements a role-based access control model (Role Based Access Control; RBAC). User accounts can have the following roles:

- An administrator has access to the administrator portal and self-service portal.
- A tenant has access only to the self-service portal.

Deploying the solution creates the **Administrator** user with the administrator role and the **User** user with the tenant role.

You can create local users, LDAP users, and LDAP user groups. The solution does not support creating local user groups. Credentials of local users are stored in the orchestrator database. Credentials of LDAP users and LDAP user groups are stored on a remote server. Supported servers include the remote OpenLDAP server with Simple SSL authentication, as well as Microsoft Active Directory with Kerberos authentication and Kerberos SSL authentication.

You must first create an LDAP connection that the orchestrator uses to connect to the remote server, and then create LDAP users and/or LDAP user groups. Created LDAP users and LDAP user groups can log in to the orchestrator web interface using their credentials.

Two-factor authentication

To improve the overall security level of the solution, you can require two-factor authentication of users using the Time-based one-time password (TOTP) algorithm. You can enable or disable two-factor authentication for all users. You can also enable or disable two-factor authentication when creating or editing local users, LDAP users, and LDAP groups.

If two-factor authentication is enabled for a user, a unique QR code is generated the next time that user logs in to the orchestrator web interface. The user must scan a QR code using a software or hardware RFC 6238 compliant authenticator, such as Kaspersky Password Manager, Google Authenticator, Yandex Key, and Microsoft Authenticator. The authenticator generates a unique code that the user must enter to complete two-factor authentication and log in to the orchestrator web interface. If the user enters the unique code incorrectly more than five times, that user is blocked for 30 minutes.

After completing two-factor authentication, the user must enter a user name, password, and a unique code to log into the orchestrator web interface. If necessary, you can make the user complete two-factor authentication again.

> If the time discrepancy between the orchestrator and the authenticator is greater than 30 seconds, two-factor authentication may fail. We recommend synchronizing the time on the orchestrator and the authenticator using an NTP server.

Access permissions

If necessary, you can create access permissions that determine which sections and subsections of the orchestrator web interface, and which actions are available to which users, and assign access permissions when creating or editing LDAP users and groups. For example, you can create an access permission that prohibits gaining access to the **Catalog** section and creating network service templates.

By default, LDAP users and groups have the **Full Access** permission, which grants full access to all functionality of the solution.

Confirmation requests

When creating or editing a user, you must specify if you want to have a confirmation request automatically created whenever this user performs an action. Confirmation requests can be confirmed, denied, or deleted. When a request is confirmed, the associated action is performed. Denied confirmation requests are saved in the orchestrator web interface.

User sessions

The following functionality is used to manage user sessions:

- Limiting the duration of user sessions. If a user remains idle for 3600 seconds (one hour) after logging into the orchestrator web interface, the user session is automatically ended. You can manually specify the idle time before automatic logout.
- Termination of user sessions. If multiple employees use the same user account credentials to log in to the orchestrator web interface, any of these employees can end the sessions of the others.

Managing access permissions

You can display the list of access permissions in the **Users** section, on the **Permissions** tab. By default, the **Full access** permission is created, which grants full access to the orchestrator web interface and is automatically assigned to users and LDAP user groups if you do not assign them a different access permission.

The actions you can perform with the list are described in the Managing solution component tables instructions.

Creating access permissions

To create an access permission:

1. In the menu, go to the **Users** section.

   The user management page is displayed. The **Users** tab, which is selected by default, displays the table of users.

2. Select the **Permissions** tab.

   The list of access permissions is displayed.

3. In the upper part of the list, click **+ Permission**.

4. In the displayed settings area, in the **Name** field, enter the name of the access permission. The maximum length of the name is 250 characters.

5. In the **Access rights** section next to the sections and subsections of the orchestrator web interface, select one of the following values:

   - **Editing** to allow the users to view the section or subsection and perform all available tasks in it.
   - **Viewing** to allow users only to view the section or subsection.
   - **No access** to prevent users from viewing the section or subsection.

   If you want the subsections to inherit the value selected for the section, select the **Apply to subsections** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

6. Click **Create**.

The access permission is created and displayed in the list.

You can assign an access permission when creating or editing a user, or when creating or editing an LDAP user group.

Editing access permissions

To edit an access permission:

1. In the menu, go to the **Users** section.

   The user management page is displayed. The **Users** tab, which is selected by default, displays the table of users.

2. Select the **Permissions** tab.

   The list of access permissions is displayed.

3. Click the access permission that you want to edit.

4. In the displayed settings area, edit the following settings, if necessary:

   - Name of the access permission
   - Sections and subsections of the orchestrator web interface and actions available to users

5. Click **Save**.

The access permission is modified and updated in the list.

Cloning access permissions

You can clone an access permission to create an identical access permission with a different name.

To clone an access permission:

1. In the menu, go to the **Users** section.

   The user management page is displayed. The **Users** tab, which is selected by default, displays the table of users.

2. Select the **Permissions** tab.

   The list of access permissions is displayed.

3. Click the access permission that you want to clone.

4. In the upper part of the displayed settings area, click **Management** → **Clone**.

5. This opens a window; in that window, enter the name of the new access permission.

6. Click **Clone**.

A clone of the access permission with the new name is created and added to the list.

Removing an access permission

Deleted access permissions cannot be restored.

To remove an access permission:

1. In the menu, go to the **Users** section.

   The user management page is displayed. The **Users** tab, which is selected by default, displays the table of users.

2. Select the **Permissions** tab.

   The list of access permissions is displayed.

3. Click the access permission that you want to delete.

4. In the upper part of the displayed settings area, click **Management**→ **Delete**.

5. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

The access permission is deleted and is no longer displayed in the list.

Managing LDAP connections

You can refer to the table of LDAP connections in the **Users** section, on the **LDAP connections** tab. Information about LDAP connections is displayed in the following table columns:

- **Name** is the name of the LDAP connection.
- **Type** is the type of the connection. This column always displays **LDAP**.
- **Host** is the host name of the remote server.

The actions that you can perform with the table are described in the Managing solution component tables article.

Creating an LDAP connection

If you want LDAP users or LDAP user groups to be able to log in to the orchestrator web interface using their credentials, you must first create an LDAP connection that the orchestrator uses to connect to the remote server, and then create your LDAP users or LDAP user groups.

To create an LDAP connection:

1. In the menu, go to the **Users** section.

   The user management page is displayed. The **Users** tab, which is selected by default, displays the table of users.

2. Select the **LDAP connections** tab.

   A table of LDAP connections is displayed.

3. Click **+ LDAP**.

4. In the displayed settings area, in the **Name** field, enter the name of the LDAP connection.

5. In the **Domain** field, enter the FQDN of the domain of the remote server.

6. In the **Domain alias** field, enter the alias or NETBIOS name of the domain. Users enter the alias, NETBIOS name, or FQDN of the domain when logging into the orchestrator web interface.

   For example, if the FQDN of the domain is 'example.com' and the alias is 'example', a user named 'admin' can enter the following credentials when logging into the orchestrator web interface:

   - `admin@example.com`
   - `admin@example`
   - `example.com\admin`
   - `example\admin`

7. In the **LDAP host** field, enter the host name of the remote server. The following host name formats are supported:

   - `ldap://<host name>:<port number>` for a standard LDAP server. The default port is 389.
   - `ldaps://<host name>:<port number>` for an LDAP server with SSL authentication. The default port is 636.

   For example, if you enter `ldap://example.com:100`, the host name of the remote server is 'example.com' and the port number is 100.

8. In the **Base DN** field, enter the base distinguished name that the orchestrator uses as the starting point for searching user accounts in the remote server directory. The following base distinguished name formats are supported:

   - To search in OpenLDAP, enter the base distinguished name in the `OU=<value>,OU=<value>` format, where `OU` is the structure of organizational units in the remote server directory. For example, if you enter `OU=OU_example1,OU=OU_example2`, the starting point for searching user accounts is organizational unit OU_example2, which is nested in OU_example1.

   - To search in Microsoft Active Directory, enter the base distinguished name in the `DC=<value>,DC=<value>`, where `DCs` are the domain components of the remote server. For example, if you enter `DC=example,DC=com`, the starting point for searching user accounts is the 'example.com' domain.

9. In the **Search attribute** drop-down list, select the attribute that the orchestrator uses to search for user accounts in the remote server directory:

   - **uid (OpenLDAP)** is the UID (user ID) for searching in OpenLDAP. This is the default setting.

   - **sAMAccountName (Active Directory)** is the pre-Windows 2000 logon name for searching in Microsoft Active Directory.

10. In the **Bind DN** field, enter the distinguished name for authenticating the orchestrator on the remote server. The following distinguished name formats are supported:

    - For authentication in openLDAP, enter a value in the `UID=<value>,OU=<value>` format, where `UID` is the user ID and `OU` is the organizational unit structure in the remote server directory where the user is located. For example, if you enter `UID=user_example,OU=OU_example`, user user_example from organizational unit OU_example is used for authenticating the orchestrator on the remote server.

    - For authentication in Microsoft Active Directory, enter a value in the `CN=<value>,OU=<value>,DC=<value>,DC=<value>`, where `CN` is the common name of the user, `OU` is the organizational unit structure in the remote server directory that the user belongs to, and the `DCs` are the user's domain components. For example, if you enter `CN=user_example,OU=OU_example,DC=example,DC=com`, user user_example in organizational unit OU_example in the example.com domain is used for authenticating the orchestrator on the remote server.

11. In the **Bind password** field, enter the remote server password for authenticating the orchestrator on the remote server. To see the entered password, you can click the show icon 👁.

12. To check if the remote server is available, click **Test authentication**.

13. Click **Create**.

    The LDAP connection is created and displayed in the table.

Editing an LDAP connection

To edit an LDAP connection:

1. In the menu, go to the **Users** section.

   The user management page is displayed. The **Users** tab, which is selected by default, displays the table of users.

2. Select the **LDAP connections** tab.

   A table of LDAP connections is displayed.

3. Click the LDAP connection that you want to edit.

4. In the displayed settings area, edit the following LDAP connection settings, if necessary: For a description of the settings, see the instructions for creating a LDAP connection.

5. Click **Save**.

The LDAP connection is modified and updated in the table.

Changing the password of an LDAP connection

You can change the remote server password that was specified when the LDAP connection was created and make the orchestrator use the new password to authenticate with the remote server.

To change the password of an LDAP connection:

1. In the menu, go to the **Users** section.

   The user management page is displayed. The **Users** tab, which is selected by default, displays the table of users.

2. Select the **LDAP connections** tab.

   A table of LDAP connections is displayed.

3. Click the LDAP connection for which you want to change the password.

4. In the upper part of the displayed settings area, click the **Management** button → **Change password**.

5. This opens a window; type the new password in the **New password** and **Password confirmation** text boxes.

6. Click **Save**.

The LDAP connection password is changed.

Deleting an LDAP connection

Deleted LDAP connections cannot be restored.

To delete an LDAP connection:

1. In the menu, go to the **Users** section.

   The user management page is displayed. The **Users** tab, which is selected by default, displays the table of users.

2. Select the **LDAP connections** tab.

   A table of LDAP connections is displayed.

3. Click the LDAP connection that you want to delete.

4. In the upper part of the displayed settings area, click **Management**→ **Delete**.

5. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

The LDAP connection is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

Managing users

You can view the table of users in the **Users** section. Information about users is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Name** is the user name.
- **Tenant** is the tenant to which the user is assigned.
- **Role** is the role of the user:
  - **Administrator**
  - **Tenant**
- **Source** is the type of the user:
  - **Local** is a local user.
  - **LDAP** is an LDAP user.
- **Group** is the group of the LDAP user. If the user is local, this column displays **Default**.

- **State** is the status of the user:
  - **Online**
  - **Offline**
  - **Blocked**
- **Two-factor authentication** specifies whether two-factor authentication is enabled for the user:
  - **Enabled** means two-factor authentication is enabled for the user.
  - **Disabled** means two-factor authentication is disabled for the user.
  - **Reinitialization** means repeated two-factor authentication is performed for the user.

The actions that you can perform with the table are described in the Managing solution component tables article.

Creating a user

You can create local and LDAP users. Credentials of local users are stored in the orchestrator database. LDAP user credentials are stored on the remote server. If you want LDAP users to be able to log in to the orchestrator web interface using their credentials, you must first create an LDAP connection that the orchestrator uses to connect to the remote server, and then create your LDAP users or LDAP user groups.

To create a user:

1. In the menu, go to the **Users** section.

   The user management page is displayed. The **Users** tab, which is selected by default, displays the table of users.

2. Click **+ User**.

3. In the displayed settings area, in the **Source** drop-down list, select the user type:
   - **Local**. This is the default setting. If this value is selected in the **Password** and **Password confirmation** fields, enter the password of the user. The password must contain at least one uppercase Latin letter (A–Z), one lowercase letter (a–z), one numeral, and one special character. Password length: 8 to 50 characters. To see the entered password, you can click the show icon 👁.
   - **LDAP**.

4. In the **Username** field, enter the user name of the user. The remote server user name is specified in the `user@domain` or `domain\user` format.

5. In the **Role** drop-down list, select the role of the user:
   - **Administrator**
   - **Tenant**

6. In the **Permissions** drop-down list, select the created access permission that you want to assign to the user. By default, the user gets the **Full access** permission, which grants full access to the orchestrator web interface.

7. If you want to enable two-factor authentication for the user, select the **Two-factor authentication** check box. This check box is cleared by default. The user must complete two-factor authentication the next time the user logs in to the orchestrator web interface.

   You cannot enable two-factor authentication for an individual user if two-factor authentication is disabled for all users.

8. If you want to create a confirmation request every time the user performs an action, select the **Request confirmation is required** check box. This check box is cleared by default and the user can perform actions without confirmation.

9. In the **First name** field, enter the first name of the employee.

10. In the **Last name** field, enter the last name of the employee.

11. If necessary, enter additional information about the user:

    a. In the **Email** field, enter the email address.

    b. In the **Description** field, enter a brief description of the user.

12. Click **Create**.

The user is created and displayed in the table. By default, the user is blocked.

You must unblock the user to grant that user access to the orchestrator web interface.

Activating or blocking a user

By default, created users are blocked. You must unblock the user to grant that user access to the orchestrator web interface.

To block or unblock a user:

1. In the menu, go to the **Users** section.

   The user management page is displayed. The **Users** tab, which is selected by default, displays the table of users.

2. Click the user that you want to unblock or block.

3. In the upper part of the displayed settings area, click **Management** → **Unblock** or **Block**.

The user is unblocked or blocked.

Editing a user

You cannot change the type and user name of the user. Separate instructions are given for changing the password of a local user.

To edit a user:

1. In the menu, go to the **Users** section.

   The user management page is displayed. The **Users** tab, which is selected by default, displays the table of users.

2. Click the user that you want to edit.

3. In the displayed settings area, edit the following user settings, if necessary: For a description of the settings, see the instructions for creating a user.

4. Click **Save**.

The user is modified and updated in the table.

Changing the password of a local user

LDAP user passwords are stored on remote servers and cannot be changed in the orchestrator web interface.

To change the password of a local user:

1. Change the local user password:

   - If you have the platform administrator role and want to change the password of the created local user, go to the **Users** menu section, click the local user, and click **Management** → **Change password**.

   - If you have the tenant role and want to change your own password, in the lower part of the menu click the settings icon → **Change password**.

2. This opens a window; type the new password in the **New password** and **Password confirmation** text boxes. The password must contain at least one uppercase Latin letter (A–Z), one lowercase letter (a–z), one numeral, and one special character. Password length: 8 to 50 characters. To see the entered password, you can click the show icon .

3. Click **Save**.

The password of the local user is changed.

Repeated two-factor authentication of a user

You can have the user repeat the authentication if that user has lost access to the unique code for logging in to the orchestrator web interface that was generated as a result of the previous two-factor authentication.

To repeat user authentication:

1. In the menu, go to the **Users** section.

   The user management page is displayed. The **Users** tab, which is selected by default, displays the table of users.

2. Click the user that you want to re-authenticate with two-factor authentication.

3. In the upper part of the displayed settings area, click **Management** → **Reinitialize 2FA**.

The user must complete two-factor authentication the next time the user logs in to the orchestrator web interface.

Deleting a user

Deleted users cannot be restored.

To delete a user:

1. In the menu, go to the **Users** section.

   The user management page is displayed. The **Users** tab, which is selected by default, displays the table of users.

2. Click the user that you want to delete.

3. In the upper part of the displayed settings area, click **Management** → **Delete**.

4. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

The user is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

Managing LDAP user groups

You can view the table of LDAP user groups in the **Users** section, on the **Groups** tab. Information about LDAP user groups is displayed in the following table columns:

- **Name** is the name of the LDAP user group.
- **Tenant** is the tenant to which the LDAP user group is assigned.
- **Role** is the role of the LDAP users.
- **Type** is the type of the user group. Kaspersky SD-WAN supports only LDAP user groups.

The actions that you can perform with the table are described in the Managing solution component tables article.

Creating an LDAP user group

LDAP user group credentials are stored on the remote server. If you want users in the LDAP user group to be able to log in to the orchestrator web interface using their credentials, you must first create an LDAP connection that the orchestrator uses to connect to the remote server, and then create your LDAP users or LDAP user groups.

If the user is a member of multiple LDAP user groups on the remote server, we recommend creating only one of those LDAP user groups in the orchestrator web interface. If multiple LDAP user groups have been created in the orchestrator web interface, a user that is a member of all of these LDAP user groups logs in to the orchestrator web interface as a member of that LDAP user group which was created first.

To create an LDAP user group:

1. In the menu, go to the **Users** section.

   The user management page is displayed. The **Users** tab, which is selected by default, displays the table of users.

2. Select the **Groups** tab.

   A table of LDAP user groups is displayed.

3. Click **+ User group**.

4. In the displayed settings area, in the **Name** field, enter the name of the LDAP user group on the remote server in the `user@domain` or `domain\user` format.

5. In the **Role** drop-down list, select the role of LDAP users in the group:

   - **Administrator**
   - **Tenant**

6. In the **Permissions** drop-down list, select the created access permission that you want to assign to the LDAP user group. By default, the LDAP user group gets the **Full access** permission, which grants full access to the orchestrator web interface.

7. If you want to enable two-factor authentication for the LDAP user group, select the **Two-factor authentication** check box. This check box is cleared by default. Users in the LDAP user group must complete two-factor authentication the next time they log in to the orchestrator web interface.

   When two-factor authentication is enabled for a group of LDAP users, authenticated LDAP users are displayed in the table of users. You can disable two-factor authentication for an LDAP user by editing the user.

   You cannot enable two-factor authentication for an LDAP user group if two-factor authentication is disabled for all users.

8. Click **Create**.

The LDAP user group is created and displayed in the table.

Editing an LDAP user group

You cannot change the type and name of the LDAP user group.

To edit a user group:

1. In the menu, go to the **Users** section.

   The user management page is displayed. The **Users** tab, which is selected by default, displays the table of users.

2. Select the **Groups** tab.

   A table of LDAP user groups is displayed.

3. Click the LDAP user group that you want to edit.

4. In the displayed settings area, edit the following LDAP user group settings, if necessary: For a description of the settings, see the instructions for creating a LDAP user group.

5. Click **Save**.

The LDAP user group is modified and updated in the table.

Deleting an LDAP user group

Deleted LDAP user groups cannot be restored.

To delete an LDAP user group:

1. In the menu, go to the **Users** section.

   The user management page is displayed. The **Users** tab, which is selected by default, displays the table of users.

2. Select the **Groups** tab.

   A table of LDAP user groups is displayed.

3. Click the LDAP user group that you want to delete.

4. In the upper part of the displayed settings area, click **Management**→ **Delete**.

5. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

The LDAP user group is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

Enabling or disabling two-factor authentication for all users

You can enable or disable two-factor authentication for all users. If two-factor authentication is disabled for all users, you cannot enable two-factor authentication for local and LDAP users or LDAP user groups. Two-factor authentication is disabled by default.

To enable or disable two-factor authentication for all users:

1. In the menu, go to the **Users** section.

   The user management page is displayed. The **Users** tab, which is selected by default, displays the table of users.

2. Select the **Two-factor authentication** tab.

3. Do one of the following:

   - If you want to enable two-factor authentication for all users, select the **Two-factor authentication for all users** check box. All users must complete two-factor authentication the next time a user logs in to the orchestrator web interface.

   - If you want to disable two-factor authentication for all users, clear the **Two-factor authentication for all users** check box.

   This check box is selected by default.

Two-factor authentication is enabled or disabled for all users.

Managing confirmation requests

If when creating or editing a user, you selected the **Request confirmation is required** check box, a confirmation request is automatically created for each user action. You can confirm, deny, or delete the confirmation request. When a request is confirm, the corresponding action is applied; denied confirmation requests are saved in the orchestrator web interface.

To confirm, deny, or delete a confirmation request:

1. In the menu, go to the **Confirmation** section.

   A table of confirmation requests is displayed. Information about confirmation requests is displayed in the following table columns:

   - **Method** is the API method that was used to create the confirmation request.
   - **URL** is the URL of the API.
   - **Note** is a brief description of the confirmation request.
   - **User** is the name of the user whose action resulted in the creation of a confirmation request.
   - **Headers** are API headers.
   - **Created** is the date and time when the confirmation request was created.
   - **Status** is the status of the confirmation request:
     - **Confirmed**
     - **Denied**
     - **Error**
     - **Waiting confirmation**

   The actions that you can perform with the table are described in the Managing solution component tables article.

2. If necessary, do one of the following:

   - To confirm the request, click **Permit** next to it.
   - To deny the request, click **Deny** next to it.
   - To delete the request, click **Delete** next to it.

   If you want to confirm, deny, or delete multiple confirmation requests at the same time, select check boxes next to the requests and select an action by clicking the **Action** button in the upper part of the table.

Confirmation requests are confirmed, denied, or deleted.

Managing user sessions

You can do the following with user sessions:

- Limit the duration of user sessions. By default, if a user remains idle for 3600 seconds (one hour) after logging into the orchestrator web interface, the user session is ended.
- View and, if necessary, end active user sessions.

To manage user sessions:

1. In the menu, go to the **System** section.

   By default, the **Monitoring** tab is selected, which displays the Zabbix server connection settings.

2. Select the **User sessions** tab.

   A table of user sessions is displayed. Information about user sessions is displayed in the following columns of the table:

   - **IP address** is the IP address of the user.
   - **User agent** is information about the browser and operating system of the user.
   - **Date** is the start date of the user session.

   The actions that you can perform with the table are described in the Managing solution component tables article.

3. If necessary, do one of the following:

   - If you want to limit the duration of user sessions, in the **When idle, end session after (sec)** field, enter the time in seconds after which an idle user session must be ended. Range of values: 60 to 86,400. Default value: `3600`.
   - If you want to end a specific user session, click **End session** next to it.
   - If you want to end multiple user sessions, select the check boxes next to them and in the upper part of the table, click **Actions** → **End session**.

4. Click **Save**.

Multitenancy

You can deploy Kaspersky SD-WAN for multiple *tenants* which can be independent clients or offices or departments of your organization. The solution deployed for a tenant is referred to as an *SD-WAN instance*. After deploying the solution, you need to create at least one tenant and deploy an SD-WAN instance for it.

When you create a tenant, the tenant gets its own self-service portal for managing the SD-WAN instance. The created tenants are isolated so they cannot access each other's self-service portals and their IP networks may overlap. The number of created tenants must not exceed the number of tenants that you specified in the `external` section of the configuration file when deploying the solution.

To deploy an SD-WAN instance for a tenant, you need to create an SD-WAN instance template. In the SD-WAN instance template, you must specify the basic settings of the SD-WAN instance, such as quality of service and transport service settings. You also need to add the tenant to the SD-WAN instance template to have the SD-WAN instance template settings applied to the SD-WAN instance when you deploy the SD-WAN instance for that tenant.

If the tenant has not been added to any SD-WAN instance template, the **Default SD-WAN template** is used when deploying an SD-WAN instance for that tenant. You can assign a different SD-WAN instance template as the default.

If the settings that you specified in the SD-WAN instance template do not match the actual parameters of the SD-WAN instance, that SD-WAN instance is not deployed for the tenant. For example, an SD-WAN instance is not deployed if the number of controller nodes specified in the SD-WAN instance template does not match the actual number of controller nodes of the SD-WAN instance.

After deploying the SD-WAN instance, you can view the monitoring results and service requests of that SD-WAN instance as well as configure its controller nodes. You can also add tenants to a deployed SD-WAN instance to let them use the controller of that SD-WAN instance. This avoids the need to deploy a separate SD-WAN instance for each tenant.

You can group SD-WAN instances into SD-WAN instance pools for load balancing when a large number of CPEs are used. You can add CPE devices to an SD-WAN instance pool. If you have added a CPE device to an SD-WAN instance pool, the orchestrator automatically selects the SD-WAN instance with the lowest number of CPE devices and adds the CPE device to that SD-WAN instance. If SD-WAN instances in the SD-WAN instance pool have the same number of CPE devices, the orchestrator adds the CPE device to a randomly selected SD-WAN instance.

Scenario: Deploying an SD-WAN instance for a tenant

The SD-WAN instance deployment scenario for a tenant involves the following steps:

1. **Creating a tenant**

   Create the tenant for which you want to deploy an SD-WAN instance.

2. **Creating an SD-WAN instance template**

   Create and configure an SD-WAN instance template. For details about managing SD-WAN instance templates, see the Managing SD-WAN instance templates section. You can use the created SD-WAN instance template to deploy other SD-WAN instances.

3. **Adding a tenant to an SD-WAN instance template**

Add the tenant to the SD-WAN instance template to have the SD-WAN instance template settings applied to the SD-WAN instance when you deploy the SD-WAN instance for that tenant.

4. **Preparing virtual machines or physical servers for controller deployment**

   While deploying Kaspersky SD-WAN, you prepared virtual machines or physical servers for deployment of all solution components, including the controller.

   If you have not prepared virtual machines or physical servers for the controller, you can specify them in the `nodes` section of the configuration file, and then run the solution deployment command again. When you run the solution deployment command again, the missing virtual machines or physical servers are prepared. Solution components that are already deployed are not affected.

5. **Preparing the PNF package of the controller**

   Prepare the controller PNF package of the SD-WAN instance on your local device:

   1. Extract the installation archive and go to one of the following directories:
      - If you want to deploy a single controller node, go to the /pnfs/pnf_sdwan_ctl directory.
      - If you want to deploy three controller nodes, go to the /pnfs/pnf_sdwan_ctl_3 directory.
      - If you want to deploy five controller nodes, go to the /pnfs/pnf_sdwan_ctl_5 directory.
   2. If you want to change the PNF descriptor of the controller, go to the /src directory of the extracted installation archive and edit the pnfd.xml file.
   3. Create the PNF package by running the following command:

      ```
      make
      ```

   The PNF package is placed in the /build directory of the extracted installation archive.

6. **Uploading the PNF package of the controller to the orchestrator web interface**

   Upload the PNF package of the SD-WAN instance controller to the orchestrator web interface.

7. **Configuring the controller PNF**

   Configure the controller PNF of the SD-WAN instance:

   1. In the menu, go to the **Catalog** section and in the **Catalog** pane, click the controller PNF.
   2. In the displayed settings area, select the **DC placement** tab and in the **Data center** field, specify the added data center in which you want to deploy the controller.
   3. Select the **Management IP** tab and specify the IP addresses of the controller nodes. Specify standard or virtual IP addresses of virtual machines or physical servers for controller deployment that you specified in the `nodes` section of the configuration file when you deployed the solution.

8. **Assigning the controller PNF to the tenant**

   Assign the controller PNF of the SD-WAN instance to the tenant.

9. **Logging in to the tenant self-service portal**

   Log in to the tenant self-service portal

10. **Creating an SD-WAN network service**

Create an SD-WAN network service. When creating the SD-WAN network service, you need to add the controller PNF of the SD-WAN instance to the topology, and then do the following:

1. In the topology, click the PNF of the controller.
2. In the displayed settings area, select the **CA_certificates** tab and in the **CA certificate** field, enter the root certificate in PEM format that the orchestrator certificate is signed with. Standalone root certificates as well as certificate chains consisting of a root certificate and multiple intermediate certificates are supported. If you specify a chain of certificates, you must start each certificate on a new line.
3. Select the **Orchestrator** tab, and in the **Orchestrator's API IP** field, enter the IP address of one of the orchestrator nodes. You need to specify one of the standard or virtual IP addresses of the virtual machines or physical servers for orchestrator deployment that you specified in the `nodes` section of the configuration file.
4. Select the **CTL1–5** tabs and enter the controller node information:
    1. In the **IP for ORC connection** field, enter the IP address of the controller node for connecting the orchestrator. You need to specify one of the standard or virtual IP addresses of the virtual machines or physical servers for controller deployment that you specified in the `nodes` section of the configuration file.
    2. In the **IP for CPE connections** field, enter the IP address of the controller node for connecting CPE devices.
    3. In the **PORT for CPE connections** field, enter the TCP port of the controller node for connecting CPE devices.

11 **Deploying the SD-WAN network service**

Deploy the SD-WAN network service.

The SD-WAN instance is deployed for the tenant, and the SD-WAN instance controller is displayed on the administrator portal and the tenant self-service portal in the **Infrastructure** section.

If at step 10 of this scenario, you specified a wrong root certificate:

1. Connect to the virtual machine or physical server on which the controller node is deployed. Together with each controller node, the MOCKPNF component is automatically deployed on the virtual machine or physical server to ensure the security of the Docker container configuration of the controller node.
2. Log in to the user account that has access to the Docker group, then log in to the Docker container of the MOCKPNF component by running the following command:

   ```
   docker exec -it mockpnf-<controller node number> /bin/ash
   ```

3. Run the `cleanup.sh` script. You can download the script from the /pnfs/pnf_sdwan_ctl<number of controller nodes>/scr/scripts directory of the installation archive.

   > You must complete steps 2 and 3 for each controller node.

4. Repeat step 10 of this scenario with the correct root certificate.

Managing tenants

You can view the list of tenants in the **Tenants** section. This section also displays the following groups of settings:

- **VIM** allows assigning a VIM to a tenant. A tenant can manage virtual network functions within the virtual infrastructure using the assigned VIMs.
- **User groups** allows assigning LDAP user groups to a tenant. Assigned LDAP user group can log in to the tenant's self-service portal and manage the SD-WAN instance deployed for the tenant.
- **Catalog** allows assigning network service components to the tenant. A tenant can manage network services using the assigned network service components.
- **SD-WAN service** allows viewing SD-WAN network service components of a tenant.
- **Resources** allows assigning computation resources to a tenant. The assigned computation resources determine the performance of the SD-WAN instance that will be deployed for the tenant. The amount of available computation resources is determined during solution deployment.
- **Service requests** allows viewing service requests for a tenant.
- **Users** allows assigning users to a tenant. Assigned users can log in to the tenant's self-service portal and manage the SD-WAN instance deployed for the tenant.
- **CPEs** allows adding a CPE device to a tenant. The tenant can relay traffic between locations using the added CPE devices.

Creating a tenant

The number of created tenants must not exceed the number of tenants that you specified in the `external` section of the configuration file when deploying the solution.

To create a tenant:

1. In the menu, go to the **Tenants** section.

   The tenant management page is displayed.

2. Start creating the tenant in one of the following ways:

   - If you are creating the first tenant, under **Tenants**, in the **Name** field, enter the name of the tenant.
   - If you are creating the second or subsequent tenants, in the upper part of the **Tenants** section, click **+ Tenant**, and in the **Name** field, enter the name of the tenant.

3. If necessary, in the relevant area in the lower part of the page, enter a brief description of the tenant.

4. Click the create icon +.

The tenant is created and displayed under **Tenants**.

Assigning a user to a tenant

You can assign a user to a tenant to allow the user to log in to the tenant's self-service portal and manage the SD-WAN instance that is deployed for the tenant. To assign a user to a tenant, you need to assign tenant role to the user while creating or editing the user.

To assign a user to a tenant:

1. In the menu, go to the **Tenants** section.

   The tenant management page is displayed.

2. Under **Tenants**, select the tenant to which you want to assign a user.

3. Under **Users**, click **+ Edit**.

4. This opens a window; in that window, under **Users**, select a user which you want to assign to the tenant.

   The user is displayed under **Assign users**.

5. Click **Save**.

The user is assigned to the tenant and displayed under **Users**.

Assigning an LDAP user group to a tenant

You can assign an LDAP user group to a tenant to allow this LDAP user group to log in to the tenant's self-service portal and manage the SD-WAN instance that is deployed for the tenant. To assign an LDAP user group to a tenant, you must assign the LDAP user group the tenant role when you create or edit the LDAP user group.

To assign an LDAP user group to a tenant:

1. In the menu, go to the **Tenants** section.

   The tenant management page is displayed.

2. Under **Tenants**, select the tenant to which you want to assign a user group.

3. Under **User groups**, click **+ Edit**.

4. This opens a window; in that window, under **Groups**, select an LDAP user group which you want to assign to the tenant.

   The user group is displayed under **Assign groups**.

5. Click **Save**.

The LDAP user group is assigned to the tenant and displayed under **User groups**.

Assigning compute resources to a tenant

You can assign computation resources to a tenant to set up the performance of the SD-WAN instance that you want to deploy for the tenant. The amount of available computation resources is determined during solution deployment.

To assign compute resources to a tenant:

1. In the menu, go to the **Tenants** section.

   The tenant management page is displayed.

2. Under **Tenants**, select the tenant to which you want to assign compute resources.

3. In the upper part of the **Resources** section, click the settings icon ⚙.

4. Click the resize icon ∞ next to one of the following computation resources:

   - **CPU** — virtual CPU cores
   - **RAM** — RAM
   - **Disk** — disk space

5. In the displayed field, enter the amount of compute resource that you want to assign to the tenant.

6. Click the save icon ✓.

The specified amount of compute resources is assigned to the tenant.

Assigning network service components to a tenant

You can assign network service components to a tenant to let the tenant use them to manage network services.

To assign network service components to a tenant:

1. In the menu, go to the **Tenants** section.

   The tenant management page is displayed.

2. Under **Tenants**, select the tenant to which you want to assign network service components.

3. Under **Catalog**, select check boxes next to the network service components that you want to assign to the tenant.

The network service components are assigned to the tenant and displayed in the tenant self-service portal in the **Catalog** section.

Assigning a VIM to a tenant

You can assign a VIM to a tenant to let the tenant use this VIM to manage virtual network functions within the virtual infrastructure.

To assign a VIM to a tenant:

1. In the menu, go to the **Tenants** section.

   The tenant management page is displayed.

2. Under **Tenants**, select the tenant to which you want to assign a VIM.

3. Under **VIM**, click **+ Edit**.

4. This opens a window; in that window, under **Domain** and **Data center**, select the created domain, then select the added data center in which you have deployed the VIM.

5. Under **VIM**, select the VIM that you want to assign to the tenant.

   The VIM is displayed under **Assign VIMs**.

6. Click **Save**.

The VIM is assigned to the tenant and displayed under **VIM**.

Logging in to the tenant self-service portal

To log in to the tenant self-service portal:

1. In the menu, go to the **Tenants** section.

   The tenant management page is displayed.

2. Under **Tenants**, select the tenant whose self-service portal you want to log in to.

3. Click **Connect as tenant**.

This opens the tenant self-service portal in a new browser tab. You are logged in to the self-service portal.

Editing a tenant

To edit a tenant:

1. In the menu, go to the **Tenants** section.

   The tenant management page is displayed.

2. In the **Tenants** section, click the settings icon → **Edit** next to the tenant that you want to edit.

3. If necessary, edit the name and/or brief description of the tenant.
4. Click the save icon ✓.

   The tenant is modified and updated under **Tenants**.

Deleting a tenant

When you delete a tenant, the SD-WAN instance deployed for it is automatically deleted. At the same time, all objects created within the tenant, such as zones and firewall templates, are saved on the administrator portal.

Deleted tenants cannot be restored.

To delete a tenant:

1. In the menu, go to the **Tenants** section.

   The tenant management page is displayed.
2. In the **Tenants** section, click the settings icon ⚙ → **Delete** next to the tenant that you want to delete.
3. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

The tenant is deleted and is no longer displayed under **Tenants**.

Managing SD-WAN instance templates

You can view the table of SD-WAN instance templates in the **SD-WAN** → **SD-WAN instance templates** section. **Default SD-WAN template** is the SD-WAN instance template that is created by default. Information about SD-WAN instance templates is displayed in the following table columns:

- **ID** is the ID of the SD-WAN instance template.
- **Name** is the name of the SD-WAN instance template.
- **Used** specifies whether the SD-WAN instance template is being used by SD-WAN instances:
  - **Yes**.
  - **No**.
- **Updated** is the date and time when the SD-WAN instance template settings were last modified.
- **User** is the name of the user that created the SD-WAN instance template.

The actions that you can perform with the table are described in the Managing solution component tables article.

You can manage SD-WAN instance template settings on the following tabs:

- **Information** contains basic information about the SD-WAN instance template. You can edit the name of the SD-WAN template in the **Name** field.
- **Traffic classes** contains settings of traffic classes.
- **Traffic classifiers** contains settings of traffic classifiers.
- **QoS rules** contains settings of quality of service rules.
- **Transport services** contains settings of transport services.
- **Tenants** contains tenants that have been added to the SD-WAN instance template.
- **High availability** is the number of controller nodes of the SD-WAN instance.
- **Transport/service strategy** is the transport strategy used in the SD-WAN instance.

Creating an SD-WAN instance template

To create an SD-WAN instance template:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **SD-WAN instance templates** section.
   A table of SD-WAN instance templates is displayed.
2. In the upper part of the page, click **+ SD-WAN instance template**.
3. This opens a window; in that window, enter the name of the SD-WAN instance template.
4. Click **Create**.

   The SD-WAN instance template is created and displayed in the table.

You need to configure the created SD-WAN instance template. In the SD-WAN instance template, you must specify the basic settings of the SD-WAN instance, such as quality of service and transport service settings. You also need to add the tenant to the SD-WAN instance template to have the SD-WAN instance template settings applied to the SD-WAN instance when you deploy the SD-WAN instance for that tenant. For details about managing SD-WAN instance templates, see the Managing SD-WAN instance templates section.

Setting the default SD-WAN instance template

If the tenant has not been added to any SD-WAN instance template, the **Default SD-WAN template** is used when deploying an SD-WAN instance for that tenant. You can assign a different SD-WAN instance template as the default.

To set the default SD-WAN instance template:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **SD-WAN instance templates** section.

   A table of SD-WAN instance templates is displayed.

2. Click the SD-WAN instance template that you want to make the default SD-WAN instance template.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, the **Information** tab is selected, which displays the name of the SD-WAN instance template.

3. In the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Set as default template**.

The SD-WAN instance template becomes the default SD-WAN instance template.

Selecting the number of controller nodes for an SD-WAN instance

An SD-WAN instance is not deployed if the number of controller nodes specified in the SD-WAN instance template does not match the actual number of controller nodes of the SD-WAN instance.

To select the number of SD-WAN instance controller nodes:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **SD-WAN instance templates** section.

   A table of SD-WAN instance templates is displayed.

2. Click the SD-WAN instance template for which you want to select the number of controller nodes.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, the **Information** tab is selected, which displays the name of the SD-WAN instance template.

3. Select the **High availability** tab.

4. Select the number of controller nodes

5. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the SD-WAN instance template.

Adding a tenant to an SD-WAN instance template

You need to add the tenant to the SD-WAN instance template to have the SD-WAN instance template settings applied to the SD-WAN instance when you deploy the SD-WAN instance for that tenant.

To add a tenant to an SD-WAN instance template:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **SD-WAN instance templates** section.

   A table of SD-WAN instance templates is displayed.

2. Click the SD-WAN instance template into which you want to add a tenant.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, the **Information** tab is selected, which displays the name of the SD-WAN instance template.

3. Select the **Tenants** tab.

   A table of tenants is displayed.

4. Click **+ Tenant**.

5. This opens a window; in that window, select the created tenant that you want to add to the SD-WAN instance template.

6. Click **Add**.

   The tenant is added to the SD-WAN instance template and is displayed in the table.

7. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the SD-WAN instance template.

Removing a tenant from an SD-WAN instance template

You can remove a tenant from an SD-WAN instance template; if you do so, this SD-WAN instance template will not be used in SD-WAN instance deployment for the tenant.

To remove a tenant from an SD-WAN instance template:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **SD-WAN instance templates** section.

   A table of SD-WAN instance templates is displayed.

2. Click the SD-WAN instance template from which you want to remove a tenant.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, the **Information** tab is selected, which displays the name of the SD-WAN instance template.

3. Select the **Tenants** tab.

   A table of tenants is displayed.

4. Click **Delete** next to the tenant that you want to remove from the SD-WAN instance template.

   The tenant is removed from the SD-WAN instance template and is no longer displayed in the table.

5. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the SD-WAN instance template.

Deleting an SD-WAN instance template

You cannot delete the default SD-WAN instance template.

Deleted SD-WAN instance templates cannot be restored.

To delete an SD-WAN instance template:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **SD-WAN instance templates** section.

   A table of SD-WAN instance templates is displayed.

2. Click the SD-WAN instance template that you want to delete.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, the **Information** tab is selected, which displays the name of the SD-WAN instance template.

3. In the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Delete**.

4. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

The SD-WAN instance template is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

Working with SD-WAN instances

You can view the table of SD-WAN instances in the **SD-WAN** → **SD-WAN instances** section. Information about SD-WAN instances is displayed in the following table columns:

- **ID** is the ID of the SD-WAN instance.
- **Tenant** is the tenant for which the SD-WAN instance is deployed.
- **Status** is the status of the SD-WAN instance:
  - **Ok** means the SD-WAN instance is operating normally.
  - **Controller is absent** means the SD-WAN instance does not have a controller.
  - **Error** means an error occurred during the operation of the SD-WAN instance.
  - **Deleting** means the SD-WAN instance is in the process of being deleted.
  - **Deleted** means the SD-WAN instance was deleted.
- **CPEs** is the number of CPE devices that have been added to the SD-WAN instance.
- **Controllers** are IP addresses and port numbers of controllers of the SD-WAN instance.
- **DC** is the data center in which SD-WAN instance is deployed.

- **VIM** is the VIM of the SD-WAN instance.
- **Created** is the date and time when the SD-WAN instance was deployed.

The actions that you can perform with the table are described in the Managing solution component tables article.

You can manage SD-WAN instance settings on the following tabs:

- **Configuration** contains basic information about the SD-WAN instance and the settings of controller nodes of the SD-WAN instance. You can enter a short description of the SD-WAN instance in the **Description** field.
- **Monitoring** contains SD-WAN instance monitoring results.
- **Service requests** contains service requests of the SD-WAN instance.
- **Tenant self-service** contains tenants that have been added to the SD-WAN instance.

Configuring controller nodes of an SD-WAN instance

When configuring controller nodes of the SD-WAN instance, you can change their IP addresses and TCP port numbers. This automatically changes the IP addresses and TCP port numbers of controller nodes on all CPE devices that are added to the SD-WAN instance. If SD-WAN interfaces of the WAN type of the CPE device are connected to different networks, for example, the internet and a private MPLS network, you can change the IP addresses and TCP port numbers of controller nodes on individual SD-WAN interfaces of the WAN type when you create or edit SD-WAN interfaces of the WAN type. The IP addresses and TCP port numbers specified on an individual SD-WAN interface of the WAN type take precedence over the IP addresses and TCP port numbers specified when configuring the controller nodes of the SD-WAN instance.

If you deployed multiple controller nodes when you deployed the SD-WAN instance, you can specify which controller node is the arbiter node while configuring the controller nodes of the SD-WAN instance. When an arbiter node is specified in the orchestrator web interface, CPE devices do not establish management sessions with that controller node, which reduces the load on the CPE devices.

> After configuring the controller nodes of the SD-WAN instance, to apply the changes, you must restart the CPE devices that already have been registered.

To configure controller nodes of an SD-WAN instance:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **SD-WAN instances** section.

   A table of SD-WAN instances is displayed.

2. Click the SD-WAN instance whose controller nodes you want to configure.

   The settings area is displayed in the lower part of the page. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃. By default, the **Configuration** tab is selected, which displays general information about the SD-WAN instance.

3. If necessary, do one of the following:

   - If you want to change the IP address of a controller node, in the **IP address** field, enter an IPv4 address. The number of fields corresponds to the number of controller nodes.

   - If you want to change the TCP port number of a controller node, in the **Port** field, enter the number of the base port. Range of values: 1 to 65,535. Default value: `6653`. The number of fields corresponds to the number of controller nodes.

     Along with the base port of the controller node, ports with the next three consecutive numbers are automatically specified. For example, if you enter the `6653` as the base port number, ports 6654, 6655, and 6656 are automatically specified.

   - If you want to specify an arbiter node, select the **Arbiter** check box next to the controller node. You cannot specify an arbiter node if you deployed only one controller node while deploying the SD-WAN instance.

4. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the SD-WAN instance.

Viewing the usage of an SD-WAN instance

If necessary, you can check which CPE devices have been added for the SD-WAN instance.

To see if an SD-WAN instance is being used:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **SD-WAN instances** section.

   A table of SD-WAN instances is displayed.

2. Click the SD-WAN instance for which you want to view usage information.

   The settings area is displayed in the lower part of the page. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, the **Configuration** tab is selected, which displays general information about the SD-WAN instance.

3. In the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Show associated CPEs**.

This opens the **CPE** section which displays a table of CPE devices added to the SD-WAN instance.

Viewing the topology of an SD-WAN instance

To view the topology of an SD-WAN instance:

1. Log in to the self-service portal of the tenant for which the SD-WAN instance is deployed.

2. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

3. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

4. Go to the **Topology** section.

   The topology of the SD-WAN instance is displayed.

5. If necessary, select the following check boxes:

   - Select the **Link utilization** check box to display the utilization of the links. The utilization level of the link is represented by the following colors:

     - Green — Low link utilization.
     - Yellow — Medium link utilization.
     - Red — High link utilization.

   - Select the **Segments** check box and in the **Segment switches** drop-down list, select two CPE devices to display all links between those devices.
   - Select the **Name** check box to display the names of CPE devices.
   - Select the **IP address** check box to display the IP addresses of CPE devices.

   By default, all check boxes are cleared.

Adding a tenant to an SD-WAN instance

If you want to use the controller of a single SD-WAN instance for multiple tenants, you need to add tenants to that SD-WAN instance. Using a single SD-WAN instance controller for multiple tenants eliminates the need to deploy a separate SD-WAN instance for each tenant.

To add a tenant to an SD-WAN instance:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN → SD-WAN instances** section.

   A table of SD-WAN instances is displayed.

2. Click the SD-WAN instance into which you want to add a tenant.

   The settings area is displayed in the lower part of the page. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃. By default, the **Configuration** tab is selected, which displays general information about the SD-WAN instance.

3. Select the **Tenant self-service** tab.

   A table of tenants is displayed.

4. Click **+ Add**.

5. This opens a window; in that window, select the created tenant that you want to add to the SD-WAN instance.

6. In the **Maximum CPEs** field, enter the maximum number of CPE devices available to the tenant.

7. Click **Add**.

The tenant is added to the SD-WAN instance and is displayed in the table.

Removing a tenant from an SD-WAN instance

You can remove a tenant that has been added to an SD-WAN instance to prevent the tenant from using the controller of that SD-WAN instance.

To remove a tenant from an SD-WAN instance:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **SD-WAN instances** section.

   A table of SD-WAN instances is displayed.

2. Click the SD-WAN instance from which you want to remove a tenant.

   The settings area is displayed in the lower part of the page. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃. By default, the **Configuration** tab is selected, which displays general information about the SD-WAN instance.

3. Select the **Tenant self-service** tab.

   A table of tenants is displayed.

4. Click **Delete** next to the tenant that you want to remove from the SD-WAN instance.

5. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

The tenant is deleted from the SD-WAN instance and is no longer displayed in the table.

Deleting an SD-WAN instance

When you delete an SD-WAN instance, the CPE devices that have been added to it and the SD-WAN network service deployed for the SD-WAN instance are also automatically deleted. However, the tenant for which the SD-WAN instance is deployed is not deleted. An alternative way of deleting an SD-WAN instance is to delete the SD-WAN network service.

Deleted SD-WAN instances cannot be restored.

To delete an SD-WAN instance:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **SD-WAN instances** section.

   A table of SD-WAN instances is displayed.

2. Click the SD-WAN instance that you want to delete.

   The settings area is displayed in the lower part of the page. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃. By default, the **Configuration** tab is selected, which displays general information about the SD-WAN instance.

3. In the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Delete**.

4. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

The SD-WAN instance is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

Managing SD-WAN instance pools

You can view the table of SD-WAN instance pools in the **SD-WAN → SD-WAN instance pools** section. Information about SD-WAN instance pools is displayed in the following table columns:

- **ID** is the ID of the SD-WAN instance pool.
- **Name** is the name of the SD-WAN instance pool.
- **Number of instances** is the number of SD-WAN instances in the SD-WAN instance pool.
- **CPEs** is the number of CPE devices that have been added to the SD-WAN instances.
- **Created** is the date and time when the SD-WAN instance pool was created.

The actions that you can perform with the table are described in the Managing solution component tables article.

You can manage SD-WAN instance pool settings on the following tabs:

- **Information** contains basic information about the SD-WAN instance pool. You can rename the SD-WAN instance pool in the **Name** field and enter a brief description in the **Description** field.
- **SD-WAN instances** contains SD-WAN instances that have been added to the SD-WAN instance pool.

Creating a pool of SD-WAN instances

To create a pool of SD-WAN instances:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN → SD-WAN instance pools** section.

   A table of SD-WAN instance pools is displayed.

2. In the upper part of the page, click **+ SD-WAN instance pool**.
3. This opens a window; in that window, enter the name of the SD-WAN instance pool.
4. Click **Create**.

The SD-WAN instance pool is created and displayed in the table.

You need to add SD-WAN instances to the created SD-WAN instance pool.

Adding an SD-WAN instance to an SD-WAN instance pool

To add an SD-WAN instance to an SD-WAN instance pool:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **SD-WAN instance pools** section.

   A table of SD-WAN instance pools is displayed.

2. Click the SD-WAN instance pool to which you want to add an SD-WAN instance.

   The settings area is displayed in the lower part of the page. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, the **Information** tab is selected, which displays general information about the SD-WAN instance pool.

3. Select the **SD-WAN instances** tab.

   A table of SD-WAN instances is displayed.

4. Click **+ SD-WAN instance**.

5. This opens a window; in that window, select the deployed SD-WAN instance that you want to add to the SD-WAN instance pool.

6. Click **Add**.

   The SD-WAN instance is added to the SD-WAN instance pool and displayed in the table.

7. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the SD-WAN instance pool.

If you are adding a CPE device to the SD-WAN instance pool, you can add that CPE device to the SD-WAN instance that you added to the SD-WAN instance pool. This happens if the least number of CPE devices have been added to the SD-WAN instance as compared to the other SD-WAN instances in the SD-WAN instance pool.

Removing an SD-WAN instance from an SD-WAN instance pool

To remove an SD-WAN instance from an SD-WAN instance pool:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **SD-WAN instance pools** section.

   A table of SD-WAN instance pools is displayed.

2. Click the SD-WAN instance pool from which you want to remove an SD-WAN instance.

   The settings area is displayed in the lower part of the page. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, the **Information** tab is selected, which displays general information about the SD-WAN instance pool.

3. Select the **SD-WAN instances** tab.

   A table of SD-WAN instances is displayed.

4. Click **Delete** next to the SD-WAN instance that you want to remove from the SD-WAN instance pool.

   The SD-WAN instance is removed from the SD-WAN instance pool and is no longer displayed in the table.

5. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the SD-WAN instance pool.

Deleting a pool of SD-WAN instances

When you delete an SD-WAN instance pool, all CPE devices added to that SD-WAN instance pool are automatically deleted. This does not delete SD-WAN instances.

Deleted SD-WAN instance pools cannot be restored.

To delete an SD-WAN instance pool:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **SD-WAN instance pools** section.

   A table of SD-WAN instance pools is displayed.

2. Click the SD-WAN instance pool that you want to delete.

   The settings area is displayed in the lower part of the page. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, the **Information** tab is selected, which displays general information about the SD-WAN instance pool.

3. In the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Delete**.

4. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

The SD-WAN instance pool is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

Managing CPE devices

CPE devices relay traffic between your organization's locations and clients, and also have direct access to the internet (DIA) without relaying traffic to the central office. By default, for building the SD-WAN network, an OpenFlow virtual switch (virtual switch; vSwitch) is installed on CPE devices. You can use CPE devices of the following types:

- CPE devices of the KESR (Kaspersky SD-WAN Edge Service Router) model purchased from Kaspersky.
- Virtual CPE devices (vCPE devices) deployed on virtual machines. When using vCPE devices, you must make sure that the virtual machines satisfy the hardware and software requirements.
- Universal CPE devices (uCPE devices) which support VIM and virtual network function deployment.

To manage CPE devices, you need to register them.

You can use *two-factor authentication* to register the CPE device securely. When two-factor authentication is enabled, a token (security key) is recorded in the orchestrator's database; you must then place this token on the CPE device when registering using the Zero Touch Provisioning technology. Registration succeeds if, when the CPE device automatically connects to the orchestrator, the token placed on the device matches the CPE token in the orchestrator database.

For centralized configuration of CPE devices, you can use CPE templates. To avoid configuring each CPE device individually, you can specify the settings in the CPE template and then apply the CPE template to CPE devices when adding or manually registering CPE devices. If you edit a setting in a CPE template, the setting is automatically modified on all CPE devices that are using this CPE template. If you edit a setting on the CPE device, the setting becomes independent of the CPE template, and if the setting is modified in the CPE template, it remains unchanged on the CPE device.

> Certain CPE device settings can only be specified in a CPE template, for example, the port number for connecting to the orchestrator.

When you remove a CPE device from the orchestrator web interface, the basic settings are retained on the CPE device. You can re-register the CPE device. When re-registering a CPE device, you cannot use two-factor authentication.

When adding and registering a CPE device, you can select if you want the CPE device to be automatically enabled after registration. When a CPE device is enabled, the CPE template is applied to it and the CPE device becomes available for relaying traffic.

You can reset the CPE device to factory defaults without removing it from the orchestrator by pressing the physical Reset button on the device. To do this, press and hold the button for 10 seconds. This functionality is available for KESR M1, M2, and M3 models.

About the interaction of the CPE device and the orchestrator

After registration, the CPE device sends REST API requests to the orchestrator to get tasks with a period specified when configuring the connection of the CPE device to the orchestrator and the controller. *Tasks* are actions that users perform with the CPE device, such as restarting the CPE device and updating firmware. REST API requests are needed to get tasks that are not associated with the virtual switch of the CPE device.

To view the table of tasks performed by the orchestrator on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** menu section and click the CPE device. Information about tasks is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Type** is the type of the task.
- **Status** is the status of the task:
  - **Await** means the task is saved in the orchestrator database and is waiting to be received by the CPE device.
  - **Executing** means the task is running.
  - **Completed** means the task is successfully completed.
  - **Error** means an error occurred while running the task.
- **Last update** is the date and time of the last update of the task.

The orchestrator runs tasks on the CPE device in the following way:

1. You run a task, such as modifying BGP settings, on the CPE device using the orchestrator web interface.
2. The orchestrator saves the task in the database. In the table, the task is displayed with the **Await** status.
3. The CPE device receives the task when it sends a REST API request to the orchestrator. In the table, the task is displayed with the **Executing** status.
4. If the task finishes successfully, the CPE device reports this to the orchestrator. In the table, the task is displayed with the **Completed** status.

   If the task fails, it is displayed in the table with the **Error** status.

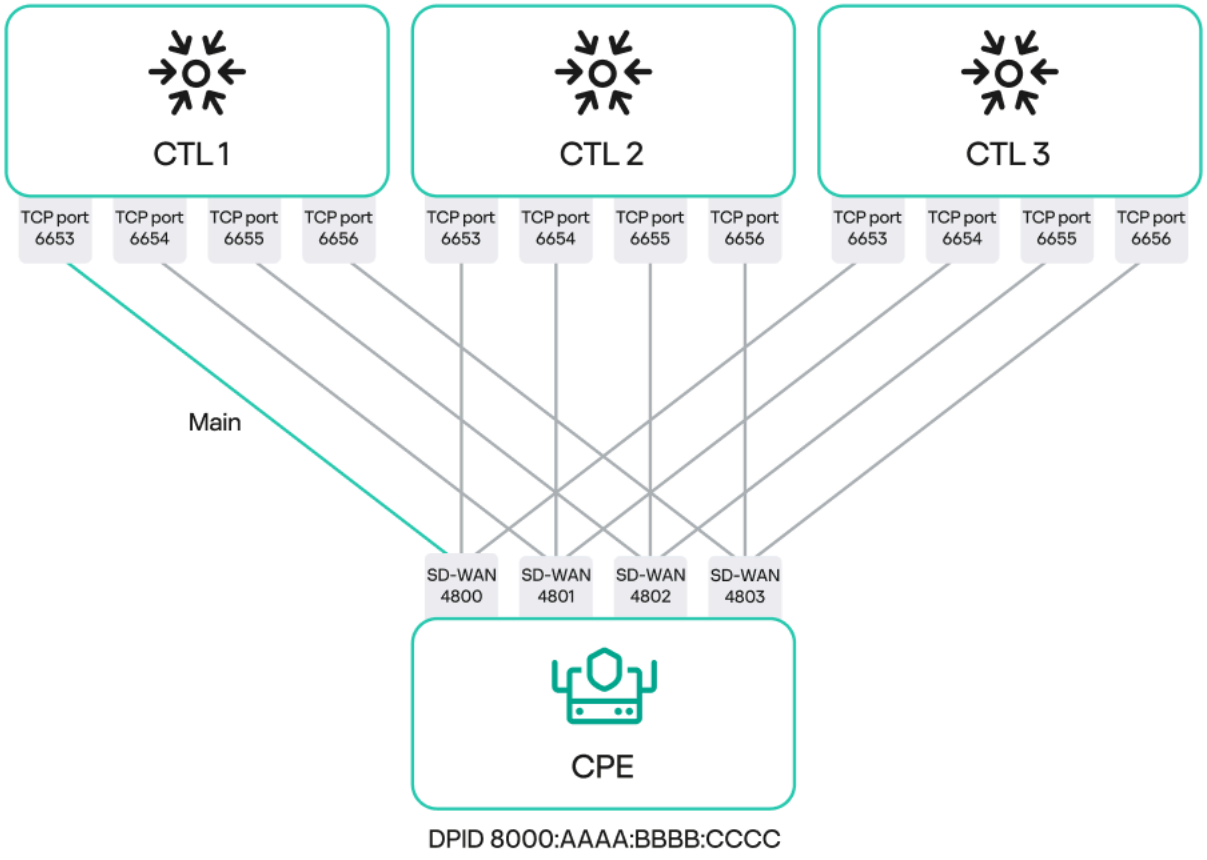
Before running the task, the current settings on the CPE device are saved. If the CPE device cannot send a confirmation message to the orchestrator after successful completion of the task, after three attempts the previous settings are restored on the CPE device, and the table displays the task with the **Error** status.

About the interaction of the CPE device and the controller

After the CPE device is registered, *management sessions* are established between its SD-WAN interfaces of the WAN type and the TCP ports of controller nodes. One of the management sessions is the primary session, and the others are in standby mode. The primary management session is used to transmit tasks related to managing the virtual switch of the CPE device, such as modifying path settings. If the primary management session is terminated, a new primary management session is chosen randomly from previously established management sessions.

Management sessions are established by matching OpenFlow port numbers referenced by SD-WAN interfaces of the WAN type to TCP port numbers of the controller nodes, based on their order. For example, in the figure below, the CPE device has four SD-WAN interfaces that reference OpenFlow ports 4800, 4801, 4802, and 4803. CTL 1–3 controller nodes have TCP ports 6653, 6654, 6655, 6656. In this case, management sessions are established as follows:

- SD-WAN 4800 → 6653
- SD-WAN 4801 → 6654
- SD-WAN 4802 → 6655
- SD-WAN 4803 → 6656



Management sessions between a CPE device and three controller nodes

Management sessions can be configured while configuring the connection of the CPE device to the orchestrator and controller. For example, you can select an SD-WAN interface of the WAN type to prioritize it for the purposes of establishing the primary management session; you can also enable or disable encryption for management sessions.

You can change the IP addresses and TCP port numbers of the controller nodes while configuring the controller nodes of an SD-WAN instance. This automatically changes the IP addresses and TCP port numbers of controller nodes on all CPE devices that are added to the SD-WAN instance. If SD-WAN interfaces of the WAN type of the CPE device are connected to different networks, for example, the internet and a private MPLS network, you can change the IP addresses and TCP port numbers of controller nodes on individual SD-WAN interfaces of the WAN type when you create or edit SD-WAN interfaces of the WAN type. The IP addresses and TCP port numbers specified on an individual SD-WAN interface of the WAN type take precedence over the IP addresses and TCP port numbers specified when configuring the controller nodes of the SD-WAN instance.

To view the table of CPE devices with information about management sessions, go to the **Infrastructure** menu section, click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller, and go to the **Switches** section. Information about management sessions is displayed in the following table columns:

- **Name** is the name of the CPE device.
- **Order** is the sequence number of the CPE device. The smallest number is assigned to the CPE device that connects to the controller first.
- **Status** is the status of the CPE device in relation to the controller:
  - **Active** means the CPE device can be used to relay traffic.
  - **Inactive** means the CPE device cannot be used to relay traffic.
- **Connection** is the status of the CPE device connection to the controller:
  - **Connected** means management sessions are established between the CPE device and the controller nodes.
  - **Disconnected** means no management sessions are established between the CPE device and the controller nodes.
- **MAC** is the MAC address of the CPE device.
- **Interface** are SD-WAN interfaces of the WAN type from which management sessions are established.
- **Primary session** is the SD-WAN interface of the WAN type from which the primary management session is established:
  - **Yes**.
  - **No**.
- **IP address** is the IP address which the SD-WAN interface of the WAN type used to establish the management session.
- **Port** is the TCP port which the SD-WAN interface of the WAN type used to establish the management session.
- **Created** is the date and time when the CPE device was registered.
- **Location** is the address of the CPE device location.

- **Latency (ms)** is the latency in milliseconds of the management session.
- **Description** is a brief description of the CPE device.

Default credentials of KESR CPE devices

All CPE devices of the KESR (Kaspersky SD-WAN Edge Service Router) model have the same default credentials:

- User name: `root`
- Password: `123-qwe`

You must enter these credentials to connect to an unregistered KESR CPE device over SSH or to establish a console session with it. After registration, the default password of the CPE device is automatically changed. You can view the CPE device password in the orchestrator web interface.

Registering CPE devices

The following scenarios exists for registering CPE devices:

- Registering a CPE device using the Zero Touch Provisioning (ZTP) technology. This scenario applies to new CPE devices that have not been previously registered.
- Deploying a vCPE device on the VMware virtualization platform and registering it using the Zero Touch Provisioning technology. This scenario applies to virtual CPE devices that are deployed on virtual machines.
- Repeated registration of a CPE device. This scenario applies to previously registered CPE devices that have been deleted.

When registering a CPE device, you do not need to connect to the Kaspersky license activation and update servers, or to the KSN (Kaspersky Security Network) servers. If an error occurs during the registration of a CPE device, you can resume the registration of the CPE device.

Scenario: Automatic registration of a CPE device using the Zero Touch Provisioning technology.

You can register new CPE devices using Zero Touch Provisioning (ZTP). ZTP allows a CPE device to automatically connect to the orchestrator.

When using ZTP, you must generate an URL with the basic CPE device settings. *Basic settings* are those settings that are necessary to automatically connect a CPE device to the orchestrator. To complete the registration, you must connect the administrator device to the CPE device and visit the generated basic settings URL on the administrator device.

The ZTP registration scenario for a CPE device involves the following steps:

1. **Creating a CPE template**

Create and configure a CPE template. For details on managing CPE templates, see Managing CPE templates. You can use the created CPE template to configure other CPE devices.

2. **Adding a CPE device**

   Add a CPE device. When adding the CPE device, assign the created CPE template to it and select whether the CPE device must automatically turn on after registration. The added CPE device has the **Waiting** status. For details on managing CPE devices, see Managing CPE devices.

3. **Two-factor authentication (optional step)**

   If you want to register your CPE device securely, use two-factor authentication.

4. **Generating an URL with basic settings**

   Generate an URL with basic CPE device settings.

5. **Registering the CPE device**

   Do the following:

   1. Connect the administrator device to the LAN port of the CPE device.

      The administrator device gets an IP address and the IP address of the default gateway via DHCP. The received IP address of the default gateway is the IP address of the CPE device.

   2. Visit the generated basic settings URL of the CPE device on the administrator device in one of the following ways:

      - In the address bar of the browser, enter the basic settings URL of the CPE device and press **Enter**.
      - Open the HTML file that you saved when generating the basic settings URL of the CPE device.

   3. On the opened page, click the **Apply configuration** button.

   The CPE device automatically connects to the orchestrator, binds to the added CPE device in the orchestrator web interface, and registers itself. A registered CPE device has the **Registered** status and is in the **Enabled** or **Disabled** state.

6. **Enabling the CPE device (optional step)**

   If, when adding the CPE device, you specified that it must not be enabled automatically, enable the CPE device. An enabled CPE device has the **Registered** status and is in the **Enabled** state.

7. **Enabling traffic encryption on the CPE device (optional step)**

   If you want to use traffic encryption on the CPE device, enable it for the entire device or for a specific link.

Scenario: Deploying a vCPE device on the VMware virtualization platform and registering it using the Zero Touch Provisioning technology

You can deploy a vCPE device on the VMware virtualization platform using an OVF template, and then register the vCPE device using ZTP.

The *OVF template* is the knaas-cpe_<firmware version>.release.<solution version number>.combined.adm64-legacy.vKESR-M1-esxi.tar.gz archive that you can find in the /cpe directory of the distribution kit; the archive includes the following files:

- vKESR.mf contains the SHA256 hash of the OVF template files.
- vKESR.nvram contains the BIOS state of the virtual machine.
- vKESR.ovf is the descriptor containing information about the settings of the virtual machine.
- vKESR.vmdk is the disk image of the virtual machine.

You need to download the OVF template and extract it on your local device before performing this scenario.

The scenario for the deployment on the VMware virtualization platform and ZTP registration of a vCPE device involves the following steps:

1. **Creating a vCPE template**

   Create and configure a vCPE template. For details on managing vCPE templates, see Managing vCPE templates. You can use the created vCPE template to configure other vCPE devices.

2. **Adding a vCPE device**

   Add a vCPE device. When adding a vCPE device:

   - Specify the created vCPE template.
   - Select whether you want the vCPE device to be powered on automatically after registration.
   - Specify a temporary DPID of the vCPE device, for example, `temporary DPID`.

   The added vCPE device has the **Waiting** status. For details on managing vCPE devices, see Managing CPE devices.

3. **Two-factor authentication (optional step)**

   If you want to register your vCPE device securely, use two-factor authentication.

4. **Generating an URL with basic settings**

   Generate an URL with basic vCPE device settings.

5. **Deploying a vCPE device on the VMware virtualization platform**

   In the web interface of the VMware virtualization platform, create a virtual machine for deploying the vCPE device. Make sure that the virtual machine you are creating satisfies the hardware and software requirements. When creating the virtual machine:

   1. Select how you want to create the virtual machine, using the OVF standard or an OVA file.
   2. When selecting VDMK files, specify the files of the OVF template extracted on the local device.
   3. When configuring advanced settings, specify the generated URL with basic settings.

   For details about creating virtual machines, please refer to the official VMware documentation.

   If the settings are applied successfully, the vCPE device automatically connects to the orchestrator and is displayed in the orchestrator web interface with the **Unknown** status.

6. **Registering a vCPE device**

   Change the temporary DPID that you specified when adding the vCPE device to the actual DPID of the vCPE device. The actual DPID of the vCPE device is the host name of the virtual machine on which the vCPE device is deployed. The host name of the virtual machine is displayed in the web interface of the VMware virtualization platform.

   The vCPE device binds to the added vCPE device in the orchestrator web interface, and registers itself. A registered vCPE device has the **Registered** status and is in the **Enabled** or **Disabled** state.

7. **Enabling the vCPE (optional step)**

   If, when adding the vCPE device, you specified that it must not be enabled automatically, enable the vCPE device. An enabled vCPE device has the **Registered** status and is in the **Enabled** state.

Scenario: Re-registering a CPE device

If you delete a CPE device, the basic settings are kept on it. You can re-register a remote CPE without using ZTP.

> When re-registering a CPE device, you cannot use two-factor authentication. If you want to use two-factor authentication, register your CPE device using ZTP.

The CPE device re-registration scenario involves the following steps:

1. **Restoring the CPE device firmware to the initial condition**

   Connect to the CPE device over SSH. To do so, specify the IP address and enter the credentials of the CPE device. Then run the following command:

   ```
   firstboot && reboot
   ```

2. **Creating a CPE template**

   Create and configure a CPE template. For details on managing CPE templates, see Managing CPE templates. You can use the created CPE template to configure other CPE devices.

3. **Connecting the CPE device to the orchestrator**

   Disconnect and reconnect the CPE device power cable to have the CPE device reset and connect to the orchestrator. If the connection is successful, the CPE device is displayed in the orchestrator web interface with the **Unknown** status.

4. **Manually registering a CPE device**

   Manually register the CPE device. When manually registering the CPE device, assign the created CPE template to it and select whether the CPE device must automatically turn on after registration. A registered device has the **Registered** status and is in the **Enabled** or **Disabled** state. For details on managing CPE devices, see Managing CPE devices.

5. **Enabling the CPE device (optional step)**

   If, when manually registering the CPE device, you specified that it must not be enabled automatically, turn on the CPE device. An enabled CPE device has the **Registered** status and is in the **Enabled** state.

Resuming CPE device registration in case of an error

If an error occurs when registering a CPE device, the status of the CPE device changes to **Suspended** and registration is not completed.

To resume the registration of a CPE device:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** section.

   A table of CPE devices is displayed.

2. In the **Status** column, click the status of the CPE device.

   The log of the service request is displayed.

3. Click the step at which the error occurred to view information about possible causes, as well as the steps to correct the error.

4. If you want to cancel the registration of the CPE device, click **Cancel**.

5. After completing the steps to correct the error, click **Resume** to resume the registration of the CPE device. In some cases, the CPE device needs to be restarted after resuming the registration process.

The CPE device is re-registered.

If you are unable to register a CPE device, we recommend contacting Kaspersky Technical Support.

Managing CPE templates

You can view the table of CPE templates in the **SD-WAN** →**CPE templates** section. Information about CPE templates is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **ID** is the ID of the CPE template.
- **Name** is the name of the CPE template.
- **Usage** specifies whether the CPE devices use a CPE template:
  - **Yes**.
  - **No**.
- **Updated** is the date and time when the CPE template settings were last modified.
- **User** is the name of the user which created the CPE template.
- **Owner** is the tenant to which the CPE template belongs.

The actions that you can perform with the table are described in the Managing solution component tables article.

You can manage CPE template settings on the following tabs:

- **Information** is the basic information about the CPE template. You can edit the name of the CPE template in the **Name** field.
- **Multipathing** are the path settings.
- **Deactivation** are settings for automatically removing and disabling the CPE device.
- **Encryption** are the traffic encryption settings.
- **Scripts** are scripts for additional configuration of the CPE device.
- **SD-WAN** are connection settings of a CPE device to the SD-WAN network The following tabs are displayed on this tab:
  - **General settings** contains the connection settings of a CPE device to the orchestrator and controller.
  - **Interfaces** contains SD-WAN interfaces.
- **Topology** contains topology tags for establishing links between CPE devices.
- **Network** contains network interfaces.
- **BGP** contains the BGP protocol settings for exchanging routes between CPE devices and external network devices.
- **VRF** contains virtual routing and forwarding tables.
- **OSPF** covers the OSPF protocol for route exchange between CPE devices and external network devices. The following tabs are displayed on this tab:
  - **General settings** contains basic settings of the OSPF protocol.
  - **OSPF areas** contains OSPF areas.
  - **OSPF interfaces** contains OSPF interfaces.
- **Routing filters** contains settings for filtering routes and traffic packets between CPE devices and external network devices. The following tabs are displayed on this tab:
  - **Access control lists** contains access control lists (ACLs).
  - **Prefix lists** contains prefix lists.
  - **Route maps** contains route maps.
- **BFD** covers the BFD protocol for detecting routing failures between CPE devices and external network devices.
- **Static routes** contains static routes.

- **Multicast** contains settings for transmission of multicast traffic between CPE devices and external network devices using the PIM and IGMP protocols. The following tabs are displayed on this tab:
  - **General settings** contains basic PIM settings.
  - **Interfaces** contains multicast interfaces.
- **VRRP** covers the VRRP protocol for high availability of CPE devices. The following tabs are displayed on this tab:
  - **VRRP instances** contains VRRP instances.
  - **VRRP instance groups** contains VRRP instance groups.
- **CFM** contains settings of the Connectivity Fault Management (CFM) functionality.
- **Monitoring** contains CPE device monitoring settings.
- **Transport services** contains transport services.
- **Log files** contains logging settings.
- **NTP** contains NTP servers for time synchronization.
- **VIM** contains VIM settings. This tab is displayed only if the **uCPE** type is selected when creating the template.

Creating a CPE template

To create a CPE template:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE templates** section.

   A table of CPE templates is displayed.

2. In the upper part of the page, click **+ CPE template**.
3. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Name** field, enter the name of the CPE template.
4. In the **Type** drop-down list, select the CPE template type:
   - **CPE** for a standard CPE device template. This is the default setting.
   - **uCPE** for a uCPE device template. uCPE devices include a hypervisor, which lets you deploy virtual network functions and VIMs on the uCPE device.
5. Click **Create**.

The CPE template is created and displayed in the table.

You need to configure the created CPE template. For details on managing CPE templates, see Managing CPE templates.

Importing a CPE template

You can export a CPE template and then import it into another CPE template. CPE template settings are specified in accordance with the settings of the imported CPE template. During import, you can select the tabs that you want to leave unchanged.

To import a CPE template:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** section.

   A table of CPE templates is displayed.

2. Click the CPE template that you want to export.

   The settings area is displayed in the lower part of the page. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, the **Information** tab is selected, which displays general information about the CPE template.

3. In the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Export**.

   A TAR.GZ archive with the following data is saved on your local device:

   - A file with the description of the CPE template in XML format. The version of the template is indicated in the description.
   - Script files.
   - Files required to run scripts, such as SSL certificates.

   The archive does not contain information about CPE devices using the CPE template.

4. Click the CPE template into which you want to import the CPE template.

   The settings area is displayed in the lower part of the page. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, the **Information** tab is selected, which displays general information about the CPE template.

5. In the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Import**.

6. This opens a window; in that window, clear the check boxes next to the CPE template tabs that you want to leave unchanged after import.

7. In the **File** field, specify the path to the TAR.GZ archive.

8. Click **Import**.

CPE template settings are modified in accordance with the settings of the imported CPE template.

Cloning a CPE template

You can clone a CPE template to create an identical CPE template with a different name.

To clone a CPE template:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** section.

   A table of CPE templates is displayed.

2. Click the CPE template that you want to clone.

   The settings area is displayed in the lower part of the page. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, the **Information** tab is selected, which displays general information about the CPE template.

3. In the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Clone**.

4. This opens a window; in that window, enter the name of the new CPE template.

5. Click **Clone**.

A clone of the CPE template with the new name is created and displayed in the table.

Exporting orchestrator and controller connection settings and SD-WAN interfaces from a CPE template

To export orchestrator and controller connection settings and SD-WAN interfaces from a CPE template:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** section.

   A table of CPE templates is displayed.

2. Click the CPE template from which you want to export orchestrator and controller connection settings and SD-WAN interfaces.

   The settings area is displayed in the lower part of the page. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, the **Information** tab is selected, which displays general information about the CPE template.

3. In the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Export SD-WAN settings**.

A JSON file named <Template name>sdwan-config is saved to your local device.

Exporting network interfaces from a CPE template

To export network interfaces from a CPE template:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE templates** section.

   A table of CPE templates is displayed.

2. Click the CPE template from which you want to export network interfaces.

   The settings area is displayed in the lower part of the page. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, the **Information** tab is selected, which displays general information about the CPE template.

3. In the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Export network interfaces**.

A file in JSON format with the name <Template name>-network-config is saved to your local device.

Viewing the usage of a CPE template

If necessary, you can check which CPE devices are using the CPE template. For example, if a CPE template is in use, it cannot be deleted.

To see if a CPE template is being used:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE templates** section.

   A table of CPE templates is displayed.

2. Click the CPE template for which you want to view usage information.

   The settings area is displayed in the lower part of the page. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, the **Information** tab is selected, which displays general information about the CPE template.

3. In the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Show associated CPEs**.

The **CPE** section is displayed with a table of CPE devices that are using the CPE template.

Deleting a CPE template

You cannot delete a CPE template if it is being used by at least one CPE device. To delete a CPE template that is being used by CPE devices, you must first delete the CPE devices. You can check which CPE devices are using the CPE template.

Deleted CPE templates cannot be restored.

To delete a CPE template:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** section.

   A table of CPE templates is displayed.

2. Click the CPE template that you want to delete.

   The settings area is displayed in the lower part of the page. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, the **Information** tab is selected, which displays general information about the CPE template.

3. In the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Delete**.

4. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

The CPE template is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

Managing CPE devices

You can view the table of CPE devices in the **SD-WAN →CPE** section. Information about CPE devices is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **DPID** is the DPID of the CPE device.
- **S/N** is the serial number of the CPE device.
- **Model** is the model of the CPE device.
- **Switch type** is the type of software switch that the CPE device firmware is based on (OVS or SWOS).
- **SW version** is the firmware version of the CPE device. Outdated firmware is highlighted in orange.
- **CPE template** is the CPE template used by the CPE device.
- **Name** is the name of the CPE device.
- **Role** is the role of the CPE device:
  - **CPE**
  - **Gateway**

- **Status** is the status of the CPE device.
  - **Unknown** means the CPE device is connected to the orchestrator but is not registered.
  - **Waiting** means the CPE device has been added in the orchestrator web interface, but it is not connected to the orchestrator.
  - **Registering** means the CPE device is being registered.
  - **Error** means an error occurred while registering the CPE device.
  - **Registered** means the CPE device has been registered successfully.
  - **Configuration** means that scripts are being started on the CPE device.
  - **Suspended** means that while registering the CPE device, an error occurred and registration was not completed.
- **State** is the state of the CPE device:
  - **Enabled** means the assigned CPE template has been applied to the CPE device on the orchestrator side. On the controller side, the CPE device can be used to relay traffic.
  - **Disabled** (in the **Waiting** status) means the assigned CPE template has not been applied to the CPE device on the orchestrator side. On the controller side, the CPE device cannot be used to relay traffic.
  - **Disabled** (in the **Registered** status) means the orchestrator does not respond to REST API requests from the CPE device. On the controller side, the transmission of traffic through links is blocked for the CPE device.
- **Connection** contains information on whether the CPE device is connected to the controller:
  - **Connected**
  - **Disconnected**
- **Topology tags** contains topology tags that have been assigned to the CPE device.
- **Fragmentation** is the result of checking for fragmentation of traffic packets on the CPE device:
  - **Unsupported** means the CPE device cannot transmit fragmented packets.
  - **Unknown** means packet fragmentation cannot be checked on the CPE device.
  - **Supported** means the device can transmit fragmented packets.
- **Transport tenant** is the transport tenant to which the CPE device is added. The CPE device connects to the controller of the SD-WAN instance that is deployed for the transport tenant.
- **Customer tenant** is the customer tenant to which the CPE device is added. The customer tenant can manage the CPE device in its self-service portal.
- **Location** is the address of the CPE device.
- **Management IP** is the IP address assigned to the CPE device by the management subnet.

- **Controllers** are IP addresses and port number of controller nodes to which the CPE device is connected.
- **Gateways** are IP addresses and port numbers of gateways to which the CPE device is connected.
- **Mobile network** is the mobile network to which the CPE device is connected.
- **Registered** is the date and time when the CPE device was registered.
- **Update** is the date and time when the CPE device settings were last modified.
- **User** is the name of the user which created the CPE device.

The actions that you can perform with the table are described in the Managing solution component tables article.

You can view and manage CPE device settings by clicking its name in the table to open a window and selecting a sidebar section:

- **Configuration** is the basic information about the CPE device. You can view information in the following columns of the **Device information** table:
  - **Model** is the model of the CPE device.
  - **SW version** is the firmware version of the CPE device. Outdated firmware is highlighted in orange.
  - **Controller** are IP addresses and port number of controller nodes to which the CPE device is connected.
  - **Gateways** are IP addresses and port numbers of gateways to which the CPE device is connected.
  - **User** is the name of the user which created the CPE device.
  - **Registered** is the date and time when the CPE device was registered.
  - **Update** is the date and time when the CPE device settings were last modified.
  - **Management IP** is the IP address assigned to the CPE device by the management subnet.
  - **State** is the state of the CPE device:
    - **Enabled** means the assigned CPE template has been applied to the CPE device on the orchestrator side. On the controller side, the CPE device can be used to relay traffic.
    - **Disabled** (in the **Waiting** status) means the assigned CPE template has not been applied to the CPE device on the orchestrator side. On the controller side, the CPE device cannot be used to relay traffic.
    - **Disabled** (in the **Registered** status) means the orchestrator does not respond to REST API requests from the CPE device. On the controller side, the transmission of traffic through links is blocked for the CPE device.
  - **Connection** contains information on whether the CPE device is connected to the controller:
    - **Connected**
    - **Disconnected**

  You can enter a brief description of the CPE device in the **Description** field and view the tasks being performed by the orchestrator in the **Out-of-band management** table.
- **Monitoring** are CPE device monitoring results.
- **Problems** are problems that occurred while the CPE device was operational. In case of any problems, a red exclamation mark is displayed next to the tab.
- **Encryption** are the traffic encryption settings.
- **Service requests** are service requests of the CPE device.
- **Tags** are tags for grouping CPE devices.
- **Scripts** are scripts for additional configuration of the CPE device.

- **SD-WAN** are connection settings of a CPE device to the SD-WAN network The following tabs are displayed on this tab:
  - **General settings** contains the connection settings of a CPE device to the orchestrator and controller.
  - **Interfaces** contains SD-WAN interfaces.
- **Topology** contains topology tags for establishing links between CPE devices.
- **Network** contains network interfaces.
- **DHCP** contains DHCP settings.
- **Firewall** contains firewall settings.
- **VRF** contains virtual routing and forwarding tables.
  - **BGP** contains the BGP protocol settings for exchanging routes between CPE devices and external network devices.
- **OSPF** covers the OSPF protocol for route exchange between CPE devices and external network devices. The following tabs are displayed on this tab:
  - **General settings** contains basic settings of the OSPF protocol.
  - **OSPF areas** contains OSPF areas.
  - **OSPF interfaces** contains OSPF interfaces.
- **Routing filters** contains settings for filtering routes and traffic packets between CPE devices and external network devices. The following tabs are displayed on this tab:
  - **Access control lists** contains access control lists (ACLs).
  - **Prefix lists** contains prefix lists.
  - **Route maps** contains route maps.
- **PBR** contains policy-based routing (PBR) settings.
- **BFD** covers the BFD protocol for detecting routing failures between CPE devices and external network devices.
- **Static routes** contains static routes.
- **Multicast** contains settings for transmission of multicast traffic between CPE devices and external network devices using the PIM and IGMP protocols. The following tabs are displayed on this tab:
  - **General settings** contains basic PIM settings.
  - **Interfaces** contains multicast interfaces.

- **VRRP** covers the VRRP protocol for high availability of CPE devices. The following tabs are displayed on this tab:
  - **VRRP instances** contains VRRP instances.
  - **VRRP instance groups** contains VRRP instance groups.
- **CFM** contains settings of the Connectivity Fault Management (CFM) functionality.
- **UNIs** are UNIs on the CPE device.
- **Modems** are CPE device modem settings.
- **Links** contains link settings.
- **Multipathing** are the path settings.
- **Activation** are two-factor authentication settings of the CPE device.
- **Deactivation** are settings for automatically removing and disabling the CPE device.
- **Log files** contains logging settings.
- **NetFlow** contains basic NetFlow settings.
- **NTP** displays NTP servers used for time synchronization.
- **Diagnostic information** displays requests for CPE device diagnostic information.
- **Utilities** displays utilities for diagnosing CPE devices.

Adding a CPE device

You need to add a CPE device if you are automatically registering it (ZTP). When adding a CPE device, you must specify the DPID that will be used to match the added record with the CPE device that you will connect later. You can add a CPE device to the current SD-WAN instance, a tenant, or a different SD-WAN instance.

To add a CPE device:

1. Add a CPE device in one of the following ways:
   - If you want to add a CPE device to the current SD-WAN instance, in the menu, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** section and in the upper part of the page, click **+ CPE**.
   - If you want to add a CPE device to a tenant, in the menu, go to the **Tenants** section, under **Tenants**, select the created tenant, and under **CPEs**, click **+ CPE**.
   - If you want to add a CPE device to a different SD-WAN instance, navigate to the **SD-WAN → SD-WAN instances** subsection, click a deployed SD-WAN instance, and in the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Create**.
2. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Name** field, enter the name of the CPE device.

3. In the **DPID** field, enter the DPID of the CPE device. You can find the DPID on the box of the CPE device.

   If the CPE device does not have a DPID, you can specify a temporary DPID, for example, `temporary DPID`. You can replace the temporary DPID with the actual DPID.

4. In the **State** drop-down list, select the CPE device state after registration:

   - **Enabled** to apply a CPE template to the CPE device and use it to relay traffic. This is the default setting.
   - **Disabled** to not apply a CPE template to the CPE device.

5. If necessary, in the **Description** field, enter a brief description of the CPE device.

6. If you are adding a CPE device to an SD-WAN instance, in the **Tenant** drop-down list, select the transport tenant to which you want to add the CPE device. The CPE device connects to the controller of the SD-WAN instance that is deployed for the transport tenant. You can select an SD-WAN instance pool.

7. In the **Customer tenant** drop-down list, select the customer tenant to which you want to add the CPE device. The customer tenant can manage the CPE device in its self-service portal.

8. If you want to create a UNI on the CPE device using a UNI template, in the **UNI template** drop-down list, select the created UNI template.

9. In the **CPE template** drop-down list, select the created CPE template which you want to use to configure the CPE device.

10. In the **NetFlow template** drop-down list, select the created NetFlow template that you want to use to configure basic NetFlow settings on the CPE device.

11. In the **Firewall template** drop-down list, select the created firewall template which you want to use to configure the firewall of the CPE device.

12. Click **Next** and specify the address of the CPE device location in the **Address** field. As you enter the address, you are prompted to select an address from a drop-down list.

    The address is displayed on the map.

13. Click **Add**.

The device is added, its status changes to **Waiting**, and you get one of the following results:

- If you added the CPE device to the current SD-WAN instance, the CPE device is displayed in the table.
- If you added the CPE device to a tenant, the CPE device is displayed under **CPEs**.
- If you added the CPE device to a different SD-WAN instance, the self-service portal is opened in a new browser tab. You are automatically logged in to the self-service portal and taken to the **CPE** subsection. The CPE device is added to the table.

Generating an URL with basic CPE device settings

For automatic registration of a CPE device, you need to generate a web address with the basic settings of the CPE device. You can specify the template of the generated URL when configuring the connection of the CPE device to the orchestrator and controller. The generated URL contains the following information:

- NTP Servers
- Network interfaces
- Settings for connecting the CPE device to the orchestrator and controller and SD-WAN interfaces
- Certificates
- BGP settings
- The token if two-factor authentication is being used
- Virtual routing and forwarding tables

The maximum size of a URL with basic CPE device settings may not exceed 64 KB.

To generate a URL with basic CPE device settings:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** section.

   A table of CPE devices is displayed.

2. Click the CPE device for which you want to generate a URL with basic settings.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, in the menu on the left, the **Configuration** section is selected, which displays general information about the CPE device. This section also displays the table of **Out-of-band management** tasks being performed by the orchestrator.

3. In the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Get configuration URL**.

4. This opens a window; in that window, save the URL with basic CPE device settings in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to copy the URL, click **Copy** next to it.
   - If you want to save the URL as an HTML file, click **Save to HTML** next to it.

   You need to connect an administrator device to the LAN port of the CPE device and use the saved URL with basic settings to automatically register the CPE device.

   If you need to install certificates on a CPE device with firmware version 23.07, follow the steps described in the Scenario: installing certificates on a CPE device with firmware version 23.07 article.

Manually registering a CPE device

You must manually register the CPE device in the web interface when re-registering the CPE device. Registration does not require connecting to Kaspersky cloud services.

To manually register a CPE device:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** section.

   A table of CPE devices is displayed.

2. Click the CPE device that you want to manually register.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, in the menu on the left, the **Configuration** section is selected, which displays general information about the CPE device. This section also displays the table of **Out-of-band management** tasks being performed by the orchestrator.

3. In the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Register**.

4. This opens a window; in that window, in the **State** drop-down list, select the CPE device state after registration:

   - **Enabled** to apply a CPE template to the CPE device and use it to relay traffic. This is the default setting.
   - **Disabled** to not apply a CPE template to the CPE device.

5. If necessary, in the **Description** field, enter a brief description of the CPE device.

6. In the **Tenant** drop-down list, select the transport tenant to which you want to add the CPE device. The CPE device connects to the controller of the SD-WAN instance that is deployed for the transport tenant. You can select an SD-WAN instance pool.

7. In the **Customer tenant** drop-down list, select the customer tenant to which you want to add the CPE device. The customer tenant can manage the CPE device in its self-service portal.

8. If you want to create a UNI on the CPE device using a UNI template, in the **UNI template** drop-down list, select the created UNI template.

9. In the **CPE template** drop-down list, select the created CPE template which you want to use to configure the CPE device.

10. In the **NetFlow template** drop-down list, select the created NetFlow template that you want to use to configure basic NetFlow settings on the CPE device.

11. In the **Firewall template** drop-down list, select the created firewall template which you want to use to configure the firewall of the CPE device.

12. Click **Next** and specify the address of the CPE device location in the **Address** field. As you enter the address, you are prompted to select an address from a drop-down list.

    The address is displayed on the map.

13. Click **Register**.

The CPE device status changes first to **Registering**, then to **Registered**.

Unregistering a CPE device

To unregister a CPE device:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** section.

   A table of CPE devices is displayed.

2. Click the CPE device that you want to unregister.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, in the menu on the left, the **Configuration** section is selected, which displays general information about the CPE device. This section also displays the table of **Out-of-band management** tasks being performed by the orchestrator.

3. In the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Unregister**.

4. In the confirmation window, click **Unregister**.

The CPE device is unregistered and the CPE device status changes to **Waiting**.

Specifying the address of a CPE device

To specify the address of a CPE device:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** section.

   A table of CPE devices is displayed.

2. Click the CPE device whose address you want to specify.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, in the menu on the left, the **Configuration** section is selected, which displays general information about the CPE device. This section also displays the table of **Out-of-band management** tasks being performed by the orchestrator.

3. In the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Set location**.

4. This opens a window; in that window, enter the address of the CPE device's location. As you enter the address, you are prompted to select an address from a drop-down list.

   The address is displayed on the map.

5. Click **Save**.

The address of the CPE device is specified.

Enabling and disabling a CPE device

When a CPE device is enabled, a CPE template is applied to it. Disabled CPE devices cannot be used to relay traffic.

To enable or disable a CPE device:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** section.

   A table of CPE devices is displayed.

2. Click the CPE device that you want to enable or disable.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, in the menu on the left, the **Configuration** section is selected, which displays general information about the CPE device. This section also displays the table of **Out-of-band management** tasks being performed by the orchestrator.

3. In the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Enable** or **Disable**.

The CPE device is enabled or disabled.

Restarting a CPE device

To restart a CPE device:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** section.

   A table of CPE devices is displayed.

2. Click the CPE device that you want to restart.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, in the menu on the left, the **Configuration** section is selected, which displays general information about the CPE device. This section also displays the table of **Out-of-band management** tasks being performed by the orchestrator.

3. In the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Reboot**.

4. In the confirmation window, click **Reboot**.

The CPE device is restarted.

Shutting down a CPE device

You can power off the CPE device in the orchestrator web interface, or by disconnecting the power cable from the CPE device. When the power is turned off in the orchestrator web interface, the `shutdown` command is sent to the operating system of the CPE device.

To power off the CPE device in the orchestrator web interface:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** section.

   A table of CPE devices is displayed.

2. Click the CPE device that you want to shut down.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, in the menu on the left, the **Configuration** section is selected, which displays general information about the CPE device. This section also displays the table of **Out-of-band management** tasks being performed by the orchestrator.

3. In the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Shutdown**.
4. In the confirmation window, click **Shutdown**.

The CPE device is shut down.

Connecting to the CPE device console

To connect to the console of a CPE device:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** section.

   A table of CPE devices is displayed.

2. Click the CPE device to whose console you want to connect.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, in the menu on the left, the **Configuration** section is selected, which displays general information about the CPE device. This section also displays the table of **Out-of-band management** tasks being performed by the orchestrator.

3. In the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Open SSH console**.

This opens the CPE device console window in a new browser tab.

Viewing the password of a CPE device

To view the password of a CPE device:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** section.

   A table of CPE devices is displayed.

2. Click the CPE device whose password you want to view.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, in the menu on the left, the **Configuration** section is selected, which displays general information about the CPE device. This section also displays the table of **Out-of-band management** tasks being performed by the orchestrator.

3. In the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Show password**.

This opens a window with the CPE device password.

Exporting orchestrator and controller connection settings and SD-WAN interfaces from a CPE device

To export orchestrator and controller connection settings and SD-WAN interfaces from a CPE device:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** section.

   A table of CPE devices is displayed.

2. Click the CPE device from which you want to export orchestrator and controller connection settings and SD-WAN interfaces.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, in the menu on the left, the **Configuration** section is selected, which displays general information about the CPE device. This section also displays the table of **Out-of-band management** tasks being performed by the orchestrator.

3. In the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Export SD-WAN settings**.

A JSON file named <Template name>sdwan-config is saved to your local device.

Exporting network interfaces from a CPE device

To export network interfaces from a CPE device:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** section.

   A table of CPE devices is displayed.

2. Click the CPE device from which you want to export network interfaces.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, in the menu on the left, the **Configuration** section is selected, which displays general information about the CPE device. This section also displays the table of **Out-of-band management** tasks being performed by the orchestrator.

3. In the upper part, under **Actions** click **Export network interfaces**.

A file in JSON format with the name <Template name>-network-config is saved to your local device.

Changing the DPID of a CPE device

You need to change the DPID when deploying a vCPE device on the VMware virtualization platform and automatically registering it.

To change the DPID of a CPE device:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** section.

   A table of CPE devices is displayed.

2. Click the CPE device whose DPID you want to change.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, in the menu on the left, the **Configuration** section is selected, which displays general information about the CPE device. This section also displays the table of **Out-of-band management** tasks being performed by the orchestrator.

3. In the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Change DPID**.

4. This opens a window; in that window, enter the new DPID of the CPE device.

5. Click **Save**.

The DPID of the CPE device is changed.

Deleting CPE devices

When you delete a CPE device, all service interfaces created on it are automatically deleted.

Deleted CPE devices cannot be restored.

To delete CPE devices:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** section.

   A table of CPE devices is displayed.

2. To delete an individual CPE device:

   a. Click the CPE device that you want to delete.

      The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, in the menu on the left, the **Configuration** section is selected, which displays general information about the CPE device. This section also displays the table of **Out-of-band management** tasks being performed by the orchestrator.

   b. In the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Delete**.

3. To delete multiple CPE devices:

   a. Select check boxes next to the CPE devices that you want to delete.

   b. In the upper part of the table, click **Actions** → **Delete**.

4. This opens a confirmation window; in that window, select the method for deleting the CPE device:

   - **Delete, unregister, and reset password** to delete the CPE device from the orchestrator web interface. When powered on, the CPE device reconnects to the orchestrator and is displayed in the orchestrator web interface with the **Unknown** status.

   - **Reset to factory settings** to remove the CPE device from the orchestrator web interface and reset the CPE device settings to factory defaults. When powered on, the CPE device does not reconnect to the orchestrator and is not displayed in the orchestrator web interface.

   - **Force delete** to delete the CPE device from the orchestrator web interface. You can select this option to remove an unavailable CPE or a redundant entry from the orchestrator web interface.

5. Click **Delete**.

The CPE devices are deleted and are no longer displayed in the table.

Two-factor authentication of a CPE device

You can use *two-factor authentication* to register the CPE device securely. When two-factor authentication is enabled, a token (security key) is recorded in the orchestrator's database; you must then place this token on the CPE device when registering using the Zero Touch Provisioning technology. Registration succeeds if, when the CPE device automatically connects to the orchestrator, the token placed on the device matches the CPE token in the orchestrator database.

> You cannot use two-factor authentication for a CPE device that is already registered.

To use two-factor authentication for a CPE device:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** section.

   A table of CPE devices is displayed.

2. Click the CPE device for which you want to use two-factor authentication.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃⌃. By default, in the menu on the left, the **Configuration** section is selected, which displays general information about the CPE device. This section also displays the table of **Out-of-band management** tasks being performed by the orchestrator.

3. Select the **Activation** tab.

   Two-factor authentication settings are displayed.

4. In the **Two-factor authentication** drop-down list, select **Enabled**. The default value is **Disabled**.

5. If you want to generate a new token, click **Generate** under the **Token** field.

6. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save CPE device settings.

Managing certificates

When communicating with the orchestrator, the CPE device checks whether the orchestrator's certificates can be trusted to prevent MITM attacks. By default, the CPE device trusts public certification authorities.

If the orchestrator uses certificates signed by a custom certification authority, you must upload these certificates in the orchestrator web interface and install them on CPE devices. Standalone root certificates as well as certificate chains consisting of a root certificate and multiple intermediate certificates are supported.

30 days before the certificate expires, a notification is displayed when you log into the orchestrator web interface.

You can view the table of certificates in the **SD-WAN → Certificates** section. Information about certificates is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Common name** is the domain name or host name for which the certificate is issued.
- **Organization** is the name of the organization that issued the certificate.
- **Distribute to CPEs** is the check box for installing the certificate on CPE devices. Certificates that have their check boxes selected are installed on CPE devices in the following cases:
  - Automatic registration (ZTP) of a CPE device
  - CPE device restart
  - Manual installation of certificates on the CPE device

  Selecting certificates incorrectly may cause the CPE device to stop trusting the certificate of the orchestrator and to disconnect from it.
- **From** is the start date of certificate validity.
- **To** is the certificate expiration date.

The actions that you can perform with the table are described in the Managing solution component tables article.

Uploading a certificate using the orchestrator web interface

To upload a certificate in the orchestrator web interface:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN → Certificates** section.

   A table of certificates is displayed.
2. In the upper part of the page, click **+ Certificate**.
3. Specify the path to the certificate file in PEM format. Maximum file size: 16 KB.

The certificate is uploaded and displayed in the table. The *Certificate <certificate name> uploaded* message appears.

Manually installing certificates on CPE devices

To install certificates on CPE devices:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **Certificates** section.

   A table of certificates is displayed.

2. Select the **Distribute to CPEs** check boxes next to the uploaded certificates that you want to install on CPE devices.

3. Click **Apply to CPEs**.

The certificates are installed on the CPE devices. The *Certificates are applied to CPEs* message is displayed.

Scenario: installing certificates on a CPE device with firmware version 23.07

You can install a root certificate or a certificate chain signed by a custom certification authority on a CPE device with firmware version 23.07.

Firmware version 23.07 is not fully supported by the current version of the orchestrator, therefore technical issues may occur when using this firmware version. We recommend updating the firmware of all CPE devices to the latest version.

The scenario for installing certificates on CPE devices with firmware version 23.07 involves the following steps:

1. **Uploading certificates using the orchestrator web interface**

   Upload a certificate using the orchestrator web interface.

2. **Generating an URL with basic CPE device settings**

   Generate a URL with basic CPE device settings, doing the following:

   1. In the **Version** drop-down list, select **23.07**.

      Configuration web addresses are generated for each of the uploaded certificates.

   2. Click **Copy** next to all generated URLs.

   3. Save the copied web addresses.

3. **Installing certificates on a CPE device**

   Do the following:

   1. Connect the administrator device to the LAN port of the CPE device.

The administrator device gets an IP address and the IP address of the default gateway via DHCP. The received IP address of the default gateway is the IP address of the CPE device.

2. From the administrator device, visit each generated web address one by one.

The CPE device restarts after installing each certificate. Please note that the CPE device may get a new IP address after the restart, so you may need to modify the previously copied web address to install the next certificate.

Exporting a certificate

To export a certificate:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **Certificates** section.

   A table of certificates is displayed.

2. Click the certificate that you want to export.

   The settings area is displayed in the lower part of the page. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃⌃.

3. In the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Export**.

An certificate file in the PEM format is saved on your local device.

Deleting certificates

Deleted certificates cannot be restored.

To delete certificates:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **Certificates** section.

   A table of certificates is displayed.

2. To delete an individual certificate:

   a. Click the certificate that you want to delete

      The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃⌃.

   b. In the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Delete**.

3. To delete multiple certificates:

   a. Select check boxes next to certificates that you want to delete.

   b. In the upper part of the table, click **Actions** → **Delete**.

4. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

The certificates are deleted and are no longer displayed in the table.

Automatically deleting and disabling CPE devices

In the CPE template or on the CPE device, you can specify the time after which the CPE device is deleted or disabled if the management session with the controller is terminated. Both functions are used to prevent theft of CPE devices. The automatic deletion function is also used to clean up obsolete entries from the orchestrator web interface. Both functions are disabled by default.

The automatic deletion or disabling time specified in a CPE template is automatically applied to all CPE devices that use this CPE template.

To configure automatic deletion and disabling of CPE devices:

1. Proceed to configure automatic deletion and disabling in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to configure automatic deletion and disabling in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template and select the **Deactivation** tab.

   - If you want to configure automatic deletion and disabling on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, and select the **Deactivation** tab and select the **Override** check boxes.

   The automatic deletion and disabling settings of the CPE device are displayed.

2. Enable automatic deletion of the CPE device:

   a. Select the **Enable** check box next to the **Delete timeout (sec)** field.

   b. In the **Delete timeout (sec)** field, enter the time in seconds after which the CPE device is deleted if communication with the controller is not possible. Range of values: 60 to 31,536,000. The entered value may not be lower than the value specified for the automatic disabling.

3. Enable automatic disabling of the CPE device:

   a. Select the **Enable** check box next to the **Disable timeout (sec)** field.

   b. In the **Disable timeout (sec)** field, enter the time in seconds after which the CPE device is disabled if communication with the controller is not possible. Range of values: 60 to 31,536,000. The entered value may not be greater than the value specified for the automatic deletion.

4. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Grouping CPE devices using tags

Tags describe CPE device settings such as model, firmware version, and location address. When you add a CPE device, tags are automatically assigned to it, describing its model and the tenant to which the CPE device was added.

You can use tags to group CPE devices and perform actions on groups. For example, you can assign the same tag to CPE devices located at the same location and then update firmware on them all.

To have a tag assigned, the CPE device must have the **Registered** status. Two identical tags cannot be assigned to the same CPE device.

Assigning a tag to CPE devices

To assign a tag to CPE devices:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** section.

   A table of CPE devices is displayed.

2. To assign a tag to an individual CPE device:

   a. Click the CPE device to which you want to assign a tag.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, in the menu on the left, the **Configuration** section is selected, which displays general information about the CPE device. This section also displays the table of **Out-of-band management** tasks being performed by the orchestrator.

   b. Select the **Tags** tab.

   The assigned tags are displayed.

   c. Enter the tag and click the assign icon +.

   d. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save CPE device settings.

3. To assign a tag to multiple CPE devices:

   a. Select check boxes next to the CPE devices to which you want to assign a tag.

   b. In the upper part of the table, click **Actions** → **Assign tags**.

   c. This opens a window; in that window, enter the tag and click the assign icon +.

   d. Click **Add**.

The tag is assigned to the CPE devices.

Removing a CPE device tag

To remove a tag from CPE devices:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** section.

   A table of CPE devices is displayed.

2. To remove a tag from an individual CPE device:

   a. Click the CPE device from which you want to remove a tag.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, in the menu on the left, the **Configuration** section is selected, which displays general information about the CPE device. This section also displays the table of **Out-of-band management** tasks being performed by the orchestrator.

   b. Select the **Tags** tab.

   The assigned tags are displayed.

   c. Click the remove icon ✕ next to the tag you want to remove.

   d. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save CPE device settings.

3. To remove a tag from multiple CPE devices:

   a. Select check boxes next to the CPE devices from which you want to remove a tag.

   b. In the upper part of the table, click **Actions** → **Delete tags**.

   c. This opens a window; in that window, remove the tags in one of the following ways:

   - Click the remove icon ✕ next to the tag you want to remove.
   - Enter the tag you want to remove and select it from the drop-down list.

   d. Click **Delete**.

The CPE device tag is removed.

Configuring logs on CPE devices

Logs generated on CPE devices are stored locally or sent to an external Syslog server. When storing logs locally, you can specify a maximum size. You can specify a prefix to be assigned to logs before they are sent to the external Syslog server.

To view the local log on the CPE device, you need to request diagnostic information.

You can specify log settings in a CPE template or on the CPE device. Log settings specified in the CPE template are automatically propagated to all CPE devices that use this CPE template.

To configure logs on CPE devices:

1. Configure logs in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to configure logs in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **Log files** tab.

   - If you want to configure logs on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **Log files** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   The log settings are displayed.

2. In the **Log file size (KB)** field, enter the size of the logs on the CPE device in kilobytes. Range of values: 64 to 2048. Default value: 64. If the maximum log size is exceeded, new logs overwrite the oldest logs.

3. If you want the CPE device to send logs to an external Syslog server, specify the Syslog server:

   a. In the **Syslog server IP/FQDN** field, enter the IP address of the Syslog server.

   b. In the **Syslog server port** field, enter the port number of the Syslog server. Range of values: 0 to 65,353.

   c. In the **Syslog server protocol** drop-down list, select the protocol for sending logs to the Syslog server:

      - **UDP**. This is the default setting.

      - **TCP**.

   d. In the **Log file prefix** field, enter the prefix that the CPE device assigns to the logs. The maximum length of the prefix is 256 characters.

4. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Specifying NTP servers on CPE devices

You must specify an internal or external NTP server, or a pool of servers for CPE devices to make sure accurate time is displayed on these CPE devices. You can use a CPE device as an NTP server to display exact time on network devices that are connected to the CPE device.

You can specify the NTP server in a CPE template or on the CPE device. NTP servers specified in the CPE template are automatically specified on all CPE devices that use this CPE template.

To specify the NTP server on CPE devices:

1. Specify the NTP server in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to specify the NTP server in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** section, click the CPE template, and select the **NTP** tab.

   - If you want to specify an NTP server on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, and select the **NTP** tab and select the **Override** check box.

   The NTP server connection settings are displayed.

2. If you do not want to specify the NTP server for the CPE device, clear the **Connect to NTP server** check box. This check box is selected by default.

3. If you want to use the CPE device as an NTP server, select the **Use CPE as NTP server** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

4. Specify an NTP server or a pool of servers:

   a. Under **NTP servers**, click **+ Add**.

   b. In the displayed field, enter the IP address or FQDN of the NTP server or pool of servers. The following IP address and FQDN formats are supported:

      - To specify an NTP server, enter the IP address or FQDN in the `server <IP address or FQDN>` format, for example, `server 0.pool.ntp.org`.

      - To specify a pool of NTP servers, enter the IP address or FQDN in the `pool <IP address or FQDN>` format, for example, `pool pool.ntp.org`.

   The NTP server is specified and displayed in the **NTP servers** section. You can specify multiple NTP servers or delete NTP servers. To delete an NTP server, click the delete icon ✕ next to it.

5. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

You can request diagnostic information to view the time synchronization settings on a CPE device.

Managing modems

This functionality is not supported by some models. For advice, please contact Kaspersky Technical Support.

A CPE device can have up to four modems for connecting to the cellular network. To view the table of modems, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** section, click the CPE device, and select the **Modems** tab. Information about modems is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Name** is the name of the modem.

- **IP address** is the IP address of the modem.

- **Subnet** is the subnet to which the modem is connected.

- **Gateway** is the gateway to which the modem is connected.
- **DNS 1**, **DNS 2** are DNS servers used by the modem.
- **Signal** is the signal strength of the modem.
- **Data format** is the data transfer protocol of the modem.
- **Registration** is the registration status of the modem.
- **Network** is the network to which the modem is connected.
- **Country** is the country in which the modem is registered.
- **PLMN MCC** is the Mobile Country Code.
- **PLMN MNC** is the Mobile Network Code.
- **Roaming** indicates whether roaming is being used on the modem:
  - **Yes**.
  - **No**.
- **HTTP check** is the result of the modem using HTTP to check the availability of the Internet.

The actions that you can perform with the table are described in the Managing solution component tables article.

Updating firmware

New versions of CPE device software are distributed by Kaspersky in the form of firmware. Firmware based on the following software switches is supported:

- Open vSwitch (OVS) is a software switch implementation with kernel-level packet processing. This switch type is suitable for most devices and is selected by default.
- Switch Operating System (SWOS) is an alternative software switch implementation with DPDK-based packet processing. It can offer higher performance thanks to packet processing bypassing the kernel.

You can download a TAR.GZ archive with the firmware from the /cpe directory of the distribution kit.

You can update the firmware on a CPE device in three ways:

- Manually updating the CPE device firmware without using the orchestrator web interface.
- Scheduling firmware updates on selected CPE devices. In this case, you upload the firmware to the orchestrator web interface, select the CPE devices on which you want to update the firmware, and then update the firmware. A firmware update task is automatically created in the task scheduler.
- Scheduling firmware updates on CPE devices with specific tags. In this case, you upload the firmware to the orchestrator web interface, assign tags to CPE devices on which you want to update the firmware, and then create a firmware update task in the task scheduler. When creating the task, you need to specify the tags you assigned to CPE devices.

The CPE device restarts during the firmware update process.

You can view the table of firmware uploaded to the web interface in the **SD-WAN → Firmware** section. Information about firmware is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Version** is the firmware version.
- **Size (MB)** is the size of the firmware archive in megabytes.
- **SHA256** is the hash of the firmware.
- **Architecture** is the instruction set architecture (ISA) of the firmware.
- **Release date** is the firmware release date.
- **Model** is the model of CPE devices with which the firmware is compatible.
- **Switch type** is the type of software switch that the firmware is based on (OVS or SWOS).

The actions that you can perform with the table are described in the Managing solution component tables article.

Manually updating firmware on a CPE device

When following these steps, you are prompted to enter the CPE device credentials. After registration, the default password of the CPE device is automatically changed. You can view the CPE device password in the orchestrator web interface.

To manually update the firmware on a CPE device:

1. Download the firmware archive from the /cpe directory of the distribution kit to the administrator device, for example, your laptop. If you do not know which firmware version you need to install on the CPE device, use the table of correspondence of CPE device models with firmware versions.
2. Connect the administrator device to the LAN port of the CPE device.

   The administrator device gets the IP address of the default gateway via DHCP. The received IP address of the default gateway is the IP address of the CPE device.
3. Connect to the CPE device over SCP, for example using WinSCP. To connect over SCP, specify the IP address and enter the credentials of the CPE device.
4. Place the firmware archive in the /tmp directory.

5. Connect to the CPE device over SSH. To connect over SSH, specify the IP address and enter the credentials of the CPE device.

6. Change to the /tmp directory:

   ```
   cd /tmp/
   ```

7. Update the firmware on the CPE device in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to leave the CPE device settings unchanged after updating the firmware, run the following command:

     ```
     sysupgrade knaas-< firmware archive name >
     ```

   - If you want to reset the CPE device to factory settings after updating the firmware, run the following command:

     ```
     sysupgrade -n knaas-cpe< firmware archive name >
     ```

   When a CPE device is reset to factory settings, it is disconnected from the orchestrator. To reconnect the CPE device to the orchestrator, you need to automatically register (ZTP) the CPE device.

The new firmware version is installed on the CPE device, then the CPE device is restarted. By default, the IP address of the CPE device is unchanged, and DHCP is enabled on LAN ports.

Uploading firmware to the orchestrator web interface

To upload firmware in the orchestrator web interface:

1. Download the firmware archive from the /cpe directory of the distribution kit to your local device. If you do not know which firmware version you need to install on the CPE device, use the table of correspondence of CPE device models with firmware versions.

2. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **Firmware** section.

   A table of firmware is displayed.

3. In the upper part of the page, click **+ Firmware**.

4. Enter the path to the archive with the firmware. When specifying a path, you can select multiple archives at the same time.

The firmware is uploaded and displayed in the table.

Scheduling firmware updates on selected CPE devices

To create a scheduled firmware update task on selected CPE devices:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** section.

   A table of CPE devices is displayed.

2. Proceed with the scheduled firmware update in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to perform a scheduled firmware update on an individual CPE device, click the CPE device to open its device properties window, and in that window, open the action menu by clicking the ⋮ icon in the upper right corner, then select **Update firmware**.

   - If you want to perform a scheduled firmware update on multiple CPE devices, select the check boxes next to relevant CPE devices and in the upper part of the table, click **Actions** → **Update firmware**.

   Obsolete firmware is highlighted in orange in the **SW version** column of the table of CPE devices. You can also find CPE devices with outdated firmware versions using the **Need update** filter in the upper part of the table.

3. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Task name** field, enter the name of the scheduled task.

4. Use the **Switch type** toggle switch to select the software switch type for the new firmware (OVS or SWOS).

   If you are updating firmware on multiple CPE devices at the same time, you must select the software switch type to match the firmware of all selected devices. If the firmware type on at least one device does not match the selected software switch type, the **CPE can be updated only with firmware of the same switch type** message is displayed in the firmware update task creation window, and the task cannot be created. If you are updating the firmware on an individual device, the **The switch type you have selected does not match the switch type of the CPE. This may cause the device to become inaccessible after the firmware update due to potential configuration inconsistencies** warning is displayed when you select a mismatched switch type, but creating the task is possible.

   We do not recommend updating the firmware to a version based on a different software switch type.

5. In the **Version** drop-down list, select the version of your uploaded firmware. The list displays firmware versions matching the software switch type selected in **Switch type** setting. If you do not know which firmware version you need to install on the CPE device, use the table of correspondence of CPE device models with firmware versions.

   If the list contains no matching firmware versions (no versions have been found to match the selected software switch type, or no versions have been uploaded to the orchestrator), then the **No firmware available for the selected CPEs. You can upload new firmware** message is displayed in the upper part of the window with a link to the **SD-WAN** → **Firmware** section.

6. In the **Scheduled task execution date** field, enter the date and time when you want to run the task. By default, the date and time specified is the date and time when you started creating the task.

7. If you want to reset the CPE device to factory settings after updating the firmware, clear the **Save CPE settings** check box. If the check box is selected, your existing CPE device settings are not modified after a firmware update. This check box is selected by default.

   When a CPE device is reset to factory settings, it is disconnected from the orchestrator. To reconnect the CPE device to the orchestrator, you need to automatically register (ZTP) the CPE device.

8. The **Force update** check box lets you force the firmware update, even if the CPE's internal check shows that the new firmware is incompatible with the old one. This check box is cleared by default.

9. Click **Next**.

   Two tables of CPE devices are displayed. Firmware of CPE devices in the upper table is updated. Firmware of CPE devices in the lower table is not updated. Information about CPE devices is displayed in the following columns of the table:

   - **DPID** is the DPID of the CPE device.
   - **Model** is the model of the CPE device.
   - **Switch type** is the software switch type of the CPE device firmware (OVS or SWOS).
   - **Name** is the name of the CPE device.
   - **SW version** is the firmware version of the CPE device.
   - **Tenant** is the tenant to which the CPE device has been added.
   - **Reason** is the reason why the firmware cannot be updated. This column is displayed only in the lower table.

   If the upper table contains CPE devices on which you do not want to update the firmware, you can move these CPE devices to the lower table.

10. Click **Schedule**.

    The firmware update task is created and displayed in the task table. The status of the tasks is displayed in the **Status** column. If the firmware update task finishes successfully, its status changes to **Done**.

Scheduling firmware updates on CPE devices with specific tags

To create a scheduled firmware update task on CPE devices with specific tags:

1. In the menu, go to the **Scheduler** section.

   The table of tasks is displayed.

2. In the upper part of the page, click **+ Task**.

3. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Type** drop-down list, select **Firmware update**.

4. In the **Task name** field, enter the name of the task.

5. Use the **Switch type** toggle switch to select the software switch type for the new firmware (OVS or SWOS).

6. In the **Version** drop-down list, select the version of your uploaded firmware. The list displays firmware versions matching the software switch type selected in **Switch type** setting. If you do not know which firmware version you need to install on the CPE device, use the table of correspondence of CPE device models with firmware versions.

   If the list contains no matching firmware versions (no versions have been found to match the selected software switch type, or no versions have been uploaded to the orchestrator), then the **No firmware available for the selected CPEs. You can upload new firmware** message is displayed in the upper part of the window with a link to the **SD-WAN → Firmware** section.

7. In the **Scheduled task execution date** field, enter the date and time when you want to run the task. By default, the date and time specified is the date and time when you started creating the task.

8. If you want to reset the CPE device to factory settings after updating the firmware, clear the **Save CPE settings** check box. If the check box is selected, your existing CPE device settings are not modified after a firmware update. This check box is selected by default.

   When a CPE device is reset to factory settings, it is disconnected from the orchestrator. To reconnect the CPE device to the orchestrator, you need to automatically register (ZTP) the CPE device.

9. The **Force update** check box lets you force the firmware update, even if the CPE's internal check shows that the new firmware is incompatible with the old one. This check box is cleared by default.

10. In the **Tags** field, enter tags assigned to CPE devices on which you want to update the firmware. Obsolete firmware is highlighted in orange in the **SW version** column of the table of CPE devices. You can also find CPE devices with outdated firmware versions using the **Need update** filter in the upper part of the table.

11. Click **Next**.

    Two tables of CPE devices are displayed. Firmware of CPE devices in the upper table is updated. Firmware of CPE devices in the lower table is not updated. Information about CPE devices is displayed in the following columns of the table:

    - **DPID** is the DPID of the CPE device.
    - **Model** is the model of the CPE device.
    - **Switch type** is the software switch type of the CPE device firmware (OVS or SWOS).
    - **Name** is the name of the CPE device.
    - **SW version** is the firmware version of the CPE device.
    - **Tenant** is the tenant to which the CPE device has been added.
    - **Reason** is the reason why the firmware cannot be updated. This column is displayed only in the lower table.

    If the upper table contains CPE devices on which you do not want to update the firmware, you can move these CPE devices to the lower table.

12. Click **Create**.

    The firmware update task is created and displayed in the table. The status of the tasks is displayed in the **Status** column. If the firmware update task finishes successfully, its status changes to **Done**.

Restoring firmware of a KESR-M1 CPE device

You can restore the firmware and reset a KESR-M1 CPE device to factory settings if you have lost the credentials of that CPE or if you encounter a problem with the firmware.

When a CPE device is reset to factory settings, it is disconnected from the orchestrator. To reconnect the CPE device to the orchestrator, you need to automatically register (ZTP) the CPE device.

To restore the firmware of a KESR-M1 CPE device:

1. Download the firmware archive from the /cpe directory of the distribution kit to the administrator device, for example, your laptop. If you do not know which firmware version you need to install on the CPE device, use the table of correspondence of CPE device models with firmware versions.

2. Extract the firmware archive to get the firmware in BIN format.

3. Power on the CPE device with factory firmware:

   a. Disconnect the power cable of the CPE device.

   b. Connect the power cable and press and hold the **RESET** button on the CPE device for 10 seconds.

   The CPE device powers on with the factory firmware.

4. Connect the administrator device to the LAN port of the CPE device.

   The administrator device gets an IP address and the IP address of the default gateway in the 192.168.1.0/24 subnet via DHCP.

5. In the address bar of the browser on the administrator device, enter `192.168.1.1` and press **Enter**.

   This opens the CPE device firmware upload page.

6. Click the firmware upload button and specify the path to the firmware in BIN format. You got the firmware in BIN format at step 2 of these instructions.

The new firmware version is installed on the CPE device, then the CPE device is restarted. By default, the IP address of the CPE device is 192.168.7.1, and DHCP is enabled on LAN ports.

Restoring firmware of a KESR-M2-5 CPE device

You can restore the firmware and reset a KESR-M2-5 CPE device to factory settings if you have lost the credentials of that CPE or if you encounter a problem with the firmware.

When a CPE device is reset to factory settings, it is disconnected from the orchestrator. To reconnect the CPE device to the orchestrator, you need to automatically register (ZTP) the CPE device.

To restore the firmware of a KESR-M2-5 CPE device:

1. Download the firmware archive from the /cpe directory of the distribution kit to the administrator device, for example, your laptop. If you do not know which firmware version you need to install on the CPE device, use the table of correspondence of CPE device models with firmware versions.

2. Extract the firmware archive to get an archive in IMG.GZ format.

3. Unpack the IMG.GZ archive to get the firmware image in IMG format.

4. Use the IMG firmware to create a bootable USB drive using disk image writing software such as BalenaEtcher.

5. Connect the administrator device to the CPE device with a console cable and insert the USB drive into the USB port of the CPE device.

6. Specify the settings for establishing a console session with the CPE device on the administrator device, for example, using the PuTTY application, and do the following:

   - Specify the communications port (COM port) number of the administrator device.
   - Specify `115200` as the session speed.

7. Disconnect and reconnect the power cable of the CPE device. Press **F7** or **F11** while the CPE device is powering on.

8. This opens a menu; in the menu, select the USB drive and press **Enter**.

   The CPE device boots from the USB drive.

9. Connect the administrator device to the LAN port of the CPE device.

   The administrator device gets an IP address and the IP address of the default gateway in the 192.168.7.0/24 subnet via DHCP.

10. Connect to the CPE device over SCP, for example using WinSCP. To connect over SCP, specify the IP address and enter the default credentials of the CPE device.

11. Place the firmware in IMG format in the /tmp directory.

12. Connect to the CPE device over SSH or establish a console session with the CPE device. To connect over SSH or establish a console session, specify the IP address and enter the default credentials of the CPE device.

13. Change to the /tmp directory:

    ```
    cd /tmp/
    ```

14. Copy the firmware image in IMG format to /dev/sda:

    ```
    dd if=< name of the firmware IMG file > bs=1M of=/dev/sda
    ```

15. Restart the CPE device by running the following command:

    ```
    reboot
    ```

The new firmware version is installed on the CPE device, then the CPE device is restarted. By default, the IP address of the CPE device is 192.168.7.1, and DHCP is enabled on LAN ports.

Correspondence of CPE device models with firmware versions

The table below shows the correspondence of CPE device models with the supported firmware versions.

Model of the CPE device	KESR M1
KESR M1 (V1 TTK)	knaas-cpe_<firmware version>.release.<solution version number>.firmware.kesr-m1-r-5g-1l-w-v1-ttk_en-US_ru-RU.tar.gz
KESR M1 (V2)	knaas-cpe_<firmware version>.release.<solution version number>.firmware.kesr-m1-r-5g-2l-w-v2_en-US_ru-RU.tar.gz
KESR M1 (V3)	knaas-cpe_<firmware version>.release.<solution version number>.efi.amd64-kesr-m1-k-4g-2l-w-v3_en-US_ru-RU.tar.gz
KESR M2 (Wi-Fi/LTE)	knaas-cpe_<firmware version>.release.<solution version number>.efi.amd64-kesr-m2-k-5g-1l-w_en-US_ru-RU.tar.gz
KESR M2 (SFP)	knaas-cpe_<firmware version>.release.<solution version number>.efi.amd64-kesr-m2-k-5g-1s_en-US_ru-RU.tar.gz
KESR M3	knaas-cpe_<firmware version>.release.<solution version number>.efi.amd64-kesr-m3-k-4g-4s_en-US_ru-RU.tar.gz

Model of the CPE device	KESR M1
KESR M4 (SFPx2)	knaas-cpe_<firmware version>.release.<solution version number>.efi.amd64-kesr-m4-k-4g-2x_en-US_ru-RU.tar.gz
KESR M4 (SFPx4/RJ-45x8)	knaas-cpe_<firmware version>.release.<solution version number>.efi.amd64-kesr-m4-k-8g-4x_en-US_ru-RU.tar.gz
KESR M5 (SFPx8)	knaas-cpe_<firmware version>.release.<solution version number>.efi.amd64-kesr-m5-k-4g-8x_en-US_ru-RU.tar.gz
KESR M5 (SFPx4/RJ-45x8)	knaas-cpe_<firmware version>.release.<solution version number>.efi.amd64-kesr-m5-k-8g-4x_en-US_ru-RU.tar.gz

Deleting firmware

You cannot delete firmware that is being used in at least one task. To delete firmware that is being used in tasks, you need to delete the tasks first.

Deleted firmware cannot be restored.

To delete firmware:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **Firmware** section.

   A table of firmware is displayed.

2. Select check boxes next to firmware that you want to delete.

3. In the upper part of the table, click **Actions** → **Delete**.

4. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

   The firmware is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

Additional configuration of CPE devices using scripts

You can use scripts for additional configuration of CPE devices. You can add scripts to a CPE template. Scripts added to the CPE template are automatically added to all CPE devices that use this CPE template. Added scripts can be run automatically or manually. Scripts are run automatically when the conditions specified in the script settings are satisfied, for example, when a CPE device is registered.

Running scripts is the responsibility of VNFM, so network connectivity between VNFM and CPE devices must be ensured before you begin working with scripts. By default, the port number for connecting the VNFM to the device and the user name for running scripts are specified in the CPE template. You can change the port number and user name if necessary.

You can view the table of scripts in a CPE template and on a CPE device:

- To view the table of scripts in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **Scripts** tab.

- To view the table of scripts on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, and select the **Scripts** tab.

Information about scripts is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Name** is the script name.
- **Executor** is the interpreter.
- **Authentication** is the type of VNFM authentication in the CPE device.
- **Custom executor** is the path to the custom interpreter.
- **Timeout (sec)** is the time in seconds after which the VNFM stops attempting to run a script that could not run the first time.
- **Repeat execution** indicates whether the script can be re-run:
  - **Yes**.
  - **No**.
- **Stage** is the stage of the CPE device operation at which VNFM runs the script.
- **Script** is name of the script file or the Ansible playbook file.
- **File** is the name of the archive with additional files that the script requires to run.
- **Actions** contains the actions that can be performed with the script.

Adding a script to CPE devices

You can add a script to a CPE template. Scripts added to the CPE template are automatically added to all CPE devices that use this CPE template.

To add a script to CPE devices:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** section.

   A table of CPE templates is displayed.

2. Click the CPE template to which you want to add a script.

   The settings area is displayed in the lower part of the page. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, the **Information** tab is selected, which displays general information about the CPE template.

3. Select the **Scripts** tab.

   This displays the port number that VNFM uses to connect to the CPE device, the user name for running scripts, and the table of script if at least one script has been added.

4. Click **+ Script**.

5. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Name** field, enter the name of the script. The maximum length of the name is 255 characters.

6. In the **Timeout (sec)** field, enter the time in seconds after which the VNFM stops attempting to run a script that could not run the first time. Default value: `360`.

7. In the **Executor** drop-down list, select one of the following values:

   - **Ansible**. This is the default setting.
   - **Shell**
   - **Expect**
   - **Custom** to use an interpreter on the CPE device. If you s! this value is selected, enter the path to the custom interpreter in the **Custom executor** field.

8. In the **Stage** drop-down list, select the stage of CPE device operation at which VNFM runs the script:

   - **Registration**. This is the default setting.
   - **Deletion**
   - **Manually** to run the script only manually.

9. If you need to run the script again, select the **Repeat execution** check box. This check box is cleared by default. Consider the following special considerations for re-running a script:

   - If in the **Stage** drop-down list, you selected **Registration**, the script is re-run in cases of registration, powering on, and restart of the CPE device.
   - If in the **Stage** drop-down list, you selected **Deletion**, the script does not run again.
   - If in the **Stage** drop-down list, you selected **Manually**, the script is re-run in cases of powering on and restart of the CPE device.

10. In the **Script** field, enter the path to the script file or to the Ansible playbook script file.

11. If necessary, in the **File** field, specify the path to the archive with additional files required to run the script. Supported formats of archives with files: TAR.GZ and ZIP.

12. Click **Save**.

    The script is created and displayed in the table.

13. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save CPE template settings.

Manually running a script on CPE devices

You can manually run an individual script or all scripts in a CPE template or on a CPE device. Scripts started in a CPE template are automatically run on all CPE devices that use this CPE template or on CPE devices with specific tags.

Manually running scripts in a CPE template

To manually run scripts in a CPE template:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** section.

   A table of CPE templates is displayed.

2. Click the CPE template in which you want to manually run scripts.

   The settings area is displayed in the lower part of the page. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃. By default, the **Information** tab is selected, which displays general information about the CPE template.

3. Select the **Scripts** tab.

   This displays the port number that VNFM uses to connect to the CPE device, the user name for running scripts, and the table of script if at least one script has been added.

4. To manually run an individual script:

   a. Click **Run** next to the script that you want to run manually.

   b. This opens a window; in that window, select the CPE devices on which you want to run the script:

   - **Run the script <script name> on all related CPEs** runs the script on all CPE devices that use the CPE template. This is the default setting.

   - **Run <script name> on all related CPEs with specified tags** runs the script on CPE devices that use the CPE template and have specific tags assigned. If you select this value, specify the tags in the lower part of the window.

5. To manually run all scripts:

   a. In the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Run scripts**.

   b. This opens a window; in that window, select the CPE devices on which you want to run the scripts:

   - **Run all scripts on related CPEs** to run the scripts on all CPE devices that use the CPE template. This is the default setting.

   - **Run all scripts on related CPEs with specified tags** to run the scripts on CPE devices that use the CPE template and have specific tags assigned. If you select this value, specify the tags in the lower part of the window.

6. Click **Run**.

The scripts are run.

Manually running scripts on a CPE device

To manually run scripts on a CPE device:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** section.

   A table of CPE devices is displayed.

2. Click the CPE device on which you want to manually run scripts.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, in the menu on the left, the **Configuration** section is selected, which displays general information about the CPE device. This section also displays the table of **Out-of-band management** tasks being performed by the orchestrator.

3. Select the **Scripts** tab.

   This displays the port number that VNFM uses to connect to the CPE device, the user name for running scripts, and the table of script if at least one script has been added.

4. Manually run the scripts in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to manually run an individual script, click **Run** next to the relevant script.
   - If you want to manually run all scripts, in the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Run scripts**.

5. This opens a window; in that window, click **Run**.

The scripts are run.

Scheduling scripts on CPE devices

Scheduled script execution tasks on CPE devices can be created in the task scheduler. When creating a task, you must select a CPE template, scripts, and CPE devices on which you want to run the scripts.

You can run scripts on all CPE devices that use a CPE template, or constrain the number of CPE devices by specifying tags or manually selecting CPE devices.

To create a task to run scripts on CPE devices:

1. In the menu, go to the **Scheduler** section.

   The table of scheduled tasks is displayed.

2. In the upper part of the page, click **+ Task**.

3. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Type** drop-down list select **Script execution**.

4. In the **Name** field, enter the name of the task.

5. In the **CPEs to run script on** drop-down list, select the CPE devices on which you want to run the script:

   - **All CPEs with selected template** to run the scripts on all CPE devices that use the CPE template.
   - **All CPEs with selected template and specific tags** to run the scripts on CPE devices that use the CPE template and have specific tags assigned. If you select this value, specify the CPE device tags in the **Tags** field.
   - **Specific CPEs with selected template** to run the scripts on all manually selected CPE devices that use the CPE template. If you select this value, select the CPE devices under **CPEs**.

6. Under **CPE template**, select the CPE template that contains the scripts that you want to run.
7. Under **Scripts**, select the scripts that you want to run.
8. In the **Scheduled task execution date** field, enter the date and time when you want to run the task. By default, the date and time specified is the date and time when you started creating the task.
9. Click **Create**.

A scheduled script execution task is created and displayed in the table. The status of the tasks is displayed in the **Status** column. If the task to run a script finishes successfully, its status changes to **Done**.

Editing a script on CPE devices

You can edit a script in the CPE template. A script edited in the CPE template is automatically modified on all CPE devices that use this CPE template.

To edit a script on CPE devices:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** section.

   A table of CPE templates is displayed.

2. Click the CPE template in which you want to edit a script.

   The settings area is displayed in the lower part of the page. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃⌃. By default, the **Information** tab is selected, which displays general information about the CPE template.

3. Select the **Scripts** tab.

   This displays the port number that VNFM uses to connect to the CPE device, the user name for running scripts, and the table of script if at least one script has been added.

4. Click **Edit** next to the script that you want to edit.
5. This opens a window; in that window, if necessary, edit the script settings. For a description of the settings, see the instructions for adding a script on CPE devices.
6. Click **Save**.

   The script is modified and updated in the table.

7. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save CPE template settings.

Deleting a script on CPE devices

You can delete a script in the CPE template. A script deleted in the CPE template is automatically deleted on all CPE devices that use this CPE template.

Deleted scripts cannot be restored.

To delete a script on CPE devices:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE templates** subsection.

   A table of CPE templates is displayed.

2. Click the CPE template.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, the **Information** tab is selected, which displays general information about the CPE template.

3. Select the **Scripts** tab.

   This displays the port number that VNFM uses to connect to the CPE device, the user name for running scripts, and the table of script if at least one script has been added.

4. Click **Delete** next to the script that you want to delete.

   The script is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

5. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save CPE template settings.

Managing network interfaces

Network interfaces correspond to ports and virtual interfaces of the CPE device's operating system that connect to the WAN or the LAN. You must map the network interfaces of the CPE device to the OpenFlow ports of the virtual switch using SD-WAN interfaces.

You can view the table of network interfaces in a CPE template and on a CPE device:

- To view the table of network interfaces in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **Network** tab.
- To view the table of network interfaces on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, and select the **Network** tab.

Information about network interfaces is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Alias** is the name of the network interface for mapping the network interface to an OpenFlow port. You must specify this network interface name when creating an SD-WAN interface of the WAN type.
- **Inherited** indicates whether the network interface is inherited from CPE template:
  - **Yes**.
  - **No**.

  This column is displayed only on the CPE device.
- **Interface name** is the name of the physical port or virtual interface of the operating system of the CPE device.
- **Protocol** is the method of assigning an IP address to the network interface:
  - **DHCP client** means the IP address is automatically assigned by DHCP.
  - **Static IPv4 address** means an IPv4 address is statically assigned.
  - **Static IPv6 address** means an IPv6 address is statically assigned.
  - **QMI** means LTE network connection settings are specified manually.
  - **PPPoE** means the PPPoE server connection settings are specified manually.
  - **None** means an IP address is not assigned.
- **IP address/mask** are the IP address, mask, and default gateway of the network interface.
- **Enable automatically** indicates whether the network interface is automatically enabled when the CPE device is powered on:
  - **Yes**.
  - **No**.

Creating network interfaces

You can create a network interface in a CPE template or on a CPE device. A network interface created in the CPE template is automatically created on all CPE devices that use this CPE template.

Creating a network interface with automatic assignment of an IP address via DHCP

To create a network interface with automatic assignment of an IP address via DHCP:

1. Create a network interface in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to create a network interface in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE templates** section, click the CPE template, and select the **Network** tab.
   - If you want to create a network interface on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** section, click the CPE device, and select the **Network** tab.

   The table of network interfaces is displayed.

2. Click **+ Network interface**.
3. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Alias** field, enter the name of the network interface for mapping the network interface to an OpenFlow port. You must specify this network interface name when creating an SD-WAN interface of the WAN type. The maximum length of the name is 15 characters.
4. If you want to add a network interface to a firewall zone, in the **Zone** drop-down list, select the created firewall zone.
5. In the **Interface name** field, enter the name of the physical port or virtual interface of the operating system of the CPE device. The maximum length of the name is 256 characters. For example, you can enter `eth0`, `eth1`, `eth2`, or `tun0`. To create a bridge from multiple interfaces, enter their names separated by spaces.

   If you want to assign an outer VLAN tag to a network interface, enter a period (.) after the physical port or virtual interface name of the operating system, and then enter the outer VLAN tag. For example, you can enter `eth2.150`.
6. If you want to create a bridge from physical or virtual interfaces whose names are specified in the **Interface name** field:

   a. Select the **Bridge** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

   b. If you want to use STP on the bridge to prevent routing loops, select the **STP** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

   c. In the **Age (sec)** field, enter the duration in seconds for which dynamic records are stored in the MAC table of the bridge. If you want to use the bridge as a hub, enter `0` in this field. Range of values: 0 to 86,400.
7. If you want to enable the NetFlow protocol on the network interface, select the **NetFlow** check box. This check box is cleared by default.
8. In the **Protocol** drop-down list, select **DHCP client**.
9. If you do not want the network interface to be automatically enabled when the CPE device is enabled, clear the **Enable automatically** check box. This check box is selected by default.
10. If you want an IP address, route, and default gateway automatically assigned to the network interface, select the **Force IP address, route, and gateway** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

11. If you do not want the route obtained via DHCP to be used by network interface by default, clear the **Use default route** check box. This check box is selected by default.

12. If necessary, specify a DNS server for the network interface:

    a. Under **DNS servers**, click **+ Add**.

    b. In the field that is displayed, enter the IP address of the DNS server.

    The DNS server is specified and displayed in the **DNS servers** section. You can specify multiple DNS servers or delete DNS servers. To delete a DNS server, click the delete icon ✕ next to it.

13. In the **Override MAC** field, enter the MAC address of the network interface. The entered value replaces the actual MAC address of the network interface. The field is not editable if the **Generate MAC address automatically** check box is selected.

14. In the **Override MTU** field, enter the MTU for the network interface. The entered value overrides the default MTU.

15. If you want the MAC address of the network interface to be generated automatically, select the **Generate MAC address automatically** check box (cleared by default).

16. If necessary, in the **Route metric** field, enter the default route metric for the network interface. The CPE device uses the default route with the lowest metric.

    The route metric for network interfaces with **sdwan0**–**sdwan3** aliases is assigned automatically at CPE startup: the **sdwan0** gets the highest priority, and the lowest priority goes to **sdwan3.** In this case, the CPE device uses the default route of the **sdwan0** network interface. If the **sdwan0** network interface fails, the default route of the **sdwan1** network interface is used next, followed by the default route of the **sdwan2** network interface. The value in the **Route metric** field is blocked for manual editing for interfaces with **sdwan0**–**sdwan9** aliases.

    The metric is automatically calculated from the following attributes:

    - `1–4` if there are no errors and there is internet access
    - `11–14` if there are no errors and no internet access
    - `21–24` if there are errors and no internet access.

    Metrics are automatically assigned to interfaces depending on the number the interface alias ends in, in accordance to the following scheme:

    - **sdwan0**: `1, 11, 21`
    - **sdwan1**: `2, 12, 22`
    - **sdwan2**: `3, 13, 23`
    - **sdwan3**: `4, 14, 24`

17. Click **Create**.

    The network interface is created and displayed in the table.

18. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Creating a network interface with a static IPv4 address

To create a network interface with a static IPv4 address:

1. Create a network interface in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to create a network interface in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** section, click the CPE template, and select the **Network** tab.
   - If you want to create a network interface on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** section, click the CPE device, and select the **Network** tab.

   The table of network interfaces is displayed.

2. Click **+ Network interface**.
3. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Alias** field, enter the name of the network interface for mapping the network interface to an OpenFlow port. You must specify this network interface name when creating an SD-WAN interface of the WAN type. The maximum length of the name is 15 characters.
4. If you want to add a network interface to a firewall zone, in the **Zone** drop-down list, select the created firewall zone.
5. In the **Interface name** field, enter the name of the physical port or virtual interface of the operating system of the CPE device. The maximum length of the name is 256 characters. For example, you can enter `eth0`, `eth1`, `eth2`, or `tun0`. To create a bridge from multiple interfaces, enter their names separated by spaces.

   If you want to assign an outer VLAN tag to a network interface, enter a period (.) after the physical port or virtual interface name of the operating system, and then enter the outer VLAN tag. For example, you can enter `eth2.150`.
6. If you want to create a bridge from physical or virtual interfaces whose names are specified in the **Interface name** field:

   a. Select the **Bridge** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

   b. If you want to use STP on the bridge to prevent routing loops, select the **STP** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

   c. In the **Age (sec)** field, enter the duration in seconds for which dynamic records are stored in the MAC table of the bridge. If you want to use the bridge as a hub, enter `0` in this field. Range of values: 0 to 86,400.
7. If you want to enable the NetFlow protocol on the network interface, select the **NetFlow** check box. This check box is cleared by default.
8. In the **Protocol** drop-down list, select **Static IPv4 address**.
9. If you do not want the network interface to be automatically enabled when the CPE device is enabled, clear the **Enable automatically** check box. This check box is selected by default.
10. If you want an IP address, route, and default gateway automatically assigned to the network interface, select the **Force IP address, route, and gateway** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

11. In the **IPv4 address and subnet mask input type** drop-down list, select the method for assigning an IPv4 address to the network interface:

    - **Manually** to manually assign an IPv4 address. If you select this option, do the following:

      a. In the **IPv4 address** field, enter the IPv4 address of the network interface.

      b. In the **IPv4 netmask** field, enter the subnet mask of the network interface.

      This is the default setting.

    - **From IP pool** to assign an IPv4 address from the specified range of IP addresses. If you select this value, in the **IP address pool** drop-down list, select a created range of IP addresses.

    - **From subnet pool** to assign an IPv4 address from the specified range of subnets. If you select this value, in the **Subnet pool** drop-down list, select a created range of subnets.

12. In the **IPv4 gateway** field, enter the IPv4 address of the default gateway.

13. In the **IPv4 broadcast** field, enter the broadcast address of the network interface. If you do not specify a value for this setting, it is generated automatically.

14. If necessary, specify a DNS server for the network interface:

    a. Under **DNS servers**, click **+ Add**.

    b. In the field that is displayed, enter the IP address of the DNS server.

    The DNS server is specified and displayed in the **DNS servers** section. You can specify multiple DNS servers or delete DNS servers. To delete a DNS server, click the delete icon ✕ next to it.

15. In the **Override MAC** field, enter the MAC address of the network interface. The entered value replaces the actual MAC address of the network interface.

16. In the **Override MTU** field, enter the MTU for the network interface. The entered value overrides the default MTU.

17. If necessary, in the **Route metric** field, enter the default route metric for the network interface. The CPE device uses the default route with the lowest metric.

    The route metric for network interfaces with **sdwan0**–**sdwan3** aliases is assigned automatically at CPE startup: the **sdwan0** gets the highest priority, and the lowest priority goes to **sdwan3.** In this case, the CPE device uses the default route of the **sdwan0** network interface. If the **sdwan0** network interface fails, the default route of the **sdwan1** network interface is used next, followed by the default route of the **sdwan2** network interface. The value in the **Route metric** field is blocked for manual editing for interfaces with **sdwan0**–**sdwan9** aliases.

    The metric is automatically calculated from the following attributes:

    - `1–4` if there are no errors and there is internet access
    - `11–14` if there are no errors and no internet access
    - `21–24` if there are errors and no internet access.

    Metrics are automatically assigned to interfaces depending on the number the interface alias ends in, in accordance to the following scheme:

    - **sdwan0**: `1, 11, 21`
    - **sdwan1**: `2, 12, 22`
    - **sdwan2**: `3, 13, 23`
    - **sdwan3**: `4, 14, 24`

18. Under **DHCP server**, in the **Type** drop-down list, select the operating mode of the DHCP server for the network interface:

    - **Disabled**. This is the default setting.
    - **Relay** If you select this value, enter the IP address of the DHCP server in the **DHCP server IP** field.
    - **Server**

19. If the **Type** drop-down list, you selected **Server**, specify the DHCP server settings:

    a. In the **First IP** field, enter the offset from the base IP address of the network interface for deriving the lowest IP address that can be leased to clients. Default value: `100`. You can enter a value greater than 255 for large subnets.

    b. In the **Limit** field, enter the maximum number of IP addresses that can be leased to clients. Range of values: 1 to 250. Default value: `150`.

    c. In the **Lease time** field, enter the maximum time, in hours, for which an individual IP address can be leased to a client. Range of values: 1 to 250. The value is specified in the following format: `<number of hours>h`. For example, if you want the maximum lease time to be 5 hours, enter `5h`. The default value is `12h`.

    d. If necessary, specify a DHCP option:

        1. Under **DHCP options**, click **+ Add**.

        2. In the field that is displayed, enter the number of the DHCP option in accordance with the RFC 1533 standard. Maximum length: 250 characters.

    The DHCP option is specified and displayed under **DHCP options**. You can specify multiple DHCP options or delete DHCP options. To delete a DHCP option, click the delete icon ✕ next to it.

20. Click **Create**.

    The network interface is created and displayed in the table.

21. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Creating a network interface with a static IPv6 address

To create a network interface with a static IPv6 address:

1. Create a network interface in one of the following ways:

    - If you want to create a network interface in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE templates** section, click the CPE template, and select the **Network** tab.
    - If you want to create a network interface on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** section, click the CPE device, and select the **Network** tab.

    The table of network interfaces is displayed.

2. Click **+ Network interface**.

3. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Alias** field, enter the name of the network interface for mapping the network interface to an OpenFlow port. You must specify this network interface name when creating an SD-WAN interface of the WAN type. The maximum length of the name is 15 characters.

4. If you want to add a network interface to a firewall zone, in the **Zone** drop-down list, select the created firewall zone.

5. In the **Interface name** field, enter the name of the physical port or virtual interface of the operating system of the CPE device. The maximum length of the name is 256 characters. For example, you can enter `eth0`, `eth1`, `eth2`, or `tun0`. To create a bridge from multiple interfaces, enter their names separated by spaces.

   If you want to assign an outer VLAN tag to a network interface, enter a period (.) after the physical port or virtual interface name of the operating system, and then enter the outer VLAN tag. For example, you can enter `eth2.150`.

6. If you want to create a bridge from physical or virtual interfaces whose names are specified in the **Interface name** field:

   a. Select the **Bridge** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

   b. If you want to use STP on the bridge to prevent routing loops, select the **STP** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

   c. In the **Age (sec)** field, enter the duration in seconds for which dynamic records are stored in the MAC table of the bridge. If you want to use the bridge as a hub, enter `0` in this field. Range of values: 0 to 86,400.

7. If you want to enable the NetFlow protocol on the network interface, select the **NetFlow** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

8. In the **Protocol** drop-down list, select **Static IPv6 address**.

9. If you do not want the network interface to be automatically enabled when the CPE device is enabled, clear the **Enable automatically** check box. This check box is selected by default.

10. If you want an IP address, route, and default gateway automatically assigned to the network interface, select the **Force IP address, route, and gateway** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

11. In the **IPv6 address** field, enter the IPv6 address of the network interface. You can specify multiple addresses, separating them with spaces.

12. In the **IPv6 suffix** field, enter the IPv6 suffix of the network interface. Maximum length: 30 characters.

13. In the **IPv6 gateway** field, enter the IPv6 address of the default gateway.

14. In the **Prefix length** field, enter the length of the IPv6 prefix of the network interface. Range of values: 12 to 127.

15. In the **DHCPv6 sub-prefix length** field, enter the size of the DHCPv6 sub-prefix of the network interface. Maximum length: 256 characters.

16. In the **IPv6 prefix** field, enter the IPv6 prefix of the network interface. Maximum length: 30 characters.

17. If you want the network interface to accept the specified IPv6 prefix class, do the following:

    a. Under **IPv6 class**, click **+ Add**.

    b. Enter the name of the IPv6 prefix class in the field that is displayed. Maximum length: 256 characters.

    The IPv6 prefix class is specified and displayed under **IPv6 class**. You can specify multiple IPv6 prefix classes or delete IPv6 prefix classes. To delete an IPv6 prefix class, click the delete icon ✕ next to it.

18. If necessary, specify a DNS server for the network interface:

    a. Under **DNS servers**, click **+ Add**.

    b. In the field that is displayed, enter the IP address of the DNS server.

    The DNS server is specified and displayed in the **DNS servers** section. You can specify multiple DNS servers or delete DNS servers. To delete a DNS server, click the delete icon ✕ next to it.

19. In the **Override MAC** field, enter the MAC address of the network interface. The entered value replaces the actual MAC address of the network interface.

20. In the **Override MTU** field, enter the MTU for the network interface. The entered value overrides the default MTU.

21. If necessary, in the **Route metric** field, enter the default route metric for the network interface. The CPE device uses the default route with the lowest metric.

    The route metric for network interfaces with **sdwan0**–**sdwan3** aliases is assigned automatically at CPE startup: the **sdwan0** gets the highest priority, and the lowest priority goes to **sdwan3.** In this case, the CPE device uses the default route of the **sdwan0** network interface. If the **sdwan0** network interface fails, the default route of the **sdwan1** network interface is used next, followed by the default route of the **sdwan2** network interface. The value in the **Route metric** field is blocked for manual editing for interfaces with **sdwan0**–**sdwan9** aliases.

    The metric is automatically calculated from the following attributes:

    - `1–4` if there are no errors and there is internet access
    - `11–14` if there are no errors and no internet access
    - `21–24` if there are errors and no internet access.

    Metrics are automatically assigned to interfaces depending on the number the interface alias ends in, in accordance to the following scheme:

    - **sdwan0**: `1, 11, 21`
    - **sdwan1**: `2, 12, 22`
    - **sdwan2**: `3, 13, 23`
    - **sdwan3**: `4, 14, 24`

22. Under **DHCP server**, in the **Type** drop-down list, select the operating mode of the DHCP server for the network interface:

    - **Disabled**. This is the default setting.
    - **Relay** If you select this value, enter the IP address of the DHCP server in the **DHCP server IP** field.
    - **Server**

23. If the **Type** drop-down list, you selected **Server**, specify the DHCP server settings:

    a. In the **First IP** field, enter the offset from the base IP address of the network interface for deriving the lowest IP address that can be leased to clients. Default value: `100`. You can enter a value greater than 255 for large subnets.

    b. In the **Limit** field, enter the maximum number of IP addresses that can be leased to clients. Range of values: 1 to 250. Default value: `150`.

    c. In the **Lease time** field, enter the maximum time, in hours, for which an individual IP address can be leased to a client. Range of values: 1 to 250. The value is specified in the following format: `<number of hours>h`. For example, if you want the maximum lease time to be 5 hours, enter `5h`. The default value is `12h`.

    d. If necessary, specify a DHCP option:

        1. Under **DHCP options**, click **+ Add**.

        2. In the field that is displayed, enter the number of the DHCP option in accordance with the RFC 1533 standard. Maximum length: 250 characters.

    The DHCP option is specified and displayed under **DHCP options**. You can specify multiple DHCP options or delete DHCP options. To delete a DHCP option, click the delete icon ✕ next to it.

24. Click **Create**.

    The network interface is created and displayed in the table.

25. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Creating a network interface for connecting to an LTE network

This functionality is not supported by some models. For advice, please contact Kaspersky Technical Support.

To create a network interface for connecting to an LTE network:

1. Create a network interface in one of the following ways:

    - If you want to create a network interface in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** section, click the CPE template, and select the **Network** tab.

    - If you want to create a network interface on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** section, click the CPE device, and select the **Network** tab.

    The table of network interfaces is displayed.

2. Click **+ Network interface**.

3. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Alias** field, enter the name of the network interface for mapping the network interface to an OpenFlow port. You must specify this network interface name when creating an SD-WAN interface of the WAN type. The maximum length of the name is 15 characters.

4. If you want to add a network interface to a firewall zone, in the **Zone** drop-down list, select the created firewall zone.

5. In the **Protocol** drop-down list, select **QMI**.

6. In the **QMI name** field, enter the path to the modem on the CPE device. The maximum length of the path is 30 characters. For example, you can enter `/dev/cdc-wdm0`.

7. In the **APN** field, enter the APN ID of the service provider that issued the SIM card installed in the modem. The maximum length of the ID is 30 characters.

8. In the **Authentication type** drop-down list, select the authentication type on the network interface:

   - **PAP** (Password Authentication Protocol).
   - **CHAP** (Challenge-Handshake Authentication Protocol).
   - **PAP and CHAP** means that both types of authentication are used on the network interface.
   - **None** means that authentication is not used on the network interface.

9. In the **Username for PAP/CHAP authentication** field, enter the user name for PAP/CHAP authentication. The maximum length of the name is 30 characters. If you do not want to use authentication, do not specify a value for this setting.

10. In the **Password for PAP/CHAP authentication** field, enter the password for PAP/CHAP authentication. The maximum length of the password is 30 characters. If you do not want to use authentication, do not specify a value for this setting.

11. In the **PIN code** field, enter the PIN code of the SIM card installed in the modem. Maximum PIN length: 4 digits.

12. In the **Delay** field, enter the time in seconds after which the network interface begins to communicate with the modem. Maximum value: 30. This setting is used when the modem takes too long to start.

13. If necessary, specify a network mode for the network interface:

    a. Under **Modes**, click **+ Add**.

    b. In the drop-down list, select one of the following values:

       - **All** (use all available network modes).
       - **LTE**.
       - **UMTS**.
       - **GSM**.
       - **CDMA**.
       - **TD-SCDMA**.

    The network mode is specified and displayed under **Modes**. You can specify multiple network modes or delete network modes. To delete a network mode, click the delete icon ✕ next to it.

14. If necessary, specify a DNS server for the network interface:

    a. Under **DNS servers**, click **+ Add**.

    b. In the field that is displayed, enter the IP address of the DNS server.

    The DNS server is specified and displayed in the **DNS servers** section. You can specify multiple DNS servers or delete DNS servers. To delete a DNS server, click the delete icon ✕ next to it.

15. In the **Connection profile** field, enter the connection profile index that the network interface uses instead of the APN ID. The maximum length of the index is 30 characters.

16. In the **IP stack** drop-down list, select the IP stack that you is used on the network interface:

    - **IPv4** to use the IPv4 protocol stack on the network interface. This is the default setting.
    - **IPV6** to use the IPv6 protocol stack on the network interface.
    - **Dual stack (IPv4 and IPv6)** to use IPv4 and IPv6 dual stack on the network interface.

17. Clear the **IPv4 over DHCP** check box if you do not want to assign an IPv4 address to the network interface via DHCP. To select this check box simultaneously with the **IPv6 over DHCP** check box, select **Dual stack (IPv4 and IPv6)** (for dual stack) in the **IP stack** drop-down list. This check box is selected by default.

18. Select the **IPv6 over DHCP** check box to assign an IPv6 address to the network interface via DHCP. To select this check box simultaneously with the **IPv4 over DHCP** check box, select **Dual stack (IPv4 and IPv6)** in the **IP stack** drop-down list. This check box is cleared by default.

19. Clear the **Autoconnect** check box if you do not want the modem to automatically connect to the network. This check box is selected by default.

20. In the **PLMN** field, enter the PLMN ID of the service provider. The first three digits of the PLMN ID are the country code, and the next three digits are the mobile network code.

21. In the **Timeout** field, enter the time in seconds for the network interface to wait for the completion of the SIM card operations on the modem. Maximum value: 20. Default value: `10`.

22. In the **Serial port** field, enter the serial port name of the modem. The maximum length of the name is 50 characters.

23. If necessary, in the **Route metric** field, enter the default route metric for the network interface. The CPE device uses the default route with the lowest metric.

    The route metric for network interfaces with **sdwan0**–**sdwan3** aliases is assigned automatically at CPE startup: the **sdwan0** gets the highest priority, and the lowest priority goes to **sdwan3.** In this case, the CPE device uses the default route of the **sdwan0** network interface. If the **sdwan0** network interface fails, the default route of the **sdwan1** network interface is used next, followed by the default route of the **sdwan2** network interface. The value in the **Route metric** field is blocked for manual editing for interfaces with **sdwan0**–**sdwan9** aliases.

    The metric is automatically calculated from the following attributes:

    - `1–4` if there are no errors and there is internet access
    - `11–14` if there are no errors and no internet access
    - `21–24` if there are errors and no internet access.

    Metrics are automatically assigned to interfaces depending on the number the interface alias ends in, in accordance to the following scheme:

    - **sdwan0**: `1, 11, 21`
    - **sdwan1**: `2, 12, 22`
    - **sdwan2**: `3, 13, 23`
    - **sdwan3**: `4, 14, 24`

24. Click **Create**.

    The network interface is created and displayed in the table.

25. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Creating a network interface for connecting to a PPPoE server

To create a network interface for connecting to a PPPoE server:

1. Create a network interface in one of the following ways:

    - If you want to create a network interface in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** section, click the CPE template, and select the **Network** tab.
    - If you want to create a network interface on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** section, click the CPE device, and select the **Network** tab.

    The table of network interfaces is displayed.

2. Click **+ Network interface**.
3. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Alias** field, enter the name of the network interface for mapping the network interface to an OpenFlow port. You must specify this network interface name when creating an SD-WAN interface of the WAN type. The maximum length of the name is 15 characters.
4. If you want to add a network interface to a firewall zone, in the **Zone** drop-down list, select the created firewall zone.

5. In the **Interface name** field, enter the name of the physical port or virtual interface of the operating system of the CPE device. The maximum length of the name is 256 characters. For example, you can enter `eth0`, `eth1`, `eth2`, or `tun0`. To create a bridge from multiple interfaces, enter their names separated by spaces.

   If you want to assign an outer VLAN tag to a network interface, enter a period (.) after the physical port or virtual interface name of the operating system, and then enter the outer VLAN tag. For example, you can enter `eth2.150`.

6. In the **Protocol** drop-down list, select **PPPoE**.

7. In the **Access concentrator** field, enter the IP address or host name of the access concentrator to which the network interface connects. The maximum length of the host name is 30 characters. If you do not enter a value in this field, the Point-to-Point Protocol Daemon (PPPD) uses the first access concentrator it detects.

8. In the **Service** field, enter the name of the PPPoE service to which the network interface connects. The maximum length of the name is 30 characters. If you do not enter a value in this field, PPPD uses the first PPPoE service it detects.

9. In the **Authentication type** drop-down list, select which authentication is used on the network interface:

   - **PAP and CHAP** if PAP and CHAP authentication is used on the network interface. If you select this option, do the following:

     a. In the **Username for PAP/CHAP authentication** field, enter the user name for PAP/CHAP authentication. The maximum length of the name is 30 characters.

     b. In the **Password for PAP/CHAP authentication** field, enter the password for PAP/CHAP authentication. The maximum length of the password is 30 characters.

   - **None** means that authentication is not used on the network interface.

10. In the **Failed pings maximum** field, enter the number of unsuccessful ICMP requests before the network interface considers the PPPoE server unavailable. Range of values: 1 to 3600. Default value: `5`.

11. In the **Ping interval (sec)** field, enter the interval in seconds that the network interface must wait for before sending ICMP requests to the PPPoE server. Range of values: 1 to 3600. Default value: `1`.

12. If you want the network interface to terminate an inactive PPPoE connection after the specified time, in the **Timeout (sec)** field, enter the time in seconds. Range of values: 1 to 3600.

13. If necessary, in the **Host-Uniq** field, enter the Host-Uniq tag for the PPPoE connection. The maximum length of the tag is 30 characters. If you do not enter a value in this field, the value of the Host-Uniq tag is the same as the PPPD process identifier.

14. In the **Override MTU** field, enter the MTU for the network interface. The entered value overrides the default MTU.

15. If necessary, in the **Route metric** field, enter the default route metric for the network interface. The CPE device uses the default route with the lowest metric.

    The route metric for network interfaces with **sdwan0**–**sdwan3** aliases is assigned automatically at CPE startup: the **sdwan0** gets the highest priority, and the lowest priority goes to **sdwan3.** In this case, the CPE device uses the default route of the **sdwan0** network interface. If the **sdwan0** network interface fails, the default route of the **sdwan1** network interface is used next, followed by the default route of the **sdwan2** network interface. The value in the **Route metric** field is blocked for manual editing for interfaces with **sdwan0**–**sdwan9** aliases.

    The metric is automatically calculated from the following attributes:

    - `1–4` if there are no errors and there is internet access
    - `11–14` if there are no errors and no internet access
    - `21–24` if there are errors and no internet access.

    Metrics are automatically assigned to interfaces depending on the number the interface alias ends in, in accordance to the following scheme:

    - **sdwan0**: `1, 11, 21`
    - **sdwan1**: `2, 12, 22`
    - **sdwan2**: `3, 13, 23`
    - **sdwan3**: `4, 14, 24`

16. If necessary, clear the following check boxes:

    - Clear the **Keepalive adaptive** check box if you want the network interface that has not received Link Control Protocol (LCP) control packets from the PPPoE server to terminate the PPPoE connection, even if traffic has arrived from the PPPoE server.
    - Clear the **Use default route** check box if you do not want to use the route obtained from the PPPoE server as the default route on the network interface.
    - Clear the **Peer-assigned DNS server** check box if you do not want the network interface to use DNS servers assigned to its neighbors.

    By default, the check boxes are selected.

17. If you want to pass additional command line arguments when starting PPPD (Point-to-Point Protocol Daemon), in the **PPPD** field, enter the command line arguments. For example, you can pass authentication parameters, IP addresses, and scripts to PPPD.

18. If necessary, specify a DNS server for the network interface:

    a. Under **DNS servers**, click **+ Add**.

    b. In the field that is displayed, enter the IP address of the DNS server.

    The DNS server is specified and displayed in the **DNS servers** section. You can specify multiple DNS servers or delete DNS servers. To delete a DNS server, click the delete icon ✕ next to it.

19. Click **Create**.

    The network interface is created and displayed in the table.

20. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Creating a network interface without an IP address

To create a network interface without an IP address:

1. Create a network interface in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to create a network interface in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** section, click the CPE template, and select the **Network** tab.
   - If you want to create a network interface on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** section, click the CPE device, and select the **Network** tab.

   The table of network interfaces is displayed.

2. Click **+ Network interface**.
3. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Alias** field, enter the name of the network interface for mapping the network interface to an OpenFlow port. You must specify this network interface name when creating an SD-WAN interface of the WAN type. The maximum length of the name is 15 characters.
4. If you want to add a network interface to a firewall zone, in the **Zone** drop-down list, select the created firewall zone.
5. In the **Interface name** field, enter the name of the physical port or virtual interface of the operating system of the CPE device. The maximum length of the name is 256 characters. For example, you can enter `eth0`, `eth1`, `eth2`, or `tun0`. To create a bridge from multiple interfaces, enter their names separated by spaces.

   If you want to assign an outer VLAN tag to a network interface, enter a period (.) after the physical port or virtual interface name of the operating system, and then enter the outer VLAN tag. For example, you can enter `eth2.150`.

6. If you want to create a bridge from physical or virtual interfaces whose names are specified in the **Interface name** field:

   a. Select the **Bridge** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

   b. If you want to use STP on the bridge to prevent routing loops, select the **STP** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

   c. In the **Age (sec)** field, enter the duration in seconds for which dynamic records are stored in the MAC table of the bridge. If you want to use the bridge as a hub, enter `0` in this field. Range of values: 0 to 86,400.

7. If you want to enable the NetFlow protocol on the network interface, select the **NetFlow** check box. This check box is cleared by default.
8. In the **Protocol** drop-down list, select **None**.

9. If you want to establish L2 connectivity between CPE devices, select the **L2 mode** check box. When the check box is selected, an OpenFlow port mapped to the network interface is automatically created on the virtual switch of the CPE device. This check box is cleared by default. You cannot select this check box in the following cases:

   - You selected one of the following check boxes when creating the network interface:
     - **Bridge**
     - **NetFlow**
     - **Force IP address, route, and gateway**
   - The network interface is used in a static route.
   - The network interface is used by BGP.
   - The network interface is used by the OSPF protocol.
   - The network interface is used by the VRRP protocol.
   - The network interface is used to transmit multicast traffic.
   - The network interface is used by a virtual routing and forwarding table (VRF).
   - The network interface is used for CPE device diagnostics using the ping, traceroute, tcpdump, or sweep utility.

   If you select this check box, the OpenFlow port automatically created on the virtual switch of the CPE device is displayed in the **OpenFlow port** field. You can change the OpenFlow port number. Range of values: 11 to 20.

10. If you want the network interface to be automatically enabled when the CPE device is enabled, select the **Enable automatically** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

11. If you want an IP address, route, and default gateway automatically assigned to the network interface, select the **Force IP address, route, and gateway** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

12. In the **Override MAC** field, enter the MAC address of the network interface. The entered value replaces the actual MAC address of the network interface.

13. In the **Override MTU** field, enter the MTU for the network interface. The entered value overrides the default MTU.

14. Click **Create**.

    The network interface is created and displayed in the table.

15. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Editing a network interface

You can edit a network interface in a CPE template or on a CPE device. A network interface edited in the CPE template is automatically modified on all CPE devices that use this CPE template.

To edit a network interface:

1. Edit a network interface in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to edit a network interface in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **Network** tab.

   - If you want to edit a network interface on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, and select the **Network** tab. If you want to edit a network interface inherited from the CPE template, select the **Override** check box next to the network interface.

   The table of network interfaces is displayed.

2. Click **Edit** next to the network interface that you want to edit.

3. This opens a window; in that window, if necessary, edit the network interface settings. For a description of the settings, see the instructions for creating a network interface.

4. Click **Save**.

   The network interface is modified and updated in the table.

5. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Disabling or enabling a network interface

You can disable or enable a network interface in a CPE template or on a CPE device. A network interface enabled or disabled in a CPE template is automatically enabled or disabled on all CPE devices that use this CPE template.

To disable or enable a network interface:

1. Disable or enable a network interface in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to enable or disable a network interface in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **Network** tab.

   - If you want to enable or disable a network interface on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** menu section, click the CPE device, and select the **Network** tab. If you want to disable or enable a network interface inherited from the CPE template, select the **Override** check box next to the network interface.

   The table of network interfaces is displayed.

2. Click **Disable** or **Enable** next to the network interface that you want to disable or enable.

   The network interface is disabled or enabled.

3. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Canceling the application of network interface settings to a CPE device

If you do not want to apply network interface settings to a CPE device:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** section.

   A table of CPE devices is displayed.

2. Click the CPE device to which you do not want to apply network interface settings.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, in the menu on the left, the **Configuration** section is selected, which displays general information about the CPE device. This section also displays the table of **Out-of-band management** tasks being performed by the orchestrator.

3. Select the **Network** tab.

   The table of network interfaces is displayed.

4. Select the **Ignore network settings** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

5. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save CPE device settings.

Network interface settings are not applied to the CPE device.

If you want to apply network interface settings to the CPE device, clear the **Ignore network settings** check box.

Deleting a network interface

You can delete a network interface in a CPE template or on a CPE device. A network interface deleted in the CPE template is automatically deleted on all CPE devices that use this CPE template. You cannot delete a network interface that is inherited from a CPE template on a CPE device.

Deleted network interfaces cannot be restored.

To delete a network interface:

1. Delete a network interface in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to delete a network interface in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **Network** tab.
   - If you want to delete a network interface on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, and select the **Network** tab.

   The table of network interfaces is displayed.

2. Click **Delete** next to the network interface that you want to delete.

3. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

   The network interface is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

4. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Configuring the connection of a CPE device to the orchestrator and controller

When a CPE device is being registered, it connects to the orchestrator and controller. You can specify the orchestrator and controller connection settings in a CPE template or on a CPE device. Orchestrator and controller connection settings specified in the CPE template are automatically propagated to all CPE devices that use this CPE template.

Some hardware CPE models have additional LEDs that display the status of the controller connection, the orchestrator connection, and whether there are any active tunnels if the CPE function is enabled. For more information about the LEDs, refer to the documentation for the devices or contact Technical Support.

To configure the connection of a CPE device to the orchestrator and controller:

1. Configure the orchestrator and controller connection of the CPE device in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to configure automatic connection to the orchestrator and controller in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **SD-WAN → General settings** tab.

   - If you want to configure automatic connection to the orchestrator and controller in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, and select the **SD-WAN → General settings** tab and select the **Override** check box.

   This displays connection settings of a CPE device to the orchestrator and controller.

2. Under **Connection to orchestrator**, specify the orchestrator connection settings of the CPE device:

   a. In the **Orchestrator IP address/FQDN** field, enter the IP address or FQDN of the orchestrator. The maximum length of the FQDN is 50 characters.

   b. In the **Orchestrator port** field, enter the port number of the orchestrator. Range of values: 0 to 65,535.

   c. If you want to use a backup orchestrator if the main orchestrator fails, under **Backup orchestrator IP address and port**:

      1. Select the **Enabled** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

      2. In the **Backup orchestrator IP address/FQDN** field, enter the IP address or FQDN of the backup orchestrator. The maximum length of the FQDN is 50 characters.

      3. In the **Backup orchestrator port** field, enter the port number of the backup orchestrator. Range of values: 0 to 65,535.

   d. In the **Orchestrator protocol** drop-down list, select the protocol for connecting the CPE device to the orchestrator:

      - **http**.

      - **https**. This is the default setting.

      This setting can only be specified in a CPE template.

   e. In the **Update interval (sec)** field, enter the period in seconds for sending REST API requests from the CPE device to the orchestrator. Range of values: 5 to 300. Default value: `30`.

   f. In the **Interactive update interval (sec)** field, enter the period in seconds for sending REST API requests from the CPE device to the orchestrator in interactive mode. Range of values: 1 to 10. You can enable interactive mode for CPE device diagnostics.

   g. In the **Interactive mode timeout (sec)** field, enter the time in seconds after which interactive mode is automatically disabled on the CPE device. Range of values: 30 to 180.

3. Under **Connection to controller**, specify the controller connection settings of the CPE device:

   a. In the **OpenFlow transport** drop-down list, specify whether management sessions between SD-WAN interfaces of the WAN type of the CPE device and controller nodes are encrypted:

      - **TCP** for unencrypted management sessions.
      - **SSL** for encrypted management sessions. This is the default setting.

      This setting can only be specified in a CPE template.

   b. In the **Control SD-WAN interface** drop-down list, select the SD-WAN interface of the WAN type that is prioritized when establishing the primary management session:

      - **Random** means that the primary management session is established from a randomly chosen SD-WAN interface of the WAN type. This is the default setting.
      - **<SD-WAN interface of the WAN type>** means that the specified SD-WAN interface of the WAN type is used to establish the primary management session. If the specified SD-WAN interface of the WAN type is not available, the primary management session established from a randomly chosen SD-WAN interface of the WAN type.

      If the SD-WAN interface of the WAN type from which the primary management session was established fails, a new primary management session is randomly selected from previously established management sessions. If in the **Control SD-WAN interface** drop-down list, you selected **<SD-WAN interface of the WAN type>** and you want the management session established from the specified SD-WAN interface of the WAN type to become the primary session again when that interface recovers:

      1. Select the **Preemption** check box. This check box is cleared by default.
      2. In the **Timeout** field, enter the time in seconds after which the management session established from the specified SD-WAN interface of the WAN type becomes primary again when that interface recovers. Range of values: 0 to 86,400.

   c. In the **Auto-reboot** drop-down list, select whether you want the CPE device to restart when management sessions with controller nodes are interrupted for a long time:

      - **Yes**. If you select this option, in the **Reboot timeout (sec)** field, enter the time in seconds after which the CPE device is automatically restarted when management sessions with controller nodes are interrupted. Range of values: 60 to 2,073,600.
      - **No**. This is the default setting.

   d. In the **Configuration URL** field, enter the URL template for the basic settings of the CPE device. When entering a template, consider the following limitations:

      - `{config}` is a mandatory part which is replaced with settings for the CPE device when a link is generated from the template.
      - Maximum length: 128 characters.
      - You must specify `http` or `https`.

      By default, the following URL template is used: `http://192.168.7.1/cgi-bin/config?payload={config}`.

4. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Managing SD-WAN interfaces

SD-WAN interfaces are logical interfaces on top of the network interfaces of the CPE device and OpenFlow ports of the virtual switch, which form an additional level of abstraction. Each SD-WAN interface is mapped to a network interface by the network interface name and an OpenFlow port by the OpenFlow port number. The following types of SD-WAN interfaces are possible:

- SD-WAN interfaces of the LAN type are SD-WAN interfaces created by default and mapped to network interfaces that are connected to the LAN. You cannot delete and create an SD-WAN interface of the LAN type, but you can edit it to specify the maximum speed and configure traffic queues.
- SD-WAN interfaces of the WAN type are SD-WAN interfaces mapped to network interfaces that are connected to the WAN.
- An SD-WAN interface of the management type is an SD-WAN interface created by default and mapped to a network interface that is used by the Zabbix monitoring system for passive monitoring of the CPE device, as well as by the orchestrator for connecting to the CPE device over SSH. You cannot delete and create an SD-WAN interface of the management type.

You can view the table of SD-WAN interfaces in a CPE template and on a CPE device:

- To view the table of SD-WAN interfaces in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **SD-WAN** → **Interfaces** tab.
- To view the table of SD-WAN interfaces on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, and select the **SD-WAN** → **Interfaces** tab.

Information about SD-WAN interfaces is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Type** is the type of the SD-WAN interface:
  - **WAN**
  - **LAN**
  - **Management**
- **Inherited** indicates whether the SD-WAN interface is inherited from a CPE template:
  - **Yes**.
  - **No**.

  This column is displayed only on the CPE device.
- **Port** is the OpenFlow port number.
- **Alias** is the name of the network interface.
- **Maximum rate** is the maximum speed of the SD-WAN interface in Mbps.

Additional information about WAN checks to which SD-WAN interfaces of the WAN type are connected is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **IP address for tracking** are the IP addresses of hosts for checking WAN availability.
- **Reliability** is the minimum number of successful checks that makes the WAN available.
- **Count** is the number of requests to hosts within one WAN check.
- **Timeout** is time to wait for a response from hosts, in milliseconds.
- **Interval (sec)** is the time interval in seconds for the WAN check.
- **Down** is the number of unsuccessful checks that makes the WAN unavailable.
- **Up** is the number of successful checks that makes the WAN available.
- **Speed monitoring** indicates whether the speed of the SD-WAN interface of the WAN type is being measured:
  - **Yes**.
  - **No**.

About sending information about SD-WAN interfaces of the WAN type to the controller

When creating or editing SD-WAN interfaces of the WAN type, you can specify what information must be sent to the controller.

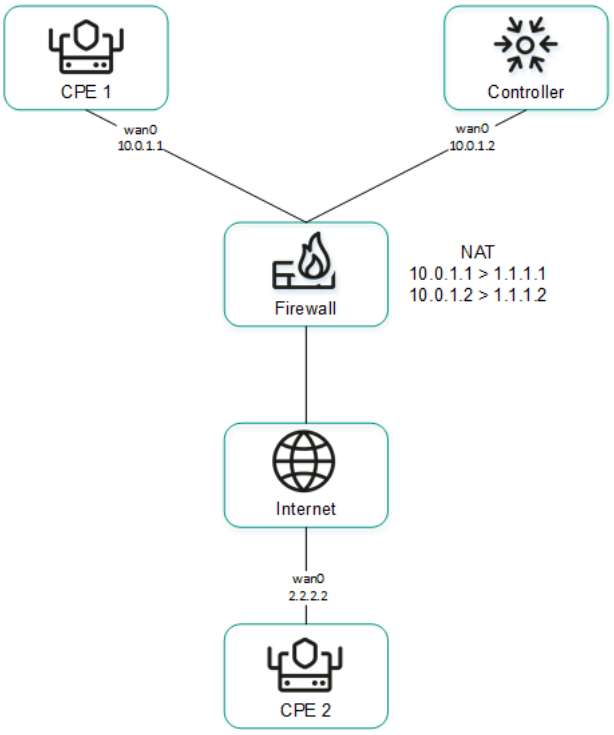
Sending public IP addresses and UDP ports of SD-WAN interfaces to the controller

To establish links between CPE devices, the controller must obtain information about the public IP addresses of SD-WAN interfaces of the WAN type. By default, the controller obtains this information through a management session. In that case, the source IP address is used as the public IP address.

You can manually specify the IP addresses and UDP ports of SD-WAN interface of the WAN type. In the figure below, CPE 1 and the controller are on the same local network and gain access to the Internet through the same firewall that does IP address forwarding.

When establishing a session between the SD-WAN interface of the WAN type of CPE 1 and the public IP address of the controller (1.1.1.2), if the firewall cannot be configured in a way that would involve the Controller forwarding the private IP address to the public IP address (10.0.1.1 > 1.1.1.1), the Controller is unable to obtain information about the public IP address of the SD-WAN interface of the WAN type and provide it to other CPE devices in the topology (CPE 2).

As a result, a link cannot be created between CPE 1 and CPE 2; CPE 1 becomes isolated and cannot be added to the common control plane.



CPE 1 and the controller are behind NAT and are connected to CPE 2

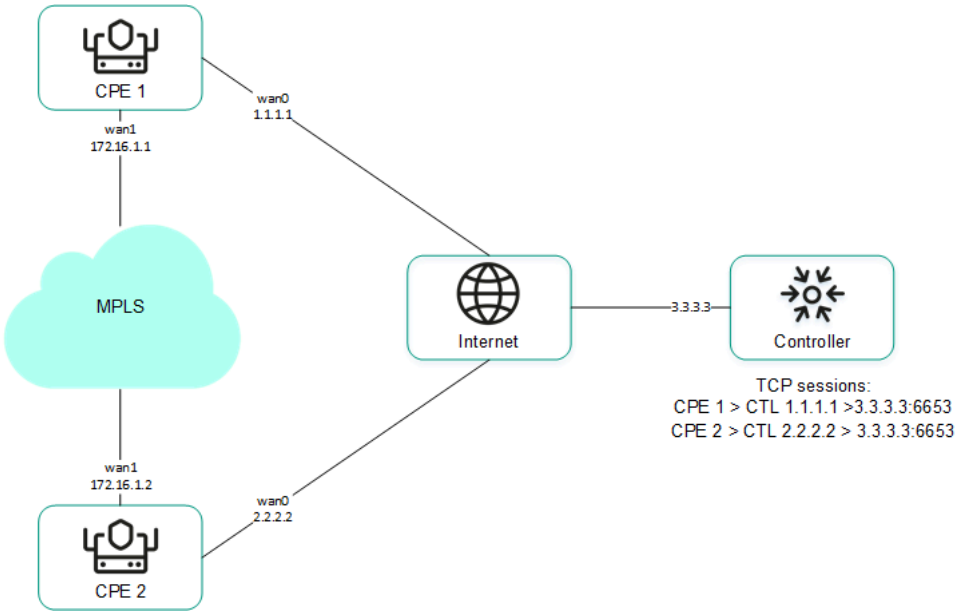
Sending IP addresses of SD-WAN interfaces of the WAN type located in an isolated network to the controller

SD-WAN interfaces of the WAN type may be on an isolated network without the possibility of establishing a management session with the controller, but they can be used to establish links. In this case, the controller cannot obtain information about the IP addresses of isolated SD-WAN interfaces of the WAN type and use it to establish links between CPE devices.

In the figure below, CPE 1 and CPE 2 have two SD-WAN interface of the WAN type each, but they can establish a management session with the controller only through wan0 because wan1 is on an isolated network (MPLS) that does not have access to the controller. However, both wan1 interfaces can be used to establish links.

If the link used to interact with the controller fails for one of the CPE devices, all other links also cannot be used, even if they remain operational, because the controller excludes the device from the topology.

The IP addresses of isolated SD-WAN interfaces of the WAN type are sent to the controller through the orchestrator.



CPE 1 and CPE 2 are connected with each other through MPLS and with the controller through the Internet.

Package fragmentation

Kaspersky SD-WAN checks whether fragmentation of traffic packets is supported on CPE devices. A packet fragmentation test is started automatically. When each CPE device is enabled, it sends two ICMP requests to the IP addresses that you specified when creating or editing SD-WAN interfaces of the WAN type.

The ICMP requests have a packet size of 1600 bytes. If at least one of the ICMP requests receives a response, a conclusion is made that the CPE device supports packet fragmentation. You can view the fragmentation test result in the **Fragmentation** column of the CPE device table or the link table.

Traffic queues on SD-WAN interfaces

A maximum of 8 traffic queues can be used on SD-WAN interfaces. For each traffic queue, you must specify the minimum and maximum bandwidth as a percentage of the total bandwidth set for the SD-WAN interface. The sum total of all minimum bandwidth values specified for traffic queues may not exceed 100%.

The traffic queues are strict priority and unreserved bandwidth is first offered to traffic from the higher-priority queue. Each traffic queue is guaranteed certain minimum bandwidth in accordance with its specified minimum bandwidth value. An upper limit on the maximum bandwidth for higher-priority queues is necessary to allow traffic from lower-priority traffic queues to still be transmitted.

You can configure traffic queues when creating an SD-WAN interface of the WAN type or editing an SD-WAN interface.

Service providers can use different quality of service policies to mark traffic queues in their networks and meet SLA requirements for the passage of client traffic. Therefore, when simultaneously connecting to the networks of different service providers, CPE devices can relabel traffic of different queues for each SD-WAN interface of the WAN type. To configure relabeling, you must change the type of service (ToS) when configuring traffic queues on an SD-WAN interface.

You can only change the ToS values of external headers of traffic packets originating from SD-WAN interfaces of the WAN type. ToS values of internal traffic packet headers cannot be edited.

Creating an SD-WAN interface of the WAN type

You can create an SD-WAN interface of the WAN type in a CPE template or on a CPE device. An SD-WAN interface of the WAN type created in a CPE template is automatically created on all CPE devices that are using this CPE template.

To create an SD-WAN interface of the WAN type:

1. Create an SD-WAN interface of the WAN type in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to create an SD-WAN interface of the WAN type in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **SD-WAN** → **Interfaces** tab.
   - If you want to create an SD-WAN interface of the WAN type on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, and select the **SD-WAN** → **Interfaces** tab.

   A table of SD-WAN interfaces is displayed.

2. Click **+ SD-WAN interface**.
3. This opens a window; in that window, in the **OpenFlow port** field, enter the number of the OpenFlow port that you are creating on the virtual switch.
4. In the **Interface (alias)** field, enter the name of the created network interface, which the SD-WAN interface of the WAN type is mapped to.
5. In the **Maximum rate** field, enter the maximum speed of the SD-WAN interface of the WAN type in Mbps. Range of values: 1 to 100,000. Default value: `1000`.

6. Configure the availability check of the WAN to which the SD-WAN interface of the WAN type is connected:

   a. Specify the host for checking WAN availability. To do so, under **IP address for tracking**, enter the IP address of the host and click **+ Add**.

      The host is specified and displayed under **IP address for tracking**. You can specify multiple hosts or delete hosts. To delete a host, click the delete icon ✕ next to it.

   b. In the **IP address for fragmentation check** field, enter the IPv4 address of the host up to which fragmentation support is checked. Default value: `1.1.1.1`.

   c. In the **Reliability** field, enter the minimum number of successful checks that makes the WAN available. Default value: `1`.

      Make sure that the number of hosts does not exceed the number of IP addresses specified under **IP address for tracking**. Otherwise, the WAN will always be considered unavailable.

   d. In the **Interval (sec)** field, enter the time interval in seconds for the WAN check. Range of values: 1 to 600. Default value: `2`.

   e. In the **Count** field, enter the number of requests to hosts within one WAN check. Range of values: 1 to 600. Default value: `2`.

   f. In the **Timeout** field, enter the time to wait for a response from hosts, in milliseconds. Range of values: 1 to 100,000. Default value: `2000`.

   g. In the **Down** field, enter the number of unsuccessful checks that makes the WAN unavailable. Range of values: 1 to 600. Default value: `3`.

   h. In the **Up** field, enter the number of successful checks that makes the WAN available. Range of values: 1 to 600. Default value: `2`.

   i. In the **Speed monitoring** drop-down list, select whether the speed of the SD-WAN interface of the WAN type is being measured:

      - **Yes**.
      - **No**. This is the default setting.

7. If you want to configure traffic queues on the SD-WAN interface of the WAN type:

   a. Select the **QoS** tab.

      A table of traffic queues is displayed.

   b. In the **Remap ToS** column, select the Type of Service value of external headers of traffic packets for each queue.

   c. In the **Minimum rate (%)** column, specify the minimum traffic bandwidth for the queue as a percentage of the maximum speed of the SD-WAN interface of the WAN type. The sum total in a column may not exceed 100.

   d. In the **Maximum rate (%)** column, specify the maximum traffic bandwidth for the queue as a percentage of the maximum speed of the SD-WAN interface of the WAN type. This setting is used to prevent traffic of high-priority queues from indefinitely preempting traffic of low-priority queues.

   The maximum speed of the SD-WAN interface of the WAN type is specified at step 5 of these instructions.

8. If you want to configure the sending of information about the SD-WAN interface of the WAN type to the controller:

   a. Select the **NAT and disjoint WAN underlay** tab.

   b. In the **State** drop-down list, select one of the following values:

      - **Disabled** if you do not want information about the SD-WAN interface of the WAN type to be sent to the controller. This is the default setting.
      - **NAT/PAT** if the SD-WAN interface of the WAN type is behind NAT or PAT and needs to be assigned a public IP address and UDP port number, which must be sent to the controller.
      - **Disjoint WAN underlay** means the SD-WAN interface of the WAN type is connected to an isolated network, and the IP address of the SD-WAN interface of the WAN type must be passed to the controller.

   c. If in the **State** drop-down list, you selected **NAT/PAT**, follow these steps:

      1. In the **Real IP address** field, enter the public IPv4 address of the SD-WAN interface of the WAN type.
      2. In the **Real GENEVE UDP port** field, enter the UDP port number of the SD-WAN interface of the WAN type. Range of values: 1 to 65,535.

   d. If in the **State** drop-down list you selected **Disjoint WAN underlay**, enter the IPv4 address of the SD-WAN interface of the WAN type in the **IP address** field.

   e. If necessary, override the virtual routing and forwarding table for the SD-WAN interface of the WAN type. To do this, enable the **Assign VRF** toggle switch, then in the **VRF** drop-down list, select a virtual routing and forwarding table.

      Overriding the VRF lets you configure an alternative route for communication with the controller. For example, you can use an interface of the LAN type instead of the default WAN. The value you specify in the **VRF** list takes effect only after restarting the CPE or disabling and enabling the corresponding network interface.

9. If SD-WAN interfaces of the WAN type of the CPE device are connected to different networks, for example, the internet and a private MPLS network, you can change the IP addresses and TCP port numbers of controller nodes on an individual SD-WAN interface of the WAN type. To do so:

   a. Select the **Controllers** tab.

   b. Select the **Rewrite controllers' IP address/port** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

   c. In the **Number of controllers** drop-down list, select the number of controller nodes.

   > You need to specify the number of controller nodes that you deployed when you deployed the SD-WAN instance. Otherwise, an error occurs and the settings remain unchanged.

   d. In the **IP address** field, enter the IPv4 address of the controller node. The number of fields corresponds to the value that you selected in the **Number of controllers** drop-down list.

   e. In the **Port** field, enter the base port number of the controller node. Range of values: 1 to 65,535. Default value: `6653`. The number of fields corresponds to the value that you selected in the **Number of controllers** drop-down list.

   Along with the base port of the controller node, ports with the next three consecutive numbers are automatically specified. For example, if you enter the `6653` as the base port number, ports 6654, 6655, and 6656 are automatically specified.

   > For the changes to take effect, you need to restart the CPE device after changing the IP addresses and TCP port numbers of controller nodes on the SD-WAN interface of the WAN type.

   You can change the IP addresses and TCP port numbers of the controller nodes while configuring the controller nodes of an SD-WAN instance. This automatically changes the IP addresses and TCP port numbers of controller nodes on all CPE devices that are added to the SD-WAN instance. The IP addresses and TCP port numbers specified on an individual SD-WAN interface of the WAN type take precedence over the IP addresses and TCP port numbers specified when configuring the controller nodes of the SD-WAN instance.

10. Click **Create**.

    The SD-WAN interface of the WAN type is created and displayed in the table.

11. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Editing an SD-WAN interface

You can edit an SD-WAN interface in a CPE template or on a CPE device. You cannot edit the name of an SD-WAN interface. When editing an SD-WAN interface of the LAN type, you can only configure the maximum speed and traffic queues. An SD-WAN interface edited in the CPE template is automatically modified on all CPE devices that use this CPE template.

To edit an SD-WAN interface:

1. Edit an SD-WAN interface in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to edit an SD-WAN interface in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **SD-WAN** → **Interfaces** tab.

   - If you want to edit an SD-WAN interface on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, and select the **SD-WAN** → **Interfaces** tab. If you want to edit an SD-WAN interface inherited from the CPE template, select the **Override** check box next to that SD-WAN interface.

   A table of SD-WAN interfaces is displayed.

2. Click **Edit** next to the SD-WAN interface that you want to edit.

3. This opens a window; in that window, if necessary, edit the SD-WAN interface settings. For a description of the settings, see the instructions for creating an interface of the WAN type.

4. Click **Save**.

   The SD-WAN interface is modified and updated in the table.

5. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Disabling or enabling an SD-WAN interface

You can disable or enable an SD-WAN interface in a CPE template or on a CPE device. An SD-WAN interface enabled or disabled in a CPE template is automatically enabled or disabled on all CPE devices that use this CPE template.

To disable or enable an SD-WAN interface:

1. Disable or enable an SD-WAN interface in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to enable or disable an SD-WAN interface in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **SD-WAN** → **Interfaces** tab.

   - If you want to enable or disable an SD-WAN interface on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, and select the **SD-WAN** → **Interfaces** tab. If you want to disable or enable an SD-WAN interface inherited from the CPE template, select the **Override** check box next to that SD-WAN interface.

   A table of SD-WAN interfaces is displayed.

2. Click **Disable** or **Enable** next to the SD-WAN interface that you want to disable or enable.

   The SD-WAN interface is disabled or enabled and updated in the table.

3. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Deleting an SD-WAN interface of the WAN type

You can delete an SD-WAN interface of the WAN type in a CPE template or on a CPE device. An SD-WAN interface of the WAN type deleted in a CPE template is automatically deleted on all CPE devices that are using this CPE template. You cannot delete an SD-WAN interface inherited from the CPE template on a CPE device, or delete an SD-WAN interface of the LAN type.

Deleted SD-WAN interfaces of the WAN type cannot be restored.

To delete an SD-WAN interface of the WAN type:

1. Delete an SD-WAN interface of the WAN type in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to delete an SD-WAN interface of the WAN type in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **SD-WAN** → **Interfaces** tab.

   - If you want to delete an SD-WAN interface of the WAN type on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, and select the **SD-WAN** → **Interfaces** tab.

   A table of SD-WAN interfaces is displayed.

2. Click **Delete** next to the SD-WAN interface of the WAN type that you want to delete.

3. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

   The SD-WAN interface of the WAN type is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

4. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Managing service interfaces

Service interfaces are mapped to OpenFlow ports and are used to connect a CPE device to transport services. A service interface cannot be mapped to an OpenFlow port that is already mapped to an SD-WAN interface of the WAN type.

If you want to filter traffic packets on a service interface, you can create an Access Control List (ACL) interface that is mapped to this service interface. The ACL interface applies the specified traffic filter to the service interface. A single service interface can be mapped to at most four ACL interfaces.

To view the table of service interfaces, go to the **Infrastructure** menu section, click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller, and go to the **Service interfaces** section. Information about service interfaces is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Port** is the number of the OpenFlow port to which the service interface is mapped to.
- **Type** is the traffic classification type on the service interface.
  - **Access**
  - **VLAN**
  - **Q-in-Q**
  - **ACL**
- **Description** is a brief description of the service interface.
- **VLAN** is the outer VLAN tag of the service interface. The value in this column is only displayed for service interfaces with traffic classification types **VLAN** and **Q-in-Q**.
- **Inner VLAN** is the inner VLAN tag of the service interface. The value in this column is only displayed for service interfaces with traffic classification type **Q-in-Q**.
- **Filter** is the traffic filter for the ACL interface. The value in this column is only displayed for service interfaces with traffic classification type **ACL**.
- **Name** is the information about the service interface:
  - Name and DPID of the CPE device on which the service interface was created
  - The number of the OpenFlow port which the service interface is mapped to

The actions that you can perform with the table are described in the Managing solution component tables article.

Creating a service interface

To create a service interface:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **Service interfaces** section.

   A table of service interfaces and ACL interfaces is displayed.

4. In the **Switch** and **Port** drop-down lists, select the CPE device and the OpenFlow port to which the service interface is mapped.

5. Click **Create new**.

6. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Type** drop-down list, select the type of traffic classification on the service interface:

   - **Access** This is the default setting.
   - **VLAN** If you select this option, in the **VLAN ID** field, enter the outer VLAN tag of the service interface. Range of values: 1 to 4094.
   - **Q-in-Q** If you select this option, do the following:

     a. In the **VLAN ID** field, enter the outer VLAN tag of the service interface. Range of values: 1 to 4094.

     b. In the **Inner VLAN ID** field, enter the inner VLAN tag of the service interface. Range of values: 1 to 4094.
   - **ACL** is used when creating an ACL interface.

7. If necessary, enter a brief description of the service interface in the **Description** field.

8. Click **Create**.

The service interface is created and displayed in the table.

Creating an ACL interface

To create an ACL interface:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **Service interfaces** section.

   A table of service interfaces and ACL interfaces is displayed.

4. In the **Switch** and **Port** drop-down lists, select the CPE device and the OpenFlow port to which the created service interface is mapped.

5. Click **Create new**.

6. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Type** drop-down list, select **ACL**.

7. In the **Service interface** drop-down list, select the service interface to which the ACL interface is mapped.

8. In the **Traffic filter** drop-down list, select the created traffic filter for the ACL interface. You can use the same traffic filter for multiple ACL interfaces.

9. In the **Sequence** drop-down list, select the sequential number of the ACL interface. Traffic is directed first to the ACL interface with the lowest number. If the filter used on an ACL interface does not take in the traffic, the traffic is sent to the second ACL interface, and so on.

   Range of values: 1 to 4. Two ACL interfaces with the same serial number cannot be mapped to the same service interface.

10. If necessary, enter a brief description of the ACL interface in the **Description** field.

11. Click **Create**.

The ACL interface is created and displayed in the table.

Viewing the usage of a service interface and an ACL interface

If necessary, you can check which transport services are using a service interface or an ACL interface. For example, a service interface or ACL interface that is in use cannot be deleted.

To see if a service interface or ACL interface is being used:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **Service interfaces** section.

   A table of service interfaces and ACL interfaces is displayed.

4. Click **Management** → **Show usage** next to the service interface or ACL interface for which you want to view usage information.

This opens a window with a table of transport services that are using the service interface or ACL interface.

Deleting a service interface or an ACL interface

You cannot delete a service interface or an ACL interface if it is being used by at least one transport service. To delete a service interface or ACL interface that is being used by transport services, you must first remove the service interface or ACL interface from the settings of the transport services. You can check which transport services are using a service interface or an ACL interface.

Deleted service interfaces and ACL interfaces cannot be restored.

To delete a service interface or an ACL interface:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **Service interfaces** section.

   A table of service interfaces and ACL interfaces is displayed.

4. Click **Management** → **Delete** next to the service interface or ACL interface that you want to delete.

5. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

The service interface or ACL interface is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

Managing OpenFlow port groups

OpenFlow ports are interfaces of the overlay SDN that are automatically created at the same time as the SD-WAN interfaces. The controller uses OpenFlow ports to control network traffic. You can create service interfaces and UNIs that are mapped to OpenFlow ports.

OpenFlow ports can be combined into OpenFlow port groups and used when creating P2M and M2M transport services. When you add an OpenFlow port group to a transport service, this automatically creates service interfaces mapped to the OpenFlow ports, and then these service interfaces are added to the transport service. Using groups of OpenFlow ports eliminates the need to manually create service interfaces and add them to transport services.

To view the table of OpenFlow port groups, go to the **Infrastructure** menu section, click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller, and go to the **OpenFlow port groups** section. Information about groups of OpenFlow ports is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Name** is the name of the OpenFlow port group.
- **OpenFlow ports** are OpenFlow ports that have been added to the OpenFlow ports group.

The actions that you can perform with the table are described in the Managing solution component tables article.

Creating an OpenFlow port group

To create a group of OpenFlow ports:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **OpenFlow port groups** section.

   A table of groups of OpenFlow ports is displayed.

4. In the upper part of the page, click **+ OpenFlow port group**.

5. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Name** field, enter the name of the OpenFlow port group.

6. In the **Switch** and **Port** drop-down lists, select the CPE device and OpenFlow port that you want to add to the OpenFlow port group.

   You can add multiple OpenFlow ports or delete OpenFlow ports. To delete an OpenFlow port, click **Delete** next to it.

7. Click **Create**.

The group of OpenFlow ports is created and displayed in the table.

Editing an OpenFlow port group

To edit a group of OpenFlow ports:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **OpenFlow port groups** section.

   A table of groups of OpenFlow ports is displayed.

4. Click **Management** → **Edit** next to the group of OpenFlow ports that you want to edit.

5. This opens a window; in that window, if necessary, edit the name of the OpenFlow port group and add or delete OpenFlow ports.

6. Click **Save**.

The OpenFlow port group is modified and updated in the table.

Deleting an OpenFlow port group

Deleted groups of OpenFlow ports cannot be restored.

To delete a group of OpenFlow ports:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **OpenFlow port groups** section.

   A table of groups of OpenFlow ports is displayed.

4. Click **Management** → **Delete** next to the group of OpenFlow ports that you want to delete.

5. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

The group of OpenFlow ports is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

Configuring a UNI for connecting CPE devices to network services

UNIs are mapped to OpenFlow ports and are used to connect a CPE device to network services. A UNI cannot be mapped to an OpenFlow port that is already mapped to an SD-WAN interface of the WAN type.

UNI templates are used for centralized configuration of UNIs on CPE devices. To avoid creating a UNI on each individual CPE device, you can create a UNI in a UNI template and then apply the UNI template to CPE devices when adding or manually registering them. If you edit a UNI in a UNI template, the UNI is automatically modified on all CPE devices that are using this UNI template.

When creating a UNI, a service interface is automatically created for it.

Managing UNI templates

You can view the table of UNI templates in the **SD-WAN** →**UNI templates** section. Information about UNI templates is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **ID** is the ID of the UNI template.
- **Name** is the name of the UNI template.
- **Used** indicates whether the UNI template is being used by CPE devices:
  - **Yes**.
  - **No**.
- **Updated** is the date and time when the UNI template settings were last modified.
- **User** is the name of the user which created the UNI template.
- **Owner** is the tenant to which the UNI template belongs.

The actions that you can perform with the table are described in the Managing solution component tables article.

You can manage UNI template settings on the following tabs:

- **Information** is the basic information about the UNI template. You can edit the name of the UNI template in the **Name** field.
- **UNIs** contains UNIs that have been created in the UNI template.

Creating a UNI template

To create a UNI template:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **UNI templates** subsection.

   A table of UNI templates is displayed.

2. In the upper part of the page, click **+ UNI template**.
3. This opens a window; in that window, enter the name of the UNI template.
4. Click **Create**.

The UNI template is created and displayed in the table.

You need to configure the created UNI template. For details on managing UNI templates, see Managing UNI templates.

Deleting a UNI template

Deleted UNI templates cannot be restored.

To delete a UNI template:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **UNI templates** subsection.

   A table of UNI templates is displayed.

2. Click the UNI template that you want to delete.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃⌃. By default, the **Information** tab is selected, which displays the UNI template name and the tenant to which the UNI template is assigned.

3. In the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Delete**.

4. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

The UNI template is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

Managing UNIs

Managing UNIs in a UNI template

To view the table of UNIs in a UNI template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **UNI templates** menu section, click the UNI template, and select the **UNIs** tab. Information about UNIs is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Name** is the name of the UNI.
- **OpenFlow port** is the number of the OpenFlow port mapped to the UNI.
- **Classification** is the traffic classification type on the UNI:
  - **Access**
  - **VLAN**
  - **Q-in-Q**
- **Actions** contains the actions can be performed with the UNI.

Managing UNIs on a CPE device

To view the list of UNIs on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, and select the **UNIs** tab.

Creating a UNI

You can create a UNI in a UNI template or on a CPE device. A UNI created in the UNI template is automatically created on all CPE devices that use this UNI template.

To create a UNI:

1. Create a UNI in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to create a UNI in a UNI template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **UNI templates** menu section, click the UNI template, and select the **UNIs** tab.

   - If you want to create an UNI on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, and select the **UNIs** tab.

   A table or list of UNIs is displayed.

2. Click **+ UNI**.

3. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Name** field, enter the name of the UNI.

4. Specify the OpenFlow port to which the UNI is mapped in one of the following ways:

   - If you are creating a UNI in a UNI template, enter the OpenFlow port number in the **OpenFlow port** field.

   - If you are creating a UNI on a CPE device, select the OpenFlow port in the **Port** drop-down list.

5. In the **Classification** drop-down list, select the traffic classification type on the UNI:

   - **Access** This is the default setting.

   - **VLAN** If you select this option, in the **VLAN ID** field, enter the outer VLAN tag of the UNI. Range of values: 1 to 4094.

   - **Q-in-Q** If you select this option, do the following:

     a. In the **VLAN ID** field, enter the outer VLAN tag of the UNI. Range of values: 1 to 4094.

     b. In the **Inner VLAN ID** field, enter the inner VLAN tag of the UNI. Range of values: 1 to 4094.

6. If you are creating a UNI on a CPE device, in the **QoS** drop-down list, select a created quality of service rule for the UNI.

7. Click **Create**.

   The UNI is created and displayed in the table or list.

8. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the UNI template or CPE device.

Viewing UNI usage

If necessary, you can check which network services are using the UNI on a CPE device. For example, if a UNI template is in use, it cannot be deleted.

To see if a UNI template is being used:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** section.

   A table of CPE devices is displayed.

2. Click the CPE device on which you want to view UNI usage.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃⌃. By default, in the menu on the left, the **Configuration** section is selected, which displays general information about the CPE device. This section also displays the table of **Out-of-band management** tasks being performed by the orchestrator.

3. Select the **UNIs** tab.

   A list of UNIs is displayed.

4. Click **Management** → **Show usage** next to the UNI whose usage you want to view.

This opens a window with a table of network services that are using the UNI.

Editing a UNI

You can edit a UNI in a UNI template. A UNI edited in the UNI template is automatically modified on all CPE devices that use this UNI template.

To edit a UNI:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **UNI templates** subsection.

   A table of UNI templates is displayed.

2. Click the UNI template in which you want to edit a UNI.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃⌃. By default, the **Information** tab is selected, which displays the UNI template name and the tenant to which the UNI template is assigned.

3. Select the **UNI** tab.

   A table of UNIs is displayed.

4. Click **Edit** next to the UNI that you want to edit.

5. This opens a window; in that window, if necessary, edit the UNI settings. For a description of the settings, see the instructions for creating a UNI.

6. Click **Save**.

   The UNI is modified and updated in the table.

7. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save UNI template settings.

Deleting a UNI

You can delete a UNI in a UNI template or on a CPE device. A UNI deleted in the UNI template is automatically deleted on all CPE devices that use this UNI template.

Deleted UNIs cannot be restored.

Deleting a UNI in a UNI template

To delete a UNI in a UNI template:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **UNI templates** subsection.

   A table of UNI templates is displayed.

2. Click the UNI template in which you want to delete a UNI.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, the **Information** tab is selected, which displays the UNI template name and the tenant to which the UNI template is assigned.

3. Select the **UNIs** tab.

   A table of UNIs is displayed.

4. Click **Delete** next to the UNI that you want to delete.

   The UNI is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

5. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save UNI template settings.

Deleting an UNI on a CPE device

You cannot delete a UNI if it is being used by at least one network service. To remove a UNI that is being used by network services, you must first remove the UNI from the network services topology. You can check which network services are using the UNI.

To delete a UNI on a CPE device:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** section.

   A table of CPE devices is displayed.

2. Click the CPE device on which you want to delete a UNI.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, in the menu on the left, the **Configuration** section is selected, which displays general information about the CPE device. This section also displays the table of **Out-of-band management** tasks being performed by the orchestrator.

3. Select the **UNIs** tab.

   A list of UNIs is displayed.

4. Click **Management** → **Delete** next to the UNI that you want to delete.

5. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

   The UNI is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

6. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save CPE device settings.

Adding a static route

In addition to dynamic route exchange between CPE devices and external network devices via BGP and OSPF protocols, Kaspersky SD-WAN supports static IPv4 routes. You can add a static route in a CPE template or on a CPE device. A static route added to the CPE template is automatically added to all CPE devices that use this CPE template.

To add a static route:

1. Add a static route in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to add a static route in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **Static routes** tab.
   - If you want to add a static route on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, and select the **Static routes** tab and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of static routes is displayed.

2. Click **+ Add**.

3. In the **VRF** drop-down list, select a virtual routing and forwarding table. This is a required setting.

4. In the **Interface** drop-down list, select the created source network interface of the static route. This is a required setting if VRF main/254 is selected as the virtual routing and forwarding table.

   The list of interfaces that can be selected depends on the VRF selected at the previous step. You can select only those interfaces that belong to the selected VRF other than main/254, and any interfaces from VRF main/254.

5. In the **Destination** field, enter the destination IPv4 address of the static route.

6. If necessary, in the **IPv4 netmask** field, enter the IPv4 address of the destination subnet of the static route.

7. In the **Gateway** field, enter the IPv4 address of the gateway of the static route.

   You cannot specify a value in this field if in the **Type** list, the **blackhole** route type is selected.

8. In the **Metric** field, enter a metric for the static route. Default value: `0`.

   You cannot specify a value in this field if in the **Type** list, the **blackhole** route type is selected or if the static route is being created in a virtual routing and forwarding table other than VRF main/254.

9. In the **MTU** field, enter the MTU value for the static route.

   You cannot specify a value in this field if in the **Type** list, the **blackhole** route type is selected or if the static route is being created in a virtual routing and forwarding table other than VRF main/254.

10. In the **AD** field, enter the administrative distance for the static route.

    You cannot specify a value in this field if the static route is being created in VRF main/254. Default value: `1`.

    For the table of correspondence between administrative distances and routing protocols, see the relevant article.

11. In the **Type** drop-down list, select the type of the static route:

    - **unicast**. This is the default setting.
    - **local** Only for VRF main/254.
    - **broadcast** Only for VRF main/254.
    - **multicast** Only for VRF main/254.
    - **unreachable** Only for VRF main/254.
    - **prohibit** Only for VRF main/254.
    - **anycast** Only for VRF main/254.
    - **blackhole**

      If you select the **blackhole** route type, the **Gateway**, **Metric**, and **MTU** fields become disabled.

      > If you need to use the default blackhole route, 0.0.0.0/0, to isolate routes between VRFs, add it for the relevant VRF on the **VRF** tab in the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** or **SD-WAN → CPE** section by selecting **Add blackhole route**. If you attempt to add such a route on the **Static routes** tab, an error message is displayed.

    The static route is added and displayed in the table. You can add multiple static routes or delete static routes. To delete a static route, click the delete icon ✕ next to it.

12. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Table of correspondence of administrative distances and routing protocols

Protocol	Distance
System	0
Kernel	0
Connect	0
Static	1
NHRP	10
EBGP	20

EIGRP	90
BABEL	100
OSPF	110
ISIS	115
OPENFABRIC	115
RIP	120
Table	150
SHARP	150
IBGP	200
PBR	200

Filtering routes and traffic packets

You can use the following mechanisms for route filtering when working with the BGP and OSPF protocols, and for filtering traffic packets when working with the PIM protocol:

- Access control lists (ACL) allow or deny the specified IPv4 prefixes.
- Prefix lists are an extended version of access control lists. These additionally allow or block IPv4 prefixes in the specified prefix length range. You can use prefix lists in route maps.
- Route maps are an extended version of prefix lists. Route maps additionally modify attribute values.

You can create rules in access control lists, prefix lists, and route maps. Each rule is numbered. The rule with the lowest sequence number is the first to be applied to an IPv4 prefix. If none of the rules can be applied, the IPv4 prefix is denied.

Managing access control lists (ACLs)

You can view the table of access control lists in a CPE template and on a CPE device:

- To view the table of access control lists in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **Routing filters → Access control lists** tab.
- To view the table of access control lists on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, and select the **Routing filters → Access control lists** tab.

Information about access control lists is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Name** is the name of the access control list.
- **Inherited** indicates whether the access control list is inherited from the CPE template:
  - **Yes**.
  - **No**.

  This column is displayed only on the CPE device.
- **Sequence** is the sequence number of the rule in the access control list. The rule with the lowest sequence number is the first to be applied to the IPv4 prefix by the access control list.
- **Network** is the IPv4 prefix to which the access control list applies the rule.
- **Action** is the action that the rule performs on the IPv4 prefix:
  - **Permit** allows the IPv4 prefix.
  - **Deny** blocks the IPv4 prefix.
- **Management** contains the actions that can be performed on the access control list.

Creating an access-control list

You can create an access control list in a CPE template or on a CPE device. An access control list created in the CPE template is automatically created on all CPE devices that use this CPE template.

To create an access control list:

1. Create an access control list in one of the following ways:
   - If you want to create an access control list in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **Routing filters → Access control lists** tab.
   - If you want to create an access control list on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, and select the **Routing filters → Access control lists** tab and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of access control lists is displayed.
2. Click **+ Access control list**.
3. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Name** field, enter the name of the access control list. The maximum length of the name is 50 characters. Do not use spaces in this field.

4. Create a rule in the access control list:

   a. Click **+ Rule**.

   b. In the **Sequence** field, enter the sequential number of the rule. The rule with the lowest sequence number is the first to be applied to the IPv4 prefix by the access control list. Range of values: 1 to 4,294,967,295.

   c. In the **Network** drop-down list, select the type of the rule:

   - **Any network** for a rule that allows or denies all IPv4 prefixes.
   - **IP address/mask** for a rule that allows or denies the specified IPv4 prefix. This is the default setting. If you select this value, enter the IPv4 prefix in the field that is displayed.

   d. In the **Action** drop-down list, select the action that the rule performs with the IPv4 prefix:

   - **Permit** allows the IPv4 prefix. This is the default setting.
   - **Deny** blocks the IPv4 prefix.

   The rule is created. You can create multiple rules or delete rules. To delete a rule, click the delete icon ✕ next to it.

5. Click **Create**.

   The access control list is created and displayed in the table.

6. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Editing an access control list

You can edit an access control list in a CPE template or on a CPE device. An access control list edited in the CPE template is automatically modified on all CPE devices that use this CPE template.

To edit an access control list:

1. Edit an access control list in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to edit an access control list in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **Routing filters → Access control lists** tab.
   - If you want to edit an access control list on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, and select the **Routing filters → Access control lists** tab and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of access control lists is displayed.

2. Click **Edit** next to the access control list that you want to edit.

3. This opens a window; in that window, if necessary, edit the settings of the access control list. For a description of the settings, see the instructions for creating an access control list.

4. Click **Save**.

   The access control list is modified and updated in the table.

5. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Deleting an access control list

You can delete an access control list in a CPE template or on a CPE device. An access control list deleted in the CPE template is automatically deleted on all CPE devices that use this CPE template.

Deleted access control lists cannot be restored.

To delete an access control list:

1. Delete an access control list in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to delete an access control list in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **Routing filters → Access control lists** tab.
   - If you want to delete an access control list on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, and select the **Routing filters → Access control lists** tab and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of access control lists is displayed.

2. Click **Delete** next to the access control list that you want to delete.

3. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

   The access control list is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

4. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Managing prefix lists

You can view the table of prefix lists in a CPE template and on a CPE device:

- To view the table of prefix lists in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **Routing filters → Prefix lists** tab.
- To view the table of prefix lists on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, and select the **Routing filters → Prefix lists** tab.

Information about prefix lists is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Name** is the name of the prefix list.
- **Inherited** indicates whether the prefix list is inherited from the CPE template:
  - **Yes**.
  - **No**.

  This column is displayed only on the CPE device.
- **Sequence** is the sequence number of the rule in the prefix list. The rule with the lowest sequence number is the first to be applied to the IPv4 prefix by the prefix list.
- **Network** is the IPv4 prefix to which the prefix list applies the rule.
- **Action** is the action that the rule performs on the IPv4 prefix:
  - **Permit** allows the IPv4 prefix.
  - **Deny** blocks the IPv4 prefix.
- **Greater or equal** is starting value of the prefix length range to which the prefix list applies the rule.
- **Less or equal** is the ending value of the prefix length range to which the prefix list applies the rule.
- **Management** contains the actions that can be performed on the prefix list.

Creating a prefix list

You can create a prefix list in a CPE template or on a CPE device. A prefix list created in the CPE template is automatically created on all CPE devices that use this CPE template.

To create a prefix list:

1. Create a prefix list in one of the following ways:
   - If you want to create a prefix list in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **Routing filters** → **Prefix lists** tab.
   - If you want to create a prefix list on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **Routing filters** → **Prefix lists** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of prefix lists is displayed.
2. Click **+ Prefix list**.
3. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Name** field, enter the name of the prefix list. The maximum length of the name is 50 characters. Do not use spaces in this field.

4. Create a rule in the prefix list:

   a. Click **+ Rule**.

   b. In the **Sequence** field, enter the sequential number of the rule. The rule with the lowest sequence number is the first to be applied to the IPv4 prefix by the prefix list. Range of values: 1 to 4,294,967,295.

   c. In the **Network** drop-down list, select the type of the rule:

   - **Any network** for a rule that allows or denies all IPv4 prefixes.
   - **IP address/mask** for a rule that allows or denies the specified IPv4 prefix. This is the default setting. If you select this value, enter the IPv4 prefix in the field that is displayed.

   d. In the **Action** drop-down list, select the action that the rule performs with the IPv4 prefix:

   - **Permit** allows the IPv4 prefix. This is the default setting.
   - **Deny** blocks the IPv4 prefix.

   e. In the **Greater or equal** field, enter the starting value of the prefix length range to which the prefix list applies the rule. Range of values: 0 to 32.

   f. In the **Less or equal** field, enter the ending value of the prefix length range to which the prefix list applies the rule. Range of values: 0 to 32.

   The rule is created. You can create multiple rules or delete rules. To delete a rule, click the delete icon ✕ next to it.

5. Click **Create**.

   The prefix list is created and displayed in the table.

6. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Editing a prefix list

You can edit a prefix list in a CPE template or on a CPE device. A prefix list edited in the CPE template is automatically modified on all CPE devices that use this CPE template.

To edit a prefix list:

1. Edit a prefix list in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to edit a prefix list in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **Routing filters** → **Prefix lists** tab.
   - If you want to edit a prefix list on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **Routing filters** → **Prefix lists** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of prefix lists is displayed.

2. Click **Edit** next to the prefix list that you want to edit.

3. This opens a window; in that window, if necessary, edit the settings of the prefix list. For a description of the settings, see the instructions for creating a prefix list.

4. Click **Save**.

   The prefix list is modified and updated in the table.

5. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Deleting a prefix list

You can delete a prefix list in a CPE template or on a CPE device. A prefix list deleted in the CPE template is automatically deleted on all CPE devices that use this CPE template.

Deleted prefix lists cannot be restored.

To delete a prefix list:

1. Delete a prefix list in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to delete a prefix list in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **Routing filters → Prefix lists** tab.
   - If you want to delete a prefix list on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **Routing filters → Prefix lists** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of prefix lists is displayed.

2. Click **Delete** next to the prefix list that you want to delete.

3. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

   The prefix list is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

4. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Managing route maps

You can view the table of route maps in a CPE template and on a CPE device:

- To view the table of route maps in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **Routing filters → Route maps** tab.
- To view the table of route maps on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, and select the **Routing filters → Route maps** tab.

Information about route maps is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Name** is the name of the route map.
- **Inherited** indicates whether the route map is inherited from the CPE template:
  - **Yes**.
  - **No**.

  This column is displayed only on the CPE device.
- **Sequence** is the sequence number of the rule in the route map. The rule with the lowest sequence number is the first to be applied to the IPv4 prefix by the route map.
- **Action** is the action that the rule performs on the IPv4 prefix:
  - **Permit** allows the IPv4 prefix.
  - **Deny** blocks the IPv4 prefix.
- **Match type** is the criterion that makes the route map apply the rule to the IPv4 prefix:
  - **None** applies the rule to all IPv4 prefixes.
  - **Prefix-List** applies the rule to IPv4 prefixes allowed by the specified prefix list.
- **Value** is an IPv4 prefix that the prefix list must allow for the route map to apply the rule to the IPv4 prefix. This column displays a value only if the **Match type** column displays **Prefix-List**.
- **Change attribute** is the attribute whose value changes the rule.
- **New value** is the value that the rule sets for the attribute.
- **Management** contains the actions that can be performed with the route map.

Creating a route map

You can create a route map in a CPE template or on a CPE device. A route map created in the CPE template is automatically created on all CPE devices that use this CPE template.

To create a route map:

1. Create a route map in one of the following ways:
   - If you want to create a route map in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **Routing filters → Route maps** tab.
   - If you want to create a route map on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **Routing filters → Route maps** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of route maps is displayed.
2. Click **+ Route map**.

3. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Name** field, enter the name of the route map. The maximum length of the name is 50 characters. Do not use spaces in this field.

4. Create a rule in the route map:

   a. Click **+ Rule**.

   b. In the **Sequence** field, enter the sequential number of the rule. The rule with the lowest sequence number is the first to be applied to the IPv4 prefix by the route map. Range of values: 1 to 4,294,967,295.

   c. In the **Action** drop-down list, select the action that the rule performs on the IPv4 prefix:

      - **Permit** allows the IPv4 prefix. This is the default setting.
      - **Deny** blocks the IPv4 prefix.

   d. In the **Match type** drop-down list, select the criterion that makes the route map apply the rule to the IPv4 prefix:

      - **None** applies the rule to all IPv4 prefixes. This is the default setting.
      - **Prefix-List** applies the rule to IPv4 prefixes allowed by the specified prefix list. If you select this value, in the **Prefix list** drop-down list, select a created prefix list.

   e. If in the **Match type** drop-down list, you selected **Prefix-List**, in the **Change attribute** drop-down list, select the attribute that the rule modifies:

      - **None** — Do not change the values of attributes. This is the default setting.
      - **IP next-hop** if you want to change the value of the 'next hop' attribute to the specified IPv4 address. If you select this value, enter an IPv4 address in the **New value** field.
      - **Local Preference** if you want to change the value of the 'local preference' attribute to the specified value. If you select this value, in the **New value** field, enter a value for the 'local preference' attribute. Range of values: 0 to 4,294,967,295.
      - **Metric** if you want to change the value of the MED attribute to the specified value. If you select this value, in the **New value** field, enter a value for the MED attribute. Range of values: 0 to 4,294,967,295.
      - **AS Path Prepend** — Add the number of the autonomous system to the 'as path' attribute. If you select this value, enter the autonomous system number in the **New value** field. You may enter multiple numbers separated by spaces. Range of values: 0 to 4,294,967,295.

   The rule is created. You can create multiple rules or delete rules. To delete a rule, click the delete icon ✕ next to it.

5. Click **Create**.

   The route map is created and displayed in the table.

6. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Editing a route map

You can edit a route map in a CPE template or on a CPE device. A route map edited in the CPE template is automatically edited on all CPE devices that use this CPE template.

If you want the changes you make to a route map to be immediately applied to the BGP peers or BGP peer groups that use that route map, select the **BFD** or **Soft-reconfiguration inbound** check box when creating or editing the BGP peer or BGP peer group.

To edit a route map:

1. Edit a route map in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to edit a route map in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and in the displayed settings area, select the **Routing filters → Route maps** tab.
   - If you want to edit a route map on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, and in the displayed settings area, select the **Routing filters → Route maps** tab and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of route maps is displayed.

2. Click **Edit** next to the route map that you want to edit.
3. This opens a window; in that window, if necessary, edit the route map settings. For a description of the settings, see the instructions for creating a route map.
4. Click **Save**.

   The route map is modified and updated in the table.

5. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Deleting a route map

You can delete a route map in a CPE template or on a CPE device. A route map deleted in the CPE template is automatically deleted on all CPE devices that use this CPE template.

Deleted route maps cannot be restored.

To delete a route map:

1. Delete a route map in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to delete a route map in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **Routing filters** → **Route maps** tab.

   - If you want to delete a route map on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **Routing filters** → **Route maps** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of route maps is displayed.

2. Click **Delete** next to the route map that you want to delete.

3. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

   The route map is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

4. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Policy-based routing (PBR)

In addition to routing based on standard packet properties such as destination IP address, Kaspersky SD-WAN supports Policy-Based Routing (PBR). This type of routing is based on the use of policies, that is, sets of routing rules, or IP rules, created by the user (administrator or tenant administrator) and stored on the device. The following are some examples of use cases for PBR routing:

- Redirecting traffic for user-specified networks to bypass the firewall in case of problems with the firewall

- Redirecting internet-bound traffic for user-specified networksvia SD-WAN towards a gateway that acts as a single point of internet access for all CPE devices

You can create and view routing rules both on the command line of the CPE device using commands of the the iproute2 toolkit as well as from the graphical interface of the orchestrator. This section describes managing routing rules in the graphical interface of the orchestrator.

Managing IP routing rules

You can view the table of IP rules in a CPE template and on a CPE device:

- To view the table of IP rules in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and in the sidebar, select the **PBR** section.

- To view the table of IP rules on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, and in the sidebar, select the **PBR** section.

Information about IP rules is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Priority** is the rule priority Rules with a lower priority value are applied earlier.
- **Status** is the status of the rule. Possible values:
  - **On** means the rule is active.
  - **Off** means the rule is inactive.
- **IP protocol** is the IP protocol. The following values are possible:
  - TCP
  - UDP
  - ICMP
  - SCTP
  - AH
  - ESP
  - GRE
  - IPIP
- **Source network interface** is the inbound interface to be matched. If the interface is a loopback interface, the rule matches only packets originating from this host.
- **Source port** is the source port.
- **Source host or network** is the source host or network.
- **Destination network interface** is the outbound interface to be matched. The outbound interface is available only for packets originating from local sockets bound to the device.
- **Destination port** is the destination port.
- **Destination host or network** is the destination host or network.
- **VRF** is the VRF in which the search for routes is performed.
- **Actions** lists actions that can be performed with the IP rule (enable, disable, edit, delete).

Creating an IP rule

You can create an IP rule in a CPE template or on a CPE device. IP rules created in the CPE template are automatically created on all CPE devices that use this CPE template.

To create an IP rule:

1. Create an IP rule in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to create an IP rule in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and in the sidebar, select the **PBR** section.

   - If you want to create an IP rule on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, and in the sidebar, select the **PBR** section.

   A table of IP rules is displayed.

2. Click **+ IP address rule**.

3. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Priority** field, enter the rule priority. Rules with a lower priority value are applied earlier. This value must be unique.

4. In the **IP protocol** drop-down list, select the IP protocol. The following values are possible:

   - TCP
   - UDP
   - ICMP
   - SCTP
   - AH
   - ESP
   - GRE
   - IPIP

5. Under **Source** and **Destination**, specify source and destination settings for the IP rule as necessary:

   - Select the source or destination **Type**: host or network.
   - Depending on the selected **Type**, in the field below, specify the following:
     - Source or destination IP address if you selected the **Host** type (the caption of the field is then **IP address**.
     - Source or destination IP address and mask if you selected the **Network** type (the caption of the field is then **IP address/mask**.
   - In the **Port** field, specify the source or destination port.

     You can enter a single value or a range of values from 1 to 65,535 with a hyphen, for example: `443`, `1024-65535`.

   - In the **Network interface alias** drop-down list, select the source (inbound) interface or destination (outbound) interface.

     If the inbound interface is a loopback interface, the rule matches only packets originating from this host. The outbound interface is available only for packets originating from local sockets bound to the device.

6. In the **Lookup VRF** drop-down list, select the VRF to search for routes.

   If you select main/254, then under **Destination**, you need to specify a source IP address other than 0.0.0.0/0, otherwise the rule cannot be saved.

7. Click **Create**.

   The IP rule is created and displayed in the table.

8. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Editing an IP rule

You can create IP rules in a CPE template or on a CPE device. IP rules edited in the CPE template are automatically modified on all CPE devices that use this CPE template.

To edit an IP rule:

1. Edit an IP rule in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to edit an IP rule in a CPE template:

     - In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE templates** section, click the CPE template, and in the sidebar, select the **PBR** section.

     - In the displayed table of IP rules, in the **Actions** column, click the **Edit** button for the rule that you want to edit.

   - If you want to edit an IP rule on a CPE device:

     - In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** section, click the CPE device, and in the sidebar, select the **PBR** section.

     - In the displayed table of IP rules, in the **Actions** column, click the **Edit** button for the rule that you want to edit. If the IP rule was inherited from a template, first select the **Override** check box for the rule to display the **Edit** button.

2. This opens a window; in that window, edit the IP rule settings that you want to change: For a description of the settings, see the instructions for creating an IP rule.

3. Click **Save**.

   The IP rule is modified and updated in the table.

4. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Deleting an IP rule

You can delete IP rules in a CPE template or on a CPE device. IP rules deleted in the CPE template are automatically deleted on all CPE devices that use this CPE template. On a CPE device, you can delete only those IP rules that were added directly on the device, but you cannot delete IP rules inherited from the template.

Deleted IP rules rules cannot be restored.

To delete an IP rule:

1. Delete an IP rule in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to delete an IP rule in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and in the sidebar, select the **PBR** section.
   - If you want to delete an IP rule that was not inherited from the CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, and in the sidebar, select the **PBR** section.

   A table of IP rules is displayed.

2. Click **Delete** next to the IP rule that you want to delete.
3. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

   The IP rule is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

4. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

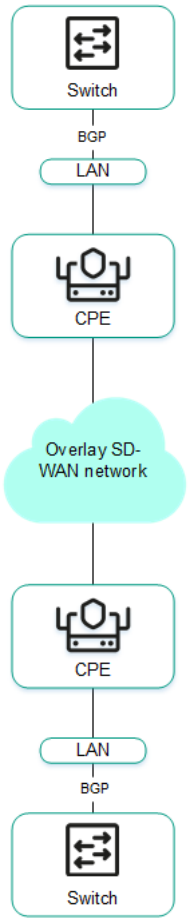
Route exchange over BGP

Kaspersky SD-WAN supports the BGP (Border Gateway Protocol) dynamic routing protocol for exchanging routing information between CPE devices and external network devices. You can establish internal iBGP (internal BGP) sessions as well as external eBGP (external BGP) sessions.

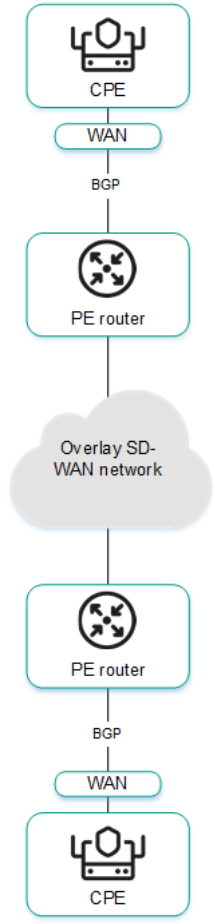
Creation of individual BGP peers and BGP peer groups is also supported. Dynamic TCP sessions are established with BGP peer groups.

The figures below show examples of BGP being used in the solution:

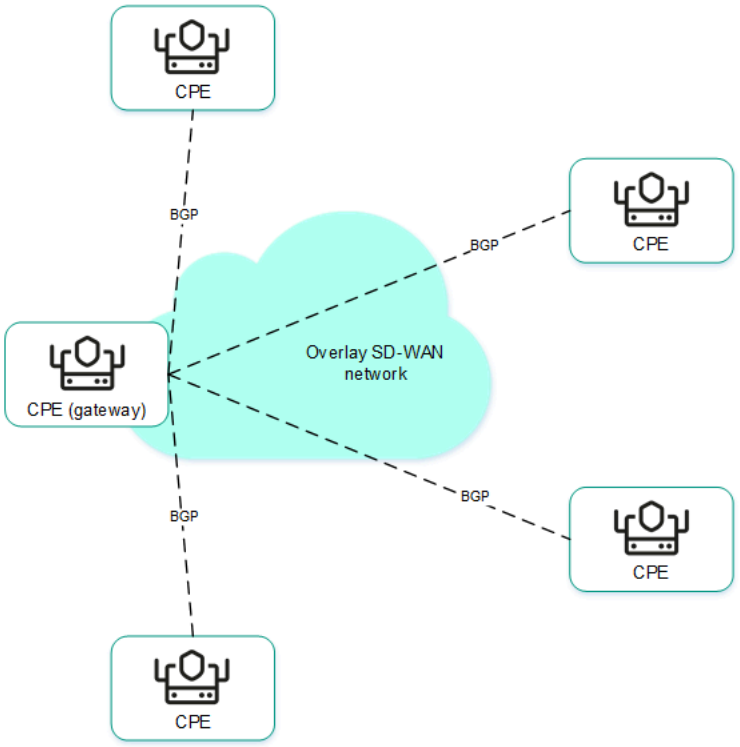
- Connecting multiple client locations to the L3 SD-WAN network via BGP.



- Connecting CPE devices to the service provider's IP/MPLS network via BGP.



- Using BGP to configure the connectivity of CPE devices within the domain.



Basic BGP settings

You can specify basic BGP settings in a CPE template or on a CPE device. BGP settings specified in the CPE template are automatically propagated to all CPE devices that use this CPE template.

To modify the basic BGP settings:

1. Specify basic BGP settings in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to edit the basic BGP settings in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **BGP** tab in the sidebar of the displayed window.

   - If you want to manage basic BGP settings on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, and in the sidebar of the displayed window, select the **BGP** section and select the **Override** check box, which unlocks the **Autonomous System** field.

2. In the **Autonomous System** field, enter the autonomous system number (from 1 to 4,294,967,295). The specified autonomous system will be used for all BGP instances created on this device or in this CPE template and will be displayed in the**AS** field.

   After you specify the autonomous system number, the **+ BGP** button becomes available.

3. In the **Default BGP Instance with VRF** list, select the BGP instance that you want to be used by default. If no BGP instance has been created yet, create a BGP instance by following the steps below, then select the created BGP instance.

4. Create one or more BGP instances. To do this:

    1. Click the **+ BGP** button. The workspace for adding a BGP instance is displayed.

    2. By default, the **General settings** tab is selected, which displays the basic BGP settings.

    3. In the **BGP** drop-down list, select **Enabled**. The default value is **Disabled**.

    4. In the **VRF** drop-down list, select an existing VRF to which you want to advertise BGP routes. The list only shows those VRFs that are not associated with other BGP instances on the device or in the CPE template.

    5. In the **Router ID** field, enter the IPv4 address that you want to assign to the router ID of the CPE device. If you want to assign an IPv4 address from a specified range of IP addresses:

    6. Select the **Router ID from IP pool** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

    7. In the **IP address pool** drop-down list, select a created range of IP addresses.

    8. If necessary, in the **Maximum paths** field, enter the maximum number of entries in the routing and forwarding table of the CPE device. Range of values: 1 to 8.

    9. If necessary, select the following check boxes:

    10. Select the **Always compare MED** check box. This check box allows the CPE device to compare the multi-exit discriminator (MED) of routes advertised from different autonomous systems.

        You must make sure that this check box is selected on all CPE devices in your autonomous system. Otherwise, exchange of routing information may result in routing loops.

        - Select the **Graceful restart (helper mode)** check box to enable Graceful restart on the CPE device.

        These check boxes are cleared by default.

    11. If you do not want the CPE device to exchange IPv4 routes with BGP peers by default, clear the **Use default IPv4 unicast routes** check box. This check box is selected by default.

    12. If you want to configure BGP timers:

    13. Select the **BGP timers** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

        a. In the **Keepalive (sec)** field, enter the time interval in seconds that the CPE device uses to send control packets to BGP peers. Range of values: 0 to 65,535.

        b. In the **Holdtime (sec)** field, enter the time interval in seconds that the CPE device uses when receiving control packets from BGP peers. If no control packets are received from the BGP peer within the specified time, the CPE device considers the peer unavailable. Range of values: 0 to 65,535.

    14. If you want to configure route redistribution in BGP, under **Route redistribution**, do the following:

        a. Select the check boxes next to the route types:

        - **Kernel** to redistribute Kernel routes generated by the operating system of the CPE device.

        - **Connected** to redistribute routes directly connected to network interfaces of CPE device.

- **Static** to redistribute static routes.
- **OSPF** to redistribute OSPF routes.

These check boxes are cleared by default.

b. In the **Route map** drop-down list, select a created route map for redistributed routes.

c. In the **Metric** field, enter a metric of redistributed routes. Range of values: 0 to 16,777,214.

15. If you want the CPE device to advertise the specified subnet to BGP peers:

a. Under **Networks**, click **+ Network**.

b. In the **Network** field, enter the IPv4 prefix of the subnet.

c. In the **Route map** drop-down list, select a created route map for the subnet.

The subnet is specified and displayed under **Networks**. You can specify multiple subnets or delete subnets. To delete a subnet, click the delete icon ✕ next to it.

16. If necessary, also manage BGP instance settings on the **Neighbors**, **Peer groups**, and **Route leaking** tabs.

17. In the lower part of the workspace for adding a BGP instance, click **Save** to save the BGP instance settings.

The BGP instance is saved and added to the table of BGP instances in the settings area.

5. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Managing BGP peers

To view or edit the table of BGP peers of a BGP instance in a CPE template or on a CPE device:

1. Go to the **BGP** section. To do this:

- To view or edit the table of BGP peers in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template and in the sidebar of the select the settings area, select **BGP**.
- To view or edit the table of BGP peers on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device and in the sidebar of the settings area, click **BGP**.

2. Open an existing BGP instance by clicking **Edit** in its row of the table, or create a new BGP instance.

3. In the settings area of the BGP instance, select the **Neighbors** tab.

Information about BGP peers is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Neighbor IP** is the IPv4 address of the BGP peer.
- **Name** is the name of the BGP peer.
- **Description** is a brief description of the BGP peer.

- **Inherited** indicates whether the BGP peer is inherited from the CPE template:
  - **Yes**.
  - **No**.

  This column is displayed only on the CPE device.
- **Remote AS** is the autonomous system number of the BGP peer.
- **Shutdown** indicates whether the BGP peer is disabled and no TCP session is established with it:
  - **Yes**.
  - **No**.
- **Weight** is the weight of routes advertised by the BGP peer.
- **Management** contains the actions that can be performed with the BGP peer.

Creating a BGP peer

You can create a BGP peer in a CPE template or on a CPE device. A BGP peer created in the CPE template is automatically created on all CPE devices that use this CPE template. The maximum number of dynamic BGP peers is 512.

To create a BGP peer:

1. Create a BGP peer in one of the following ways:
   - If you want to create a BGP peer in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **BGP → Neighbors** tab.
   - If you want to create a BGP peer on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **BGP → Neighbors** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of BGP peers is displayed.
2. Click **+ BGP neighbor**.
3. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Name** field, enter the name of the BGP peer. The maximum length of the name is 50 characters.
4. If you want to disable a BGP peer and prevent establishing a TCP session with it, select the **Disable BGP peer** check box. This check box is cleared by default.
5. In the **Neighbor IP** field, enter the IPv4 address of the BGP peer.
6. In the **Remote AS** field, enter the autonomous system number of the BGP peer. Range of values: 1 to 4,294,967,295.
7. If necessary, enter a brief description of the BGP peer in the **Description** field.

8. If you want the CPE device to use a password when establishing a TCP session with the BGP peer, in the **Password** field, enter the password. For a TCP session to be established between two BGP peers, they must use the same password. To see the entered password, you can click the show icon 👁.

9. If necessary, in the **Update source** field, enter the IPv4 address of the loopback interface that the CPE device sends to the BGP peer when establishing a TCP session.

10. If the TCP session is not established directly between the CPE device and the BGP peer, in the **eBGP hops** field, enter the number of hops between the CPE device and the BGP peer. Range of values: 1 to 255.

11. If you want to configure BGP timers:

    a. Select the **Custom BGP timers** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

    b. In the **Keepalive (sec)** field, enter the time interval in seconds that the CPE device uses to send control packets to the BGP peer. Range of values: 0 to 65,535.

    c. In the **Holdtime (sec)** field, enter the time interval in seconds that the CPE device uses when receiving control packets from the BGP peer. If no control packets are received from the BGP peer within the specified time, the CPE device considers this BGP peer unavailable. Range of values: 0 to 65,535.

12. If you want to use the BFD protocol to detect loss of connectivity, select the **BFD** check box. This check box is cleared by default. When the check box is selected, changes you make to the route map are immediately applied to a BGP peer if the BGP peer uses this route map. You can select a route map for the BGP peer at step 14 of these instructions.

13. If you want to specify advanced settings for the BGP peer:

    a. Select the **Advanced settings** tab.

       Advanced settings of the BGP peer are displayed.

    b. If necessary, select the following check boxes:

       - Select the **Soft-reconfiguration inbound** check box to store routes advertised by the BGP peer locally on the CPE device. Using this feature reduces the amount of memory available on the CPE device. When the check box is selected, changes you make to the route map are immediately applied to a BGP peer if the BGP peer uses this route map. You can select a route map for the BGP peer at step 14 of these instructions.
       - Select the **Attribute unchanged AS path** check box to prevent modifying the 'AS path' attribute of routes that the CPE device advertises to the BGP peer.
       - Select the **Allow AS in** check box to let BGP peers advertise routes to the CPE device with the 'AS path' attribute, whose value is the autonomous system number of the CPE device.
       - Select the **Attribute unchanged next-hop** check box to prevent modifying the 'next hop' attribute of routes that the CPE device advertises to the BGP peer.
       - Select the **Next-hop self** check box to use the IPv4 address of the CPE device as the 'next-hop' attribute value when advertising routes to the BGP peer.
       - Select the **Attribute unchanged MED** check box to prevent modifying the 'MED' attribute of routes that the CPE device advertises to the BGP peer.
       - Select the **Route reflector client** check box to assign the *Route Reflector* role to the CPE device and the *Route Reflector Client* role to the BGP peer. You can only select this check box for a BGP peer that is in the same autonomous system as the CPE device.

       These check boxes are cleared by default.

    c. In the **Local AS** field, enter the number of the local autonomous system that the CPE device sends to the BGP peer. Range of values: 1 to 4,294,967,295.

    d. In the **Weight** field, enter the weight of the routes advertised by the BGP peer. The greater the weight of a route, the higher its priority. Range of values: 0 to 65,535.

    e. In the **Maximum prefix** field, enter the maximum number of routes that the BGP peer can advertise to a CPE device. Range of values: 1 to 4,294,967,295.

    f. If you want a CPE device to advertise routes with the 'community' attribute to its BGP peer, select the **Send community** check box and select the type of the attribute in the drop-down list:

       - **All** covers all available types of the 'community' attribute.
       - **Standard and extended community**.
       - **Extended community**.
       - **Large community**.
       - **Standard community**.

This check box is cleared by default.

a. If you want the CPE device to advertise the default 0.0.0.0/0 route to the BGP peer, select the **Default originate** check box. This check box is cleared by default. You can select the **Set route map** check box and in the drop-down list that is displayed, select the created route map for the 0.0.0.0/0 default route.

14. If you want to configure route filtering for the BGP peer:

    a. Select the **Filtering** tab.

    The route filtering settings are displayed.

    b. Under **Route map**, select the created route maps:

        1. In the **Inbound** drop-down list, select a route map for the routes that the BGP peer advertises to the CPE device.

        2. In the **Outbound** drop-down list, select a route map for the routes that the CPE device advertises to the BGP peer.

    c. Under **Prefix list**, select the created prefix lists:

        1. In the **Inbound** drop-down list, select a prefix list for the routes that the BGP peer advertises to the CPE device.

        2. In the **Outbound** drop-down list, select a prefix list for the routes that the CPE device advertises to the BGP peer.

    d. Under **Access control list**, select the created access control lists:

        1. In the **Inbound** drop-down list, select an access control list for the routes that the BGP peer advertises to the CPE device.

        2. In the **Outbound** drop-down list, select an access control list for the routes that the CPE device advertises to the BGP peer.

15. Click **Create**.

    The BGP peer is created and displayed in the table.

16. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Editing a BGP peer

You can edit a BGP peer in a CPE template or on a CPE device. A BGP peer edited in the CPE template is automatically modified on all CPE devices that use this CPE template. You cannot edit a BGP peer that is inherited from a CPE template on a CPE device.

To edit a BGP peer:

1. Edit a BGP peer in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to edit a BGP peer in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **BGP** → **Neighbors** tab.

   - If you want to edit a BGP peer on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **BGP** → **Neighbors** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of BGP peers is displayed.

2. Click **Edit** next to the BGP peer that you want to edit.

3. This opens a window; in that window, if necessary, edit the BGP peer settings. For a description of the settings, see the instructions for creating a BGP peer.

4. Click **Save**.

   The BGP peer is modified and updated in the table.

5. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Deleting a BGP peer

You can delete a BGP peer in a CPE template or on a CPE device. A BGP peer deleted in the CPE template is automatically deleted on all CPE devices that use this CPE template. You cannot delete a BGP peer that is inherited from a CPE template on a CPE device.

Deleted BGP peers cannot be restored.

To delete a BGP peer:

1. Delete a BGP peer in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to delete a BGP peer in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **BGP** → **Neighbors** tab.

   - If you want to delete a BGP peer on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **BGP** → **Neighbors** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of BGP peers is displayed.

2. Click **Delete** next to the BGP peer that you want to delete.

3. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

   The BGP peer is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

4. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Managing BGP peer groups

To view or edit the table of BGP peer groups of a BGP instance in a CPE template or on a CPE device:

1. Go to the **BGP** section. To do this:

   - To view or edit the table of BGP peer groups in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template and in the sidebar of the select the settings area, select **BGP**.

   - To view or edit the table of BGP peer groups on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device and in the sidebar of the settings area, click **BGP**.

2. Open an existing BGP instance by clicking **Edit** in its row of the table, or create a new BGP instance.

3. In the settings area of the BGP instance, select the **Peer groups** tab.

Information about BGP peer groups is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Name** is the name of the BGP peer group.
- **BGP range** is the IPv4 prefix of the BGP peer group.
- **Description** is a brief description of the BGP peer group.
- **Inherited** indicates whether the BGP peer group is inherited from the CPE template:

  - **Yes**.
  - **No**.

  This column is displayed only on the CPE device.

- **Remote AS** is the autonomous system number of the BGP peer group.
- **Shutdown** indicates whether the BGP peer group is disabled and no TCP session is established with it.

  - **Yes**.
  - **No**.

- **Weight** is the weight of routes advertised by the BGP peer group.
- **Management** contains the actions that can be performed with the BGP peer group.

Creating a BGP peer group

You can create a BGP peer group in a CPE template or on a CPE device. A BGP peer group created in the CPE template is automatically created on all CPE devices that use this CPE template.

To create a BGP peer group:

1. Create a BGP peer group in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to create a BGP peer group in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **BGP → Peer groups** tab.

   - If you want to create a BGP peer group on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **BGP → Peer groups** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of BGP peer groups is displayed.

2. Click **+ Peer group**.

3. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Name** field, enter the name of the BGP peer group. The maximum length of the name is 50 characters.

4. If you want to disable a BGP peer group and prevent establishing a TCP session with it, select the **Disable BGP peer group** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

5. In the **BGP range** field, enter the IPv4 prefix of the BGP peer group.

6. In the **Remote AS** field, enter the autonomous system number of the BGP peer group. Range of values: 1 to 4,294,967,295.

7. If necessary, enter a brief description of the BGP peer group in the **Description** field.

8. If you want the CPE device to use a password when establishing a TCP session with the BGP peer group, in the **Password** field, enter the password. For a TCP session to be established between two BGP peers, they must use the same password. To see the entered password, you can click the show icon 👁.

9. In the **Update source** field, enter the IPv4 address of the loopback interface that the CPE device sends to the BGP peer group when establishing a TCP session.

10. If the TCP session is not established directly between the CPE device and the BGP peer group, in the **eBGP hops** field, enter the number of hops between the CPE device and the BGP peer group. Range of values: 1 to 255.

11. If you want to configure BGP timers:

    a. Select the **Custom BGP timers** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

    b. In the **Keepalive (sec)** field, enter the time interval in seconds that the CPE device uses to send control packets to the BGP peer group. Range of values: 0 to 65,535.

    c. In the **Holdtime (sec)** field, enter the time interval in seconds that the CPE device uses when receiving control packets from the BGP peer group. If no control packets are received from the BGP peer within the specified time, the CPE device considers this BGP peer unavailable. Range of values: 0 to 65,535.

12. If you want to use the BFD protocol to detect loss of connectivity, select the **BFD** check box. This check box is cleared by default. When the check box is selected, changes you make to the route map are immediately applied to a BGP peer group if the BGP peer group uses this route map. You can select a route map for the BGP peer group at step 14 of these instructions.

13. If you want to specify advanced settings for the BGP peer group:

    a. Select the **Advanced settings** tab.

       Advanced settings of the BGP peer group are displayed.

    b. If necessary, select the following check boxes:

       - Select the **Soft-reconfiguration inbound** check box to store routes advertised by the BGP peer group locally on the CPE device. Using this feature reduces the amount of memory available on the CPE device. When the check box is selected, changes you make to the route map are immediately applied to a BGP peer group if the BGP peer group uses this route map. You can select a route map for the BGP peer group at step 14 of these instructions.
       - Select the **Attribute unchanged AS path** check box to prevent modifying the 'AS path' attribute of routes that the CPE device advertises to the BGP peer group.
       - Select the **Allow AS in** check box to let the BGP peer group advertise routes to the CPE device with the 'AS path' attribute, whose value is the autonomous system number of the CPE device.
       - Select the **Attribute unchanged next-hop** check box to prevent modifying the 'next hop' attribute of routes that the CPE device advertises to the BGP peer group.
       - Select the **Next-hop self** check box to use the IPv4 address of the CPE device as the 'next-hop' attribute value when advertising routes to the BGP peer group.
       - Select the **Attribute unchanged MED** check box to prevent modifying the 'MED' attribute of routes that the CPE device advertises to the BGP peer group.
       - Select the **Route reflector client** check box to assign the *Route Reflector* role to the CPE device and the *Route Reflector Client* role to the BGP peer group. You can only select this check box for a BGP peer group that is in the same autonomous system as the CPE device.

       These check boxes are cleared by default.

    c. In the **Local AS** field, enter the number of the local autonomous system that the CPE device sends to the BGP peer group. Range of values: 1 to 4,294,967,295.

    d. In the **Weight** field, enter the weight of the routes advertised by the BGP peer group. The greater the weight of a route, the higher its priority. Range of values: 0 to 65,535.

    e. In the **Maximum prefix** field, enter the maximum number of routes that the BGP peer group can advertise to a CPE device. Range of values: 1 to 4,294,967,295.

    f. If you want a CPE device to advertise routes with the 'community' attribute to the BGP peer group, select the **Send community** check box and select the type of attribute to be sent in the drop-down list:

       - **All** covers all available types of the 'community' attribute.
       - **Standard and extended community**.
       - **Extended community**.
       - **Large community**.
       - **Standard community**.

This check box is cleared by default.

a. If you want the CPE device to advertise the default 0.0.0.0/0 route to the BGP peer group, select the **Default originate** check box. This check box is cleared by default. You can select the **Set route map** check box and in the drop-down list that is displayed, select the created route map for the 0.0.0.0/0 default route.

14. If you want to configure route filtering for the BGP peer group:

    a. Select the **Filtering** tab.

    The route filtering settings are displayed.

    b. Under **Route map**, select the created route maps:

        1. In the **Inbound** drop-down list, select a route map for the routes that the BGP peer group advertises to the CPE device.

        2. In the **Outbound** drop-down list, select a route map for the routes that the CPE device advertises to the BGP peer group.

    c. Under **Prefix list**, select the created prefix lists:

        1. In the **Inbound** drop-down list, select a list of prefixes that the BGP peer group advertises to the CPE device.

        2. In the **Outbound** drop-down list, select a prefix list for the routes that the CPE device advertises to the BGP peer group.

    d. Under **Access control list**, select the created access control lists:

        1. In the **Inbound** drop-down list, select an access control list for the routes that the BGP peer group advertises to the CPE device.

        2. In the **Outbound** drop-down list, select an access control list for the routes that the CPE device advertises to the BGP peer group.

15. Click **Create**.

    The BGP peer group is created and displayed in the table.

16. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Editing a BGP peer group

You can edit a BGP peer group in a CPE template or on a CPE device. A BGP peer group edited in the CPE template is automatically modified on all CPE devices that use this CPE template. You cannot edit a BGP peer group that is inherited from a CPE template on a CPE device.

To edit a BGP peer group:

1. Edit a BGP peer group in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to edit a BGP peer group in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **BGP → Peer groups** tab.

   - If you want to edit a BGP peer group on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **BGP → Peer groups** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of BGP peer groups is displayed.

2. Click **Edit** next to the BGP peer group that you want to edit.

3. This opens a window; in that window, if necessary, edit the BGP peer group settings. For a description of the settings, see the instructions for creating a BGP peer group.

4. Click **Save**.

   The BGP peer group is modified and updated in the table.

5. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Deleting a BGP peer group

You can delete a BGP peer group in a CPE template or on a CPE device. A BGP peer group deleted in the CPE template is automatically deleted on all CPE devices that use this CPE template. You cannot delete a BGP peer group that is inherited from a CPE template on a CPE device.

Deleted BGP peer groups cannot be restored.

To delete a BGP peer group:

1. Delete a BGP peer group in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to delete a BGP peer group in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **BGP → Peer groups** tab.

   - If you want to delete a BGP peer group on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **BGP → Peer groups** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of BGP peer groups is displayed.

2. Click **Delete** next to the BGP peer group that you want to delete.

3. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

   The BGP peer group is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

4. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Configuring Inter-VRF Route Leaking

To view or edit the Inter-VRF Route Leaking for a BGP instance in a CPE template or on a CPE device:

1. Go to the **BGP** section. To do this:

   - To view or edit Inter-VRF Route Leaking settings in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template and in the sidebar of the select the settings area, select **BGP**.

   - To view or edit Inter-VRF Route Leaking settings on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device and in the sidebar of the settings area, click **BGP**.

2. Open an existing BGP instance by clicking **Edit** in its row of the table, or create a new BGP instance.

3. In the settings area of the BGP instance, select the **Route leaking** tab.

4. If necessary, mange the following Inter-VRF Route Leaking settings:

   - In the **Route Distinguisher** field, specify the Route Distinguisher (RD) attribute for the route leaking (a unique ID for distinguishing routes). It can be specified in one of the two formats:

     - Autonomous system number (from 0 to 4294967295) : ID (from 0 to 65535). Example: `100:65000`.

     - IPv4 address : ID (from 0 to 65535) Example: `1.2.3.4:15`.

     You can have the Route Distinguisher attribute automatically generated by selecting the **Auto-generate** check box (selected by default).

   - Under **Route Target Export**, click **Add** to add one or more Route Target (RT) values for exporting routes from the VRF of this BGP instance to other VRFs.

   - Under **Route Target Import**, click **Add** to add one or more Route Target (RT) values for importing routes to the VRF of this BGP instance from other VRFs.

     Individual Route Target entry values for **Route Target Export** and **Route Target Import** settings are specified in one of two formats:

     - Autonomous system number (from 0 to 4294967295) : ID (from 0 to 65535). Example: `100:3000`.

     - IPv4 address : ID (from 0 to 65535) Example: `6.6.6.6:77`.

   - Turn on the **Export routes** toggle switch if you need to export routes from the VRF of this BGP instance.

   - Turn on the **Import routes** toggle switch if you need to import routes into the VRF of this BGP instance.

   - In the **Export route map** and **Import route map** lists, select the created route maps for exported and imported routes.

5. Click **Save** to save the changes, or **Cancel** to discard the changes.

Route exchange over OSPF

Kaspersky SD-WAN supports the OSPF (Open Shortest Path First) dynamic routing protocol for exchanging routing information between CPE devices and external network devices. When configuring the OSPF protocol, you can use OSPF areas and OSPF interfaces.

Basic OSPF settings

You can specify basic OSPF settings in a CPE template or on a CPE device. Basic OSPF settings specified in the CPE template are automatically propagated to all CPE devices that use this CPE template.

To modify the basic OSPF settings:

1. Specify basic OSPF settings in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to edit the basic OSPF settings in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **OSPF** tab.

   - If you want to edit the basic OSPF settings on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **OSPF** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   By default, the **General settings** tab is selected, which displays the OSPF settings.

2. In the **OSPF** drop-down list, select **Enabled**. The default value is **Disabled**.

3. In the **Router ID** field, enter the IPv4 address that you want to assign to the router ID of the CPE device.

4. In the **Maximum paths** field, enter the maximum number of entries in the routing and forwarding table of the CPE device. Range of values: 1 to 16.

5. If you want to use the CPE device as an Area Border Router (ABR), in the **ABR type** drop-down list, select one of the following implementations:

   - **IBM** (default implementation)

   - **CISCO**

   - **SHORTCUT**

   - **STANDARD**

6. In the **Auto cost reference bandwidth** field, enter the reference bandwidth for calculating the cost of links on the CPE device. Range of values: 1 to 4,294,967.

7. If you want to switch all OSPF interfaces of the CPE device to passive mode, select the **Passive interface default** check box. In passive mode, OSPF interfaces do not exchange traffic packets. This check box is cleared by default.

8. If you want to keep an OSPF log, select the **Log adjacency changes** check box. You can select the **Detail** check box to keep a more verbose OSPF log. These check boxes are cleared by default.

9. If you want to configure route redistribution in OSPF, under **Route redistribution**, do the following:

    a. Select the check boxes next to the route types:

    - **BGP** to redistribute BGP routes.
    - **Connected** to redistribute routes directly connected to network interfaces of CPE device.
    - **Kernel** to redistribute Kernel routes generated by the operating system of the CPE device.
    - **Static** to redistribute static routes.

    These check boxes are cleared by default.

    b. In the **Route map** drop-down list, select a created route map for redistributed routes.

    c. In the **Metric** field, enter a metric of redistributed routes. Range of values: 0 to 16,777,214.

    d. In the **Metric type** drop-down list, select the type of the metric:

    - **Type 1** (or "internal metric")
    - **Type 2** (or "external metric")

    e. Select the **Filtering** check box and in the **Access control list** drop-down list, select a created access control list for reallocated routes. This check box is cleared by default.

10. In the **Default metric** field, enter the default metric of OSPF routes. Range of values: 0 to 16,777,214.

11. If you want to configure the CPE device to advertise the default route 0.0.0.0/0 to OSPF neighbors:

    a. Select the **Default originate** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

    b. Select the **Always** check box to always advertise the default 0.0.0.0/0 route, even if it is not present in the route table of the CPE device. This check box is cleared by default.

    c. In the **Metric type** drop-down list, select the type of metric for the 0.0.0.0/0 default route:

    - **Type 1**
    - **Type 2**

    d. In the **Metric** field, enter a metric for the 0.0.0.0/0 default route. Range of values: 0 to 16,777,214.

    e. In the **Route map** drop-down list, select a created route map for the 0.0.0.0/0 default route.

12. In the **Distance** field, enter the administrative distance for all OSPF routes. The lower the administrative distance specified for a protocol, the higher the priority its route have. For example, if you want OSPF routes to always be preferred over BGP routes, specify the administrative distance of 1 for OSPF and 2 for BGP. Range of values: 1 to 255.

13. If you want to configure administrative distances for individual OSPF routes:

    a. Select the **OSPF distance** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

    b. In the **External** field, enter the administrative distance for routes from external OSPF domains or routing protocols. Range of values: 1 to 255.

    c. In the **Inter-area** field, enter the administrative distance for routes from different OSPF areas of the same OSPF domain. Range of values: 1 to 255.

    d. In the **Intra-area** field, enter the administrative distance for routes from the same OSPF area. Range of values: 1 to 255.

14. If you want to enable Graceful restart on the CPE device:

    a. Select the **Graceful restart** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

    b. In the **Grace period (sec)** field, enter the length of time, in seconds, during which the CPE device announces its intention to restart to OSPF neighbors. Range of values: 1 to 1800.

15. If you want to configure timers for the Shortest Path First (SPF) algorithm calculations:

    a. Select the **Timer throttle SPF** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

    b. In the **Delay (ms)** field, enter the length in milliseconds of the delay before starting the calculations of the SPF algorithm. Range of values: 0 to 600,000.

    c. In the **Initial hold-time (ms)** field, enter the minimum retention time in milliseconds between two calculations of the SPF algorithm. Range of values: 0 to 600,000.

    d. In the **Maximum hold-time (ms)** field, enter the maximum retention time in milliseconds between two calculations of the SPF algorithm. Range of values: 0 to 600,000.

16. If you want to configure Link State Advertisement (LSA) to OSPF neighbors for the CPE device:

    a. Select the **Administrative** check box to have the CPE device use the maximum metric in link state advertisements to OSPF neighbors.

    b. If you want to specify the time during which the CPE device must use the maximum metric in link state advertisement to OSPF neighbors when the OSPF protocol is started or restarted:

        1. Select the **On startup** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

        2. In the **Timer (sec)** field, enter the time in seconds. Range of values: 5 to 86,400.

    c. If you want to specify the time during which the CPE device must use the maximum metric in link state advertisement to OSPF neighbors when the OSPF protocol is disabled:

        1. Select the **On shutdown** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

        2. In the **Timer (sec)** field, enter the time in seconds. Range of values: 5 to 100.

17. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Managing OSPF areas

You can view the table of OSPF areas in a CPE template and on a CPE device:

- To view the table of OSPF areas in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **OSPF → OSPF areas** tab.
- To view the table of OSPF areas on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, and select the **OSPF → OSPF areas** tab.

Information about OSPF areas is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **OSPF area** is the ID of the OSPF area in IPv4 address format or an integer.
- **Area type** is the type of the OSPF stub area:
  - **Stub**
  - **Stub NO-SUMMARY**
  - **NSSA**
  - **NSSA NO-SUMMARY**

  This value is displayed only for stub areas.
- **OSPF ranges** specifies OSPF ranges.
- **Management** contains the actions that can be performed with the OSPF area.

Creating an OSPF area

You can create an OSPF area in a CPE template or on a CPE device. An OSPF are created in the CPE template is automatically created on all CPE devices to which this CPE template is applied.

To create an OSPF area:

1. Create an OSPF area in one of the following ways:
   - If you want to create an OSPF area in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **OSPF → OSPF areas** tab.
   - If you want to create an OSPF area on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **OSPF → OSPF areas** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of OSPF areas is displayed.
2. Click **+ OSPF area**.
3. This opens a window; in that window, in the **OSPF area** field, enter the OSPF area ID as an IPv4 address or an integer number.

4. If you want to make the OSPF area a stub area:

   a. Select the **Stub** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

   b. In the **Area type** drop-down list, select the type of the stub OSPF area:

      - **Stub**
      - **Stub NO-SUMMARY**
      - **NSSA**
      - **NSSA NO-SUMMARY**

   c. If the **Area type** drop-down list, you selected **NSSA** or **NSSA NO-SUMMARY**, if you need to prevent the advertisement of the 0.0.0.0/0 default route to the NSSA area, select the **NSSA suppress FA** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

   d. In the **Default cost** field, enter a metric for the default route or for summary routes. Range of values: 0 to 16,777,215.

5. If you want to use the shortcut method for SPF calculations, select the **Shortcut** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

6. In the **Authentication** drop-down list, select the OSPF authentication method:

   - **Hash function** to use the MD5 algorithm.
   - **Password** to use an unencrypted password. This authentication method is less secure than MD5 algorithm, however, it can provide authentication when used in a trusted network environment.

7. If you want to specify OSPF ranges:

   a. Under **OSPF ranges**, click **+ Range**.

   b. In the **Range** field, enter the IPv4 prefix of the routes.

   c. In the **Action** drop-down list, select the action to be performed with routes:

      - **Advertise** if you want to advertise routes over the OSPF protocol. This is the default setting.
      - **Not announce** if you do not want to advertise routes over the OSPF protocol.
      - **Substitute** to replace the IPv4 prefix of the routes with the specified IPv4 prefix, and then advertise these over the OSPF protocol. If you select this value, in the **Substitute** field, enter the IPv4 prefix.

   d. If in the **Action** drop-down list, you selected **Advertise** or **Substitute**, in the **Cost** field, enter a metric for routes. Range of values: 0 to 16,777,215.

   The OSPF range is specified and displayed under **OSPF ranges**. You can specify multiple OSPF ranges or delete OSPF ranges. To delete an OSPF range, click the delete icon ✕ next to it.

8. If you want to connect an OSPF area to another OSPF area through a transit OSPF area, specify the virtual link:

   a. Under **Virtual links**, click **+ Virtual link**.

   b. In the **Address** field, enter the IPv4 address of the network interface of the router in the transit area.

   The virtual link is specified and displayed under **OSPF ranges**. You can specify multiple virtual links or delete virtual links. To delete a virtual link, click the delete icon ✕ next to it.

9. If you want to configure route filtering for the OSPF area, under **Filtering**, do the following:

   a. Select the created access control lists:

      1. In the **Export list** drop-down list, select an access control list for routes that are advertised from the OSPF area to other OSPF areas.

      2. In the **Import list** drop-down list, select an access control list for routes that are advertised from other OSPF area to the given OSPF area.

   b. Select the created access lists:

      1. In the **Outbound filter list** drop-down list, select a prefix list for routes that are advertised from the OSPF area to other OSPF areas.

      2. In the **Inbound filter list** drop-down list, select a prefix list for routes that are advertised from other OSPF area to the given OSPF area.

10. Click **Save**.

    The OSPF area is created and displayed in the table.

11. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Editing an OSPF area

You can edit an OSPF area in a CPE template or on a device. An OSPF area edited in the CPE template is automatically edited on all CPE devices that use this CPE template.

To edit an OSPF area:

1. Edit an OSPF area in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to edit an OSPF area in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **OSPF → OSPF areas** tab.

   - If you want to edit an OSPF area on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **OSPF → OSPF areas** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of OSPF areas is displayed.

2. Click **Edit** next to the OSPF area that you want to edit.

3. This opens a window; in that window, if necessary, edit the OSPF area settings. For a description of the settings, see the instructions for creating an OSPF area.

4. Click **Save**.

   The OSPF area is modified and updated in the table.

5. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Deleting an OSPF area

You can delete an OSPF area in a CPE template or on a CPE device. An OSPF area deleted in the CPE template is automatically deleted on all CPE devices that use this CPE template.

Deleted OSPF areas cannot be restored.

To delete an OSPF area:

1. Delete an OSPF area in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to delete an OSPF area in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **OSPF → OSPF areas** tab.
   - If you want to delete an OSPF area on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **OSPF → OSPF areas** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of OSPF areas is displayed.

2. Click **Delete** next to the OSPF area that you want to delete.
3. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

   The OSPF area is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

4. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Managing OSPF interfaces

You can view the table of OSPF interfaces in a CPE template and on a CPE device:

- To view the table of OSPF interfaces in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **OSPF → OSPF interfaces** tab.
- To view the table of OSPF interfaces on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, and select the **OSPF → OSPF interfaces** tab.

Information about OSPF interfaces is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Interface** is the network interface used as an OSPF interface.
- **OSPF area** is the ID of the OSPF area to which the OSPF interface belongs.
- **Authentication** is the authentication method.

- **Network type** is the type of network to which the OSPF interface is connected.
- **Management** contains the actions that can be performed with the OSPF interface.

Creating an OSPF interface

You can create an OSPF interface in a CPE template or on a CPE device. An OSPF interface created in the CPE template is automatically created on all CPE devices that use this CPE template.

To create an OSPF interface:

1. Create an OSPF interface in one of the following ways:
   - If you want to create an OSPF interface in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **OSPF** → **OSPF interfaces** tab.
   - If you want to create an OSPF interface on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **OSPF** → **OSPF interfaces** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of OSPF interfaces is displayed.
2. Click **+ OSPF interface**.
3. This opens a window, in that window, in the **Interface** drop-down list, select the created network interface which you want to use as an OSPF interface.
4. In the **OSPF area** field, enter the ID of the OSPF area to which the OSPF interface belongs, as an IPv4 address or an integer number.
5. If you want to specify OSPF authentication:
   a. In the **Authentication** drop-down list, select an authentication method:
      - **Hash function** to use the MD5 algorithm.
      - **Password** to use an unencrypted password. This authentication method is less secure than MD5 algorithm, however, it can provide authentication when used in a trusted network environment. If you select this option, enter the authentication password in the **Password** field.

   b. If in the **Authentication** drop-down list, you selected **Hash function**, follow these steps:
      1. In the **Key ID** field, enter the MD5 hash. Range of values: 1 to 255.
      2. In the **Key** field, enter the MD5 key.
6. In the **Cost** field, enter the metric of the OSPF interface. Range of values: 1 to 65,535.

7. In the **Network type** drop-down list, select the type of network to which the OSPF interface is connected:
   - **Broadcast**
   - **Non-broadcast**
   - **Point-to-multipoint**
   - **Point-to-point**
8. In the **Priority** field, enter the priority of the OSPF interface. The greater the value, the higher the priority of the OSPF interface.

   The highest-priority OSPF interface becomes the designated router of the network segment. The OSPF interface with the second highest priority becomes the backup designated router.
9. If you want to switch the OSPF interface to passive mode, select the **Passive interface** check box. In passive mode, OSPF interfaces do not exchange traffic packets.
10. If you want to use the BFD protocol to detect loss of connectivity, select the **BFD** check box. This check box is cleared by default.
11. If you want to configure OSPF timers:
    a. Select the **OSPF timers** check box. This check box is cleared by default.
    b. In the **Hello (sec)** field, enter the time interval in seconds that the OSPF interface uses to send control packets to OSPF neighbors. Range of values: 1 to 65,535.
    c. In the **Dead (sec)** field, enter the time interval in seconds that the OSPF interface uses to receive control packets from OSPF neighbors. If no control packets are received from an OSPF neighbor within the specified time, the OSPF interface considers this OSPF neighbor unavailable. Range of values: 1 to 65,535.
12. In the **Retransmit interval (sec)** field, enter the time interval in seconds for resending Link State Advertisement (LSA) packets to OSPF neighbors that are behind the OSPF interface. Range of values: 1 to 65,535. For more information, please refer to RFC 2328 (the `RxmtInterval` parameter).
13. In the **Transmit delay (sec)** field, enter the estimated time in seconds required to send an LSU (Link State Update) packet through the OSPF interface. Range of values: 1 to 65,535. For more information, please refer to RFC 2328 (the `InfTransDelay` parameter).
14. Click **Create**.

    The OSPF interface is created and displayed in the table.
15. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Editing an OSPF interface

You can edit an OSPF interface in a CPE template or on a CPE device. An OSPF interface edited in the CPE template is automatically modified on all CPE devices that use this CPE template.

To edit an OSPF interface:

1. Edit an OSPF interface in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to edit an OSPF interface in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **OSPF → OSPF interfaces** tab.

   - If you want to edit an OSPF interface on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **OSPF → OSPF interfaces** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of OSPF interfaces is displayed.

2. Click **Edit** next to the OSPF interface that you want to edit.

3. This opens a window; in that window, if necessary, edit the OSPF interface settings. For a description of the settings, see the instructions for creating an OSPF interface.

4. Click **Save**.

   The OSPF interface is modified and updated in the table.

5. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Deleting an OSPF interface

You can delete an OSPF interface in a CPE template or on a CPE device. An OSPF interface deleted in the CPE template is automatically deleted on all CPE devices that use this CPE template.

Deleted interfaces cannot be restored.

To delete an OSPF interface:

1. Delete an OSPF interface in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to delete an OSPF interface in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **OSPF → OSPF interfaces** tab.

   - If you want to delete an OSPF interface on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **OSPF → OSPF interfaces** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of OSPF interfaces is displayed.

2. Click **Delete** next to the OSPF interface that you want to delete.

3. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

   The OSPF interface is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

4. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Using BFD to detect routing failures

Kaspersky SD-WAN supports the Bidirectional Forwarding Detection (BFD) protocol for fast (within one second) detection of network connectivity problems on links. When a problem is detected, BFD relays information about the problem from the data plane to the control plane.

Between BFD peers, a BFD session is established, as part of which they exchange control packets to detect network connectivity problems. If problems with network connectivity occur, the BFD session on the SD-WAN interface of the CPE device is terminated, after which route tables are rebuilt.

You can view the table of BFD peers in a CPE template and on a CPE device:

- To view the table of BFD peers in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **BFD** tab.
- To view the table of BFD peers on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, and select the **BFD** tab.

Information about BFD peers is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Name** is the name of the BFD peer.
- **IP address** is the IPv4 address of the BFD peer.
- **Transmit interval (msec)** is the time interval in milliseconds for sending control packets from the CPE device to the BFD peer.
- **Receive interval (msec)** is the time interval in milliseconds for receiving control packets from the BFD peer on the CPE device. If no control packets are received from the BFD peer within the specified time, the CPE device considers this BFD peer unavailable.
- **Multiplier** is the multiplier of the time interval for sending control packets specified in the BFD peer settings. This multiplier determines the number of milliseconds for which the CPE device waits for receipt of control packets from the BFD peer. If no control packets are received from the BFD peer within this time, the CPE device announces a network connectivity problem.
- **Management** contains the actions that can be performed with the BFD peer.

Enabling or disabling the BFD protocol

You can enable or disable the BFD protocol in a CPE template or on a CPE device. BFD protocol enabled or disabled in the CPE template is automatically enabled or disabled on all CPE devices that use this CPE template.

To enable or disable the BFD protocol:

1. Enable or disable the BFD protocol in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to enable or disable the BFD protocol in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **BFD** tab.

   - If you want to enable or disable the BFD protocol on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **BFD** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of BFD peers is displayed.

2. In the **BFD** drop-down list, select one of the following values:

   - **Enabled**

   - **Disabled** This is the default setting.

3. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Creating a BFD peer

You can create a BFD peer in a CPE template or on a CPE device. A BFD peer created in the CPE template is automatically created on all CPE devices that use this CPE template. Before creating a BFD peer, you must enable the BFD protocol.

To create a BFD peer:

1. Create a BFD peer in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to create a BFD peer in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **BFD** tab.

   - If you want to create a BFD peer on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **BFD** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of BFD peers is displayed.

2. Click **+ BFD peer**.

3. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Name** field, enter the name of the BFD peer. The maximum length of the name is 255 characters.

4. In the **IP address** field, enter the IPv4 address of the BFD peer.

5. In the **Transmit interval (msec)** field, enter the time interval in milliseconds for sending control packets from the CPE device to the BFD peer. Range of values: 60 to 10,000.

6. In the **Receive interval (msec)** field, enter the time interval in milliseconds for receiving control packets from the BFD peer on the CPE device. If no control packets are received from the BFD peer within the specified time, the CPE device considers this BFD peer unavailable. Range of values: 60 to 10,000.

7. In the **Multiplier** enter the multiplier of the time interval for sending control packets specified in the BFD peer settings. This multiplier determines the number of milliseconds for which the CPE device waits for receipt of control packets from the BFD peer. If no control packets are received from the BFD peer within this time, the CPE device announces a network connectivity problem. Range of values: 2 to 255.

   For example, if the time interval for sending control packets in the BFD peer settings is 200 milliseconds, and you specify a multiplier of 2, then, if after 400 milliseconds no control packets are received from that BFD peer, the CPE device announces a network connectivity problem.

8. Click **Create**.

   The BFD peer is created and displayed in the table.

9. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Editing a BFD peer

You can edit a BFD peer in a CPE template or on a CPE device. A BFD peer edited in the CPE template is automatically modified on all CPE devices that use this CPE template.

To edit a BFD peer:

1. Edit a BFD peer in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to edit a BFD peer in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **BFD** tab.
   - If you want to edit a BFD peer on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **BFD** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of BFD peers is displayed.

2. Click **Edit** next to the BFD peer that you want to edit.
3. This opens a window; in that window, if necessary, edit the BFD peer settings. For a description of the settings, see the instructions for creating a BFD peer.
4. Click **Save**.

   The BFD peer is modified and updated in the table.

5. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Deleting a BFD peer

You can delete a BFD peer in a CPE template or on a CPE device. A BFD peer deleted in the CPE template is automatically deleted on all CPE devices that use this CPE template.

Deleted BFD peers cannot be restored.

To delete a BFD peer:

1. Delete a BFD peer in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to delete a BFD peer in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **BFD** tab.

   - If you want to delete a BFD peer on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **BFD** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of BFD peers is displayed.

2. Click **Delete** next to the BFD peer that you want to delete.

3. This opens a window; in that window, click **Delete**.

   The BFD peer is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

4. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Ensuring high availability with VRRP

Kaspersky SD-WAN supports the Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP) for combining network interfaces of multiple CPE devices into virtual routers. When network interfaces are combined into a virtual router, they share a virtual IP address. One network interface is primary and the others are secondary. A virtual IP address is assigned to the primary network interface.

Network interfaces in a virtual router exchange control packets to determine which network interfaces have failed. If a primary network interface fails, a new primary network interface is elected and a virtual IP address is assigned to it. Traffic that was relayed to the virtual IP address through the failed network interface is automatically taken over by the new primary network interface.

You can create VRRP instances to combine network interfaces into virtual routers. When creating a VRRP instance, you must specify a network interface, a Virtual Router ID (VRID), and a virtual IP address. Network interfaces are combined into a virtual router if the same virtual router ID and virtual IP address are specified in the VRRP instances created for them.

If you need to synchronously change the primary network interface in multiple virtual routers, you can create groups of VRRP instances. If the primary network interface changes in one of the VRRP instances, this change also occurs in all other VRRP instances in the VRRP instance group.

Enabling or disabling the VRRP protocol

You can enable or disable the VRRP protocol in a CPE template or on a CPE device. VRRP protocol enabled or disabled in the CPE template is automatically enabled or disabled on all CPE devices that use this CPE template.

To enable or disable the VRRP protocol:

1. Enable or disable the VRRP protocol in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to enable or disable the VRRP protocol in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **VRRP → VRRP instances** tab.

   - If you want to enable or disable the VRRP protocol on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **VRRP → VRRP instances** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of VRPP instances is displayed.

2. In the **VRRP** drop-down list, select one of the following values:

   - **Enabled**

   - **Disabled** This is the default setting.

   When enabling VRRP, you must create at least one VRRP instance.

3. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Managing VRRP instances

You can view the table of VRRP instances in a CPE template and on a CPE device:

- To view the table of VRRP instances in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **VRRP instances → VRRP** tab.

- To view the table of VRRP instances on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, and select the **VRRP → VRRP instances** tab.

Information about VRRP instances is displayed in the following table columns:

- **Name** is the name of the VRRP instance.

- **VRID** is the virtual router ID.

- **Interface** is the network interface that has been added to the virtual router.

- **VIP** is the virtual IP address assigned to the network interface.

- **State** is the role of the network interface:

  - **Backup** is the backup network interface.

  - **Master** is the primary network interface.

- **Priority** is the priority of the network interface. The greater the value, the higher the priority. When the primary network interface fails, it is replaced by the backup network interface with the highest priority. If, when selecting the new primary network interface, all backup network interfaces have the same priority, the new primary network interface is selected at random.

- **Advertise interval (sec)** is the time interval in seconds for sending control packets from a network interface to other network interfaces.
- **Nopreempt** specifies if the role of the network interface that became the primary must change if the previous primary network interface recovers:
  - **Yes**.
  - **No**.
- **Management** contains the actions that can be performed with the VRRP instance.

Creating a VRRP instance

You can create a VRRP instance in a CPE template or on a CPE device. A VRRP instance created in the CPE template is automatically created on all CPE devices that use this CPE template.

To create a VRRP instance:

1. Create a VRRP instance in one of the following ways:
   - If you want to create a VRRP instance in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **VRRP** → **VRRP instances** tab.
   - If you want to create a VRRP instance on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **VRRP** → **VRRP instances** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of VRPP instances is displayed.
2. Click **+ VRRP instance**.
3. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Name** field, enter the name of the VRRP instance. The maximum length of the name is 16 characters.
4. In the **VRID** field, enter the ID of the virtual router. You must specify the same ID when creating VRRP instances for all network interfaces that you want to combine into a virtual router. Range of values: 1 to 255.
5. In the **Interface** drop-down list, select the created network interface that you want to add to the virtual router.
6. In the **VIP** field, enter the virtual IP address that you want to assign to this network interface. You must assign the same virtual IP address to all network interfaces that you want to combine into a virtual router.
7. In the **State** drop-down list, select the role of the network interface:
   - **Backup** is the backup network interface. This is the default setting.
   - **Master** is the primary network interface.
8. In the **Priority** field, enter the priority of the network interface. The greater the value, the higher the priority. When the primary network interface fails, it is replaced by the backup network interface with the highest priority. If, when selecting the new primary network interface, all backup network interfaces have the same priority, the new primary network interface is selected at random. Range of values: 1 to 255. Default value: `100`.

9. In the **Advertise interval (sec)** field, enter the time interval in seconds for sending control packets from a network interface to other network interfaces. Range of values: 1 to 60. Default value: `5`.

10. If you do not want to change the role of the backup network interface that has become the primary router, even if the old primary network interface becomes operational again, select the **Nopreempt** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

11. If you want to configure unicast sending of control packets by the network interface:

    a. Select the **Unicast** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

    b. In the **Unicast source IP** field, enter the IP address of the source network interface for sending control packets.

    c. In the **Unicast peer IP** field, enter the IP address of the destination network interface for sending control packets.

    By default, the network interface uses multicast to send control packets.

12. If you want to use a password for authentication of control packets on the network interface:

    a. Select the **Authentication** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

    b. Enter a password in the field that is displayed. The maximum length of the password is 16 characters. You must specify the same password for all network interfaces that you want to combine into a virtual router. To see the entered password, you can click the show icon.

13. Click **Create**.

    The VRRP instance is created and displayed in the table.

14. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Editing a VRRP instance

You can edit a VRRP instance in a CPE template or on a CPE device. A VRRP instance edited in the CPE template is automatically modified on all CPE devices that use this CPE template. You cannot edit a VRRP instance that is inherited from a CPE template on a CPE device.

To edit a VRRP instance:

1. Edit a VRRP instance in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to edit a VRRP instance in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **VRRP** → **VRRP instances** tab.

   - If you want to edit a VRRP instance on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **VRRP** → **VRRP instances** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of VRPP instances is displayed.

2. Click **Edit** next to the VRRP instance that you want to edit.

3. This opens a window; in that window, if necessary, edit the VRRP instance settings. For a description of the settings, see the instructions for creating a VRRP instance.

4. Click **Save**.

   The VRRP instance is modified and updated in the table.

5. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Deleting a VRRP instance

You can delete a VRRP instance in a CPE template or on a CPE device. A VRRP instance deleted in the CPE template is automatically deleted on all CPE devices that use this CPE template. You cannot delete a VRRP instance that is inherited from a CPE template on a CPE device.

Deleted VRRP instances cannot be restored.

To delete a VRRP instance:

1. Delete a VRRP instance in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to delete a VRRP instance in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **VRRP → VRRP instances** tab.
   - If you want to delete a VRRP instance on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **VRRP → VRRP instances** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of VRPP instances is displayed.

2. Click **Delete** next to the VRRP instance that you want to delete.

3. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

   The VRRP instance is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

4. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Managing VRRP instance groups

You can view the table of VRRP instance groups in a CPE template and on a CPE device:

- To view the table of VRRP instance groups in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **VRRP → VRRP instance groups** tab.
- To view the table of VRRP instance groups on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, and select the **VRRP → VRRP instance groups** tab.

Information about VRRP instance groups is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Name** is the name of the VRRP instance group.
- **VRRP instances** are VRRP instances that have been added to the VRRP instance group.
- **Management** contains the actions that can be performed with the VRRP instance group.

Creating a group of VRRP instances

You can create a VRRP instance group in a CPE template or on a CPE device. A VRRP instance group created in the CPE template is automatically created on all CPE devices that use this CPE template.

To create a VRRP instance group:

1. Create a VRRP instance group in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to create a VRRP instance group in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **VRRP** → **VRRP instance groups** tab.

   - If you want to create a VRRP instance group on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **VRRP** → **VRRP instance groups** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of VRRP instance groups is displayed.

2. Click **+ VRRP instance group**.

3. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Name** field, enter the name of the VRRP instance group. The maximum length of the name is 16 characters. Default value: `1`.

4. In the **VRRP instances** drop-down list, select the created VRRP instance that you want to add to the VRRP instance group.

   The VRRP instance is added and displayed in the lower part of the window. You can add multiple VRRP instances or delete VRRP instances. To delete a VRRP instance, click **Delete** next to it.

5. Click **Create**.

   The VRRP instance group is created and displayed in the table.

6. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Editing a VRRP instance group

You can edit a VRRP instance group in a CPE template or on a CPE device. A VRRP instance group edited in the CPE template is automatically modified on all CPE devices that use this CPE template. You cannot edit a VRRP instance group that is inherited from a CPE template on a CPE device.

To edit a VRRP instance group:

1. Edit a VRRP instance group in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to edit a VRRP instance group in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **VRRP → VRRP instance groups** tab.

   - If you want to edit a VRRP instance group on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **VRRP → VRRP instance groups** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of VRRP instance groups is displayed.

2. Click **Edit** next to the VRRP instance group that you want to edit.

3. This opens a window; in that window, if necessary, edit the name of the VRRP instance group and add or delete created VRRP instances.

4. Click **Save**.

   The VRRP instance group is modified and updated in the table.

5. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Deleting a VRRP instance group

You can delete a VRRP instance group in a CPE template or on a CPE device. A VRRP instance group deleted in the CPE template is automatically deleted on all CPE devices that use this CPE template. You cannot delete a VRRP instance group that is inherited from a CPE template on a CPE device.

Deleted VRRP instance groups cannot be restored.

To delete a VRRP instance group:

1. Delete a VRRP instance group in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to delete a VRRP instance group in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **VRRP → VRRP instance groups** tab.

   - If you want to delete a VRRP instance group on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **VRRP → VRRP instance groups** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of VRRP instance groups is displayed.

2. Click **Delete** next to the VRRP instance group that you want to delete.

3. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

   The VRRP instance group is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

4. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Transmission of multicast traffic using PIM and IGMP protocols

Kaspersky SD-WAN supports transmission of multicast traffic between CPE devices and external network devices using the PIM and IGMP protocols. You can specify the basic settings of the PIM protocol on CPE devices, for example, the rendezvous points to be used, and then create multicast interfaces for interaction with other CPE devices. The created network interfaces are used as multicast interfaces.

If PIM connectivity is established between CPE devices and rendezvous points are defined for these devices, multicast interfaces can receive IGMP requests from clients over IGMP. IGMP requests contain IP addresses of sources from which clients want to receive multicast traffic packets. When sources send multicast packets to a rendezvous point, clients receive these multicast traffic packets.

If necessary, you can use the PIM protocol to connect CPE devices to external routers. To do so, you must enable the PIM protocol on the multicast interface to which the external router is connected.

Basic PIM settings

You can specify basic PIM settings in a CPE template or on the CPE device. Basic PIM settings specified in the CPE template are automatically propagated to all CPE devices that use this CPE template.

To modify the basic PIM settings:

1. Specify basic PIM settings in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to edit the basic PIM settings in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **Multicast** tab.

   - If you want to edit the basic PIM settings on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, and select the **Multicast** tab.

   By default, the **General settings** tab is selected, which displays the basic PIM settings.

2. In the **Multicast** drop-down list, select **Enabled**. The default value is **Disabled**.

3. Specify the rendezvous point for multicast traffic packet sources and clients that are connected to the CPE device:

   a. Under **RP IP**, click **+ Add** and enter the IPv4 address of the rendezvous point.

   b. If you want to specify a multicast group associated with the rendezvous point, under **RP group**, enter the IPv4 prefix of your multicast group. Each rendezvous point can be associated with a dedicated multicast group.

   The rendezvous point is specified and displayed in the **RP IP** and **RP group** sections. You can specify multiple rendezvous points or delete rendezvous points. To delete a rendezvous point, click the delete icon ✕ next to it.

4. In the **RP keepalive timer (sec)** field, enter the lifetime in seconds of traffic streams between the source and the multicast group (S,G). The countdown is reset if the CPE device receives a register packet. Range of values: 31 to 60,000. Default value: `185`.

5. If you want to filter multicast traffic packets with the specified source IPv4 addresses on the CPE device, in the **PIM register accept list** drop-down list, select a created prefix list.

6. If a CPE device is on the last hop and you want to prevent this CPE device from switching over from the shared tree to the shortest path tree (SPT) when transmitting multicast traffic packets:

   a. Select the **SPT switchover** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

   b. If you want to deny or allow switchover from the Rendezvous Point Tree (RPT) to the shortest path tree when transmitting traffic packets from multicast groups with specified source IPv4 prefixes, select a created prefix list in the **SPT prefix list** drop-down list. Whether switchover is denied or allowed is determined as follows:

      - If the prefix list allows the IPv4 prefix, switchover does not occur.
      - If the prefix list denies the IPv4 prefix, switchover does occur.

7. If you want to perform ECMP balancing on a CPE device to distribute multicast traffic streams over multiple routes:

   a. Select the **ECMP** check box. This check box is cleared by default. For ECMP balancing, multiple routes must exist. If ECMP balancing is disabled, traffic is transmitted along one route.

   b. If you want to balance all traffic among the remaining routes in case one of the multicast interfaces fails, select the **ECMP rebalance** check box. The check box is cleared by default, and if one of the multicast interfaces fails, only the traffic that was transmitted through that multicast interface is redistributed.

8. In the **PIM join/prune interval (sec)** field, enter the time interval in seconds for multicast interfaces to send join/prune packets to PIM peers. Range of values: 60 to 600. Default value: `60`.

9. In the **PIM keepalive timer (sec)** field, enter the lifetime in seconds of traffic streams between the source and the multicast group (S,G). The countdown is reset if the CPE device receives a join/prune packet. Range of values: 31 to 60,000. Default value: `210`.

10. If you want to have the CPE device relay traffic packets with specified source IPv4 prefixes from multicast groups upon request from the client (Source Specific Multicast; SSM), in the **SSM prefix list** drop-down list, select a created prefix list.

11. In the **RPF lookup mode** drop-down list, select a Reverse Path Forwarding (RPF) lookup mode on the CPE device:

    - **longer-prefix**.
    - **lower-distance**.
    - **mrib-only**.
    - **mrib-then-urib**. This is the default setting.
    - **urib-only**.

12. If you want to add a static IPv4 route to the multicast routing table of the CPE device:

    a. Under **Static multicast routes**, click **+ Add**.

    b. In the **IP destination** field, enter the destination IPv4 address of the static route.

    c. In the **Type** drop-down list, select the source type of the static route:

    - **Address** is an IPv4 address. If you select this value, in the **Nexthop** field, enter the source IPv4 address and prefix of the static route.
    - **Interface** is the created network interface. If you select this value, from the **Nexthop** drop-down list, select the source network interface of the static route.

    d. If necessary, in the **Distance** field, enter the metric of the static route. Range of values: 1 to 255.

    The static route is added and displayed under **Static multicast routes**. You can add multiple static routes or delete static routes. To delete a static route, click the delete icon ✕ next to it.

13. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Managing multicast interfaces

You can view the table of multicast interfaces in a CPE template and on a CPE device:

- To view the table of multicast interfaces in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **Multicast → Interfaces** tab.
- To view the table of multicast interfaces on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, and select the **Multicast → Interfaces** tab.

Information about multicast interfaces is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Network interface** is the network interface used as a multicast interface.
- **PIM** indicates whether the exchange of messages with peers via the PIM protocol is enabled on the multicast interface:
    - **Enabled**
    - **Disabled**
- **IGMP** indicates whether the exchange of messages with peers via the IGMP protocol is enabled on the multicast interface:
    - **Enabled**
    - **Disabled**
- **DR priority** is the priority of the multicast interface. The highest-priority multicast interface becomes the designated router of the LAN segment. The greater the value, the higher the priority of the multicast interface.

- **Inherited** indicates whether the multicast interface is inherited from CPE template:
  - **Yes**.
  - **No**.

  This column is displayed only on the CPE device.
- **Management** contains the actions that can be performed with the multicast interface.

Creating a multicast interface

You can create a multicast interface in a CPE template or on an individual device. A multicast interface created in the CPE template is automatically created on all CPE devices that use this CPE template.

To create a multicast interface:

1. Create a multicast interface in one of the following ways:
   - If you want to create a multicast interface in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **Multicast → Interfaces** tab.
   - If you want to create a multicast interface on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **Multicast → Interfaces** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of multicast interfaces is displayed.
2. Click **+ Multicast interface**.
3. This opens a window, in that window, in the **Network interface** drop-down list, select a created network interface which you want to use as a multicast interface.

4. Configure the PIM protocol on the multicast interface:

   a. In the **PIM** drop-down list, select **Enabled**. The default value is **Disabled**.

   b. If you want to switch the multicast interface to passive mode, select the **Passive** check box. In passive mode, multicast interfaces do not exchange control packets. This check box is cleared by default.

   c. If you want to prohibit the exchange of bootstrap packets on the multicast interface, clear the **BSM** check box. This check box is selected by default.

   d. If you want to prohibit the exchange of unicast bootstrap packets on the multicast interface, clear the **Unicast BSM** check box. This check box is selected by default.

   e. In the **DR priority** field, enter the priority of the multicast interface. The highest-priority multicast interface becomes the designated router of the LAN segment. The greater the value, the higher the priority of the multicast interface. Range of values: 1 to 4,294,967,295. Default value: `1`.

   f. In the **Hello (sec)** field, enter the time interval in seconds that the multicast interface uses to send control packets to PIM neighbors. Range of values: 1 to 180. Default value: `30`.

   g. In the **Hold (sec)** field, enter the time interval in seconds that the multicast interface uses to receive control packets from PIM neighbors. If no control packets are received from a PIM neighbor within the specified time, the PIM interface considers this PIM neighbor unavailable. Range of values: 1 to 630. Default value: `105`.

   h. If multiple IP addresses are assigned to a multicast interface and you want to use the specified IPv4 source address when sending PIM messages, enter the IPv4 address in the **Source IP** field.

5. Configure the IGMP protocol on the multicast interface:

   a. In the **IGMP** drop-down list, select **Enabled**. The default value is **Disabled**.

   b. In the **Version** drop-down list, select the version of the IGMP protocol on the multicast interface:

      - **2**
      - **3**. This is the default setting.

   c. In the **Query interval (sec)** field, enter the time interval in seconds for sending queries from the multicast interface to clients. Queries are used to determine if multicast traffic needs to be sent to clients. Range of values: 1 to 250. Default value: `125`.

   d. In the **Query response time (sec)** field, enter the time in seconds that the multicast interface must wait to receive responses from clients. If no response to a query is received from the client within the specified time, the multicast interface does not send traffic packets. Range of values: 1 to 125. Default value: `10`.

   e. If you want to specify multicast groups:

      1. Under **Join group**, click **+ Add** and enter the IPv4 address of the multicast group.
      2. If you want to connect the multicast interface to the specified source of the multicast group, under **Source address**, enter the IPv4 address of the source.

      The multicast group is specified and displayed in the **Join group** and **Source address** sections. You can specify multiple multicast groups or delete multicast groups. To delete a multicast group, click the delete icon ✕ next to it.

      You need to specify multicast groups in one of the following cases:

      - The network segment has permanent clients to which you need to send traffic packets from a multicast group in a quick and stable way.
      - The network segment does not contain clients or hosts in the segment cannot send report messages, but traffic packets from a multicast group must be sent to this segment.

6. Click **Create**.

   The multicast interface is created and displayed in the table.

7. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Editing a multicast interface

You can edit multicast interface settings in a CPE template or on a CPE device. A multicast interface edited in the CPE template is automatically modified on all CPE devices that use this CPE template.

To edit a multicast interface:

1. Edit a multicast interface in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to edit a multicast interface in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **Multicast → Interfaces** tab.

   - If you want to edit a multicast interface on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **Multicast → Interfaces** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of multicast interfaces is displayed.

2. Click **Edit** next to the multicast interface that you want to edit.

3. This opens a window; in that window, if necessary, edit the multicast interface settings. For a description of the settings, see the instructions for creating a multicast interface.

4. Click **Save**.

   The multicast interface is modified and updated in the table.

5. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Deleting a multicast interface

You can delete a multicast interface in a CPE template or on a CPE device. A multicast interface deleted in the CPE template is automatically deleted on all CPE devices that use this CPE template.

Deleted multicast interfaces cannot be restored.

To delete a multicast interface:

1. Delete a multicast interface in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to delete a multicast interface in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **Multicast → Interfaces** tab.

   - If you want to delete a multicast interface on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **Multicast → Interfaces** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of multicast interfaces is displayed.

2. Click **Delete** next to the multicast interface that you want to delete.

3. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

   The multicast interface is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

4. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Managing virtual routing and forwarding (VRF) tables

Kaspersky SD-WAN supports the Virtual Routing and Forwarding (VRF) technology for creating virtual routing and forwarding tables on CPE devices. You can create up to 100 virtual routing and forwarding tables.

When creating a virtual routing and forwarding table, you must select network interfaces that you want to add to it. You cannot add the same network interface to multiple virtual routing and forwarding tables. Network interfaces for connecting the CPE device to the controller and orchestrator are automatically added to the default virtual routing and forwarding table and you cannot add them to other virtual routing and forwarding tables.

If network interfaces are added to different virtual routing and forwarding tables, networks connected to these network interfaces do not have access to each other. In this situation, network interfaces can have IP addresses from identical or overlapping subnets.

When you create a virtual routing and forwarding table, a system network interface corresponding to this virtual routing and forwarding table is automatically created on the CPE device. This system network interface is used to forward traffic between network interfaces in the virtual routing and forwarding table. For the system network interface to work, you need to create a record for it in the orchestrator web interface.

When creating a virtual routing and forwarding table, you can create a blackhole route to isolate traffic. In this case, blackhole route 0.0.0.0/0 is automatically created on the device, and information about it is displayed in the **Static routes** section. Without a blackhole route, traffic may end up in other virtual routing and forwarding tables.

If no firewall zones are assigned to network interfaces in the virtual routing and forwarding table, you need to make sure that by default, the firewall of the CPE device accepts traffic packets forwarded between network interfaces and subnets. You can specify default actions when configuring the basic settings of the firewall.

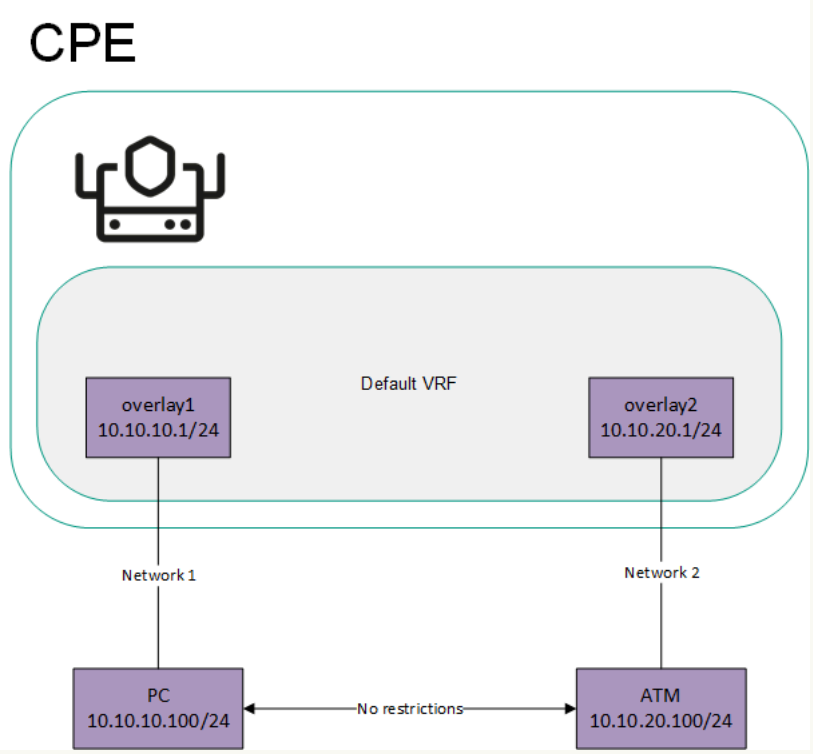
If firewall zones are assigned to network interfaces in the virtual routing and forwarding table, and the CPE device firewall does not, by default, accept traffic packets forwarded between network interfaces and subnets, you must assign a firewall zone to the system network interface. The assigned firewall zone must also be assigned to one of the network interfaces in the virtual routing and forwarding table.

You can add BGP routes and static routes to virtual routing and forwarding tables of a CPE device. To add BGP routes to a virtual routing and forwarding table, specify that virtual routing and forwarding table when editing basic BGP settings. To add a static route to a virtual routing and forwarding table, specify that virtual routing and forwarding table when adding the static route.

You can use virtual routing and forwarding tables in the following scenarios:

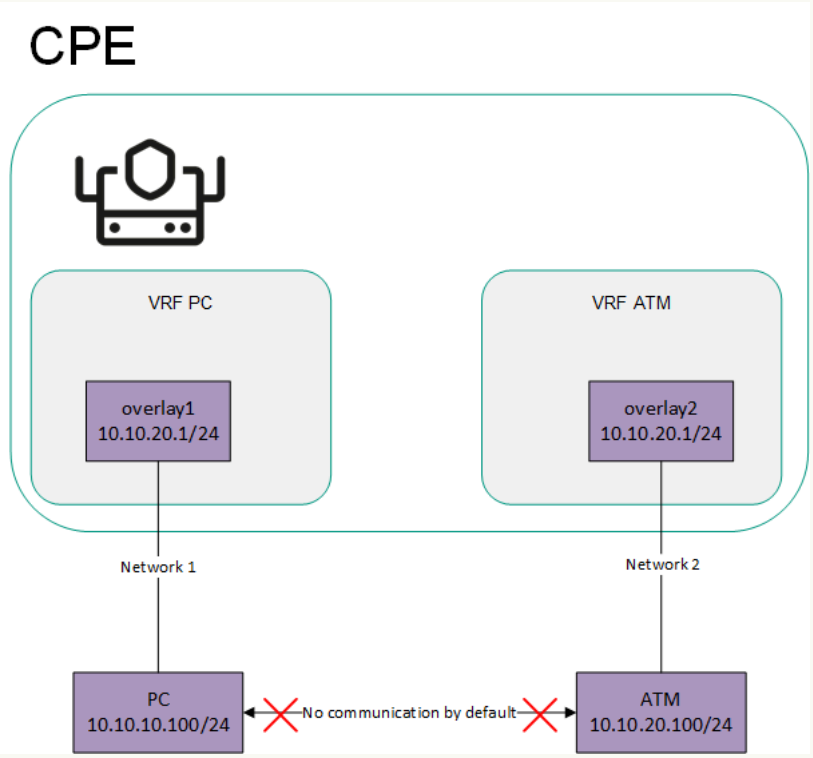
- Network segmentation using virtual routing and forwarding tables

You can create virtual routing and forwarding tables to segment your network. In the figure below, network 1 is built between the 'overlay1' network interface and user PCs, and network 2 is built between the 'overlay2' network interface and ATMs. Both network interfaces are in the default virtual routing and forwarding table (default VRF), so the networks have access to each other and are insecure.



Network interfaces connected to different networks in the virtual default routing and forwarding table

To isolate networks 1 and 2, the overlay1 and overlay2 network interfaces must be added to different virtual routing and forwarding tables (VRF PC and VRF ATM), which creates two segments (see the figure below).

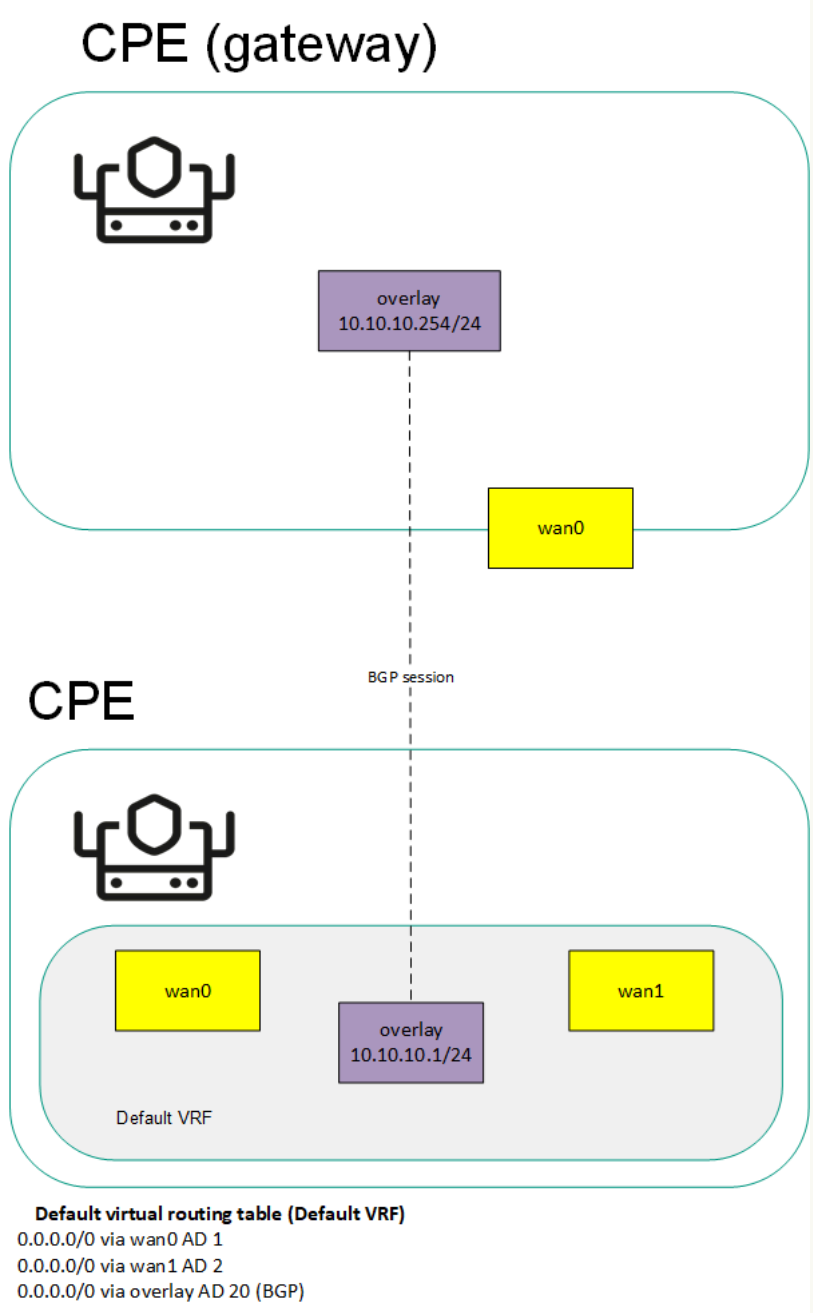


Network interfaces connected to different networks are in separate virtual default routing and forwarding tables

- Sending the 0.0.0.0/0 over BGP.

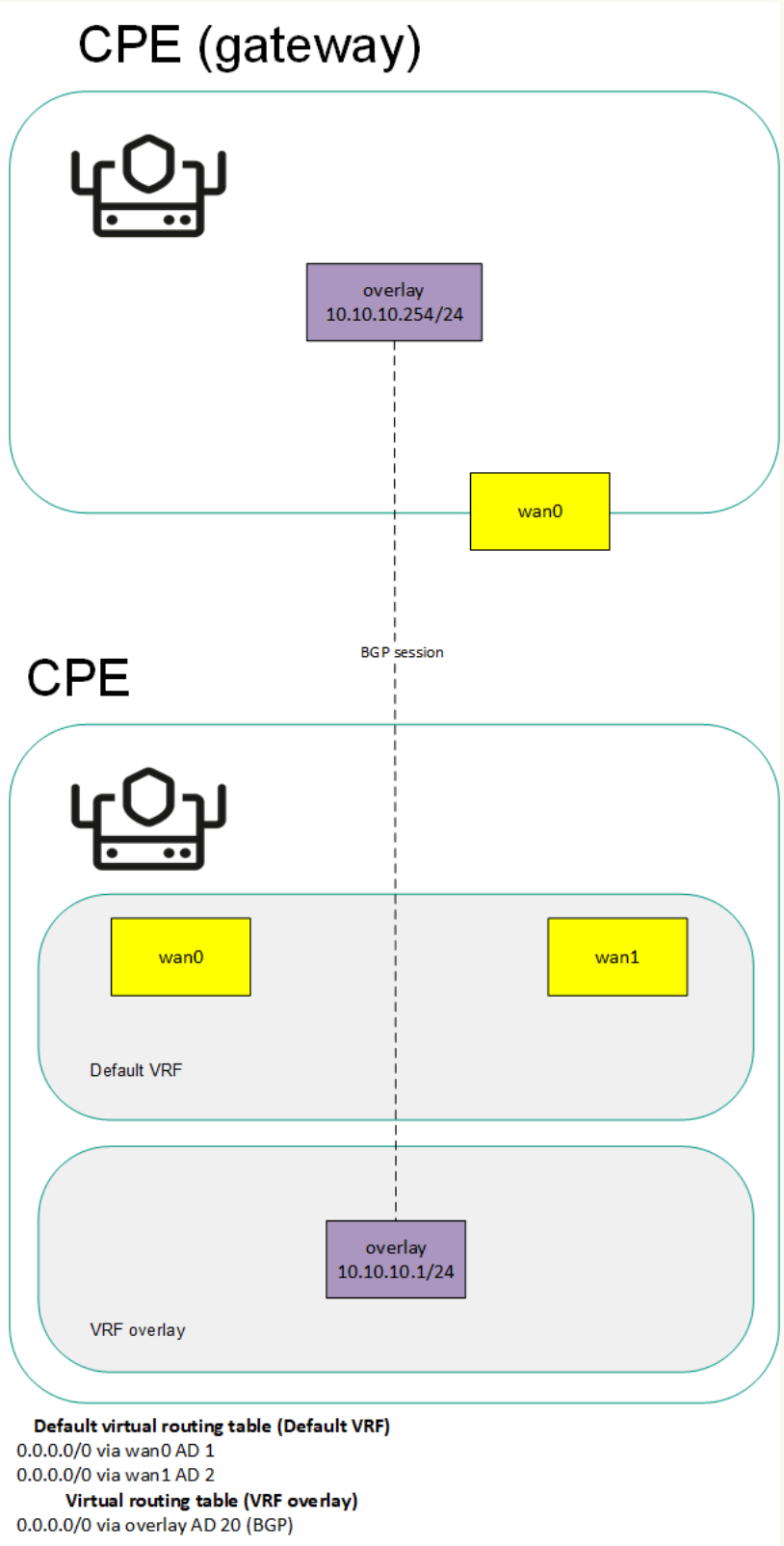
You can create a separate virtual routing and forwarding table for sending the 0.0.0.0/0 route between devices over BGP. The figure below shows a CPE device with the SD-WAN gateway role and a standard CPE device. All network interfaces of the CPE device are added to the default virtual routing and forwarding table (default VRF).

If the SD-WAN gateway sends the 0.0.0.0/0 BGP route from overlay network interface 10.10.10.254/24 to overlay network interface 10.10.10.1/24, such a route cannot be used. This is the case because the default virtual routing and forwarding table already has 0.0.0.0/0 routes with a lower administrative distance for connecting to the controller and orchestrator.



Sending the 0.0.0.0/0 route to a CPE device with the default virtual routing and forwarding table

To send route 0.0.0.0/0 over BGP through the overlay 10.10.10.254/24 network interface to overlay 10.10.10.1/24, you must create a separate virtual routing and forwarding table (VRF overlay) for the overlay 10.10.10.1/24 network interface and add BGP routes to it (see the figure below).



Sending the 0.0.0.0/0 route to a CPE device with a separate virtual routing and forwarding table for BGP routes

You can view the table of virtual routing and forwarding tables in a CPE template and on a CPE device:

- To view the table of virtual routing and forwarding tables in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **VRF** tab.
- To view the table of virtual routing and forwarding tables on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, and select the **VRF** tab.

Information about virtual routing and forwarding tables is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Name** is the name of the virtual routing and forwarding table.
- **Inherited** indicates whether the virtual routing and forwarding table is inherited from the CPE template:
  - **Yes**.
  - **No**.

  This column is displayed only on the CPE device.
- **Table** is the ID of the virtual routing and forwarding table.
- **Interfaces** are network interfaces added to the virtual routing and forwarding table.

Specifying core settings related to virtual routing and forwarding tables

You can specify kernel settings related to virtual routing and forwarding tables in a CPE template or on a CPE device. This is necessary for correct operation of network services in virtual routing and forwarding tables created by you. Kernel settings specified in the CPE template are automatically propagated to all CPE devices that use this CPE template.

To specify kernel settings:

1. Proceed to specify kernel settings in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to edit kernel settings in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **VRF → General settings** tab.

   - If you want to edit kernel settings on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **VRF → General settings** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   Kernel settings are displayed.

2. If necessary, do one of the following:

   - If you want to use UDP network services in virtual routing and forwarding tables, select the **UDP network services in all VRFs** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

   - If you want to use TCP network services in virtual routing and forwarding tables, select the **TCP network services in all VRFs** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

   - If you do not want to use RAW sockets in virtual routing and forwarding tables, clear the **RAW sockets in all VRFs** check box. This check box is selected by default.

3. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Creating a virtual routing and forwarding table

You can create a virtual routing and forwarding table in a CPE template or on a CPE device. A virtual routing and forwarding table created in the CPE template is automatically created on all CPE devices that use this CPE template.

To create a virtual routing and forwarding table:

1. Create a virtual routing and forwarding table in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to create a virtual routing and forwarding table in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **VRF** tab.

   - If you want to create a virtual routing and forwarding table on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, and select the **VRF** tab.

   By default, the **VRF** tab is selected, which displays the table of virtual routing and forwarding tables.

2. Click **+ VRF**.

3. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Name** field, enter the name of the virtual routing and forwarding table.

4. In the **Table** field, enter the ID of the virtual routing and forwarding table. Range of values: 100 to 199.

5. If you want to ensure additional traffic isolation for the virtual routing and forwarding table, select the **Add blackhole route** check box. As a result, a blackhole route 0.0.0.0/0 is created automatically when saving the virtual routing and forwarding table in the **Static routes** section.

   If such a static route has already been created previously, the **Add blackhole route** check box is selected when creating a virtual routing and forwarding table. Clearing the check box deletes the previously created static route.

   This check box is cleared by default. Without a blackhole route, traffic may end up in other virtual routing and forwarding tables.

6. In the **Interfaces** drop-down list, select the created network interface that you want to add to the virtual routing and forwarding table. You cannot add the same network interface to multiple virtual routing and forwarding tables.

   The network instance is added and displayed in the lower part of the window. You can add multiple network interfaces or delete network interfaces. To delete a network interface, click **Delete** next to it.

   If you added a network interface with a name in the 'overlay.<number>' format (for example, 'overlay.100') to the virtual routing and forwarding table, you must select the **Enable automatically** and **Force IP address, route, and gateway** check boxes when creating or editing the network interface.

7. Click **Create**.

   The virtual routing and forwarding table is created and displayed in the table. A system network interface corresponding to the created virtual routing and forwarding table is created on the CPE device. If the **Add blackhole route** was selected, blackhole route 0.0.0.0/0 is automatically created in the **Static routes** section.

8. Create a record in the orchestrator web interface for the system network interface:

   a. Select the **Network** tab.

      The table of network interfaces is displayed.

   b. Click **+ Network interface**.

   c. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Alias** field, enter the name of the virtual routing and forwarding table that you specified at step 3 of these instructions. The maximum length of the name is 15 characters.

   d. If firewall zones are assigned to network interfaces in the virtual routing and forwarding table, and the CPE device firewall does not, by default, accept traffic packets forwarded between network interfaces and subnets, in the **Zone** drop-down list, select a firewall zone. The selected firewall zone must also be assigned to one of the network interfaces in the virtual routing and forwarding table.

   e. In the **Interface name** field, enter the name of the virtual routing and forwarding table that you specified at step 3 of these instructions. The maximum length of the name is 256 characters.

9. Click **Create**.

   A record for the system network interface is created and displayed in the table.

10. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Modifying the virtual routing and forwarding table

You can edit a virtual routing and forwarding table in a CPE template or on a device. A virtual routing and forwarding table edited in the CPE template is automatically edited on all CPE devices that use this CPE template. You cannot edit a virtual routing and forwarding table that is inherited from a CPE template on a CPE device.

To edit a virtual routing and forwarding table:

1. Edit a virtual routing and forwarding table in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to edit a virtual routing and forwarding table in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **VRF** tab.

   - If you want to edit a virtual routing and forwarding table on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, and select the **VRF** tab.

   By default, the **VRF** tab is selected, which displays the table of virtual routing and forwarding tables.

2. Click **Edit** next to the virtual routing and forwarding table that you want to edit.

3. This opens a window; in that window, manage the settings of the virtual routing and forwarding table.

4. Click **Save**.

   The virtual routing and forwarding table is modified and updated in the table.

5. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Deleting a virtual routing and forwarding table

You can delete a virtual routing and forwarding table in a CPE template or on a CPE device. A virtual routing and forwarding table deleted in the CPE template is automatically deleted on all CPE devices that use this CPE template. You cannot delete a virtual routing and forwarding table that is inherited from a CPE template on a CPE device.

Deleted virtual routing and forwarding tables cannot be restored.

To delete a virtual routing and forwarding table:

1. Delete a virtual routing and forwarding table in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to delete a virtual routing and forwarding table in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **VRF** tab.

   - If you want to delete a virtual routing and forwarding table on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, and select the **VRF** tab.

   By default, the **VRF** tab is selected, which displays the table of virtual routing and forwarding tables.

2. Click **Delete** next to the virtual routing and forwarding table that you want to delete.

3. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

   The virtual routing and forwarding table is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

4. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Monitoring traffic packet information using the NetFlow protocol

Kaspersky SD-WAN supports NetFlow versions 1, 5, and 9 for monitoring information about traffic packets on a CPE device.

NetFlow templates are used for centralized configuration of the NetFlow protocol on CPE devices. To avoid configuring each CPE device individually, you can specify basic settings in the NetFlow template and then apply the NetFlow template to CPE devices when adding or manually registering them. If you edit a setting in a NetFlow template, the setting is automatically modified on all CPE devices that are using this NetFlow template. If you edit a setting on the CPE device, the setting becomes independent of the NetFlow template, and if the setting is modified in the NetFlow template, it remains unchanged on the CPE device.

When specifying basic NetFlow settings, you can specify up to four NetFlow collectors. If you want a CPE device to send information about traffic packets to NetFlow collectors, you must enable the NetFlow protocol on network interfaces. The NetFlow protocol can be enabled when creating or editing the network interface.

Managing NetFlow templates

To view the table of NetFlow templates, go to the **SD-WAN → NetFlow templates** section. By default, the **Default NetFlow template** is created on the administrator portal, which forms the basis for all other NetFlow templates you create. Information about NetFlow templates is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **ID** is the ID of the NetFlow template.
- **Name** is the name of the NetFlow template.
- **Usage** specifies whether the CPE devices use the NetFlow template:
  - **Yes**.
  - **No**.
- **Updated** is the date and time when the CPE template settings were last modified.
- **User** is the name of the user which created the NetFlow template.
- **Owner** is the tenant to which the NetFlow template belongs.

The actions that you can perform with the table are described in the Managing solution component tables article.

You can select an assigned NetFlow template to have it preselected when adding or manually registering a CPE device. For tenants, you must manually create and select an assigned NetFlow template on the self-service portal.

Creating a NetFlow template

To create a NetFlow template:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **NetFlow templates** section.

   A table of NetFlow templates is displayed.

2. In the upper part of the page, click **+ NetFlow template**.

3. This opens a window; in that window, enter the name of the NetFlow template.

4. Click **Create**.

   The NetFlow template is created and displayed in the table.

You need to configure the created NetFlow template. For details of NetFlow template settings, see the instructions on how to configure basic NetFlow settings.

Selecting an assigned NetFlow template

You can select an assigned NetFlow template to have it preselected when adding or manually registering a CPE device. For tenants, you must manually create and select an assigned NetFlow template on the self-service portal.

To select an assigned NetFlow template:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **NetFlow templates** section.

   A table of NetFlow templates is displayed.

2. Click the NetFlow template that you want to make the assigned NetFlow template.

   The settings area is displayed in the lower part of the page. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃⌃.

3. In the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Set as designated**.

   The NetFlow template becomes the assigned NetFlow template.

Importing a NetFlow template

You can export a NetFlow template and subsequently import it into another NetFlow template. NetFlow template settings are specified in accordance with the settings of the imported NetFlow template. During import, you can select the settings that you want to leave unchanged. The NetFlow template into which you are importing another NetFlow template remains applied to CPE devices, but the settings of those CPE devices are not modified.

To import a NetFlow template:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN → NetFlow templates** section.

   A table of NetFlow templates is displayed.

2. Click the NetFlow template that you want to export.

   The settings area is displayed in the lower part of the page. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓.

3. In the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Export**.

   An archive in the TAR.GZ format is saved on your local device. The archive does not contain information about CPE devices using the NetFlow template.

4. Click the NetFlow template into which you want to import another NetFlow template.

   The settings area is displayed in the lower part of the page. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓.

5. In the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Import**.

6. This opens a window; in that window, clear the check boxes next to the NetFlow template settings that you want to leave unchanged after import.

7. In the **File** field, specify the path to the TAR.GZ archive.

8. Click **Import**.

NetFlow template settings are modified in accordance with the settings of the imported NetFlow template.

Cloning a NetFlow template

You can clone a NetFlow template to create an identical NetFlow template with a different name.

To clone a NetFlow template:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN → NetFlow templates** section.

   A table of NetFlow templates is displayed.

2. Click the NetFlow template that you want to clone.

   The settings area is displayed in the lower part of the page. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓.

3. In the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Clone**.

4. This opens a window; in that window, enter the name of the new NetFlow template.

5. Click **Clone**.

A clone of the NetFlow template with the new name is created and displayed in the table.

Viewing the usage of a NetFlow template

If necessary, you can check which CPE devices are using the NetFlow template. For example, if a NetFlow template is in use, it cannot be deleted.

To see if a NetFlow template is being used:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **NetFlow templates** section.

   A table of NetFlow templates is displayed.

2. Click the NetFlow template for which you want to view usage information.

   The settings area is displayed in the lower part of the page. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃⌃.

3. In the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Show usage**.

This opens a window with a table of CPE devices that are using the NetFlow template.

Deleting a NetFlow template

You cannot delete a NetFlow template if it is being used by at least one CPE device. To delete a NetFlow template that is being used by CPE devices, you must first change the NetFlow template of the CPE devices. You can check which CPE devices are using the NetFlow template.

Deleted NetFlow templates cannot be restored.

To delete a NetFlow template:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **NetFlow templates** section.

   A table of NetFlow templates is displayed.

2. Click the NetFlow template that you want to delete.

   The settings area is displayed in the lower part of the page. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃⌃.

3. In the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Delete**.

4. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

The NetFlow template is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

Basic NetFlow settings

You can specify basic NetFlow settings in a NetFlow template or on a CPE device. Basic NetFlow settings specified in the NetFlow template are automatically propagated to all CPE devices that use this NetFlow template.

To modify the basic NetFlow settings:

1. Specify basic NetFlow settings in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to edit basic NetFlow settings in a NetFlow template, go to the **SD-WAN → NetFlow templates** menu section and click the NetFlow template.

   - If you want to edit the basic NetFlow settings on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **NetFlow** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   Basic NetFlow settings are displayed.

2. In the **NetFlow** drop-down list, select **Enabled**. The default value is **Disabled**.

3. Specify the NetFlow collector:

   a. Under **Collectors**, click **+ Add**.

   b. Under **Host**, enter the IPv4 address of the NetFlow collector.

   c. Under **Port**, enter the port number of the NetFlow collector. Range of values: 1 to 65,535.

   The NetFlow collector is specified and displayed in the **Collectors** section. You can specify up to four NetFlow collectors or delete a NetFlow collector. To delete a NetFlow collector, click the delete icon ✕ next to it.

4. In the **Export version** drop-down list, select the version of the NetFlow protocol:

   - **1**

   - **5**

   - **9**. This is the default setting.

5. In the **Tracking level** drop-down list, select which traffic packet information the CPE device tracks:

   - **ETHER** to track the following information:
     - Source and destination IP addresses and ports
     - Source and destination MAC addresses
     - Outer VLAN tag
     - Protocol being used
   - **FULL** to track the source and destination IP addresses and ports, as well as the protocol being used. This is the default setting.
   - **VLAN** to track the following information:
     - Source and destination IP addresses and ports
     - Outer VLAN tag
     - Protocol being used
   - **PROTO** to track the source and destination IP addresses and the protocol being used.
   - **IP** to track the source and destination IP addresses.

6. In the **Maximum flows** field, enter the maximum number of traffic flows that the CPE device can simultaneously track. Range of values: 1 to 65,535. Default value: `8192`.

   The higher the value, the higher the CPU load on the CPE device.

7. In the **Sampling rate** field, specify how frequently the CPE device tracks the traffic packet information. For example, if you enter `10`, the CPE device tracks information about every tenth packet of traffic. Range of values: 1 to 8192. Default value: `1024`.

   The lower the value, the more accurate the information and the higher the CPU load on the CPE device.

8. In the **Maximum timeout (sec)** field, enter the maximum time in seconds for which the CPE device can track traffic flow information. To disable this feature, enter `0`. Range of values: 1 to 9999. Default value: `60`.

9. In the **Hop limit** field, enter the maximum number of hops to NetFlow collectors. Range of values: 1 to 255. Default value: `64`.

10. If you want the CPE device to track IPv6 traffic, in the **Track IPv6** drop-down list, select **Enabled**. The default value is **Disabled**.

11. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the NetFlow template or CPE device.

If you want a CPE device to send information about traffic packets to NetFlow collectors, you must enable the NetFlow protocol on network interfaces. The NetFlow protocol can be enabled when creating or editing the network interface.

Changing the NetFlow template of a CPE Device

To change the NetFlow template of a CPE device:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** section.

   A table of CPE devices is displayed.

2. Click the CPE device for which you want to change the NetFlow template.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, in the menu on the left, the **Configuration** section is selected, which displays general information about the CPE device. This section also displays the table of **Out-of-band management** tasks being performed by the orchestrator.

3. In the **NetFlow template** drop-down list, select a created NetFlow template.

4. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save CPE device settings.

Diagnosing a CPE device

You can request diagnostic information from a CPE device, such as BGP, OSPF, and PIM protocol usage. The diagnostic information returned in response to the request is displayed in the web interface of the orchestrator and, if necessary, can be downloaded as a TXT file.

Kaspersky SD-WAN also supports the following utilities for CPE device diagnostics:

- Ping is a utility for testing the linkl between a CPE device and a specified IPv4 address.
- Traceroute is a utility for determining the route between a CPE device and a specified IPv4 address.
- Tcpdump is a utility for capturing traffic on a CPE device. Capturing means a copy is made of the traffic, and the original traffic is relayed to its destination.
- Iperf is a utility for diagnosing network performance. You can use the CPE device as an iperf server or as an iperf client.
- Sweep is a utility for performing the following actions on a CPE device:
  - Clearing the ARP cache
  - Restarting the FRR (Free Range Routing) process
  - Clearing the NAT session table
- OpenFlow dump is a utility for requesting dump-flows and dump-groups generated by the virtual switch of a CPE device.

The tcpdump, iperf, and OpenFlow dump utilities generate reports that you can download or delete.

Running an utility is a task that the CPE device receives from the orchestrator; the task obeys the time period configured for the CPE device for sending REST API requests to the orchestrator. If you want the utilities to run sooner, you can enable interactive mode on the CPE device.

In *interactive mode*, the CPE device uses a shorter time interval for sending REST API requests to the orchestrator. Interactive mode ends automatically when the specified duration has passed. You can specify the following interactive mode settings when configuring the connection of a CPE device to the orchestrator and controller:

- The period to wait until the CPE device sends another REST API request to the orchestrator in interactive mode
- The time after which the interactive mode is automatically disabled

Requesting diagnostic information

To request diagnostic information:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** section.

   A table of CPE devices is displayed.

2. Click the CPE device on which you want to request diagnostic information.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, in the menu on the left, the **Configuration** section is selected, which displays general information about the CPE device. This section also displays the table of **Out-of-band management** tasks being performed by the orchestrator.

3. Select the **Diagnostic information** tab.

   The diagnostic information request parameters are displayed.

4. Click **Request diagnostic information**.

5. In the **Name** drop-down list, select the type of diagnostic information you want to display:

- **disk usage** for information about the disk usage of the CPE device. This is the default setting.
- **dump-flows** for information about OpenFlow flows.
- **dump-groups** for information about OpenFlow groups.
- **ip addresses** for information about IP addresses assigned to physical ports or virtual interfaces of the operating system of the CPE device.
- **vrf data** for information about virtual routing and forwarding tables.
- **ip neighbors** for information about the IP neighbors of the CPE device, obtained from the ARP table or using the Neighbor Discovery Protocol.
- **ip routes** for information about IPv4 and IPv6 routes.
- **ip rules** for information about routing rules.
- **iptables** for information about iptables.
- **cpe log** for the local log of the CPE device.
- **ovs-ofctl show** for information about the virtual switch.
- **ovs-vsctl show** for information about the link between the virtual switch and controllers.
- **ovs-vsctl list controller** for information about controllers specified for the virtual switch.
- **show ip ospf** for Information about the OSPF routing process.
- **show ip ospf interface** for information about OSPF interfaces.
- **show ip ospf neighbor** - information about OSPF neighbors.
- **show ip ospf database** for the OSPF database.
- **bgp show ip route** for information about BGP routes.
- **show ip bgp** for information about the BGP routing process.
- **show ip bgp summary** for brief information about the BGP routing process.
- **top process** for information about Linux processes.
- **uptime** for information about the CPE device uptime.
- **time sync** for information about time synchronization on the CPE device using an NTP server.
- **netstat** for information about network links that the CPE device has established.
- **sdwan interfaces** for information about SD-WAN interfaces.
- **modems** for information about modems.

- **show bfd peers** for information about BFD peers.
- **netflow dump-flows** for information about NetFlow flows.
- **netflow statistics** for information about the use of the NetFlow protocol.
- **show bfd peers brief** for brief information about BFD peers.
- **show ip pim bsr** for information about the current bootstrap router (BSR).
- **show ip pim bsrp-info** for information about the group-to-rp mapping received from the bootstrap router.
- **show ip pim interface** for information about PIM interfaces. You can configure the PIM protocol when creating or editing a mutlicast interface.
- **show ip pim interface traffic** for information about PIM traffic.
- **show ip pim join** for information about multicast groups to which the CPE device is connected.
- **show ip pim neighbor** for information about PIM neighbors.
- **show ip pim nexthop** for information about the next hops of multicast groups.
- **show ip pim rp-info** for information about rendezvous points. You can specify rendezvous points when specifying basic PIM settings.
- **show ip pim secondary** for information about the backup PIM router.
- **show ip pim state** for information about the state of the PIM protocol.
- **show ip pim statistics** for Information about PIM protocol usage.
- **show ip pim upstream** for information about PIM sources.
- **show ip igmp groups** for information about IGMP groups.
- **show ip igmp interface** for information about IGMP interfaces. You can configure IGMP when creating or editing a mutlicast interface.
- **show ip igmp interface detail** for detailed information about IGMP interfaces.
- **show ip igmp sources** for information about IGMP sources.
- **igmp statistics** for information about IGMP usage.
- **show ip multicast** for information about the multicast routing process.
- **show ip mroute** for information about multicast routes.
- **show ip mroute summary** for brief information about multicast routes.
- **vswitchd log** for the log of the ovs-vswitchd process.
- **firewall config** for information about the firewall.

- **sw version** for the firmware version of the CPE device.
- **vrrp stats** for brief information about VRRP usage.
- **vrrp data** for information about VRRP usage.

6. If you want to filter the displayed diagnostic information:

   a. In the **Find line by pattern** field, enter words that must be found in the lines of diagnostic information that you want to be displayed. Maximum length: 64 characters. If you want to display only lines that do not contain the words you entered, select the **Show everything except found** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

   b. In the **Show lines before and after** field, enter the number of blank lines you want to display before and after each line of diagnostic information.

7. If you want to download the file with diagnostic information, click **Download**.

   An TXT file is saved on your local device.

Enabling interactive mode

You can specify the following interactive mode settings when configuring the connection of a CPE device to the orchestrator and controller:

- The period to wait until the CPE device sends another REST API request to the orchestrator in interactive mode
- The time after which the interactive mode is automatically disabled

To enable interactive mode:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** section.

   A table of CPE devices is displayed.

2. Click the CPE device on which you want to enable interactive mode.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, in the menu on the left, the **Configuration** section is selected, which displays general information about the CPE device. This section also displays the table of **Out-of-band management** tasks being performed by the orchestrator.

3. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Interactive mode**.

Interactive mode is enabled on the CPE device.

Running the ping utility

To run the ping utility:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** section.

   A table of CPE devices is displayed.

2. Click the CPE device on which you want to run the ping utility.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, in the menu on the left, the **Configuration** section is selected, which displays general information about the CPE device. This section also displays the table of **Out-of-band management** tasks being performed by the orchestrator.

3. Select the **Utilities** tab.

   By default, the **Ping** tab is selected, which displays the ping utility settings.

4. In the **Destination IP address** field, enter the IPv4 address to which you the CPE device sends ICMP requests.

5. If you want the CPE device to send ICMP requests from a created network interface, in the **Source network interface** drop-down list, select the network interface.

6. In the **Count** field, enter the number of ICMP requests that the CPE device sends. Range of values: 1 to 1,000,000. Default value: `5`.

7. In the **Timeout (sec)** field, enter the time in seconds after which the CPE device must receive an ICMP response to consider the request a success. Range of values: 1 to 3600. Default value: `2`.

8. In the **Size** field, enter the size of the ICMP request in bytes. Range of values: 1 to 65,535. The default value is `56`.

9. In the **TTL** field, enter the maximum number of hops for ICMP requests. Range of values: 1 to 255. Default value: `255`.

10. In the **Interval** field, enter the interval in seconds for the CPE device to use when sending ICMP requests to the specified IPv4 address. Range of values: 1 to 300. Default value: `1`.

11. Click **Run**.

The ping utility is run on the CPE device, and a report containing the output of the ping utility is displayed in the lower part of the settings area.

Running the traceroute utility

To run the traceroute utility:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** section.

   A table of CPE devices is displayed.

2. Click the CPE device on which you want to run the traceroute utility.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, in the menu on the left, the **Configuration** section is selected, which displays general information about the CPE device. This section also displays the table of **Out-of-band management** tasks being performed by the orchestrator.

3. Select the **Utilities** → **Traceroute** tab.

   The traceroute utility settings are displayed.

4. In the **Destination IP address** field, enter the IPv4 address to which you the CPE device sends the series of ICMP requests.

5. If you want the CPE device to send the series of ICMP requests from a created network interface, in the **Source interface** drop-down list, select the network interface.

6. If you want the CPE device to use the DNS server to resolve IP addresses to domain names when creating the report with the output of the traceroute utility, select the **Resolve DNS names** check box. You can specify a DNS server when creating or editing a network interface. IP addresses that cannot be resolved to domain names are also displayed in the report. This check box is cleared by default.

7. In the **Probes timeout (sec)** field, enter the time in seconds after which the CPE device must receive a series of ICMP responses to consider the series of ICMP requests a success. Range of values: 1 to 30. Default value: `3`.

8. In the **Maximum number of hops** field, enter the maximum number of hops for the series of ICMP requests. Range of values: 1 to 60. Default value: `10`.

9. Click **Run**.

The traceroute utility is run on the CPE device, and a report containing the output of the traceroute utility is displayed in the lower part of the settings area.

Running the tcpdump utility

The tcpdump utility generates a report with the captured traffic. When you run the tcpdump utility again, the report is overwritten. You can download the report if you want to keep it.

The tcpdump utility puts additional load on the CPU of the CPE device.

To run the tcpdump utility:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** section.

   A table of CPE devices is displayed.

2. Click the CPE device on which you want to run the tcpdump utility.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, in the menu on the left, the **Configuration** section is selected, which displays general information about the CPE device. This section also displays the table of **Out-of-band management** tasks being performed by the orchestrator.

3. Select the **Utilities** → **Tcpdump** tab.

   The tcpdump utility settings are displayed.

4. In the **Capture network interface** drop-down list, select the created network interface on which you want to capture traffic.

5. In the **Direction** drop-down list, select the direction of the traffic you want to capture:

   - **In** to capture incoming traffic.
   - **Out** to capture outgoing traffic.
   - **In/out** to capture both incoming and outgoing traffic. This is the default setting.

6. If you want the CPE device to use the DNS server to resolve IP addresses to domain names when creating the report with the captured traffic, select the **Resolve DNS names** check box. You can specify a DNS server when creating or editing a network interface. IP addresses that cannot be resolved to domain names are also reflected in the report. This check box is cleared by default.

7. If you want to use a filter to capture traffic, in the **Filter tcpdump** field, enter the syntax of the filter. The maximum length of the filter is 1024 characters. For example, you can use the following filters:

   - `icmp` to capture only ICMP traffic packets.
   - `host 1.2.3.4 and (port 80 or 443)` to capture only traffic packets with IPv4 address 1.2.3.4 and source or destination TCP port 80 or 443.
   - `tcp[13] & 2 != 0` to capture only TCP SYN traffic packets.

   Detailed information about traffic filters can be obtained from the official tcpdump documentation.

8. In the **Maximum capture time (sec)** field, enter the time in seconds after which traffic capture stops. Range of values: 10 to 600. Default value: `30`.

9. In the **Maximum number of captured packets** field, enter the number of traffic packets that you want collected before traffic capture stops. Range of values: 1 to 10,000. Default value: `1000`.

   > Traffic capturing stops when the time specified in the **Maximum capture time (sec)** field passes, or when the number of traffic packets specified in the **Maximum number of captured packets** field is captured.

10. Click **Run**.

The tcpdump utility is run on the CPE device, and a report with the captured traffic is generated.

Running the iperf utility

The iperf utility generates a report with the results of network performance diagnostics. When you run the iperf utility again, the report is overwritten. You can download the report if you want to keep it.

To run the iperf utility:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** section.

   A table of CPE devices is displayed.

2. Click the CPE device on which you want to run the iperf utility.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, in the menu on the left, the **Configuration** section is selected, which displays general information about the CPE device. This section also displays the table of **Out-of-band management** tasks being performed by the orchestrator.

3. Select the **Utilities** → **Iperf** tab.

   The iperf utility settings are displayed.

4. Specify the mode in which you want to use the iperf utility on the CPE device by selecting one of the following options:

   - **Server** to use the CPE device as an iperf server.
   - **Client** to use the CPE device as an iperf client.

5. If you chose the **Server** option, configure the iperf server:

   a. In the **Port** field, enter the TCP or UDP port number of the iperf server. Range of values: 1001 to 65,535. Default value: `7777`.

   b. In the **Report interval (sec)** field, enter the interval in seconds for writing lines to the report. Range of values: 0 to 60. Default value: `3`.

   c. If you do not want to create a report with network performance diagnostics results, select the **No report** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

   d. Under **Report format**, select the format of the network performance diagnostics results in the report:

      - **Kbit/sec**. This is the default setting.
      - **Mbit/sec**
      - **Kbyte/sec**
      - **Mbyte/sec**

   e. In the **Run server for (sec)** field, enter the duration in seconds for which you want the iperf server to run. Range of values: 60 to 3600. Default value: `300`.

6. If you chose the **Client** option, configure the iperf client:

   a. In the **Server IP** field, enter the IPv4 address of the iperf server to which the iperf client connects.

   b. In the **Port** field, enter the TCP or UDP port number of the iperf server to which the iperf client connects. Range of values: 1001 to 65,535. Default value: `7777`.

   c. In the **Report interval (sec)** field, enter the interval in seconds for writing lines to the performance diagnostics report. Range of values: 0 to 60. Default value: `3`.

   d. If you do not want to create a report with network performance diagnostics results, select the **No report** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

   e. Under **Report format**, select the format of the network performance diagnostics results in the report:

      - **Kbit/sec**. This is the default setting.
      - **Mbit/sec**
      - **Kbyte/sec**
      - **Mbyte/sec**

   f. In the **Run client for (sec)** field, enter the duration in seconds for which you want the iperf client to run. Range of values: 60 to 3600. Default value: `60`.

   g. Specify the port type of the iperf server by selecting one of the following options:

      - **TCP**. This is the default setting.
      - **UDP**.

   h. In the **Client bitrate** field, enter the bit rate of the iperf client in one of the following formats:

      - `<bit rate in kbps>k` or `<bit rate in kbps>K`

        For example, if you enter `10000K`, the bit rate is 10,000 kbps.

      - `<bit rate in Mbps>m` or `<bit rate in Mbps>M`

        For example, if you enter `10M`, the bit rate is 10 Mbps.

   i. In the **Test direction** drop-down list, select the direction of traffic that you want to use for measuring network performance:

      - **Client-server** to use the traffic that the iperf client sends to the iperf server. This is the default setting.
      - **Server-client** to use the traffic that the iperf server sends to the iperf client.
      - **Bidirectional** to use traffic that the iperf client sends to the iperf server as well as the traffic that the iperf server sends to the iperf client.

   j. If necessary, in the **TCP windows (bytes)** field, enter the TCP window size in bytes. If you leave this field blank, the TCP window size is determined automatically.

   k. If necessary, in the **TCP MSS (bytes)** field, enter the maximum TCP segment size in bytes.

7. Click **Run**.

   The iperf utility is run on the CPE device, and a report with the network diagnostics results is generated.

To manage reports, click **Go to files**.

Running the sweep utility

You can use the sweep utility to clear the ARP cache, restart the Free Range Routing (FRR) process, or clear the NAT session table on a CPE device.

Restarting the FRR process and clearing the NAT session table may cause traffic transmission to stop for a few seconds.

To run the sweep utility:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** section.

   A table of CPE devices is displayed.

2. Click the CPE device on which you want to run the sweep utility.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃. By default, in the menu on the left, the **Configuration** section is selected, which displays general information about the CPE device. This section also displays the table of **Out-of-band management** tasks being performed by the orchestrator.

3. Select the **Utilities** → **Sweep** tab.

   The sweep utility settings are displayed.

4. If you want to clear the ARP cache:

   a. Under **Clear ARP cash on network interface**, select the created network interface on which you want to clear the ARP cache. If you want to clear the ARP cache on all network interfaces, select **All**.

   b. Click **Run**.

   The ARP cache is cleared on the CPE device.

5. If you want to restart the FRR process, under **Restart FRR (routing) process**, click **Run**.

   The FRR process is restarted on the CPE device.

6. If you want to clear the NAT session table, under **Clear NAT sessions table**, click **Run**. You can configure NAT on a CPE device using a firewall.

   The NAT session table is cleared on the CPE device.

Running the OpenFlow dump utility

The OpenFlow dump utility generates a report with the requested dump-flows and dump-groups. When you run the OpenFlow dump utility again, the report is overwritten. You can download the report if you want to keep it.

To run the OpenFlow dump utility:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** section.

   A table of CPE devices is displayed.

2. Click the CPE device on which you want to run the OpenFlow dump utility.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, in the menu on the left, the **Configuration** section is selected, which displays general information about the CPE device. This section also displays the table of **Out-of-band management** tasks being performed by the orchestrator.

3. Select the **Utilities** → **OpenFlow dump** tab.

   The OpenFlow dump utility options are displayed.

4. Click **Run**.

   The OpenFlow dump utility runs on the CPE device and a report is generated with the requested dump-flows and dump-groups.

To manage reports, click **Go to files**.

Managing reports

Reports generated by the tcpdump, iperf, and OpenFlow dump utilities. To view the table of reports on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, and select the **Utilities** → **Files** tab. Information about reports is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Type** is the report format.
- **Created** is the date and time when the report was created.

The actions that you can perform with the table are described in the Managing solution component tables article.

Downloading a report

To download a report:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** section.

   A table of CPE devices is displayed.

2. Click the CPE device from which you want to download the report.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, in the menu on the left, the **Configuration** section is selected, which displays general information about the CPE device. This section also displays the table of **Out-of-band management** tasks being performed by the orchestrator.

3. Select the **Utilities** → **Files** tab.

   The table of reports is displayed.

4. Click **Download** next to the report that you want to download.

The report file is saved to your local device.

Deleting a report

Deleted reports cannot be restored.

To delete a report:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** section.

   A table of CPE devices is displayed.

2. Click the CPE device on which you want to delete a report.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, in the menu on the left, the **Configuration** section is selected, which displays general information about the CPE device. This section also displays the table of **Out-of-band management** tasks being performed by the orchestrator.

3. Select the **Utilities** → **Files** tab.

   The table of reports is displayed.

4. Click **Delete** next to the report that you want to delete.

5. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

The report is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

Running tasks on CPE devices

Kaspersky SD-WAN supports running tasks on CPE devices at a specified time. You can use tags to group CPE devices on which you want to run a task.

Two types of tasks exist:

- Scheduled scripts on CPE devices.
- Scheduled firmware updates on manually selected CPE devices and on CPE devices with specified tags.

When you create a task, it uses the time zone of the virtual machine on which the orchestrator is deployed. For example, if you schedule a script to run on a CPE device at 2:00 p.m., the script runs at 2:00 p.m. in the time zone of the orchestrator, even if the time on the CPE device is 6:00 p.m.

We recommend taking into account the following special considerations when managing tasks:

- A 10-second inaccuracy is considered acceptable for the moment when the task is run.
- If multiple tasks exist, they run simultaneously. If the orchestrator cannot run all tasks simultaneously, they are run in the order they were created.
- Deleting a CPE template automatically deletes all tasks associated with it.
- Deleting a CPE device automatically deletes all tasks associated with it.
- When deleting a script associated with tasks, this action requires additional confirmation. If you confirm the action, the script is deleted and cannot be run within the created tasks.

Tasks that have not yet been completed can be completed manually.

You can view the table of tasks in the **Scheduler** section. Information about tasks is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **ID** is the ID of the task.
- **Name** is the name of the task.
- **User** is the name of the user which created the task.
- **Created** is the date and time when the task was created.

- **Status** is the status of the task:
  - **Done** means the task has been completed successfully.
  - **Error** means an error occurred while running the task.
  - **Pending** means the task is placed in the orchestrator database and is awaiting execution.
  - **Queued** means the task is queued for execution.
  - **Running** means the task is running.
- **Scheduled** is the date and time when the task is to be run.

The actions that you can perform with the table are described in the Managing solution component tables article.

Creating a task

To create a task:

1. In the menu, go to the **Scheduler** section.
   The table of scheduled tasks is displayed.
2. In the upper part of the page, click **+ Task**.
3. Specify the settings of the task. For a description of task settings, see the following instructions:
   - Scheduled scripts on CPE devices.
   - Scheduling firmware updates on CPE devices with specific tags.
4. Click **Create**.

The task is created and displayed in the table.

Manually running a task

To manually run a task:

1. In the menu, go to the **Scheduler** section.
   The table of scheduled tasks is displayed.
2. To manually run an individual task:
   a. Click the task that you want to manually run.
      The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃⌃.
   b. In the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Run now**.

3. To manually run multiple tasks:

   a. Select check boxes next to tasks that you want to manually run.

   b. In the upper part of the table, click **Actions** → **Run now**.

4. In the confirmation window, click **Run now**.

The tasks are completed, and their status in the **Status** column changes to **Done**.

Deleting a task

Deleted tasks cannot be restored.

To delete a task:

1. In the menu, go to the **Scheduler** section.
   The table of scheduled tasks is displayed.

2. To delete an individual task:

   a. Click the task that you want to delete.

      The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃⌃.

   b. In the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Delete**.

3. To delete multiple tasks:

   a. Select check boxes next to tasks that you want to delete.

   b. In the upper part of the table, click **Actions** → **Delete**.

4. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

The tasks are deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

IP address and subnet ranges for CPE devices

You can create ranges of IP addresses and subnets to centrally assign IPv4 addresses when creating or editing network interfaces of CPE devices. You can also use IP address ranges to centrally assign IPv4 addresses to router IDs of CPE devices when specifying basic BGP settings.

Managing IP address ranges

To view the table of IP address ranges, go to the **SD-WAN → IPAM** section. The **IP address pools** tab is selected by default. Information about IP address ranges is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Name** is the name of the IP address range.
- **CIDR** is the IPv4 prefix of the subnet in which the IP address range is located.
- **IP range** indicates the starting and ending values of the IP address range.
- **Usage** is the number of IP addresses in the range that have been assigned to network interfaces or router IDs of CPE devices.

The actions that you can perform with the table are described in the Managing solution component tables article.

Creating a range of IP addresses

To create an IP address range:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN → IPAM** section.

   By default, the **IP address pools** tab is selected, displaying a table of IP address ranges.

2. In the upper part of the page, click **+ IP address pool**.

3. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Name** field, enter the name of the IP address range. The maximum length of the name is 32 characters.

4. In the **CIDR** field, enter the IPv4 prefix of the subnet in which the IP address range is located.

5. Specify a range of IP addresses. To do so, under **IP range**, click **+ Add** and enter the starting and ending values of the IP address range.

   The IP address range is specified and displayed in the **IP range** section. You can specify multiple IP address ranges or delete IP address ranges. To delete an IP address range, click the delete icon ✕ next to it.

6. Click **Create**.

The IP address range is created and displayed in the table.

Editing an IP address range

To change an IP address range:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN → IPAM** section.

   By default, the **IP address pools** tab is selected, displaying a table of IP address ranges.

2. Click the IP address range that you want to edit.

3. This opens a window; in that window, if necessary, edit the name and IPv4 prefix of the subnet containing the IP address range, and specify or delete the IP address ranges.

4. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save**.

The IP address range is modified and updated in the table.

Viewing the usage of an IP address range

If necessary, you can check which CPE templates and CPE devices are using an IP address range. For example, if an IP address range is in use, it cannot be deleted. You can also view information about IP addresses that have been assigned from the IP address range.

To see if an IP address range is being used:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN → IPAM** section.

   By default, the **IP address pools** tab is selected, displaying a table of IP address ranges.

2. Click the IP address range for which you want to view usage information.

   The settings area is displayed in the lower part of the page. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃⌃. By default, the **Configuration** tab is selected, displaying the settings of the IP address range.

3. View the usage of the IP address range in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to check which CPE devices are using an IP address range, select the **Usage** → **CPE** tab.

     A list of CPE devices that are using the IP address range is displayed.

   - If you want to check which CPE templates are using an IP address range, select the **Usage** → **Template** tab.

     A list of CPE templates that are using the IP address range is displayed.

4. If you want to view information about IP addresses that have been assigned from the IP address range, select the **Leases** tab.

   A table of IP addresses assigned from the IP address range is displayed. Information about IP addresses is displayed in the following columns of the table:

   - **IP address** is the IP address that has been assigned from the IP address range.
   - **CPE** is the CPE device to which the IP address is assigned.
   - **Type** indicates whether the IP address is assigned to a network interface or router ID of a CPE device.
   - **Name** is the name of the network interface to which the IP address is assigned. If an IP address has been assigned to the router ID of the CPE device, no value is displayed in this column.
   - **Tenant** is the tenant to which the CPE device has been added.

The actions you can perform with the lists and table are described in the Managing solution component tables instructions.

Deleting IP address ranges

An IP address range cannot be deleted if it is being used by at least one CPE template or CPE device. To remove an IP address range that is used by CPE templates or CPE devices, you must first remove the IP address range from network interface settings and BGP settings. You can check which CPE templates and CPE devices are using an IP address range.

Deleted IP address ranges cannot be restored.

To delete IP address ranges:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **IPAM** section.

   By default, the **IP address pools** tab is selected, displaying a table of IP address ranges.

2. To delete an individual IP address range:

   a. Click the IP address range that you want to delete.

      The settings area is displayed in the lower part of the page. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, the **Configuration** tab is selected, displaying the settings of the IP address range.

   b. In the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Delete**.

3. To delete multiple IP address ranges:

   a. Select check boxes next to IP address ranges that you want to delete.

   b. In the upper part of the table, click **Actions** → **Delete**.

4. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

The IP address ranges are deleted and are no longer displayed in the table.

Managing subnet ranges

To view the table of subnet ranges, go to the **SD-WAN** → **IPAM** section and select the **Subnet pools** tab. Information about subnet ranges is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Name** is the name of the subnet range.
- **CIDR** is the IPv4 prefix of the subnet range.
- **Usage** is the number of subnets that have been assigned to network interfaces.

The actions that you can perform with the table are described in the Managing solution component tables article.

Creating a subnet range

To create a subnet range:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **IPAM** section.

   By default, the **IP address pools** tab is selected, displaying a table of IP address ranges.

2. Select the **Subnet pools** tab.

   A table of subnet ranges is displayed.

3. In the upper part of the page, click **+ Subnet pool**.

4. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Name** field, enter the name of the subnet range. The maximum length of the name is 32 characters.

5. In the **Base CIDR** field, enter the IPv4 prefix of the subnet range.

6. In the **Sub-prefix** field, enter the length of the IPv4 subnet prefix in the subnet range. Range of values: 0 to 32.

7. Click **Create**.

The subnet range is created and displayed in the table.

Editing a subnet range

To edit a subnet range:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN → IPAM** section.

   By default, the **IP address pools** tab is selected, displaying a table of IP address ranges.

2. Select the **Subnet pools** tab.

   A table of subnet ranges is displayed.

3. Click the subnet range that you want to edit.

   The settings area is displayed in the lower part of the page. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃. By default, the **Configuration** tab is selected, displaying the settings of the subnet range.

4. This opens a window; in that window, if necessary, edit the following settings:

   - Name of the subnet range
   - IPv4 prefix of the subnet range
   - IPv4 prefix length of subnets in the subnet range

5. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save subnet range settings.

The subnet range is modified and updated in the table.

Viewing the usage of a subnet range

If necessary, you can check which CPE templates and CPE devices are using a subnet range. For example, if a subnet range is in use, it cannot be deleted. You can also view information about subnets that have been assigned from the subnet range.

To see if a subnet range is being used:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN → IPAM** section.

   By default, the **IP address pools** tab is selected, displaying a table of IP address ranges.

2. Select the **Subnet pools** tab.

   A table of subnet ranges is displayed.

3. Click the subnet range for which you want to view usage information.

   The settings area is displayed in the lower part of the page. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃. By default, the **Configuration** tab is selected, displaying the settings of the subnet range.

4. View the usage of the subnet range in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to check which CPE devices are using a subnet range, select the **Usage** → **CPE** tab.

     A list of CPE devices that are using the subnet range is displayed.

   - If you want to check which CPE templates are using a subnet range, select the **Usage** → **Template** tab.

     A list of CPE templates that are using the subnet range is displayed.

5. If you want to view information about subnets that have been assigned from the subnet range, select the **Leases** tab.

   A table of subnets assigned from the subnet range is displayed. Information about subnets is displayed in the following columns of the table:

   - **CIDR** is the IPv4 prefix of the subnet that was assigned from the subnet range.
   - **CPE** is the CPE device to which an IPv4 address from the subnet is assigned.
   - **Name** is the name of the network interface to which an IPv4 address from the subnet is assigned.
   - **Tenant** is the tenant to which the CPE device has been added.

The actions you can perform with the lists and table are described in the Managing solution component tables instructions.

Deleting subnet ranges

A subnet cannot be deleted if it is being used by at least one CPE template or CPE device. To remove a subnet range that is used by CPE templates or CPE devices, you must first remove the subnet range from network interface settings and BGP settings. You can check which CPE templates and CPE devices are using a subnet range.

Deleted subnet ranges cannot be restored.

To delete subnet ranges:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **IPAM** section.

   By default, the **IP address pools** tab is selected, displaying a table of IP address ranges.

2. Select the **Subnet pools** tab.

   A table of subnet ranges is displayed.

3. To delete an individual subnet range:

   a. Click the subnet range that you want to delete.

      The settings area is displayed in the lower part of the page. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃⌃. By default, the **Configuration** tab is selected, displaying the settings of the subnet range.

   b. In the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Delete**.

4. To delete multiple subnet ranges:

    a. Select check boxes next to subnet ranges that you want to delete.

    b. In the upper part of the table, click **Actions** → **Delete**.

5. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

The subnet ranges are deleted and are no longer displayed in the table.

Managing the firewall

Kaspersky SD-WAN supports a firewall for filtering traffic packets on a CPE device. The firewall can accept, drop, or reject traffic packets. If a traffic packet is rejected, its sender receives an `icmp-reject` message. The firewall can apply each action to inbound and outbound traffic packets, as well as to traffic packets relayed between network interfaces and subnets of CPE devices. When specifying the basic firewall settings, you must set the default actions that the firewall performs with traffic packets.

For centralized configuration of CPE device firewalls, you can use firewall templates. You need to specify the parameters in the firewall template, and then specify the firewall template when adding or manually registering CPE devices, which lets you avoid configuring each CPE device individually. If you edit a setting in a firewall template, the setting is automatically modified on all CPE devices that are using this firewall template. If you edit a setting on the CPE device, the setting becomes independent of the firewall template, and if the setting is modified in the firewall template, it remains unchanged on the CPE device.

Firewall zones

You can add network interfaces and subnets to a firewall zone (hereinafter also referred to as 'zone') to receive, drop, or reject traffic packets transmitted through these network interfaces and subnets. When you create or edit a firewall zone, you need to specify the actions to be performed with traffic packets and, if necessary, add subnets. You can add network interfaces to a firewall zone when creating or editing a network interface.

If you want to allow transmitting traffic packets from one firewall zone to another, you need to create a forwarding. When creating a forwarding, you must specify the inbound and outbound firewall zones.

You can create common firewall zones that multiple CPE devices can use, as well as firewall zones on an individual CPE device.

Firewall rules

You can create firewall rules to accept, drop, or reject traffic packets based on specified criteria. For example, you can create a firewall rule that rejects traffic packets with a specified source firewall zone.

If you want to specify the same IP addresses or subnets in multiple firewall rules, you can create an IP set. When you create an IP set, you must specify whether the IP addresses and subnets belong to the source or the destination. You can specify the created IP set when creating or modifying a firewall rule.

When a traffic packet is forwarded to a CPE device, the action specified in the settings of one of the firewall rules is performed on the traffic packet. If none of the firewall rules can be applied, the action specified in the settings of the firewall zone to which this packet was forwarded is applied to the traffic packet. If the traffic packet was not forwarded to any of the firewall zones, the default action that you specified while specifying basic firewall settings is applied to the traffic packet.

Network address translation

The firewall supports the following network address translation (NAT) mechanisms:

- DNAT rules can replace the following components of traffic packets with the specified values:
  - Destination IP addresses or prefixes
  - Destination firewall zones
  - Destination ports (Port Address Translation, PAT)
- SNAT rules can replace source IP addresses or prefixes of traffic packets with the specified values.

DNAT rules and SNAT rules are applied to traffic packets based on the specified criteria. For example, you can create a DNAT rule that replaces the destination IP address of TCP traffic packets.

Managing firewall zones

You can view the table of common firewall zones or the table of firewall zones on the CPE device:

- To view the table of common firewall zones, go to the **SD-WAN** → **Firewall zones** menu section.
- To view the table of firewall zones on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, and select the **Firewall** → **Zones** tab.

The following firewall zones are created by default:

- **wan** (WAN firewall zone) is the firewall zone for network interfaces that are connected to the WAN, for example, to the internet or the service provider network. Masquerading is enabled in the settings of the firewall WAN zone to replace the source IP address of outbound traffic packets from the firewall zone with the IP address assigned to the egress network interface.
- **lan** (LAN firewall zone) is the firewall zone for network interfaces that are connected to the LAN.
- **mgmt** (management firewall zone) is the firewall zone for the network interface that is used for passive monitoring of the CPE device by the Zabbix monitoring system, as well as for the SSH connection of the orchestrator to the CPE device.

> You cannot delete the default firewall zones or create firewall zones with the same names.

When you upgrade Kaspersky SD-WAN from version 2.1 to 2.2, the following changes are made in the settings of all CPE templates:

- **sdwan<0–4>** network interfaces are automatically added to the WAN zone of the firewall.
- **lan**, **br-lan**, and **overlay** network interfaces are automatically added to the LAN zone of the firewall.

Information about common firewall zones is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Name** is the name of the firewall zone.
- **Usage** indicates whether the firewall zone is being used by firewall templates, CPE templates, and CPE devices:
  - **Yes**.
  - **No**.
- **Author** is the name of the user that created the firewall zone.
- **Created** is the date and time when the firewall zone was created.

The actions that you can perform with the table are described in the Managing solution component tables article.

Information about firewall zones on the CPE device is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Name** is the name of the firewall zone.
- **Settings** contains the actions that the firewall applies to traffic packets.
- **Network interfaces/Networks** are network interfaces and subnets that have been added to the firewall zone.

Creating a firewall zone

You can create a common firewall zone or a firewall zone on the CPE device.

To create a firewall zone:

1. Create a firewall zone in one of the following ways:
   - If you want to create a common firewall zone, go to the **SD-WAN** → **Firewall zones** section and in the upper part of the page, click **+ Firewall zone**.
   - If you want to create a firewall zone on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **Firewall** → **Zones** tab, select the **Override** check box, and click **+ Firewall zone**.

   A table of firewall zones is displayed.
2. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Name** field, enter the name of the firewall zone. The maximum length of the name is 255 characters.
3. In the **Input** drop-down list, select the action that the firewall applies to inbound traffic packets:
   - **ACCEPT** to accept traffic packets. This is the default setting.
   - **DROP** to drop traffic packets.
   - **REJECT** to reject traffic packets with an `icmp-reject` message.

4. In the **Output** drop-down list, select the action that the firewall applies to outbound traffic packets:
   - **ACCEPT** to accept traffic packets. This is the default setting.
   - **DROP** to drop traffic packets.
   - **REJECT** to reject traffic packets with an `icmp-reject` message.
5. In the **Forwarding** drop-down list, select the action that the firewall applies to traffic packets forwarded between network interfaces and subnets:
   - **ACCEPT** to accept traffic packets. This is the default setting.
   - **DROP** to drop traffic packets.
   - **REJECT** to reject traffic packets with an `icmp-reject` message.
6. If you want to enable masquerading to replace the source IP address of outbound traffic packets from the firewall zone with the IP address assigned to the egress network interface:
   a. Select the **Masquerading** check box. This check box is cleared by default.
   b. If you want to replace the source IP address only for traffic packets with the specified source subnet, under **Masquerading source subnets**, click **+ Add** and enter the source subnet IPv4 prefix.
      The subnet is specified and displayed under **Masquerading source subnets**. You can specify multiple subnets or delete subnets. To delete a subnet, click the delete icon ✕ next to it.
   c. If you want to replace the destination IP address only for traffic packets with the specified source subnet, under **Masquerading destination subnets**, click **+ Add** and enter the destination subnet IPv4 prefix.
      The subnet is specified and displayed under **Masquerading destination subnets**. You can specify multiple subnets or delete subnets. To delete a subnet, click the delete icon ✕ next to it.
7. Clear the **MSS clamp to PMTU** check box if you do not want the firewall to limit the Maximum Segment Size (MSS) of traffic packets relayed through the firewall zone to the Path Maximum Transmission Unit (PMTU) value minus 40. The purpose of subtracting 40 is to exclude the size of the TCP header. This check box is selected by default.
8. If you want the firewall to keep a log of traffic packets dropped in the firewall zone, select the **Drop logging** check box. If logs created on a CPE device are sent to a syslog server, you can view the logs on the syslog server. If logs created on the CPE device are stored locally, you can view the logs by requesting diagnostic information. This check box is cleared by default.
9. If network interfaces are connected to L3 switches or routers, and you want to relay traffic packets from subnets of these L3 switches or routers, add a subnet to the firewall zone. To do so, under **Networks**, click **+ Add** and enter an IPv4 subnet prefix.
   The subnet is added and displayed under **Networks**. You can add multiple subnets or delete subnets. To delete a subnet, click the delete icon ✕ next to it.
10. Click **Create**.
    The firewall zone is created and displayed in the table.
11. If you have created a firewall zone on a CPE device, click **Save** in the upper part of the settings area to save the CPE device settings.

You must add network interfaces to the created firewall zone. You can do this when creating or editing a network interface. If you created a firewall zone on a CPE device, the network interfaces that you add to the firewall zone must be created on the same CPE device.

Cloning a firewall common zone

You can clone the created common firewall zone to create an identical common firewall zone with a different name. Cloning firewall zones on a CPE device is not supported.

To clone a common firewall zone:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **Firewall zones** section.

   A table of common firewall zones is displayed.

2. Click the common firewall zone which you want to clone.

   The settings area is displayed in the lower part of the page. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃⌃.

3. In the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Clone**.

4. This opens a window; in that window, enter a name for the new common firewall zone.

5. Click **Clone**.

A clone of the common firewall zone with the new name is created and displayed in the table.

Viewing the usage of a firewall common zone

If necessary, you can check which firewall templates, CPE templates, and CPE devices are using the common firewall zone. For example, if a common firewall zone is in use, it cannot be deleted.

To see if a common firewall zone is being used:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **Firewall zones** section.

   A table of common firewall zones is displayed.

2. Click the common firewall zone whose usage you want to view.

   The settings area is displayed in the lower part of the page. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃⌃.

3. In the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Show usage**.

This opens a window with a table of firewall templates, CPE templates, and CPE devices that are using the common firewall zone.

Editing a firewall zone

You can edit a common firewall zone or a firewall zone on the CPE device.

Editing a common firewall zone

When you edit a common firewall zone, the new settings are applied to all CPE devices that use the common firewall zone. This can overload the orchestrator if the number of CPE devices is large.

To edit a common firewall zone:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **Firewall zones** section.

   A table of common firewall zones is displayed.

2. Click the common firewall zone which you want to edit.

   The settings area is displayed in the lower part of the page. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃⌃.

3. If necessary, edit the settings of the common firewall zone. For a description of the settings, see the instructions for creating a firewall zone.

4. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the common firewall zone.

   This opens a confirmation window with the number of CPE devices to which the new common firewall zone settings will be applied.

5. Click **Yes, change**.

The common firewall zone is modified and updated in the table.

Editing a firewall zone on a CPE device

To edit a firewall zone on a CPE device:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** section.

   A table of CPE devices is displayed.

2. Click the CPE device on which you want to edit the firewall zone.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃⌃. By default, in the menu on the left, the **Configuration** section is selected, which displays general information about the CPE device. This section also displays the table of **Out-of-band management** tasks being performed by the orchestrator.

3. Select the **Firewall** → **Zones** tab.

   A table of firewall zones is displayed.

4. Select the **Override** check box.

5. Click **Edit** next to the firewall zone that you want to edit.

6. This opens a window; in that window, if necessary, edit the firewall zone settings. For a description of the settings, see the instructions for creating a firewall zone.

7. Click **Save**.

   The firewall zone is modified and updated in the table.

8. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save CPE device settings.

Deleting a firewall zone

You can delete a common firewall zone or a firewall zone on the CPE device.

Deleted firewall zones cannot be restored.

Deleting a firewall common zone

You cannot delete a common firewall zone if it is being used by at least one firewall template, CPE template, or CPE device. To delete a common firewall zone that is used by firewall templates, CPE templates, or CPE devices, you must first remove the common firewall zone from their settings. You can check which firewall templates, CPE templates, and CPE devices are using the common firewall zone.

To delete a common firewall zone:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **Firewall zones** section.

   A table of common firewall zones is displayed.

2. Click the common firewall zone which you want to delete.

   The settings area is displayed in the lower part of the page. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃⌃.

3. In the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Delete**.

4. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

The common firewall zone is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

Deleting a firewall zone on a CPE device

To delete a firewall zone on a CPE device:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** section.

   A table of CPE devices is displayed.

2. Click the CPE device on which you want to delete the firewall zone.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃⌃. By default, in the menu on the left, the **Configuration** section is selected, which displays general information about the CPE device. This section also displays the table of **Out-of-band management** tasks being performed by the orchestrator.

3. Select the **Firewall** → **Zones** tab.

   A table of firewall zones is displayed.

4. Select the **Override** check box.
5. Click **Delete** next to the firewall zone that you want to delete.
6. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

   The firewall zone is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.
7. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save CPE device settings.

Managing firewall templates

You can view the table of firewall templates in the **SD-WAN →Firewall templates** section. By default, the **Default firewall template** is created, which forms the basis for other firewall templates you create. Information about firewall templates is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Name** is the name of the firewall template.
- **Usage** specifies whether the CPE devices use the firewall template:
  - **Yes**.
  - **No**.
- **Owner** is the name of the user that created the firewall template.
- **Last update** is the date and time when the firewall template settings were last modified.

The actions that you can perform with the table are described in the Managing solution component tables article.

You can select an assigned firewall template to have it preselected when adding or manually registering a CPE device.

You can manage firewall template settings on the following tabs:

- **General settings** contains basic settings of the firewall.
- **Rules** contains firewall rules.
- **NAT** contains network address translation settings. The following tabs are displayed on this tab:
  - **DNAT** contains DNAT rules.
  - **SNAT** contains SNAT rules.
- **Zone forwarding** contains forwardings between firewall zones.
- **IP address sets** contains IP sets.

Creating a firewall template

To create a firewall template:

1. Go to the **SD-WAN → Firewall templates** section.

   A table of firewall templates is displayed.

2. In the upper part of the page, click **+ Firewall template**.

3. This opens a window; in that window, enter the name of the firewall template.

4. Click **Create**.

   The firewall template is created and displayed in the table.

You need to configure the created firewall template. For details on managing firewall templates, see Managing firewall templates.

Selecting an assigned firewall template

You can select an assigned firewall template to have it preselected when adding or manually registering a CPE device.

To select an assigned firewall template:

1. Go to the **SD-WAN → Firewall templates** section.

   A table of firewall templates is displayed.

2. Click the firewall template which you want to make the assigned firewall template.

   The settings area is displayed in the lower part of the page. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, the **General settings** tab is selected, which displays the main settings of the firewall template.

3. In the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Set as designated**.

   The firewall template becomes the assigned firewall template.

Importing a firewall template

You can export a firewall template and subsequently import it into another firewall template. Firewall template settings are specified in accordance with the settings of the imported firewall template. During import, you can select the tabs that you want to leave unchanged. A firewall template into which another firewall template is imported remains applied to CPE devices, but the settings of those CPE devices are not modified.

To import a firewall template:

1. Go to the **SD-WAN → Firewall templates** section.

   A table of firewall templates is displayed.

2. Click the firewall template that you want to export.

   The settings area is displayed in the lower part of the page. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, the **General settings** tab is selected, which displays the main settings of the firewall template.

3. In the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Export**.

   An archive in the TAR.GZ format is saved on your local device. The archive does not contain information about CPE devices using the firewall template.

4. Click the firewall template into which you want to import another firewall template.

   The settings area is displayed in the lower part of the page. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, the **General settings** tab is selected, which displays the main settings of the firewall template.

5. In the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Import**.

6. This opens a window; in that window, clear the check boxes next to the firewall template tabs that you want to leave unchanged after import.

7. In the **File** field, specify the path to the TAR.GZ archive.

8. Click **Import**.

Firewall template settings are modified in accordance with the settings of the imported firewall template.

Cloning a firewall template

You can clone a firewall template to create an identical firewall template with a different name.

To clone a firewall template:

1. Go to the **SD-WAN → Firewall templates** section.

   A table of firewall templates is displayed.

2. Click the firewall template that you want to clone.

   The settings area is displayed in the lower part of the page. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, the **General settings** tab is selected, which displays the main settings of the firewall template.

3. In the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Clone**.

4. This opens a window; in that window, enter the name of the new firewall template.

5. Click **Clone**.

A clone of the firewall template with the new name is created and displayed in the table.

Viewing the usage of a firewall template

If necessary, you can check which CPE devices are using the firewall template. For example, if a firewall template is in use, it cannot be deleted.

To see if a firewall template is being used:

1. Go to the **SD-WAN → Firewall templates** section.

   A table of firewall templates is displayed.

2. Click the firewall template for which you want to view usage information.

   The settings area is displayed in the lower part of the page. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, the **General settings** tab is selected, which displays the main settings of the firewall template.

3. In the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Show associated CPEs**.

This opens a window with a table of CPE devices that are using the firewall template.

Deleting a firewall template

You cannot delete a firewall template if it is being used by at least one CPE device. To delete a firewall template that is being used by CPE devices, you must first change the firewall template of the CPE devices. You can check which CPE devices are using the firewall template.

Deleted firewall templates cannot be restored.

To delete a firewall template:

1. Go to the **SD-WAN → Firewall templates** section.

   A table of firewall templates is displayed.

2. Click the firewall template that you want to delete.

   The settings area is displayed in the lower part of the page. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, the **General settings** tab is selected, which displays the main settings of the firewall template.

3. In the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Delete**.

4. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

The firewall template is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

Basic firewall settings

You can configure basic firewall settings in a firewall template or on a CPE device. Basic firewall settings specified in the firewall template are automatically propagated to all CPE devices that use this firewall template.

The firewall applies the actions specified in its basic settings to traffic packets. Traffic packets are affected by this if no firewall rules have been applied to them and they have not been forwarded to any of the firewall zones.

To specify the basic firewall settings:

1. Specify basic firewall settings in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to edit basic firewall settings in a firewall template, go to the **SD-WAN → Firewall templates** menu section and click the firewall template.
   - If you want to edit basic firewall settings on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **Firewall** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   By default, the **General settings** tab is selected, which displays the main settings of the firewall.

2. If you want to disable SYN flood protection, clear the **Syn-flood protection** check box. This check box is selected by default. When SYN flood protection is enabled, a maximum of 25 traffic packets per second with the SYN, ACK, RST, and FIN flags can be sent to a CPE device.

3. If you want the firewall to drop traffic packets marked as invalid by the conntrack function, select the **Drop invalid packets** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

4. If you want to disable the DPI (Deep Packet Inspection) technology, clear the **Enable DPI** check box. This check box is selected by default. The DPI technology lets you create firewall rules that apply only to traffic packets of the specified application.

   When the DPI technology is disabled, you cannot configure DPI marking, and firewall rules that use the DPI technology are automatically disabled.

5. In the **Default INPUT action** drop-down list, select the action that the firewall applies to inbound traffic packets:

   - **ACCEPT** to accept traffic packets. This is the default setting.
   - **DROP** to drop traffic packets.
   - **REJECT** to reject traffic packets with an `icmp-reject` message.

6. In the **Default OUTPUT action** drop-down list, select the action that the firewall applies to outbound traffic packets:

   - **ACCEPT** to accept traffic packets. This is the default setting.
   - **DROP** to drop traffic packets.
   - **REJECT** to reject traffic packets with an `icmp-reject` message.

7. In the **Default FORWARD action** drop-down list, select the action that the firewall applies to traffic packets forwarded between network interfaces and subnets:

   - **ACCEPT** to accept traffic packets. This is the default setting.
   - **DROP** to drop traffic packets.
   - **REJECT** to reject traffic packets with an `icmp-reject` message.

8. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the firewall template or CPE device.

Configuring DPI marking

Kaspersky SD-WAN supports creating firewall rules that are applied only to traffic packets of the specified application. You can specify the DPI marks that determine the traffic packets the rule is applied to. You cannot configure DPI marking if you disabled the DPI marking technology in basic firewall settings.

You can configure DPI marking in a firewall template or on a CPE device. DPI marking settings specified in the firewall template are automatically propagated to all CPE devices that use this firewall template.

To configure DPI marking:

1. Configure DPI marking for the firewall is applied in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to configure DPI marking in a firewall template, go to the **SD-WAN → Firewall templates** menu section, click the firewall template, and select the **DPI marking** tab.
   - If you want to configure DPI marking on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **Firewall → DPI marking** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   The DPI marking settings are displayed.

2. Select the check boxes next to the DPI marks which you want to govern which firewall rules apply to which traffic packets.

3. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the firewall template or CPE device.

Managing firewall rules

You can view the table of firewall rules in a firewall template or on a CPE device:

- To view the table of firewall rules in a firewall template, go to the **SD-WAN → Firewall templates** menu section, click the firewall template, and select the **Rules** tab.
- To view the table of firewall rules on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, and select the **Firewall → Rules** tab.

The following firewall rules are created by default:

- **Allow-GENEVE** allows the CPE device to receive GENEVE packets from the WAN firewall zone. GENEVE packets are encapsulated Kaspersky SD-WAN traffic.
- **Allow-DHCP-Renew** allows the CPE device to receive BOOTP packets from the WAN firewall zone, which is necessary for DHCP to work.
- **Allow-IGMP** allows the CPE device to receive IGMP packets from the WAN firewall zone, which is necessary for VRRP and multicast to work.
- The following firewall rules are temporarily disabled until full support for IPv6 becomes available in Kaspersky SD-WAN:
  - **Allow-DHCPv6** allows the CPE device to receive DHCPv6 packets from the WAN firewall zone, which is necessary for IPv6 to work.
  - **Allow-MLD** allows the CPE device to receive MLD packets from the WAN firewall zone, which is necessary for IPv6 to work.
  - **Allow-ICMPv6-Input** allows the CPE device to receive ICMPv6 packets from the WAN firewall zone, which is necessary for IPv6 to work.
  - **Allow-ICMPv6-Forward-From-Wan** allows the CPE device to receive ICMPv6 packets from the WAN firewall zone, which packets are forwarded to the LAN firewall zone, which is necessary for IPv6 to work.
  - **Allow-ICMPv6-Forward-From-Lan** allows the CPE device to receive ICMPv6 packets from the LAN firewall zone, which packets are forwarded to the WAN firewall zone, which is necessary for IPv6 to work.
- **Explicit-deny-http(s)-on-wan** blocks the CPE device from receiving TCP traffic packets with destination ports 80 or 443 to prevent access from the WAN firewall zone to the CPE device web server.

For the default firewall rules to work correctly, you need to add **sd-wan<0–4>** network interfaces to the WAN firewall zone. You can add network interfaces to a firewall zone when creating or editing a network interface.

Information about firewall rules is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Name** is the name of the firewall rule.
- **Details** contains criteria according to which the firewall applies the rule to traffic packets.
- **Action** is the action that the firewall rule applies to traffic packets.

Creating a firewall rule

You can create a firewall rule in a firewall template or on a CPE device. A firewall rule created in a firewall template is automatically created on all CPE devices that use this firewall template.

To create a firewall rule:

1. Create a firewall rule in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to create a firewall rule in a firewall template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **Firewall templates** menu section, click the firewall template, and select the **Rules** tab.

   - If you want to create a firewall rule on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **Firewall** → **Rules** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of firewall rules is displayed.

2. Click **+ Rule**.

3. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Name** field, enter the name of the firewall rule. The maximum length of the name is 255 characters.

4. In the **Action** drop-down list, select the action that the firewall rule applies to traffic packets:

   - **ACCEPT** to accept traffic packets. This is the default setting.

   - **DROP** to drop traffic packets.

   - **REJECT** to reject traffic packets with an `icmp-reject` message.

   - **ADJ-MSS** to change the value in the MSS field in the TCP header of the traffic packets to the specified MSS value. If you select this value, in the **MSS value** field, enter the MSS value. Range of values: 68 to 10,000.

5. Specify the criteria according to which the firewall must apply the firewall rule to traffic packets:

   a. If you want to apply the firewall rule only to traffic packets with the specified source or destination IP addresses or subnets, in the **IP address set** drop-down list, select a created IP set. If you select a value from this drop-down list, the **Source IP** and **Destination IP** blocks become unavailable.

   b. If you want to apply the firewall rule only to traffic packets with the version of source or destination IPv4 addresses or subnets, in the **IP version** drop-down list, select **IPv4**: If you do not select a value, the firewall rule is applied to traffic packets with any version of source or destination IP addresses or subnets.

   c. If you want to apply the firewall rule only to traffic packets with the specified source firewall zone, in the **Source zone** drop-down list, select the created firewall zone.

   d. If you want to apply the firewall rule only to traffic packets with the specified destination firewall zone, in the **Destination zone** drop-down list, select a created firewall zone.

   e. If you want to apply the firewall rule only to traffic packets with the specified source IPv4 address or prefix, under **Source IP**, click **+ Add** and enter the source IPv4 address or prefix.

      The IPv4 address or prefix is specified and displayed under **Source IP**. You can specify multiple IPv4 addresses or prefixes or delete IPv4 addresses or prefixes. To delete an IPv4 address or prefix, click the delete icon ✕ next to it.

   f. If you want to apply the firewall rule only to traffic packets with the specified destination IPv4 address or prefix, under **Destination IP**, click **+ Add** and enter the destination IPv4 address or prefix.

      The IPv4 address or prefix is specified and displayed under **Destination IP**. You can specify multiple IPv4 addresses or prefixes or delete IPv4 addresses or prefixes. To delete an IPv4 address or prefix, click the delete icon ✕ next to it.

   g. If you want to apply the firewall rule only to traffic packets of the specified protocol, select a protocol in the **Protocol** drop-down list. When you select an option in this drop-down list, the **DPI protocol** drop-down list becomes unavailable.

      With **TCP** or **UDP** selected, if you want to apply the firewall rule only to traffic packets with the specified source and/or destination ports:

      1. In the **Source port** field, enter a source port number or a range of source port numbers.
      2. In the **Destination port** field, enter a destination port number or a range of destination port numbers.

      Range of values: 0 to 65,535. The format of the port number range is `<first value>-<last value>`. For example, you can enter `10` or `10-15`.

   h. If you want to apply the firewall rule only to traffic packets of the specified application, select an application in the **DPI protocol** drop-down list.

      Traffic is attributed to applications using the DPI technology, which places additional load on the CPU of the CPE device.

      You can specify the DPI marks that determine the traffic packets the rule is applied to. If you disabled the DPI technology when specifying the basic settings of the firewall, the firewall rule is automatically disabled.

6. Click **Create**.

   The firewall rule is created and displayed in the table.

7. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the firewall template or CPE device.

By default, the firewall rule is disabled. You must enable the firewall rule to have it applied to traffic packets.

Configuring the order of firewall rules

Firewall rules are applied to traffic packets in descending order, starting with the first firewall rule at the top of the table. By default, firewall rules are displayed in the table in the order of creation. The earlier a firewall rule was created, the higher it is displayed in the table.

You can configure the order in which firewall rules are applied in a firewall template or on a CPE device. The order in which firewall rules are applied, which is specified in the firewall template, is automatically propagated to all CPE devices that use this firewall template.

To configure the order in which firewall rules are applied:

1. Edit the order in which firewall rules are applied in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to configure the order in which firewall rules are applied in a firewall template, go to the **SD-WAN → Firewall templates** menu section, click the firewall template, and select the **Rules** tab.
   - If you want to configure the order in which firewall rules are applied on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **Firewall → Rules** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of firewall rules is displayed.

2. Configure the order in which firewall rules are applied by clicking the **Up** and **Down** buttons next to them.

3. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the firewall template or CPE device.

Enabling or disabling a firewall rule

By default, firewall rules are created in a disabled state. You must enable the firewall rule to have it applied to traffic packets.

You can enable or disable a firewall rule in a firewall template or on a CPE device. A firewall rule enabled or disabled in a firewall template is automatically enabled or disabled on all CPE devices that use this firewall template.

To enable or disable a firewall rule:

1. Enable or disable a firewall rule in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to enable or disable a firewall rule in a firewall template, go to the **SD-WAN → Firewall templates** menu section, click the firewall template, and select the **Rules** tab.

   - If you want to enable or disable a firewall rule on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **Firewall → Rules** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of firewall rules is displayed.

2. Click **Enable** or **Disable** next to the firewall rule that you want to enable or disable.

   The firewall rule is enabled or disabled.

3. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the firewall template or CPE device.

Editing a firewall rule

You can edit a firewall rule in a firewall template or on a CPE device. A firewall rule modified in a firewall template is automatically modified on all CPE devices that use this firewall template.

To edit a firewall rule:

1. Edit a firewall rule in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to edit a firewall rule in a firewall template, go to the **SD-WAN → Firewall templates** menu section, click the firewall template, and select the **Rules** tab.

   - If you want to edit a firewall rule on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **Firewall → Rules** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of firewall rules is displayed.

2. Click **Edit** next to the firewall rule that you want to edit.

3. This opens a window; in that window, if necessary, edit the firewall rule settings. For a description of the settings, see the instructions for creating a firewall rule.

4. Click **Save**.

   The firewall rule is modified and updated in the table.

5. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the firewall template or CPE device.

Deleting a firewall rule

You can delete a firewall rule in a firewall template or on a CPE device. A firewall rule deleted in a firewall template is automatically deleted on all CPE devices that use this firewall template.

Deleted firewall rules cannot be restored.

To delete a firewall rule:

1. Delete a firewall rule in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to delete a firewall rule in a firewall template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **Firewall templates** menu section, click the firewall template, and select the **Rules** tab.
   - If you want to delete a firewall rule on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **Firewall** → **Rules** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of firewall rules is displayed.

2. Click **Delete** next to the firewall rule that you want to delete.
3. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

   The firewall rule is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

4. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the firewall template or CPE device.

Managing IP sets

You can view the table of IP sets in a firewall template or on a CPE device:

- To view the table of IP sets in a firewall template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **Firewall templates** menu section, click the firewall template, and select the **IP address sets** tab.
- To view the table of IP sets on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, and select the **Firewall** → **IP address sets** tab.

Information about IP sets is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Name** is the name of the IP set.
- **Match** indicates whether the IP set is associated with the source or the destination of traffic packets, and whether the set contains IP addresses or subnets.
- **Entries** are IP addresses or subnets that have been added to the IP set.

Creating an IP set

You can create an IP set in a firewall template or on a CPE device. An IP set created in a firewall template is automatically created on all CPE devices that use this firewall template.

To create an IP set:

1. Create an IP set in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to create an IP set in a firewall template, go to the **SD-WAN → Firewall templates** menu section, click the firewall template, and select the **IP address sets** tab.

   - If you want to create an IP set on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **Firewall → IP address sets** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of IP sets is displayed.

2. Click **+ IP address set**.

3. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Name** field, enter the name of the IP set. The maximum length of the name is 255 characters.

4. In the **Direction** drop-down list, select whether the IP set is associated with the source or the destination of traffic packets:

   - **Match source** if the IP set contains source IP addresses or subnets.

   - **Match destination** if the IP set contains destination IP addresses or subnets.

5. In the **Type** drop-down list, select whether the set contains IP addresses or subnets.

   - **Set of subnets** if the IP set contains subnets.

   - **Set of IPs** if the IP set contains IP addresses.

6. If in the **Type** drop-down list, you selected **Set of subnets**, specify a subnet. To do so, under **Entry list**, click **+ Add** and enter the IPv4 prefix of the subnet. You can specify ranges of IPv4 prefix octets using square brackets, for example, 192.[165-168].2.0/24.

   The subnet is specified and displayed under **Entry list**. You can specify multiple subnets or delete subnets. To delete a subnet, click the delete icon ✕ next to it.

7. If in the **Type** drop-down list, you selected **Set of IPs**, specify an IP address. To do so, under **Entry list**, click **+ Add** and enter an IPv4 address. You can specify ranges of IPv4 address octets using square brackets, for example, 192.[165-168].2.0.

   The IP address is specified and displayed in the **Entry list** section. You can specify multiple IP addresses or delete IP addresses. To delete an IP address, click the delete icon ✕ next to it.

8. Click **Create**.

   The IP set is created and displayed in the table.

9. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the firewall template or CPE device.

Disabling or enabling an IP set

You can disable or enable an IP set in a firewall template or on a CPE device. An IP set enabled or disabled in a firewall template is automatically enabled or disabled on all CPE devices that use this firewall template.

To disable or enable an IP set:

1. Disable or enable an IP set in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to enable or disable an IP set in a firewall template, go to the **SD-WAN → Firewall templates** menu section, click the firewall template, and select the **IP address sets** tab.

   - If you want to enable or disable an IP set on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **Firewall → IP address sets** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of IP sets is displayed.

2. Click **Disable** or **Enable** next to the IP set that you want to disable or enable.

   The IP set is disabled or enabled.

3. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the firewall template or CPE device.

Editing an IP set

You can edit an IP set in a firewall template or on a CPE device. An IP set modified in a firewall template is automatically modified on all CPE devices that use this firewall template.

To edit an IP set:

1. Edit an IP set in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to edit an IP set in a firewall template, go to the **SD-WAN → Firewall templates** menu section, click the firewall template, and select the **IP address sets** tab.

   - If you want to edit an IP set on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **Firewall → IP address sets** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of IP sets is displayed.

2. Click **Edit** next to the IP set that you want to edit.

3. This opens a window; in that window, if necessary, edit the IP set settings. For a description of the settings, see the instructions for creating an IP set.

4. Click **Save**.

   The IP set is modified and updated in the table.

5. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the firewall template or CPE device.

Deleting an IP set

You can delete an IP set in a firewall template or on a CPE device. An IP set deleted in a firewall template is automatically deleted on all CPE devices that use this firewall template.

Deleted IP sets cannot be restored.

To delete an IP set:

1. Delete an IP set in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to delete an IP set in a firewall template, go to the **SD-WAN → Firewall templates** menu section, click the firewall template, and select the **IP address sets** tab.
   - If you want to delete an IP set on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **Firewall → IP address sets** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of IP sets is displayed.

2. Click **Delete** next to the IP set that you want to delete.
3. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

   The IP set is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

4. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the firewall template or CPE device.

Managing DNAT rules

You can view the table of DNAT rules in a firewall template or on a CPE device:

- To view the table of DNAT rules in a firewall template, go to the **SD-WAN → Firewall templates** menu section, click the firewall template, and select the **NAT → DNAT** tab.
- To view the table of DNAT rules on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, and select the **Firewall → NAT → DNAT** tab.

Information about DNAT rules is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Name** is the name of the DNAT rule.
- **Incoming** contains the criteria according to which the firewall applies the DNAT rule to traffic packets:
- **Redirection** is the destination IP address and port of traffic packets after the DNAT rule is applied.

Creating a DNAT rule

You can create a DNAT rule in a firewall template or on a CPE device. A DNAT rule created in a firewall template is automatically created on all CPE devices that use this firewall template.

To create a DNAT rule:

1. Create a DNAT rule in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to create a DNAT rule in a firewall template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **Firewall templates** menu section, click the firewall template, and select the **NAT** → **DNAT** tab.

   - If you want to create a DNAT rule on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **Firewall** → **NAT** → **DNAT** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of DNAT rules is displayed.

2. Click **+ DNAT**.

3. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Name** field, enter the name of the DNAT rule. The maximum length of the name is 255 characters.

4. Specify the criteria according to which the firewall must apply the DNAT rule to traffic packets:

   a. In the **Protocol** drop-down list, select the protocol of traffic packets to which the firewall applies the DNAT rule:

      - **IP address**.

      - **TCP**.

      - **UDP**.

      - **#** for custom or non-standard protocol. If you select this value, in the displayed **Protocol number** field, enter the protocol number in accordance with the IANA standard.

   b. In the **Destination IP** field, enter the destination IPv4 address or prefix of traffic packets to which the firewall applies the DNAT rule.

   c. If you want to apply the DNAT rule only to traffic packets with the specified source firewall zone, in the **Source zone** drop-down list, select a created firewall zone of the source.

   d. If in the **Protocol** drop-down list, you selected **TCP** or **UDP**, and you want to apply the DNAT rule only to traffic packets with the specified destination port, enter the destination port number in the **Destination port** field. Range of values: 1 to 65,535.

   e. If you want to apply the DNAT rule only to traffic packets with the specified source IPv4 address or prefix, in the **Source IP** field, enter the source IPv4 address or prefix.

5. Specify how the DNAT rule modifies traffic packets:

   a. In the **Destination IP** field, enter a new IPv4 destination address or prefix.

   b. In the **Destination zone** drop-down list, select the new destination firewall zone.

   c. If in the **Protocol** drop-down list, you selected **TCP** or **UDP**, and you want to change the destination port number of traffic packets, enter a new destination port number in the **Destination port** field. Range of values: 1 to 65,535.

6. Click **Create**.

   The DNAT rule is created and displayed in the table.

7. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the firewall template or CPE device.

Configuring the order of DNAT rules

DNAT rules are applied to traffic packets in descending order, starting with the first DNAT rule at the top of the table. By default, DNAT rules are displayed in the table in the order of creation. The earlier a DNAT rule was created, the higher it is displayed in the table.

You can configure the order in which DNAT rules are applied in a firewall template or on a CPE device. The order in which DNAT rules are applied, which is specified in the firewall template, is automatically propagated to all CPE devices that use this firewall template.

To configure the order in which DNAT rules are applied:

1. Edit the order in which the DNAT rules are applied in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to configure the order in which DNAT rules are applied in a firewall template, go to the **SD-WAN → Firewall templates** menu section, click the firewall template, and select the **NAT → DNAT** tab.
   - If you want to configure the order in which DNAT rules are applied on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **Firewall → NAT → DNAT** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of DNAT rules is displayed.

2. Configure the order in which DNAT rules are applied by clicking the **Up** and **Down** buttons next to it.

3. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the firewall template or CPE device.

Disabling or enabling a DNAT rule

You can disable or enable a DNAT rule in a firewall template or on a CPE device. A DNAT rule enabled or disabled in a firewall template is automatically enabled or disabled on all CPE devices that use this firewall template.

To disable or enable a DNAT rule:

1. Disable or enable a DNAT rule in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to disable or enable a DNAT rule in a firewall template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **Firewall templates** menu section, click the firewall template and in the displayed settings area, select the **NAT** → **DNAT** tab.

   - If you want to disable or enable a DNAT rule on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN menu section** → **CPE**, click the CPE device, in the displayed settings area, select the **Firewall** → **NAT** → **DNAT** tab and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of DNAT rules is displayed.

2. Click **Disable** or **Enable** next to the DNAT rule that you want to disable or enable.

   The DNAT rule is disabled or enabled.

3. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the firewall template or CPE device.

Editing a DNAT rule

You can edit a DNAT rule in a firewall template or on a CPE device. A DNAT rule modified in a firewall template is automatically modified on all CPE devices that use this firewall template.

To edit a DNAT rule:

1. Edit a DNAT rule in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to edit a DNAT rule in a firewall template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **Firewall templates** menu section, click the firewall template, and select the **NAT** → **DNAT** tab.

   - If you want to edit a DNAT rule on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **Firewall** → **NAT** → **DNAT** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of DNAT rules is displayed.

2. Click **Edit** next to the DNAT rule that you want to edit.

3. This opens a window; in that window, if necessary, edit the DNAT rule settings. For a description of the settings, see the instructions for creating a DNAT rule.

4. Click **Save**.

   The DNAT rule is modified and updated in the table.

5. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the firewall template or CPE device.

Deleting a DNAT rule

You can delete a DNAT rule in a firewall template or on a CPE device. A DNAT rule deleted in a firewall template is automatically deleted on all CPE devices that use this firewall template.

Deleted DNAT rules cannot be restored.

To delete a DNAT rule:

1. Delete a DNAT rule in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to delete a DNAT rule in a firewall template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **Firewall templates** menu section, click the firewall template, and select the **NAT** → **DNAT** tab.
   - If you want to delete a DNAT rule on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **Firewall** → **NAT** → **DNAT** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of DNAT rules is displayed.

2. Click **Delete** next to the DNAT rule that you want to delete.

3. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

   The DNAT rule is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

4. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the firewall template or CPE device.

Managing SNAT rules

You can view the table of SNAT rules in a firewall template or on a CPE device:

- To view the table of SNAT rules in a firewall template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **Firewall templates** menu section, click the firewall template, and select the **NAT** → **SNAT** tab.
- To view the table of SNAT rule groups on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** menu section, click the device, select the **Firewall** → **NAT** → **SNAT** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

Information about SNAT rules is displayed in the following table columns:

- **Name** is the name of the SNAT rule.
- **Outgoing** are criteria according to which the firewall applies the SNAT rule to traffic packets.
- **Action** is the action that the SNAT rule applies to traffic packets.

Creating a SNAT rule

You can create a SNAT rule in a firewall template or on a CPE device. A SNAT rule created in a firewall template is automatically created on all CPE devices that use this firewall template.

To create a SNAT rule:

1. Create a SNAT rule in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to create a SNAT rule in a firewall template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **Firewall templates** menu section, click the firewall template, and select the **NAT** → **SNAT** tab.

   - If you want to create a SNAT rule on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **Firewall** → **NAT** → **SNAT** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of SNAT rules is displayed.

2. Click **+ SNAT**.

3. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Name** field, enter the name of the SNAT rule. The maximum length of the name is 255 characters.

4. Specify the criteria according to which the firewall must apply the SNAT rule to traffic packets:

   a. In the **Protocol** drop-down list, select the protocol of traffic packets to which the firewall applies the SNAT rule:

      - **TCP**.

      - **UDP**.

      - **IP**.

   b. In the **Destination zone** drop-down list, select the created destination firewall zone of traffic packets to which the firewall applies the SNAT rule.

   c. If you want to apply the SNAT rule only to traffic packets with the specified source IPv4 address or prefix, in the **Source IP** field, enter the source IPv4 address or prefix.

   d. If you want to apply the SNAT rule only to traffic packets with the specified destination IPv4 address or prefix, in the **Destination IP** field, enter the destination IPv4 address or prefix.

5. In the **Action** drop-down list, select **SNAT**.

6. In the **SNAT IP** field, enter a new source IP address or prefix that the SNAT rule specifies for traffic packets.

7. Click **Create**.

   The SNAT rule is created and displayed in the table.

8. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the firewall template or CPE device.

Configuring the order of SNAT rules

SNAT rules are applied to traffic packets in descending order, starting with the first SNAT rule at the top of the table. By default, SNAT rules are displayed in the table in the order of creation. The earlier a SNAT rule was created, the higher it is displayed in the table.

You can configure the order in which SNAT rules are applied in a firewall template or on a CPE device. The order in which SNAT rules are applied, which is specified in the firewall template, is automatically propagated to all CPE devices that use this firewall template.

To configure the order in which SNAT rules are applied:

1. Edit the order in which the SNAT rules are applied in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to configure the order in which SNAT rules are applied in a firewall template, go to the **SD-WAN → Firewall templates** menu section, click the firewall template, and select the **NAT → SNAT** tab.

   - If you want to configure the order in which SNAT rules are applied on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **Firewall → NAT → SNAT** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of SNAT rules is displayed.

2. Configure the order in which SNAT rules are applied by clicking the **Up** and **Down** buttons next to it.

3. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the firewall template or CPE device.

Disabling or enabling a SNAT rule

You can disable or enable a SNAT rule in a firewall template or on a CPE device. A SNAT rule enabled or disabled in a firewall template is automatically enabled or disabled on all CPE devices that use this firewall template.

To disable or enable a SNAT rule:

1. Disable or enable a SNAT rule in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to enable or disable a SNAT rule in a firewall template, go to the **SD-WAN → Firewall templates** menu section, click the firewall template, and select the **NAT → SNAT** tab.

   - If you want to enable or disable a SNAT rule on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **Firewall → NAT → SNAT** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of SNAT rules is displayed.

2. Click **Disable** or **Enable** next to the SNAT rule that you want to disable or enable.

   The SNAT rule is disabled or enabled.

3. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the firewall template or CPE device.

Editing a SNAT rule

You can edit a SNAT rule in a firewall template or on a CPE device. A SNAT rule modified in a firewall template is automatically modified on all CPE devices that use this firewall template.

To edit a SNAT rule:

1. Edit a SNAT rule in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to edit a SNAT rule in a firewall template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **Firewall templates** menu section, click the firewall template, and select the **NAT** → **SNAT** tab.

   - If you want to edit a SNAT rule on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **Firewall** → **NAT** → **SNAT** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of SNAT rules is displayed.

2. Click **Edit** next to the SNAT rule that you want to edit.

3. This opens a window; in that window, if necessary, edit the SNAT rule settings. For a description of the settings, see the instructions for creating a SNAT rule.

4. Click **Save**.

   The SNAT rule is modified and displayed in the table.

5. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the firewall template or CPE device.

Deleting a SNAT rule

You can delete a SNAT rule in a firewall template or on a CPE device. A SNAT rule deleted in a firewall template is automatically deleted on all CPE devices that use this firewall template.

Deleted SNAT rules cannot be restored.

To delete a SNAT rule:

1. Delete a SNAT rule in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to delete a SNAT rule in a firewall template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **Firewall templates** menu section, click the firewall template, and select the **NAT** → **SNAT** tab.

   - If you want to delete a SNAT rule on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **Firewall** → **NAT** → **SNAT** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of SNAT rules is displayed.

2. Click **Delete** next to the SNAT rule that you want to delete.

3. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

   The SNAT rule is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

4. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the firewall template or CPE device.

Managing forwarding

You can view the table of forwardings in a firewall template or on a CPE device:

- To view the table of forwardings in a firewall template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **Firewall templates** menu section, click the firewall template, and select the **Zone forwarding** tab.
- To view the table of forwardings on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, and select the **Firewall** → **Zone forwarding** tab.

Information about forwardings is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **From** is the outbound firewall zone.
- **To** is the Inbound firewall zone.

Creating a forwarding

You can create a forwarding in a firewall template or on a CPE device. A forwarding created in a firewall template is automatically created on all CPE devices that use this firewall template.

To create a forwarding:

1. Create a forwarding in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to create a forwarding in a firewall template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **Firewall templates** menu section, click the firewall template, and select the **Zone forwarding** tab.
   - If you want to create a forwarding on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **Firewall** → **Zone forwarding** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of forwardings is displayed.

2. Click **+ Forwarding**.
3. This opens a window; in that window, in the **From** drop-down list, select a created outbound firewall zone.
4. In the **To** drop-down list, select a created inbound firewall zone.
5. Click **Create**.

   The forwarding is created and displayed in the table.

6. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the firewall template or CPE device.

Deleting a forwarding

You can delete a forwarding in a firewall template or on a CPE device. A forwarding deleted in a firewall template is automatically deleted on all CPE devices that use this firewall template.

Deleted forwardings cannot be restored.

To delete a forwarding:

1. Delete a forwarding in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to delete a forwarding in a firewall template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **Firewall templates** menu section, click the firewall template, and select the **Zone forwarding** tab.
   - If you want to delete a forwarding on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **Firewall** → **Zone forwarding** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   A table of forwardings is displayed.

2. Click **Delete** next to the forwarding that you want to delete.
3. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

   The forwarding is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

4. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the firewall template or CPE device.

Changing the firewall template of a CPE device

Editing a CPE device firewall template may result in loss of communication with other CPE devices, as well as the loss of relayed traffic packets.

To change the firewall template of a CPE device:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** section.

   A table of CPE devices is displayed.

2. Click the CPE device for which you want to change the firewall template.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃⌃. By default, in the menu on the left, the **Configuration** section is selected, which displays general information about the CPE device. This section also displays the table of **Out-of-band management** tasks being performed by the orchestrator.

3. In the **Firewall template** drop-down list, select a created firewall template.
4. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save CPE device settings.

Managing network services and virtualization of network functions

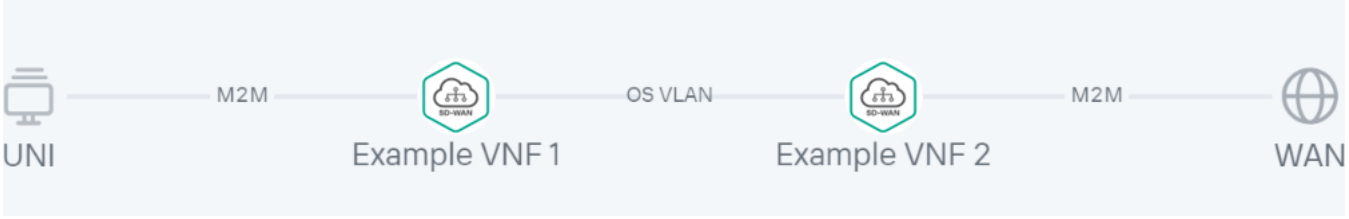
Network services

Network services relay traffic over the network and apply network functions to the traffic, such as WAN optimization, shaping, and traffic protection. Each network service has a topology that you build using a graphical design tool. You can add network service components to the topology and connect them to each other.

You can build a topology in a network service template and then assign that network service template to a tenant. Network service components added to the template topology are automatically assigned to the tenant together with the network service template. A tenant can create and deploy network services, if necessary, using assigned network service templates, and edit network services.

You can use network services to deploy SD-WAN instances. The network service for deploying SD-WAN instances is called the SD-WAN network service (SD-WAN service).

An example of a network service topology is shown in the figure below.



Network service topology

Network function virtualization

Network function virtualization (NFV) lets you use virtualized storage, compute resources, and networks to provide network functions and combine these into network services.

You can deploy virtual network functions (VNF) and physical network functions (PNF) in network services. The difference between virtual and physical network functions is that the orchestrator does not manage the lifecycle of physical network functions. Third-party network functions are supported.

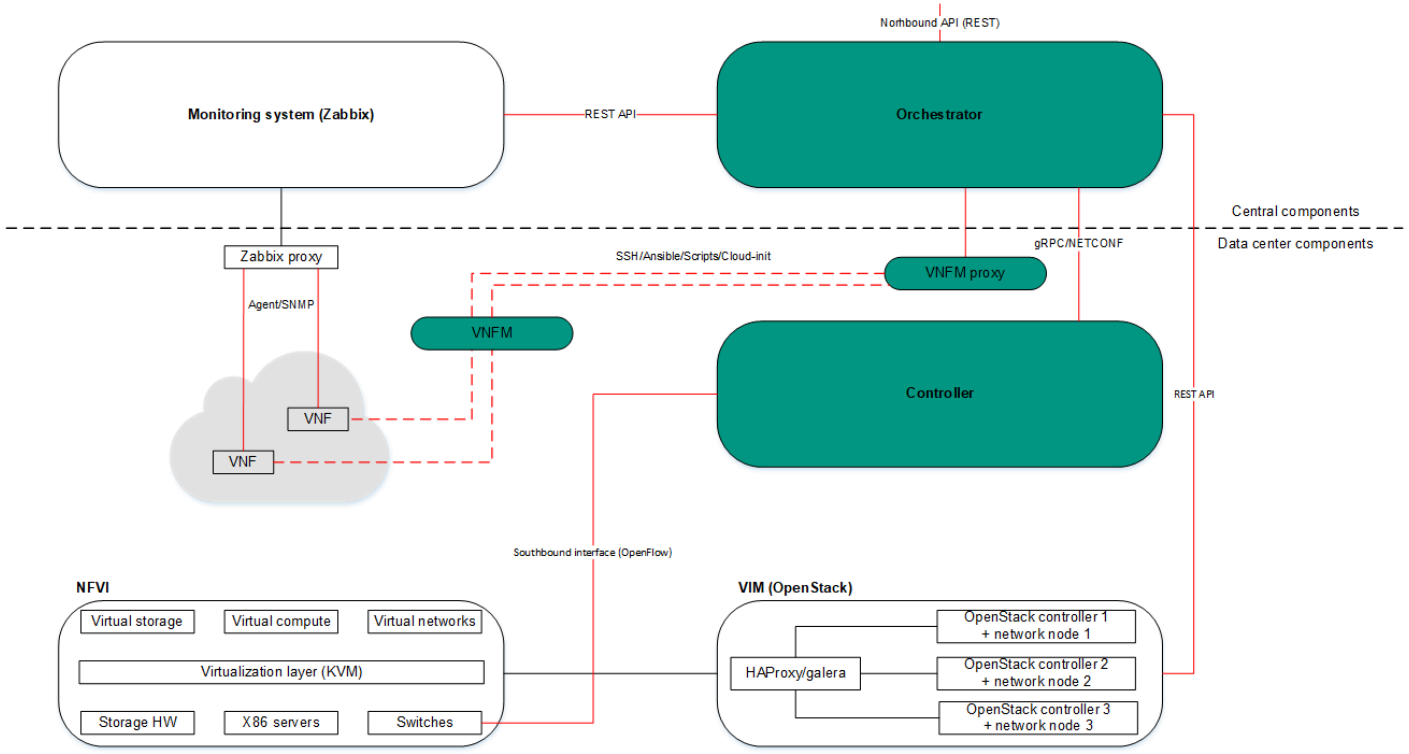
Kaspersky SD-WAN complies with the architecture specified in the ETSI NFV MANO specification (NFV Management and Network Orchestration), which defines the following main functional components:

- Orchestrator.
- Virtual Network Function Managers (VNFM).
- Virtual Infrastructure Manager.
- The Zabbix monitoring system monitors the status of virtual network functions and physical network functions and notifies the orchestrator when a network function needs to be restored or scaled.

- The NFV infrastructure encompasses physical resources, such as hardware storage, servers, and network devices.

- Controller.

The figure below shows the relations between the solution components and the NFV infrastructure. Components of external solutions are marked in white, Kaspersky SD-WAN components are marked in green, and the red lines are connections between components.



NFV infrastructure

Managing network service templates

You can view the list of network service templates on the administrator portal in the **Catalog** section, in the **Catalog** pane. To view information about available network service components, click the deployment » icon. The following subsections are displayed:

- The **Templates** tab contains network service templates. Information about network service templates is displayed in the following columns of the table:
  - **Name** is the name of the network service template.
  - **Author** is the name of the user that created the network service template.
  - **Created on** is the date and time when the network service template was created.
  - **Description** is a brief description of the network service template.
- **Shared network services** is a list of shared network services.

- **Virtual network functions** is a table of virtual network functions. Information about virtual network functions is displayed in the following columns of the table:
  - **Name** is the name of the virtual network function.
  - **Provider** is the provider of the virtual network function. You can specify the provider of the virtual network function using the `provider` parameter in the VNF descriptor.
  - **Version** is the version of the virtual network function. You can specify the version of the virtual network function using the `version` parameter in the VNF descriptor.
  - **Description** is the brief description of the virtual network function. You can specify a description of the virtual network function using the `description` parameter in the VNF descriptor.
- **Physical network functions** is the table of physical network functions. Information about physical network functions is displayed in the following columns of the table:
  - **Name** is the name of the physical network function.
  - **Provider** is the provider of the physical network function. You can specify the provider of the physical network function using the `provider` parameter in the PNF descriptor.
  - **Version** is the version of the physical network function. You can specify the version of the physical network function using the `version` parameter in the PNF descriptor.
  - **Description** is the brief description of the physical network function. You can specify a description of the physical network function using the `description` parameter in the PNF descriptor.

Creating a network service template

To create a network service template:

1. In the menu, go to the **Catalog** section.

   The network service management page is displayed.

2. In the upper part of the page, click **+ Template**.

   The graphical design tool for building the topology is displayed.

3. Add network service components to the topology:

   a. Drag network server components from the **Catalog** pane into the graphical design tool. The pane displays the following network service components:

      - Network service templates — when you add a network service template to a topology, the topology is constructed in accordance with the network service template. You can add multiple network service templates to the topology.
      - Shared network services — you must add a shared network service to the topology of network services that you want to connect to the shared network service. You can specify a brief description of the shared network service.
      - Virtual and physical network functions. The actions that you can perform on virtual and physical network functions are described in the Managing virtual network functions and Managing physical network functions sections.

   b. Drag and drop links from the **Links** tab into the graphical design tool. The following links are displayed on this tab:

      - **P2P** is the Point-to-Point transport service (P2P service). You can configure a P2P service.
      - **P2M** is the Point-to-Multipoint transport service (P2M service). You can configure a P2M service.
      - **M2M** is a Multipoint-to-Multipoint transport service (M2M service). You can configure an M2M service.

      The remaining links are relevant to network communication at the VIM level and are established between VNFs hosted by the OpenStack cloud platform:

      - **OS shared** is the shared network through which the shared network service connects to network services. You can configure a shared network.
      - **OS vRouter** is the virtual L3 router. You can configure a virtual router.
      - **OS VLAN** is the VLAN for transmitting tagged L2 traffic of the 802.1Q standard You can configure a VLAN.
      - **OS VXLAN** is a VXLAN for tunneling. You can configure a VXLAN.
      - **OS flat** is the flat network for transmitting untagged L2 traffic You can configure a flat network.

   c. Select the **UNI** tab and drag CPE device UNIs to the graphical design tool. The tab displays two components, **UNI** and **WAN**. Both components designate abstract UNIs that the tenant must replace with real UNIs when creating or editing a network service. The **WAN** component refers to UNIs that connect to the WAN.

      You can configure a UNI in the topology.

The network service components are added to the topology and displayed in the graphical design tool.

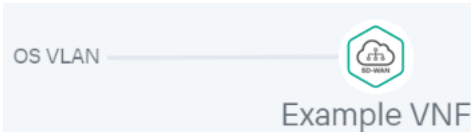
4. Connect the network service components added to the topology to each other:

   a. Click the link to which you want to connect a network service component.

   b. Click **Add leaf** to connect a network service component with the leaf role to the link. If you clicked a P2M service, you can click **Add root** to connect a network service component with the root role to the link.

   c. Click the network service component that you want to connect to the link. If you clicked a network function or shared network service, select the port to connect the link to in the displayed window.

   The network service component is connected to the link, and a line is displayed between them in the topology. For example, the figure below shows the VLAN to which a virtual network function is connected.



5. If you want to assign backup UNIs:

   > A backup UNI can be assigned only for UNIs which are connected to at least one link.

   a. Click the UNI for which you want to assign a backup UNI.

   b. Click **Reserve**.

   c. Click the UNI that you want to use as the backup.

   The UNI is designated as the backup UNI, and a dotted line is displayed between the UNI, the backup UNI, and the link to which the UNI is connected. For example, in the figure below, the WAN is the backup interface for the UNI.



6. If you want to remove a network service component from the topology, click the component, then click **Delete**.

   The network service component is removed from the topology and is no longer displayed in the graphical design tool.

7. If you want to horizontally align the topology, click **Arrange**.

8. If you do not want to hide the descriptions of the added network service components in the topology, clear the **Description** check box. This check box is selected by default.

9. In the **Name** field, enter the name of the network service.

10. In the upper part of the graphical design tool, click **Save**.

The network service template is created and displayed in the **Catalog** pane, on the **Templates** tab.

Editing a network service template

When you edit a network service template, the changes are not applied to network services that have already been created and deployed using the network service template.

To edit a network service template:

1. In the menu, go to the **Catalog** section.

   The network service management page is displayed.

2. In the **Catalog** pane, select the **Templates** tab.

   A list of network service templates is displayed.

3. Click the network service template that you want to edit.

   The graphical design tool for building the topology is displayed.

4. If necessary, edit the settings of the network service template. For a description of the settings, see the instructions for creating a network service template.

5. In the upper part of the graphical design tool, click **Save**.

The network service template is modified and updated in the **Catalog** pane, on the **Templates** tab.

Deleting a network service template

Deleted network service templates cannot be restored.

To delete a network service template:

1. In the menu, go to the **Catalog** section.

   The network service management page is displayed.

2. In the **Catalog** pane, select the **Templates** tab.

   A list of network service templates is displayed.

3. Click the delete icon ✕ next to the network service template that you want to delete.

4. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

The network service template is deleted and is no longer displayed in the **Catalog** pane on the **Templates** tab.

Managing network services

Before managing network services, you must log in to the tenant's self-service portal. You can view the list of network services in the **Catalog** section, in the **Network services** pane. To view information about the components added to the network service topology, click the network service, then in the **Objects** pane, click the expand » icon. The following subsections are displayed:

- **VNF** is a table of virtual network functions. Information about virtual network functions is displayed in the following columns of the table:
  - **Name** is the name of the virtual network function.
  - **Provider** is the provider of the virtual network function. You can specify the provider of the virtual network function using the `provider` parameter in the VNF descriptor.
  - **Version** is the version of the virtual network function. You can specify the version of the virtual network function using the `version` parameter in the VNF descriptor.
  - **Description** is the brief description of the virtual network function. You can specify a description of the virtual network function using the `description` parameter in the VNF descriptor.
  - **State** is the state of the virtual network function:
    - **PENDING** means the state of the virtual network function is being changed.
    - **UNDEPLOYED** means the virtual network function is added to the network service topology, but the network service is not deployed.
    - **SCHEDULED** means the virtual network function has been added to the topology of the network service. Deployment of a virtual network function is planned on the uCPE device, but there is no connectivity between the orchestrator and the uCPE device. The network service will be deployed when communication is restored.
    - **TERMINATING** means the virtual network function is being removed.
    - **RUNNING** means the virtual network function is operating normally.
    - **ERROR** means an error occurred while deploying a network service that has the virtual network function in its topology.
    - **SCALING** means the flavour of the virtual network function is being changed.
    - **HEALING** means auto-healing of the virtual network function is in progress.
    - **DELETED** means the virtual network function has been successfully deleted.
    - **UPDATING** means the network service that has the virtual network function in its topology is being modified.
    - **REPARING** means an error occurred while modifying the network service, and the previous settings of the network service are being restored.

- **CHECKING** means a consistency check is in progress for the network service to which the virtual network function is added.
- **DEGRADED** means the consistency check of the network service to which the virtual network function is added revealed the inconsistency of the virtual network function.
- **RECOVERING** means the virtual network function is being redeployed.

- **Auto-healing** contains information about whether VDU auto-healing settings are specified in the `auto_healing` section of the VNF package:
  - **Yes**.
  - **No**.
- **Auto-scaling** contains information about whether scaling settings of the virtual network function are specified in the `scaling` section of the VNF package:
  - **Yes**.
  - **No**.

- **Physical network functions** is the table of physical network functions. Information about physical network functions is displayed in the following columns of the table:
  - **Name** is the name of the physical network function.
  - **Provider** is the provider of the physical network function. You can specify the provider of the physical network function using the `provider` parameter in the PNF descriptor.
  - **Version** is the version of the physical network function. You can specify the version of the physical network function using the `version` parameter in the PNF descriptor.
  - **Description** is the brief description of the physical network function. You can specify a description of the physical network function using the `description` parameter in the PNF descriptor.
  - **State** is the state of the physical network function:
    - **PENDING** means the state of the physical network function is being changed.
    - **UNDEPLOYED** means the physical network function is added to the network service topology, but the network service is not deployed.
    - **TERMINATING** means the physical network function is being removed.
    - **RUNNING** means the physical network function is operating normally.
    - **ERROR** means an error occurred while deploying a network service that has the physical network function in its topology.
    - **SCALING** means the flavour of the physical network function is being changed.
    - **HEALING** means auto-healing of the physical network function is in progress.
    - **DELETED** means the physical network function has been successfully deleted.

        - **UPDATING** means the network service that has the physical network function in its topology is being modified.
        - **REPARING** means an error occurred while modifying the network service, and the previous settings of the network service are being restored.
        - **CHECKING** means a consistency check is in progress for the network service to which the physical network function is added.
        - **DEGRADED** means the consistency check of the network service to which the physical network function is added revealed the inconsistency of the physical network function.
        - **RECOVERING** means the physical network function is being redeployed.
    - **Auto-healing** contains information about whether auto-healing settings are specified in the `auto_healing` section of the PNF package:
        - **Yes**.
        - **No**.
    - **Auto-scaling** contains information about whether scaling settings of the physical network function are specified in the `scaling` section of the PNF package:
        - **Yes**.
        - **No**.
- **Shared network service** is a list of shared network services.

- **Links** is a table of links. Information about links is displayed in the following columns of the table:
  - **Name** is the name of the link.
  - **Type** is the type of the link.
  - **Status** is the status of the link:
    - **NONE** means a consistency check of the network service to which the link is added revealed that the link does not exist.
    - **OK** means a consistency check of the network service to which the link is added revealed that the link exists.
  - **Shared** indicates whether the connection is being used to create a shared network service:
    - **Yes**.
    - **No**.
- **UNI** is a table of UNIs. Information about UNIs is displayed in the following columns of the table:
  - **Name** is the name of the UNI.
  - **Alias** is the name of the UNI at the time of being added to the network service topology.
  - **Status** is the status of the UNI:
    - **NONE** means a consistency check of the network service to which the UNI is added revealed that the UNI does not exist.
    - **OK** means a consistency check of the network service to which the UNI is added revealed that the UNI exists.

Creating a network service

To create a network service:

1. In the menu, go to the **Catalog** section.

   The network service management page is displayed.

2. In the upper part of the **Network services** pane, click **+ Network service**.

   The graphical design tool for building the topology is displayed.

3. Add network service components to the topology:

   a. Drag network server components from the **Catalog** pane into the graphical design tool. The pane displays the following network service components:

      - Network service templates — when you add a network service template to a topology, the topology is constructed in accordance with the network service template. You can add multiple network service templates to the topology.

      - Shared network services — you must add a shared network service to the topology of network services that you want to connect to the shared network service. You can specify a brief description of the shared network service.

      - Virtual and physical network functions. The actions that you can perform on virtual and physical network functions are described in the Managing virtual network functions and Managing physical network functions sections.

   b. Drag and drop links from the **Links** tab into the graphical design tool. The following links are displayed on this tab:

      - **P2P** is the Point-to-Point transport service (P2P service). You can configure a P2P service.

      - **P2M** is the Point-to-Multipoint transport service (P2M service). You can configure a P2M service.

      - **M2M** is a Multipoint-to-Multipoint transport service (M2M service). You can configure an M2M service.

      The remaining links are relevant to network communication at the VIM level and are established between VNFs hosted by the OpenStack cloud platform:

      - **OS shared** is the shared network through which the shared network service connects to network services. You can configure a shared network.

      - **OS vRouter** is the virtual L3 router. You can configure a virtual router.

      - **OS VLAN** is the VLAN for transmitting tagged L2 traffic of the 802.1Q standard You can configure a VLAN.

      - **OS VXLAN** is a VXLAN for tunneling. You can configure a VXLAN.

      - **OS flat** is the flat network for transmitting untagged L2 traffic You can configure a flat network.

   c. Select the **UNI** tab and drag CPE device UNIs to the graphical design tool. If you are using a network service template, you must replace the abstract UNIs in the topology with real UNIs. Abstract UNIs can be designated by two components, **UNI** and **WAN**. The **WAN** component refers to UNIs that connect to the WAN.

      You can configure a UNI.

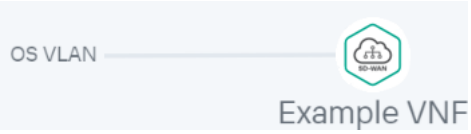
4. Connect the network service components added to the topology to each other:

   a. Click the link to which you want to connect a network service component.

   b. Click **Add leaf** to connect a network service component with the leaf role to the link. If you clicked a P2M service, you can click **Add root** to connect a network service component with the root role to the link.

   c. Click the network service component that you want to connect to the link. If you clicked a network function or shared network service, select the port to connect the link to in the displayed window.

   The network service component is connected to the link, and a line is displayed between them in the topology. For example, the figure below shows the VLAN to which a virtual network function is connected.



5. If you want to assign backup UNIs:

   > A backup UNI can be assigned only for UNIs which are connected to at least one link.

   a. Click the UNI for which you want to assign a backup UNI.

   b. Click **Reserve**.

   c. Click the UNI that you want to use as the backup.

   The UNI is designated as the backup UNI, and a dotted line is displayed between the UNI, the backup UNI, and the link to which the UNI is connected. For example, in the figure below, the WAN is the backup interface for the UNI.



6. If you want to remove a network service component from the topology, click the component, then click **Delete**.

   The network service component is removed from the topology and is no longer displayed in the graphical design tool.

7. If you want to horizontally align the topology, click **Arrange**.

8. If you do not want to hide the descriptions of the added network service components in the topology, clear the **Description** check box. This check box is selected by default.

9. In the **Name** field, enter the name of the network service.

10. Finish creating the network service in one of the following ways:

    - To save the network service, click **Save**.
    - To save and deploy the network service, click **Deploy**.

    The network service is created and displayed in **Network services** pane. If you clicked **Deploy**, the deployment of the network service begins, which may take several minutes. You can interrupt the deployment by clicking **Abort deployment**.

Editing a network service

To edit a network service:

1. In the menu, go to the **Catalog** section.

   The network service management page is displayed.

2. In the **Network services** pane, select the network service that you want to edit.

   The graphical design tool for building the topology is displayed.

3. In the upper part of the graphical design tool, click **Edit**.

4. If necessary, edit the settings of the network service. For a description of the settings, see the instructions for creating a network service.

5. Finish editing the network service in one of the following ways:

   - If you are editing a network service that is not deployed, do one of the following:
     - To save the network service, click **Save**.
     - To save and deploy the network service, click **Deploy**.
   - If you are editing a deployed network service, click **Deploy changes** to deploy the modified network service.

   The network service is modified and updated in **Network services** pane. If you clicked **Deploy** or **Deploy changes**, deployment begins, which may take several minutes. You can interrupt the deployment by clicking **Abort deployment**.

Deploying a network service

If a virtual network function deployed on a uCPE device is added to the network service topology and there is connectivity between the orchestrator and the uCPE device, the network service is deployed when connectivity is restored.

To deploy a network service:

1. In the menu, go to the **Catalog** section.

   The network service management page is displayed.

2. In the **Network services** pane, select the network service that you want to deploy.

   The graphical design tool for building the topology is displayed.

3. In the upper part of the graphical design tool, click **Edit**.

4. Click **Deploy**.

   This starts the deployment of the network service, which may take several minutes. You can interrupt the deployment by clicking **Abort deployment**.

Checking the consistency of a network service

The *consistency check* allows verifying that the components are added to the network service topology actually exist.

To check the consistency of a network service:

1. In the menu, go to the **Catalog** section.

   The network service management page is displayed.

2. In the **Network services** pane, click the settings icon → **Check consistency** next to the network service whose consistency you want to check.

3. In the confirmation window, click **Confirm**.

   This begins the consistency check of the network service.

Redeploying a network service

Redeploying a network service may result in short-term interruptions or temporary inoperability. When planning redeployment activities, we recommend taking into account your organization's circumstances to minimize the disruptions.

To redeploy a network service:

1. In the menu, go to the **Catalog** section.

   The network service management page is displayed.

2. In the **Network services** pane, click the settings icon → **Redeploy** next to the network service that you want to redeploy.

3. In the confirmation window, click **Confirm**.

This starts the redeployment of the network service, which may take several minutes. You can interrupt the deployment by clicking **Abort deployment**.

Disabling or enabling auto-healing for a network service

The Zabbix server monitors network service components and sends a REST API request to the orchestrator whenever a problem is detected. If the auto-healing functionality is enabled for the network service, the orchestrator initiates auto-healing for network service components with problems. By default, this functionality is enabled.

To disable or enable auto-healing for a network service:

1. In the menu, go to the **Catalog** section.

   The network service management page is displayed.

2. In the **Network services** pane, click the settings icon → **Disable auto-healing** or **Enable auto-healing** next to the network service for which you want to disable or enable auto-healing.

Auto-healing is disabled or enabled for the network service.

You can perform auto-healing of virtual network functions or their VDUs even if auto-healing is disabled for the network service.

Viewing the network service log

To view the log of a network service:

1. In the menu, go to the **Catalog** section.

   The network service management page is displayed.

2. In the **Network services** pane, click the settings icon → **Open log** next to the network service whose log you want to view.

The page with the network service log is displayed.

Deleting a network service

Deleted network services cannot be restored.

To delete a network service:

1. In the menu, go to the **Catalog** section.

   The network service management page is displayed.

2. In the **Network services** pane, click the settings icon → **Delete** next to the network service that you want to delete.

3. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

The network service is deleted and is no longer displayed in the **Network services** pane.

Scenario: Deploying a virtual network function

You can deploy a virtual network function for a tenant in a network service. The lifecycle of virtual network functions is managed by an orchestrator. To deploy virtual network functions, you need the OpenStack cloud platform.

For example, you can deploy a virtual network function at the central office of your organization to protect user traffic that is transmitted between CPE devices.

Virtual network function deployment involves the following steps:

1. **Preparing a VNF package**

   Prepare the VNF package that you want to deploy, and then upload the VNF package to the orchestrator web interface. If necessary, you can enable protection of VNF and PNF packages against substitution before uploading the VNF package to the orchestrator web interface.

2. **Ensuring network connectivity between the orchestrator and the OpenStack cloud platform**

   Ensure network connectivity between the virtual machine or physical server where the orchestrator is deployed and the OpenStack cloud platform.

3. **Assigning the virtual network function to a tenant**

   Use one of the following methods to assign the virtual network function to the tenant for which you want to deploy it:

   - If you want to deploy a virtual network function using a network service template:

     1. Add the virtual network function to the topology when creating or editing a network service template.
     2. If necessary, configure the topology and the virtual network function. For a description of what you can do with virtual network functions, see the Managing virtual network functions section.
     3. Assign the network service template to a tenant.

   - If you want to deploy a virtual network function without a network service template, assign the virtual network function to the tenant.

4. **Logging in to the tenant self-service portal**

   Log in to the tenant self-service portal

5. **Deploying the virtual network function**

Do the following:

1. Add the virtual network function to the topology when creating or editing a network service in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to deploy a virtual network function using a network service template, add the network service template to the topology.

   - If you want to deploy a virtual network function without a network service template, add the virtual network function to the topology.

2. If necessary, configure the topology and the virtual network function. For a description of what you can do with virtual network functions, see the Managing virtual network functions section.

3. Deploy the virtual network function using one of the following methods:

   - If you added the virtual network function to the topology while creating the network service, deploy the network service.

   - If you added the virtual network function to the topology while editing a network service, deploy the modified network service.

The virtual network function is deployed.

Scenario: Deploying a physical network function

You can deploy a physical network function for a tenant in a network service. As physical network functions, you can use dedicated hardware as well as virtual entities created using third-party virtualization environments. The orchestrator does not manage the lifecycle of physical network functions.

For example, you can deploy a physical network function at the central office of your organization to protect user traffic that is transmitted between CPE devices.

Physical network function deployment involves the following steps:

1. **Preparing the PNF package**

   Prepare the PNF package that you want to deploy, and then upload the PNF package to the orchestrator web interface. If necessary, you can enable protection of VNF and PNF packages against substitution before uploading the PNF package to the orchestrator web interface.

2. **Ensuring network connectivity between the orchestrator and the physical network function**

   Ensure network connectivity between the virtual machine or physical server on which the orchestrator is deployed and the dedicated hardware or virtual entity on which you want to deploy the physical network function.

3. **Assigning the physical network function to a tenant**

   Use one of the following methods to assign the physical network function to the tenant for which you want to deploy it:

   - If you want to deploy a physical network function using a network service template:

     1. Add the physical network function to the topology when creating or editing a network service template.

2. If necessary, configure the topology and the physical network function. For a description of what you can do with physical network functions, see the Managing physical network functions section.

3. Assign the network service template to a tenant.

- If you want to deploy a physical network function without a network service template, assign the physical network function to the tenant.

4. **Logging in to the tenant self-service portal**

   Log in to the tenant self-service portal

5. **Deploying a physical network function**

   Do the following:

   1. Add the physical network function to the topology when creating or editing a network service in one of the following ways:

      - If you want to deploy a physical network function using a network service template, add the network service template to the topology.
      - If you want to deploy a physical network function without a network service template, add the physical network function to the topology.

   2. If necessary, configure the topology and the physical network function. For a description of what you can do with physical network functions, see the Managing physical network functions section.

   3. Deploy the physical network function using one of the following methods:

      - If you added the physical network function to the topology while creating the network service, deploy the network service.
      - If you added the physical network function to the topology while editing a network service, deploy the modified network service.

The physical network function is deployed.

Managing VNF and PNF packages

A *VNF* or *PNF* package is a ZIP archive in which you must place the following components to deploy a network function and manage its lifecycle:

- The VNF/PNF descriptor, a file with parameters of the network function.
- The /image directory, which contains virtual machine images in the QCOW format for deploying the virtual network function. This directory is not included in the PNF package.
- The /scripts directory, which contains scripts for deploying and managing the network function.
- logo.png, the icon of the network function. This component is optional.
- description-file.pdf, technical documentation or specification of the network function. This component is optional.

You need to upload a VNF or PNF package to the orchestrator web interface to deploy a virtual network function or a physical network function.

Configuring the VNF descriptor

Specify the settings of the virtual network function in a VNF descriptor in YAML or XML format, then add the VNF descriptor to the root directory of the VNF package. A VNF descriptor has the following structure:

Section/setting	Description
`name`	Name of the virtual network function.
`description`	Brief description of the virtual network function.
`description_file`	Name of the PDF file with the technical documentation or specification of the virtual network function. This file must be placed in the root directory of the VNF package. Users can view and download the file in the orchestrator web interface. Optional setting.
`provider`	Provider of the virtual network function.
`version`	Version of the virtual network function.
`external_connections`	External connection points of the virtual network function. You can configure the specified external connection points of the virtual network function in the orchestrator web interface.
`internal_connections`	Internal connection points of VDUs that are part of the virtual network function. This section is optional.
`virtual_links`	Virtual links for connecting internal connection points. This section must be specified if you specified the `internal_connections` section.
`images`	VDU disk images. You can deploy multiple VDUs using the same VDU disk image.
`configurations`	Scripts for performing actions at various stages of the virtual network function lifecycle, for example, during deployment of the virtual network function.
`flavours`	Flavours of the virtual network function. You can select one of the specified flavours of the virtual network function in the orchestrator web interface.
`scaling`	Virtual network function scaling parameters. This section is optional.
`user_configurations`	Orchestrator web interface inputs that are added to the settings area of the virtual network function. This section is optional.
`backups`	Virtual network function backup tasks. This section is optional.

VNF descriptor example

```
name: OpenWrt18
description: OpenWrt 18.06.1
description_file: openwrt-presentation.pdf
provider: Kaspersky
version: 1.0.1
external_connections:
 - name: LAN
 description: eth1
 ip: AUTO
 mask: AUTO
 group: eth1-group
 - name: WAN
 description: eth2
 ip: AUTO
 mask: AUTO
 group: eth2-group
images:
 - name: openwrt
 container_format: BARE
 disk_format: QCOW2
 type: OPENSTACK
 filename: openwrt-18.06.1-x86-64.qcow2
configurations:
 - name: config
 filename: config.yml
 stage: initialization
 executor: ansible
 authentication: password
 - name: config2
 filename: 3VDU.sh
 stage: initialization
 executor: /bin/sh
 authentication: key
 - name: config3
 filename: 2VDU.sh
 stage: initialization
 executor: /bin/sh
 authentication: key
flavours:
 - name: 2VDU
 description: 1 vCPU, 512MB memory
 position: 1
 affinity:
 groups:
 - name: aff
 vdu_name:
 - OpenWrt
 - OpenWrt2
 management:
 vnc:
 - vdu_name: OpenWrt
 ssh:
 - vdu_name: OpenWrt
 def_user: root
 authentication: key
 web:
 - vdu_name: OpenWrt
 vdus:
```

```
- name: OpenWrt
password_rules:
length: 12
use_upper_case: true
use_lower_case: true
use_digits: true
specific_symbols: .?$#@![]-{}
specific_symbols_min_usage: 2
zabbix_template: Template OS Linux
monitoring_type: agent
ssh_port: 22
configurations:
- config
- config3
def_user: root
def_password: p@ssw0rd
password_authentication: yes
disks:
- name: default
order: 1
type: default
image: openwrt
storage_gb: 1
cpu:
smt: prefer
cpu_pinning: dedicated
num_vpu: 1
memory:
total_memory_mb: 512
network_interfaces:
- name: Management
type: management
description: eth0
- name: eth1
type: data
description: eth1
connection_point_ref: LAN
- name: eth2
type: data
description: eth2
connection_point_ref: WAN
auto_healing:
triggers_set: any
triggers:
- name: unreachable
action_set:
- type: reprovision
- name: OpenWrt2
password_rules:
length: 12
use_upper_case: true
use_lower_case: true
use_digits: true
specific_symbols: .?$#@![]-{}
specific_symbols_min_usage: 2
zabbix_template: Template OS Linux
monitoring_type: agent
ssh_port: 22
```

```
configurations:
- config
- config3
def_user: root
def_password: p@ssw0rd
password_authentication: yes
disks:
- name: default
order: 1
type: default
image: openwrt
storage_gb: 1
cpu:
smt: prefer
cpu_pinning: dedicated
num_vpu: 1
memory:
total_memory_mb: 512
network_interfaces:
- name: Management
type: management
description: eth0
- name: eth1
type: data
description: eth1
connection_point_ref: LAN
- name: eth2
type: data
description: eth2
connection_point_ref: WAN
auto_healing:
triggers_set: any
triggers:
- name: unreachable
action_set:
- type: reprovision
- name: VDU
description: 1 vCPU, 512MB memory
position: 2
affinity:
groups:
- name: aff
vdu_name:
- OpenWrt
- OpenWrt2
- OpenWrt3
management:
vnc:
- vdu_name: OpenWrt
ssh:
- vdu_name: OpenWrt
def_user: root
authentication: key
web:
- vdu_name: OpenWrt
vdus:
- name: OpenWrt
password_rules:
```

```
length: 12
use_upper_case: true
use_lower_case: true
use_digits: true
specific_symbols: .?$#@![]-{}
specific_symbols_min_usage: 2
check_connection_mode: none
zabbix_template: Template OS Linux
monitoring_type: agent
ssh_port: 22
configurations:
- config
- config2
def_user: root
def_password: p@ssword
password_authentication: yes
disks:
- name: default
order: 1
type: default
image: openwrt
storage_gb: 1
cpu:
smt: prefer
cpu_pinning: dedicated
num_vpu: 1
memory:
total_memory_mb: 512
network_interfaces:
- name: Management
type: management
description: eth0
- name: eth1
type: data
description: eth1
connection_point_ref: LAN
- name: eth2
type: data
description: eth2
connection_point_ref: WAN
auto_healing:
triggers_set: any
triggers:
- name: unreachable
action_set:
- type: reprovision
- name: OpenWrt2
password_rules:
length: 12
use_upper_case: true
use_lower_case: true
use_digits: true
specific_symbols: .?$#@![]-{}
specific_symbols_min_usage: 2
zabbix_template: Template OS Linux
monitoring_type: agent
ssh_port: 22
configurations:
```

```
- config
- config2
def_user: root
def_password: p@ssw0rd
password_authentication: yes
disks:
- name: default
order: 1
type: default
image: openwrt
storage_gb: 1
cpu:
smt: prefer
cpu_pinning: dedicated
num_vpu: 1
memory:
total_memory_mb: 512
network_interfaces:
- name: Management
type: management
description: eth0
- name: eth1
type: data
description: eth1
connection_point_ref: LAN
- name: eth2
type: data
description: eth2
connection_point_ref: WAN
auto_healing:
triggers_set: any
triggers:
- name: unreachable
action_set:
- type: reprovision
- name: OpenWrt3
password_rules:
length: 12
use_upper_case: true
use_lower_case: true
use_digits: true
specific_symbols: .?$#@![]-{}
specific_symbols_min_usage: 2
zabbix_template: Template OS Linux
monitoring_type: agent
ssh_port: 22
configurations:
- config
- config2
def_user: root
def_password: p@ssw0rd
password_authentication: yes
disks:
- name: default
order: 1
type: default
image: openwrt
storage_gb: 1
```

```
  cpu:
  smt: prefer
  cpu_pinning: dedicated
  num_vpu: 1
  memory:
  total_memory_mb: 512
  network_interfaces:
  - name: Management
  type: management
  description: eth0
  - name: eth1
  type: data
  description: eth1
  connection_point_ref: LAN
  - name: eth2
  type: data
  description: eth2
  connection_point_ref: WAN
  auto_healing:
  triggers_set: any
  triggers:
  - name: unreachable
  action_set:
  - type: reprovision
 scaling:
  scale_in_status: permit
  scale_out_status: "permit"
 user_configurations:
  tab:
  - name: GW
  variables:
  - name: "gw_ip"
  description: IP
  input_type: input
  required: true
  type: string
  default_value: 192.168.0.1
  example: 192.168.0.1
  - name: direction
  description: traffic direction
  input_type: dropdown
  required: true
  type: string
  values:
  - value: in
  is_default: true
  - value: out
  update_configuration_name:
  - update_var
  - change
 backups:
  - name: backup_config
  description: backup/etc/config
  backup:
  path: /root/config.thz
  interval: 600
  store_configs: 10
  backup_type: vnfm_scp
```

```
  authentication: key
  configuration_name_ref: backup
  restore:
  path: /tmp/config.tgz
  backup_type: vnfm_scp
  authentication: password
  configuration_name_ref: restore
```

external_connections

The external_connections section has the following structure:

Section/setting		Description
- name		Name of the external connection point.
	description	Brief description of the external connection point.
	ip	IP address of the external connection point. Enter a value in the XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX format, for example: 192.168.110.126
	mask	Subnet mask of the external connection point. Possible values: • Value in the XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX format, for example: 255.255.255.0 The subnet mask is assigned using DHCP via MAC-based reservation of an OpenStack port. In this case, the subnet mask cannot be changed. • AUTO — The subnet mask is assigned automatically using an external DHCP server or a script from the configurations section. • MANUAL — the subnet mask must be specified manually in the orchestrator web interface when configuring external connection points of the virtual network function.
	gw	IP address of the gateway of the external connection point. Possible values: • Value in the XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX format, for example: 192.168.110.126 The IP address is assigned using DHCP via MAC-based reservation of an OpenStack port. In this case, the IP address cannot be changed. • AUTO — The IP address is assigned automatically using an external DHCP server or a script from the configurations section. • MANUAL — the IP address must be specified manually in the orchestrator web interface when configuring external connection points of the virtual network function. Optional setting.
	dns	IP address of the DNS server of the external connection point. Possible values: • Value in the XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX format, for example: 192.168.110.126 The IP address is assigned using DHCP via MAC-based reservation of an OpenStack port. In this case, the IP address cannot be changed. • AUTO — The IP address is assigned automatically using an external DHCP server or a script from the configurations section. • MANUAL — the IP address must be specified manually in the orchestrator web interface when configuring external connection points of the virtual network function. Optional setting.
	group	The group to which the external connection point belongs. This setting is required if multiple VDUs within the virtual network function use the same external connection point.

Example of this section

```
external_connections:
- name: LAN
 description: eth1
 ip: 192.168.2.0
 mask: 255.255.255.0
 gw: 192.168.0.1
 dns: 192.168.0.10
 group: lan-group
```

internal_connections

The internal_connections section has the following structure:

Section/setting		Description
- name		Name of the internal connection point.
	description	Brief description of the internal connection point.
	virtual_link_name	Name of the virtual link from the virtual_links section for the internal connection point.
	ip	IP address of the internal connection point. Possible values: • Value in the XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX format, for example: 192.168.110.126 The IP address is assigned using DHCP via MAC-based reservation of an OpenStack port. In this case, the IP address cannot be changed. • AUTO — The IP address is assigned automatically using an external DHCP server or a script from the configurations section. • MANUAL — the IP address must be specified manually in the orchestrator web interface when configuring external connection points of the virtual network function.
	mask	Subnet mask of the internal connection point. Possible values: • Value in the XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX format, for example: 255.255.255.0 The subnet mask is assigned using DHCP via MAC-based reservation of an OpenStack port. In this case, the subnet mask cannot be changed. • AUTO — The subnet mask is assigned automatically using an external DHCP server or a script from the configurations section.
	gw	IP address of the gateway of the internal connection point. Possible values: • Value in the XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX format, for example: 192.168.110.126 The IP address is assigned using DHCP via MAC-based reservation of an OpenStack port. In this case, the IP address cannot be changed. • AUTO — The IP address is assigned automatically using an external DHCP server or a script from the configurations section. Optional setting.
	dns	IP address of the DNS server of the internal connection point. Possible values: • Value in the XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX format, for example: 192.168.110.126 The IP address is assigned using DHCP via MAC-based reservation of an OpenStack port. In this case, the IP address cannot be changed. • AUTO — The IP address is assigned automatically using an external DHCP server or a script from the configurations section. Optional setting.
	group	The group to which the internal connection point belongs. This setting is required if multiple VDUs within the virtual network function use the same internal connection point.

Example of this section

```
internal_connections:
- name: LAN
 description: eth3
 ip: 192.168.2.0
 mask: 255.255.255.0
 gw: 192.168.0.1
 dns: 192.168.0.10
 group: lan-group
 virtual_link_name: int-link
```

virtual_links

The `virtual_links` section has the following structure:

Section/setting		Description
`- name`		Name of the virtual link.
	`cidr`	IPv4 prefix of the virtual link. Enter a value in the XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX/XX format, for example: `192.168.2.0/24`
	`ip_version`	Version of IP addresses in the subnet. Possible values: • `v4` • `v6`

Example of this section

```
virtual_links:
- name: int_link
 cidr: 203.0.113.0/24
 ip_version: v4
```

images

The `images` section has the following structure:

Section/setting		Description
`- name`		Name of the VDU disk image.
	`container_format`	Container format of the VDU disk image.
	`disk_format`	Format of the VDU disk image.
	`type`	VIM type.
	`file_name`	File name of the VDU disk image. You must place the VDU disk image in the /image directory of the VNF package.

Example of this section

```
images:
- name: VDU_img
 container_format: BARE
 disk_format: QCOW2
 type: OPENSTACK
 filename: VDU_img.qcow2
```

configurations

The `configurations` section has the following structure:

Section/setting		Description
`- name`		Name of the script.
	`filename`	The file name of the script file, Ansible playbook, or user-data attribute for Cloud-init. You must place the script in the /scripts directory of the VNF package.
	`stage`	The stage of operation of the virtual network function at which the script runs. Possible values: • `initialization` to run the script on deployment of the virtual network function. • `termination` to run the script on deletion of the virtual network function. • `none` to run the script when a value changes in the `user_configurations` section in the settings area of the virtual network function in the orchestrator web interface.
	`executor`	Script interpreter. Possible values: • `ansible` • `expect` • `/bin/sh` • `bin/bash` • `cloud-init` • < `path to the custom script interpreter` >, for example `/usr/bin/php`
	`authentication`	Method for authenticating the VNFM in the virtual network function for running scripts. Possible values: • `key` means the VNFM is authenticated in the virtual network function using a key that is generated when the virtual network function is deployed. You need to use a script to get the key, so we recommend not to specify this value for the first script. • `password` means the VNFM is authenticated in the virtual network function with a user name and password from the `flavours` → `vdus` section.
	`files_path`	Path to files for running scripts using SSH. You need to create a directory in the /scripts directory of the VNF package and place the files in that directory. The files are copied to the VDU. Optional setting.
	`config_drive`	Using config-drive. Possible values: • `true` • `false` This parameter must be specified if as the `executor`, you specified `cloud_init`.
	`timeout`	The time to wait for the script to finish, in seconds. If the script does not finish within the specified time, execution is terminated. The timeout starts at the moment the script is run. You can specify this parameter if you have specified a path to a custom script executor for the `executor` parameter.

Example of this section

```
configurations:
 - name: config
 filename: config.yml
 stage: initialization
 executor: ansible
 authentication: password
 files_path: SSH_scripts
 config_drive: true
 timeout: 15
```

flavours

The `flavours` section has the following structure:

Section/setting		Description
`- name`		Name of the flavour.
	`description`	Brief description of the flavour.
	`position`	Sequential number of the flavour. The flavour with the lowest position has the lowest performance.
	`affinity`	Groups of VDUs hosted on the same OpenStack host. We recommend hosting VDUs that require minimizing communication delays which each other on the same OpenStack host.
	`anti-affinity`	Groups of VDUs hosted on different OpenStack hosts. We recommend deploying VDUs that may require vertical scaling or high availability on distinct OpenStack hosts.
	`management`	Parameters of VDU administration consoles.
	`vdus`	VDU settings.

The `affinity` and `anti-affinity` sections have the following structure:

Section/setting			Description
`groups`			VDU groups.
	`- name`		Name of the VDU group.

		`vdu_name`	Names of VDUs. Specify a list of values, for example:
			`vdu_name:`
			`- VDU_1`
			`- VDU_2`

The `management` section has the following structure:

Section/setting			Description
`vnc`			Settings for managing VDUs using the VNC console.
	`- vdu_name`		Name of the VDU.
`ssh`			Settings for managing VDUs using the SSH console.
	`- vdu_name`		Name of the VDU.
		`def_user`	User name for establishing the SSH session.
		`authentication`	Method for authenticating the VNFM in the virtual network function for running scripts. Possible values: • `key` means the VNFM is authenticated in the virtual network function using a key that is generated when the virtual network function is deployed. You need to get the key using a script from the `configurations` section. • `password` means the VNFM is authenticated in the virtual network function with a user name and password from the `vdus` section.

Section/setting			Description
`web`			Settings for managing VDUs using the web console.
	`- vdu_name`		Name of the VDU.
		`protocol`	Protocol for connecting to the web console. Possible values: • `http`. • `https`.
		`port`	Port for connecting to the web console. Enter a value in the range of 1 to 65,536. By default, port 80 is used.
		`path`	Path to the web console.
		`def_user`	User name for authenticating in the web console.
		`def_password`	Password for authenticating in the web console.

The `vdus` section has the following structure:

Section/setting	Description
`- name`	Name of the VDU.
`password_rules`	VDU password requirements. This section is optional.
`length`	Minimum length of the password.
`use_upper_case`	Users must use uppercase characters in the password. Possible values: • `true` • `false`
`use_lower_case`	Users must use lowercase characters in the password. Possible values: • `true` • `false`
`use_digits`	Users must use numerals in the password. Possible values: • `true` • `false`
`specific_symbols`	Whether users must use special characters in the password, such as: `@"!`
`specific_symbols_min_usage`	Minimum number of special characters that must be present in the password.
`check_connection_mode`	Type of VDU availability test performed during deployment. By default, an SSH test is performed. Possible values: • `ssh` • `none` Optional setting.
`zabbix_template`	Name of the Zabbix template for the VDU.
`monitoring_type`	Monitoring type of the virtual network function. Possible values: • `agent` means monitoring using a Zabbix agent. • `snmp` means monitoring using the SNMP protocol.
`ssh_port`	Port number for establishing an SSH session. Optional setting.
`ssh_host_key_algorithm`	The host key algorithm used. Possible values: • `ssh-rsa`. • `ssh-ed25519`. We recommend using this host key algorithm because it is cryptographically strong. If you do not specify this setting, the ssh-rsa algorithm is used by default for backward compatibility.

`configurations`	Names of scripts from the `configurations` section to be run on the VDU. Specify a list of values, for example:
	`vdu_name:`
	`- config_1`
	`- config_2`

`backups`	Names of backup tasks from the `backups` to be used on the VDU. Specify a list of values, for example:
	`vdu_name:`
	`- backup_1`
	`- backup_2`
	This section is optional.

`def_user`	User name for authenticating the VNFM in the virtual network function. Optional setting.
`def_password`	Password for authenticating the VNFM in the virtual network function. Optional setting.

Section/setting			Description
password_authentication			Password authentication of the VNFM in the virtual network function. Possible values: • yes • no Optional setting.
disks			Parameters of VDU virtual disks.
	- name		Name of the VDU virtual disk.
		order	Mounting order of the VDU virtual disk.
		type	Type of the ephemeral OpenStack disk.
		image	Name of the VDU virtual disk image from the images section. Optional parameter if you are creating a blank VDU disk.
		storage_db	Size of the VDU virtual disk in gigabytes.
cpu			VDU CPU parameters.
	smt		Simultaneous multithreading requirements for VDU deployment. Possible values: • prefer to use simultaneous multithreading if it is enabled on the VDU host. • isolate to not use simultaneous multithreading. • require to use simultaneous multithreading.
	cpu_pinning		Use of CPU pinning. Possible values: • shared if you do not want to pin CPU cores to the VDU. • dedicated if you want to pin CPU cores to the VDU.
	num_vpu		Number of CPU cores pinned to the VDU.
memory			VDU RAM settings.
	total_memory_mb		Amount of VDU RAM in megabytes.
	page_size		Size of memory pages when deploying the VDU. Possible values: • small for 4KB • large for 2 MB or 1 GB • any for any size • 4KB • 2MB • 2048 • 1GB
network_interfaces			Network interface settings

Section/setting	Description
- name	Name of the network interface.
type	Type of the network interface. Possible values: • data is a network interface for data transfer. • management is a management network interface that is mapped to a network port.
description	Brief description of the network interface.
connection_point_ref	Name of the external connection point from the external_connections section for the management network interface.
port_security	Whether Port security is used. Possible values: • disabled • enabled Optional setting.
properties	Advanced settings of the network interface.
vnic_type	vNIC type of the network interface. Possible values: • virtio • direct • macvtap • vhost
auto_healing	VDU auto-healing parameters.
triggers_set	External triggers that initiate VDU auto-healing. Possible values: • any to have any external trigger initiate VDU auto-healing. • all to initiate VDU auto-healing if all specified external triggers are triggered. • < trigger name > to initiate VDU auto-healing when the specified external trigger is triggered.
triggers	External triggers.
- name	Name of the external trigger. Possible values: • unreachable • scale_up • scale_down
action_set	Action to perform when an external trigger is triggered.
- type	Type of action. Possible values: • reprovision to reprovision the VDU. • reboot to restart the VDU. • script to run the specified script.
configuration_name_ref	Name of the script from the configuration section that is run when an external trigger is triggered. This parameter must be specified if as the - type, you selected script.
bootstrap_timeout	SSH availability timeout during VDU deployment, in seconds. If the VDU is not available over SSH after the specified timeout expires, the deployment is rolled back. Optional setting.

Example of this section

```
vdus:
 - name: vgw
 password_rules:
 length: 12
 use_upper_case: true
 use_lower_case: true
 use_digits: true
 specific_symbols: .?$#@![]-{}
 specific_symbols_min_usage: 2
 check_connection_mode: none
 zabbix_template: Template OS Linux
 monitoring_type: agent
 ssh_port: 22
 configurations:
 - config_1
 - config_2
 backups:
 - backup_config
 def_user: root
 def_password: p@ssw0rd
 password_authentication: yes
 disks:
 - name: "default"
 order: 1
 type: default
 image: openwrt
 storage_gb: 1
 cpu:
 smt: prefer
 cpu_pinning: dedicated
 num_vpu: 1
 memory:
 total_memory_mb: 512
 page_size: small
 network_interfaces:
 - name: eth
 type: data
 description: eth0
 connection_point_ref: WAN
 auto_healing:
 triggers_set: any
 triggers:
 - name: unreachable
 action_set:
 - type: reprovision
```

scaling

The `scaling` section has the following structure:

Parameter	Description
`scale_in_status`	Horizontal scaling to a flavour with a lower sequential number. Possible values: • `permit` • `deny`
`scale_out_status`	Horizontal scaling to a flavour with a higher sequential number. Possible values: • `permit` • `deny`
`scale_up_status`	Vertical scaling to a flavour with a lower sequential number. Possible values: • `permit` • `deny`
`scale_down_status`	Vertical scaling to a flavour with a higher sequential number. Possible values: • `permit` • `deny`

Example of this section

```
scaling:
 scale_in_status: permit
 scale_out_status: permit
 scale_up_status: permit
 scale_down_status: permit
```

user_configurations

The `user_configurations` section has the following structure:

Section/setting	Description
`tab`	Tabs that are added to the settings area of the virtual network function.
`- name`	Name of the tab.

Section/setting			Description
	`variables`		Orchestrator web interface inputs that are displayed on the tab.
	`- name`		Name of the orchestrator web interface input.
		`description`	Brief description of the orchestrator web interface input.
		`input_type`	Type of the orchestrator web interface input. Possible values: • `input` to add a field. • `dropdown` to add a drop-down list.
		`default_value`	Default value of the field. You can specify this parameter if as the `input_type`, you specified `input`.
		`values`	The options that are displayed in the drop-down list. This setting can be specified if as the `input_type`, you specified `dropdown`.
		`- value`	The name of the value.
		`is_default`	Default value. Possible values: • `true` • `false` Optional setting.
		`required`	Required orchestrator web interface input. Possible values: • `true` • `false` Optional setting.
		`type`	The type of value that can be specified in the orchestrator web interface input. Optional setting.
		`example`	A tooltip that is displayed when the value of the orchestrator web interface input changes. Optional setting.

		`update_configuration_name`	Names of scripts from the `configurations` section that are run when the value of the orchestrator web interface input changes. Specify a list of values, for example:
			`update_configuration_name:`
			`- config_1`
			`- config_2`

[Example of this section]

```
user_configurations:
 tab:
 - name: GW
 variables:
 - name: "gw_ip"
 description: IP
 input_type: input
 required: true
 type: string
 default_value: 192.168.0.1
 example: 192.168.0.1
 - name: direction
 description: traffic direction
 input_type: dropdown
 required: true
 type: string
 values:
 - value: in
 is_default: true
 - value: out
 update_configuration_name:
 - update_var
 - change
```

backups

The `backups` section has the following structure:

Section/setting			Description
- name			Name of the backup task.
	description		Brief description of the backup task.
	backup		Backup parameters.
		path	Path to the virtual network function directory where the files that you want to backup are located.
		interval	Time interval in seconds for backup.
		store_config	Number of backup copies to keep.
		backup_type	Type of backup.
		authentication	Method for authenticating the VNFM in the virtual network function for running scripts. Possible values: • key means the VNFM is authenticated in the virtual network function using a key that is generated when the virtual network function is deployed. You need to get the key using a script from the configurations section. • password means the VNFM is authenticated in the virtual network function with a user name and password from the flavours → vdus section.
		configuration_name_ref	Name of the script from the configurations section to run before the backup.
	restore		Backup restoration parameters.
		path	Path to the virtual network function directory where the restored files are placed.
		backup_type	Type of backup.
		authentication	Method for authenticating the VNFM in the virtual network function for running scripts. Possible values: • key means the VNFM is authenticated in the virtual network function using a key that is generated when the virtual network function is deployed. You need to get the key using a script from the configurations section. • password means the VNFM is authenticated in the virtual network function with a user name and password from the flavours → vdus section.
		configuration_name_ref	Name of the script from the configurations section to run after the restoration from backup begins.

Example of this section

```
backups:
 - name: backup_config
 description: backup/etc/config
 backup:
 path: /root/config.thz
 interval: 600
 store_configs: 10
 backup_type: vnfm_scp
 authentication: key
 configuration_name_ref: backup
 restore:
 path: /tmp/config.tgz
 backup_type: vnfm_scp
 authentication: password
 configuration_name_ref: restore
```

Configuring the PNF descriptor

Specify the settings of the physical network function in a PNF descriptor in YAML or XML format, then add the PNF descriptor to the root directory of the PNF package. A PNF descriptor has the following structure:

Section/setting	Description
`name`	Name of the physical network function.
`description`	Brief description of the physical network function.
`description_file`	Name of the PDF file with the technical documentation or specification of the physical network function. This file must be placed in the root directory of the PNF package. Users can view and download the file in the orchestrator web interface. Optional setting.
`provider`	Provider of the physical network function.
`version`	Version of the physical network function.
`external_connections`	External connection points of the physical network function.
`internal_connections`	Internal connection points of VDUs that are part of the physical network function. This section is optional.
`configurations`	Scripts for performing actions at various stages of the physical network function lifecycle, for example, during deployment of the physical network function.
`flavours`	Flavours of the physical network function. You can select one of the specified flavours of the physical network function in the orchestrator web interface.
`scaling`	Physical network function scaling parameters. This section is optional.
`user_configurations`	Orchestrator web interface inputs that are added to the settings area of the physical network function. This section is optional.
`backups`	Physical network function backup tasks. This section is optional.

PNF descriptor example

```
name: OpenWrt18
description: OpenWrt 18.06.1
description_file: openwrt-presentation.pdf
provider: Kaspersky
version: 1.0.1
external_connections:
 - name: LAN
 description: eth1
 ip: AUTO
 mask: AUTO
 group: eth1-group
 - name: WAN
 description: eth2
 ip: AUTO
 mask: AUTO
 group: eth2-group
configurations:
 - name: config
 filename: config.yml
 stage: initialization
 executor: ansible
 authentication: password
 - name: config2
 filename: 3VDU.sh
 stage: initialization
 executor: /bin/sh
 authentication: key
 - name: config3
 filename: 2VDU.sh
 stage: initialization
 executor: /bin/sh
 authentication: key
flavours:
 - name: 2VDU
 description: 1 vCPU, 512MB memory
 position: 1
 management:
 ssh:
 - vdu_name: OpenWrt
 def_user: root
 authentication: key
 web:
 - vdu_name: OpenWrt
 vdus:
 - name: OpenWrt
 password_rules:
 length: 12
 use_upper_case: true
 use_lower_case: true
 use_digits: true
 specific_symbols: .?$#@![]-{}
 specific_symbols_min_usage: 2
 zabbix_template: Template OS Linux
 monitoring_type: agent
 ssh_port: 22
 configurations:
 - config
 - config3
```

```
def_user: root
def_password: p@ssw0rd
password_authentication: yes
network_interfaces:
- name: Management
type: management
description: eth0
- name: eth1
type: data
description: eth1
connection_point_ref: LAN
- name: eth2
type: data
description: eth2
connection_point_ref: WAN
auto_healing:
triggers_set: any
triggers:
- name: unreachable
action_set:
- type: reboot
- name: OpenWrt2
password_rules:
length: 12
use_upper_case: true
use_lower_case: true
use_digits: true
specific_symbols: .?$#@![]-{}
specific_symbols_min_usage: 2
zabbix_template: Template OS Linux
monitoring_type: agent
ssh_port: 22
configurations:
- config
- config3
def_user: root
def_password: p@ssw0rd
password_authentication: yes
network_interfaces:
- name: Management
type: management
description: eth0
- name: eth1
type: data
description: eth1
connection_point_ref: LAN
- name: eth2
type: data
description: eth2
connection_point_ref: WAN
auto_healing:
triggers_set: any
triggers:
- name: unreachable
action_set:
- type: reboot
- name: VDU
description: 1 vCPU, 512MB memory
```

```
position: 2
management:
ssh:
- vdu_name: OpenWrt
def_user: root
authentication: key
web:
- vdu_name: OpenWrt
vdus:
- name: OpenWrt
password_rules:
length: 12
use_upper_case: true
use_lower_case: true
use_digits: true
specific_symbols: .?$#@![]-{}
specific_symbols_min_usage: 2
check_connection_mode: none
zabbix_template: Template OS Linux
monitoring_type: agent
ssh_port: 22
configurations:
- config
- config2
def_user: root
def_password: p@ssword
password_authentication: yes
network_interfaces:
- name: Management
type: management
description: eth0
- name: eth1
type: data
description: eth1
connection_point_ref: LAN
- name: eth2
type: data
description: eth2
connection_point_ref: WAN
auto_healing:
triggers_set: any
triggers:
- name: unreachable
action_set:
- type: reboot
- name: OpenWrt2
password_rules:
length: 12
use_upper_case: true
use_lower_case: true
use_digits: true
specific_symbols: .?$#@![]-{}
specific_symbols_min_usage: 2
zabbix_template: Template OS Linux
monitoring_type: agent
ssh_port: 22
configurations:
- config
```

```
  - config2
  def_user: root
  def_password: p@ssw0rd
  password_authentication: yes
  network_interfaces:
  - name: Management
  type: management
  description: eth0
  - name: eth1
  type: data
  description: eth1
  connection_point_ref: LAN
  - name: eth2
  type: data
  description: eth2
  connection_point_ref: WAN
  auto_healing:
  triggers_set: any
  triggers:
  - name: unreachable
  action_set:
  - type: reboot
  - name: OpenWrt3
  password_rules:
  length: 12
  use_upper_case: true
  use_lower_case: true
  use_digits: true
  specific_symbols: .?$#@![]-{}
  specific_symbols_min_usage: 2
  zabbix_template: Template OS Linux
  monitoring_type: agent
  ssh_port: 22
  configurations:
  - config
  - config2
  def_user: root
  def_password: p@ssw0rd
  password_authentication: yes
  network_interfaces:
  - name: Management
  type: management
  description: eth0
  - name: eth1
  type: data
  description: eth1
  connection_point_ref: LAN
  - name: eth2
  type: data
  description: eth2
  connection_point_ref: WAN
  auto_healing:
  triggers_set: any
  triggers:
  - name: unreachable
  action_set:
  - type: reboot
scaling:
```

```
  scale_in_status: permit
  scale_out_status: "permit"
 user_configurations:
  tab:
  - name: GW
  variables:
  - name: "gw_ip"
  description: IP
  input_type: input
  required: true
  type: string
  default_value: 192.168.0.1
  example: 192.168.0.1
  - name: direction
  description: traffic direction
  input_type: dropdown
  required: true
  type: string
  values:
  - value: in
  is_default: true
  - value: out
  update_configuration_name:
  - update_var
  - change
 backups:
  - name: backup_config
  description: backup/etc/config
  backup:
  path: /root/config.thz
  interval: 600
  store_configs: 10
  backup_type: vnfm_scp
  authentication: key
  configuration_name_ref: backup
  restore:
  path: /tmp/config.tgz
  backup_type: vnfm_scp
  authentication: password
  configuration_name_ref: restore
```

external_connections

The external_connections section has the following structure:

Section/setting		Description
`- name`		Name of the external connection point.
	`description`	Brief description of the external connection point.
	`ip`	IP address of the external connection point. Enter a value in the `XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX` format, for example: `192.168.110.126`
	`mask`	Subnet mask of the external connection point. Possible values: • Value in the `XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX` format, for example: `255.255.255.0` The subnet mask is assigned using DHCP via MAC-based reservation of an OpenStack port. In this case, the subnet mask cannot be changed. • `AUTO` — The subnet mask is assigned automatically using an external DHCP server or a script from the `configurations` section.
	`gw`	IP address of the gateway of the external connection point. Possible values: • Value in the `XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX` format, for example: `192.168.110.126` The IP address is assigned using DHCP via MAC-based reservation of an OpenStack port. In this case, the IP address cannot be changed. • `AUTO` — The IP address is assigned automatically using an external DHCP server or a script from the `configurations` section. Optional setting.
	`dns`	IP address of the DNS server of the external connection point. Possible values: • Value in the `XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX` format, for example: `192.168.110.126` The IP address is assigned using DHCP via MAC-based reservation of an OpenStack port. In this case, the IP address cannot be changed. • `AUTO` — The IP address is assigned automatically using an external DHCP server or a script from the `configurations` section. Optional setting.
	`group`	The group to which the external connection point belongs. This setting is required if multiple VDUs within the physical network function use the same external connection point.

Example of this section

```
external_connections:
- name: LAN
 description: eth1
 ip: 192.168.2.0
 mask: 255.255.255.0
 gw: 192.168.0.1
 dns: 192.168.0.10
 group: lan-group
```

`internal_connections`

The `internal_connections` section has the following structure:

Section/setting		Description
`- name`		Name of the internal connection point.
	`description`	Brief description of the internal connection point.
	`ip`	IP address of the internal connection point. Possible values: • Value in the `XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX` format, for example: `192.168.110.126` The IP address is assigned using DHCP via MAC-based reservation of an OpenStack port. In this case, the IP address cannot be changed. • `AUTO` — The IP address is assigned automatically using an external DHCP server or a script from the `configurations` section.
	`mask`	Subnet mask of the internal connection point. Possible values: • Value in the XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX format, for example: `255.255.255.0` The subnet mask is assigned using DHCP via MAC-based reservation of an OpenStack port. In this case, the subnet mask cannot be changed. • AUTO — The subnet mask is assigned automatically using an external DHCP server or a script from the `configurations` section.
	`gw`	IP address of the gateway of the internal connection point. Possible values: • Value in the `XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX` format, for example: `192.168.110.126` The IP address is assigned using DHCP via MAC-based reservation of an OpenStack port. In this case, the IP address cannot be changed. • `AUTO` — The IP address is assigned automatically using an external DHCP server or a script from the `configurations` section. Optional setting.
	`dns`	IP address of the DNS server of the internal connection point. Possible values: • Value in the `XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX` format, for example: `192.168.110.126` The IP address is assigned using DHCP via MAC-based reservation of an OpenStack port. In this case, the IP address cannot be changed. • `AUTO` — The IP address is assigned automatically using an external DHCP server or a script from the `configurations` section. Optional setting.
	`group`	The group to which the internal connection point belongs. This setting is required if multiple VDUs within the physical network function use the same internal connection point.

Example of this section

```
internal_connections:
- name: LAN
 description: eth3
 ip: 192.168.2.0
 mask: 255.255.255.0
 gw: 192.168.0.1
 dns: 192.168.0.10
 group: lan-group
```

`configurations`

The `configurations` section has the following structure:

Section/setting		Description
- name		Name of the script.
	filename	File name of the script or Ansible playbook. You must place the script in the /scripts directory of the PNF package.
	stage	The stage of operation of the physical network function at which the script runs. Possible values: • initialization to run the script on deployment of the physical network function. • termination to run the script on deletion of the physical network function. • none to run the script when a value changes in the user_configurations section in the settings area of the physical network function in the orchestrator web interface.
	executor	Script interpreter. Possible values: • ansible • expect • /bin/sh • bin/bash • < path to the custom script interpreter >, for example /usr/bin/php
	authentication	Method for authenticating the VNFM in the physical network function for running scripts. Possible values: • key means the VNFM is authenticated in the physical network function using a key that is generated when that physical network function is deployed. You need to use a script to get the key, so we recommend not to specify this value for the first script. • password means the VNFM is authenticated in the physical network function with a user name and password from the flavours → vdus section.
	files_path	Path to files for running scripts using SSH. You need to create a directory in the /scripts directory of the PNF package and place the files in that directory. The files are copied to the VDU. Optional setting.
	timeout	The time to wait for the script to finish, in seconds. If the script does not finish within the specified time, execution is terminated. The timeout starts at the moment the script is run. You can specify this parameter if you have specified a path to a custom script executor for the executor parameter.

Example of this section

```
configurations:
 - name: config
 filename: config.yml
 stage: initialization
 executor: ansible
 authentication: password
 files_path: SSH_scripts
 config_drive: true
 timeout: 15
```

flavours

The flavours section has the following structure:

Section/setting		Description
- name		Name of the flavour.
	description	Brief description of the flavour.
	position	Sequential number of the flavour. The flavour with the lowest position has the lowest performance.
	management	Parameters of VDU administration consoles.
	vdus	VDU settings.

The management section has the following structure:

Section/setting			Description
ssh			Settings for managing VDUs using the SSH console.
	- vdu_name		Name of the VDU.
		def_user	User name for establishing the SSH session.
		authentication	Method for authenticating the VNFM in the physical network function for running scripts. Possible values: • key means the VNFM is authenticated in the physical network function using a key that is generated when that physical network function is deployed. You need to get the key using a script from the configurations section. • password means the VNFM is authenticated in the physical network function with a user name and password from the vdus section.
web			Settings for managing VDUs using the web console.
	- vdu_name		Name of the VDU.
		protocol	Protocol for connecting to the web console. Possible values: • http. • https.
		port	Port for connecting to the web console. Enter a value in the range of 1 to 65,536. By default, port 80 is used.
		path	Path to the web console.
		def_user	User name for authenticating in the web console.
		def_password	Password for authenticating in the web console.

The vdus section has the following structure:

Section/setting	Description
`- name`	Name of the VDU.
`password_rules`	VDU password requirements. This section is optional.
`length`	Minimum length of the password.
`use_upper_case`	Users must use uppercase characters in the password. Possible values: • `true` • `false`
`use_lower_case`	Users must use lowercase characters in the password. Possible values: • `true` • `false`
`use_digits`	Users must use numerals in the password. Possible values: • `true` • `false`
`specific_symbols`	Whether users must use special characters in the password, such as: `@"!`
`specific_symbols_min_usage`	Minimum number of special characters that must be present in the password.
`check_connection_mode`	Type of VDU availability test performed during deployment. By default, an SSH test is performed. Possible values: • `ssh` • `none` Optional setting.
`zabbix_template`	Name of the Zabbix template for the VDU.
`monitoring_type`	Monitoring type of the physical network function. Possible values: • `agent` means monitoring using a Zabbix agent. • `snmp` means monitoring using the SNMP protocol.
`ssh_port`	Port number for establishing an SSH session. Optional setting.
`ssh_host_key_algorithm`	The host key algorithm used. Possible values: • `ssh-rsa`. • `ssh-ed25519`. We recommend using this host key algorithm because it is cryptographically strong. If you do not specify this setting, the ssh-rsa algorithm is used by default for backward compatibility.

`configurations`	Names of scripts from the `configurations` section to be run on the VDU. Specify a list of values, for example:
	`vdu_name:`
	`- config_1`
	`- config_2`

`backups`	Names of backup tasks from the `backups` to be used on the VDU. Specify a list of values, for example:
	`vdu_name:`
	`- backup_1`
	`- backup_2`
	This section is optional.

`def_user`	User name for authenticating the VNFM in the physical network function. Optional setting.
`def_password`	Password for authenticating the VNFM in the physical network function. Optional setting.

Section/setting			Description
password_authentication			Password authentication of the VNFM in the physical network function. Possible values: • yes • no Optional setting.
network_interfaces			Network interface settings
	- name		Name of the network interface.
		type	Type of the network interface. Possible values: • data is a network interface for data transfer. • management is a management network interface that is mapped to a network port.
		description	Brief description of the network interface.
		connection_point_ref	Name of the external connection point from the external_configurations section for the management network interface.
auto_healing			VDU auto-healing parameters.
	triggers_set		External triggers that initiate VDU auto-healing. Possible values: • any to have any external trigger initiate VDU auto-healing. • all to initiate VDU auto-healing if all specified external triggers are triggered. • < trigger name > to initiate VDU auto-healing when the specified external trigger is triggered.
	triggers		External triggers.
		- name	Name of the external trigger. Possible values: • unreachable • scale_up • scale_down
	action_set		Action to perform when an external trigger is triggered.
		- type	Type of action. Possible values: • reboot to restart the VDU. • script to run the specified script.
		configuration_name_ref	Name of the script from the configuration section that is run when an external trigger is triggered. This parameter must be specified if as the - type, you selected script.

Example of this section

```
vdus:
 - name: vgw
 password_rules:
 length: 12
 use_upper_case: true
 use_lower_case: true
 use_digits: true
 specific_symbols: .?$#@![]-{}
 specific_symbols_min_usage: 2
 check_connection_mode: none
 zabbix_template: Template OS Linux
 monitoring_type: agent
 ssh_port: 22
 configurations:
 - config_1
 - config_2
 backups:
 - backup_config
 def_user: root
 def_password: p@ssw0rd
 password_authentication: yes
 network_interfaces:
 - name: eth
 type: data
 description: eth0
 connection_point_ref: WAN
 auto_healing:
 triggers_set: any
 triggers:
 - name: unreachable
 action_set:
 - type: reprovision
```

scaling

The `scaling` section has the following structure:

Parameter	Description
`scale_up_status`	Vertical scaling to a flavour with a lower sequential number. Possible values: • `permit` • `deny`
`scale_down_status`	Vertical scaling to a flavour with a higher sequential number. Possible values: • `permit` • `deny`

Example of this section

```
scaling:
 scale_in_status: permit
 scale_out_status: permit
```

user_configurations

The user_configurations section has the following structure:

Section/setting	Description
tab	Tabs that are added to the settings area of the physical network function.
- name	Name of the tab.
variables	Orchestrator web interface inputs that are displayed on the tab.
- name	Name of the orchestrator web interface input.
description	Brief description of the orchestrator web interface input.
input_type	Type of the orchestrator web interface input. Possible values: • input to add a field. • dropdown to add a drop-down list.
default_value	Default value of the field. You can specify this parameter if as the input_type, you specified input.
values	The options that are displayed in the drop-down list. This setting can be specified if as the input_type, you specified dropdown.
- value	The name of the value.
is_default	Default value. Possible values: • true • false Optional setting.
required	Required orchestrator web interface input. Possible values: • true • false Optional setting.
type	The type of value that can be specified in the orchestrator web interface input. Optional setting.
example	A tooltip that is displayed when the value of the orchestrator web interface input changes. Optional setting.
update_configuration_name	Names of scripts from the configurations section that are run when the value of the orchestrator web interface input changes. Specify a list of values, for example: update_configuration_name: - config_1 - config_2

Example of this section

```
user_configurations:
 tab:
 - name: GW
 variables:
 - name: "gw_ip"
 description: IP
 input_type: input
 required: true
 type: string
 default_value: 192.168.0.1
 example: 192.168.0.1
 - name: direction
 description: traffic direction
 input_type: dropdown
 required: true
 type: string
 values:
 - value: in
 is_default: true
 - value: out
 update_configuration_name:
 - update_var
 - change
```

backups

The `backups` section has the following structure:

Section/setting			Description
`- name`			Name of the backup task.
	`description`		Brief description of the backup task.
	`backup`		Backup parameters.
		`path`	Path to the physical network function directory where the files that you want to backup are located.
		`interval`	Time interval in seconds for backup.
		`store_config`	Number of backup copies to keep.
		`backup_type`	Type of backup.
		`authentication`	Method for authenticating the VNFM in the physical network function for running scripts. Possible values: • `key` means the VNFM is authenticated in the physical network function using a key that is generated when that physical network function is deployed. You need to get the key using a script from the `configurations` section. • `password` means the VNFM is authenticated in the physical network function with a user name and password from the `flavours` → `vdus` section.
		`configuration_name_ref`	Name of the script from the `configurations` section to run before the backup.
	`restore`		Backup restoration parameters.
		`path`	Path to the physical network function directory where the restored files are placed.
		`backup_type`	Type of backup.
		`authentication`	Method for authenticating the VNFM in the physical network function for running scripts. Possible values: • `key` means the VNFM is authenticated in the physical network function using a key that is generated when that physical network function is deployed. You need to get the key using a script from the `configurations` section. • `password` means the VNFM is authenticated in the physical network function with a user name and password from the `flavours` → `vdus` section.
		`configuration_name_ref`	Name of the script from the `configurations` section to run after the restoration from backup begins.

Example of this section

```
backups:
 - name: backup_config
 description: backup/etc/config
 backup:
 path: /root/config.thz
 interval: 600
 store_configs: 10
 backup_type: vnfm_scp
 authentication: key
 configuration_name_ref: backup
 restore:
 path: /tmp/config.tgz
 backup_type: vnfm_scp
 authentication: password
 configuration_name_ref: restore
```

Protection of VNF and PNF packages against substitution and modification

Some VNF and PNF package files are placed in the local directory of the Docker container of the orchestrator, and you can protect them against substitution and modification. When VNF and PNF packages are protected, the orchestrator automatically computes their SHA256 hash when they are uploaded to the orchestrator web interface. When accessing files in the local directory of the Docker container, the orchestrator compares their current SHA256 hash with the previously saved hash. If the SHA256 hashes do not match, the orchestrator prevents users from performing actions with the network function, such as adding it to the topology of a network service.

To protect of VNF and PNF packages against substitution and modification:

1. In the menu, go to the **System** section.

   By default, the **Monitoring** tab is selected, which displays the Zabbix server connection settings.

2. Select the **Other** tab and select the **Calculate SHA256 checksum for VNF/PNF files on storage** check box. This check box is selected by default.

VNF and PNF packages are protected against substitution and modification.

Uploading a VNF or PNF package to the orchestrator web interface

To upload a VNF or PNF package to the orchestrator web interface:

1. In the menu, go to the **Catalog** section.

   The network service management page is displayed.

2. In the upper part of the page, click **+ VNF** or **+ PNF**.

3. This opens a window; in that window, select the VNF or PNF package.

4. If you want to check the integrity of the VNF or PNF package, enter its SHA256 hash in the **Hash sum SHA256** field. The maximum length of the hash is 64 characters.

5. Click **Save**.

The VNF or PNF package is uploaded to the orchestrator web interface. The VNF or PNF is displayed in the **Catalog** pane. If you entered a SHA256 hash of a VNF or PNF package, the orchestrator compares the hash you entered with the actual SHA256 hash. If the SHA256 hashes do not match, the VNF or PNF package is not uploaded.

Specifying a brief description of a shared network service

You can specify a brief description of the shared network service.

1. Navigate to the topology in one of the following ways:
   - Start creating or editing a network service template.
   - Start creating or editing a network service.
2. In the graphical design tool, click the shared network service for which you want to specify a brief description.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃. By default, the **Settings** tab is selected, which displays a brief description of the shared network service.
3. In the **Description** field, enter a brief description of the shared network service.
4. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save shared network service settings.

Managing virtual network functions

To manage a virtual network function, do one of the following:

- On the administrator portal, go to the **Catalog** section, and in the **Catalog** pane, click the virtual network function.
- When creating or editing a network service template in the topology, click the virtual network function.
- When creating or editing a network service in the topology, click the virtual network function.

You can manage virtual network function settings on the following tabs:

- **Flavors** contains flavours of the virtual network function.
- **Connection points** contains external connection points of the virtual network function.
- **VNF settings** contains basic settings of the virtual network function.
- **Placement** contains placement settings of the virtual network function. You can place a virtual network function in a data center or on a uCPE device. This tab is displayed if you clicked the virtual network function when creating or editing a network service.

The following tabs are displayed if you clicked the virtual network function in the topology of a deployed network service:

- **VDU management** is a table of VDUs that are part of the virtual network function. Information about VDUs is displayed in the following columns of the table:
  - **Name** is the name of the VDU.
  - **Instance name** is the ID of the VDU instance.
  - **Mgmt IP** is the IP address that the management subnet has assigned to the VDU.
  - **vCPU** is the number of virtual CPU cores assigned to the VDU.
  - **RAM** is the amount of RAM in megabytes assigned to the VDU.
  - **Disk** is the amount of disk space in gigabytes assigned to the VDU.
  - **Status** is the status of the VDU:
    - **ACTIVE** means the VDU is operating normally.
    - **ERROR** means the VDU encountered an error.
    - **HARD_REBOOT** means a hard reboot of the VDU is in progress.
    - **PAUSED** means the VDU is paused.
    - **REBOOT** means a soft reboot of the VDU is in progress.
    - **SHUTOFF** means the VDU is stopped.
    - **SUSPENDED** means the VDU is suspended.
- **Monitoring** contains monitoring results of the virtual network function.
- **Problems** contains problems that occurred during the operation of the virtual network function. In case of any problems, a red exclamation mark is displayed next to the tab.

Additionally, the tabs that you specified in the `user_configurations` section of the VNF descriptor may be displayed.

Selecting the flavour of a virtual network function

You can specify flavours in the `flavours` section of the VNF descriptor.

To select a virtual network function flavour:

1. Navigate to the topology in one of the following ways:
   - Start creating or editing a network service template.
   - Start creating or editing a network service.
2. Click the virtual network function for which you want to select a flavour.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃. By default, the **Flavors** tab is selected, which displays flavours.
3. Select a flavour for the virtual network function.
4. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save virtual network function settings.

Configuring external connection points of a virtual network function

You can specify external connection points of a virtual network function in the `external_connections` section of the VNF descriptor.

To configure external connection points of the virtual network function:

1. Navigate to the topology in one of the following ways:
   - Start creating or editing a network service template.
   - Start creating or editing a network service.
2. Click the virtual network function for which you want to configure external connection points.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃. By default, the **Flavors** tab is selected, which displays flavours.
3. Select the **Connection points** tab.

   This displays the external connection points of the virtual network function.
4. In the **Type** drop-down list, select how you want to assign an IPv4 prefix to the external connection point:
   - **DHCP reservation** to use DHCP to assign an IPv4 prefix to the external mount point. If you select this option, do the following:
     a. In the **IP address** field, enter the IPv4 address that DHCP assigns to the external connection point.
     b. In the **Mask** field, enter the subnet mask that DHCP assigns to the external connection point.
   - **AUTO** to automatically assign an IPv4 prefix to the external connection point. This is the default setting.
5. In the **Description** field, enter a brief description of the external connection point.

6. If you want to designate the connection point as the trunk port, select the **Trunk** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

7. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save virtual network function settings.

Basic settings of a virtual network function

To edit basic settings of the virtual network function:

1. Navigate to the topology in one of the following ways:

   - Start creating or editing a network service template.

   - Start creating or editing a network service.

2. Click the virtual network function for which you want to configure basic settings.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃. By default, the **Flavors** tab is selected, which displays flavours.

3. Select the **VNF settings** tab.

   Basic settings of the virtual network function are displayed.

4. In the **Name** field, enter the name of the virtual network function.

5. In the **Description** field, enter a brief description of the virtual network function.

6. In the **Order** field, enter the sequence number for deploying the virtual network function on the OpenStack cloud platform. When you deploy a network service, the virtual network function with the lowest number is the first to be deployed. If none of the virtual network functions added to the network service topology have a sequence number specified, all virtual network functions are deployed simultaneously.

7. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save virtual network function settings.

Hosting the virtual network function in a data center and on a uCPE device

To place a virtual network function in a data center or on a uCPE device.

1. Navigate to the topology by starting to create or edit a network service.

2. Click the virtual network function that you want to place in a data center or on a uCPE device.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃. By default, the **Flavors** tab is selected, which displays flavours.

3. Select the **Placement** tab.

   Placement settings of the virtual network function are displayed.

4. In the **Select placement type** list, select one of the following values:

   - **Data center** to place the virtual network function in the specified data center. If you select this option, do the following:

     a. In the **Data center** field, enter the name of the created data center. As you type the name, you are prompted to select a data center from a drop-down list.

     b. In the **VIM** field, enter the name of the deployed VIM for the virtual network function. As you type the name, you are prompted to select a VIM from a drop-down list.

   - **uCPE** to place the virtual network function on the specified uCPE device. If you select this option, in the **uCPE** field, enter the name of the uCPE device. As you type the name, you are prompted to select an uCPE device from a drop-down list.

5. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save virtual network function settings.

Stopping or starting a virtual network function or a VDU that is part of it

You can stop a virtual network function or a VDU that is part of it to free up the computational resources of the OpenStack cloud platform.

When you start a virtual network function or VDU, it begins consuming computational resources again. This restarts the processes running on the virtual network function or VDU.

To stop or start a virtual network function or a VDU that is part of it:

1. On the self-service portal, go to the **Catalog** menu section.

   The network service management page is displayed.

2. In the **Network services** pane, click the deployed network service to whose topology the virtual network function has been added.

   The topology is displayed.

3. Click the virtual network function.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, the **Flavors** tab is selected, which displays flavours.

4. If you want to stop or start the virtual network function, in the upper part of the settings area, click the **Management** → **Power** → **Stop VNF** or **Start VNF**.

5. If you want to stop or start a VDU that is part of the virtual network function:

   a. Select the **VDU management** tab.

      A table of VDUs is displayed.

   b. Click **Management** → **Power** → **Stop VDU** or **Start VDU** next to the VDU that you want to stop or start.

6. In the confirmation window, click **Apply**.

The virtual network function or its VDU is stopped or started.

Pausing or unpausing a virtual network function or a VDU that is part of it

You can pause a virtual network function or a VDU that is part of it to pause processes running on it. However, the virtual network function or VDU continues to consume the computational resources of the OpenStack cloud platform. When you unpause a virtual network function or VDU, processes running on it are resumed.

To pause or unpause a virtual network function or a VDU that is part of it:

1. On the self-service portal, go to the **Catalog** menu section.

   The network service management page is displayed.

2. In the **Network services** pane, click the deployed network service to whose topology the virtual network function has been added.

   The topology is displayed.

3. Click the virtual network function.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, the **Flavors** tab is selected, which displays flavours.

4. Pause or unpause the virtual network function or a VDU that is part of it:

   - If you want to pause or unpause a virtual network function, in the upper part of the settings area, click **Management** → **Pause VNF** → **Power** or **Unpause VNF**.
   - If you want to pause or unpause a VDU that is part of the virtual network function:

     1. Select the **VDU management** tab.

        A table of VDUs is displayed.

     2. Click **Management** → **Power** → **Pause VDU** or **Unpause VDU**.

5. In the confirmation window, click **Apply**.

The virtual network function or its VDU is paused or unpaused.

Suspending or unsuspending a virtual network function or a VDU that is part of it

You can suspend a virtual network function or a VDU that is part of it to free up the computational resources of the OpenStack cloud platform. This saves the state of the virtual network function or VDU to the disk of the OpenStack cloud platform. When you unsuspend the virtual network function or VDU, it begins consuming computational resources again. Processes running on a virtual network function or VDU are resumed from the point at which its state was saved.

To suspend or unsuspend a virtual network function or its VDU:

1. On the self-service portal, go to the **Catalog** menu section.

   The network service management page is displayed.

2. In the **Network services** pane, click the deployed network service to whose topology the virtual network function has been added.

   The topology is displayed.

3. Click the virtual network function.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃. By default, the **Flavors** tab is selected, which displays flavours.

4. Suspend or unsuspend a virtual network function or its VDU:

   - If you want to suspend or unsuspend a virtual network function, in the upper part of the settings area, click **Management** → **Suspend VNF** → **Power** or **Resume suspended VNF**.

   - If you want to suspend or unsuspend a VDU that is part of the virtual network function:

     1. Select the **VDU management** tab.

        A table of VDUs is displayed.

     2. Click **Management** → **Power** → **Suspend VDU** or **Resume suspended VDU** next to the VDU that you want to suspend or unsuspend.

5. In the confirmation window, click **Apply**.

The virtual network function or its VDU is suspended or unsuspended.

Soft rebooting a virtual network function or a VDU that is part of it

When a virtual network function is soft rebooted, all active VDUs in it are restarted. To soft reboot a virtual network function, at least one VDU in it must not be suspended.

To perform a soft reboot of a virtual network function or a VDU that is part of it:

1. On the self-service portal, go to the **Catalog** menu section.

   The network service management page is displayed.

2. In the **Network services** pane, click the deployed network service to whose topology the virtual network function has been added.

   The topology is displayed.

3. Click the virtual network function.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃. By default, the **Flavors** tab is selected, which displays flavours.

4. Perform a soft reboot of a virtual network function or its VDU:

   - If you want to perform a soft reboot of the virtual network function, in the upper part of the settings area, click **Management** → **Power** → **Soft reboot VNF**.

   - If you want to soft reboot a VDU that is part of the virtual network function:

     1. Select the **VDU management** tab.

        A table of VDUs is displayed.

     2. Click **Management** → **Power** → **Soft reboot VDU** next to the VDU that you want to soft reboot.

5. In the confirmation window, click **Apply**.

The virtual network function or its VDU is soft rebooted.

Hard rebooting of a virtual network function or a VDU that is part of it

A hard reboot imitates turning power on and off again. We recommend that performing a hard reboot only if soft reboot is not successful.

To perform a hard reboot of a virtual network function or a VDU that is part of it:

1. On the self-service portal, go to the **Catalog** menu section.

   The network service management page is displayed.

2. In the **Network services** pane, click the deployed network service to whose topology the virtual network function has been added.

   The topology is displayed.

3. Click the virtual network function.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃. By default, the **Flavors** tab is selected, which displays flavours.

4. To perform a hard reboot of a virtual network function or its VDU:

   - If you want to perform a hard reboot of the virtual network function, in the upper part of the settings area, click **Management** → **Power** → **Hard reboot VNF**.

   - If you want to hard reboot a VDU that is part of the virtual network function:

     1. Select the **VDU management** tab.

        A table of VDUs is displayed.

     2. Click **Management** → **Power** → **Hard reboot VDU** next to the VDU that you want to hard reboot.

5. In the confirmation window, click **Apply**.

A hard reboot of the VNF or its VDU is performed.

Redeploying a virtual network function or a VDU that is part of it

Redeployment of a virtual network function or a VDU that is part of it may result in short-term interruptions or temporary loss of function. When planning and coordinating redeployment activities, we recommend taking into account your organization's circumstances to minimize the disruptions.

To redeploy a virtual network function or a VDU that is part of it:

1. On the self-service portal, go to the **Catalog** menu section.

   The network service management page is displayed.

2. In the **Network services** pane, click the deployed network service to whose topology the virtual network function has been added.

   The topology is displayed.

3. Click the virtual network function.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃. By default, the **Flavors** tab is selected, which displays flavours.

4. To redeploy a virtual network function or its VDU:

   - If you want to redeploy the virtual network function, in the upper part of the configuration area, click **Management** → **Redeploy VNF**.
   - If you want to redeploy a VDU that is part of the virtual network function:

     1. Select the **VDU management** tab.

        A table of VDUs is displayed.

     2. Click **Management** → **Redeploy VDU** next to the VDU that you want to redeploy.

5. In the confirmation window, click **Confirm**.

Redeployment of the virtual network function or its VDU begins, which may take several minutes. You can interrupt the deployment by clicking **Abort deployment**.

Auto-healing a virtual network function or a VDU that is part of it

You can auto-heal a virtual network function or a VDU that is part of it, even if you have disabled auto-healing of the network service to whose topology this virtual network function has been added.

To auto-heal a virtual network function or a VDU that is part of it:

1. On the self-service portal, go to the **Catalog** menu section.

   The network service management page is displayed.

2. In the **Network services** pane, click the deployed network service to whose topology the virtual network function has been added.

   The topology is displayed.

3. Click the virtual network function.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, the **Flavors** tab is selected, which displays flavours.

4. Perform auto-healing of the virtual network function or its VDU.

   - If you want to auto-heal the virtual network function, in the upper part of the settings area, click **Management** → **Healing VNF**.
   - If you want to auto-heal a VDU that is part of the virtual network function:

     1. Select the **VDU management** tab.

        A table of VDUs is displayed.

     2. Click **Management** → **Healing VDU** next to the VDU that you want to auto-heal.

5. In the confirmation window, click **Apply**.

Auto-healing of the virtual network function or a VDU that is part of it begins.

Managing VDU snapshots

To view the table of VDU snapshots, click the virtual network function in the topology of the deployed network service, select the **VDU management** tab, and click **Management** → **Snapshot** next to the VDU.

Information about VDU snapshots is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Name** is the name of the VDU snapshot.
- **Created at** is the date and time when the VDU snapshot was created.
- **Size** is the size of the VDU snapshot in bytes.
- **Description** is a brief description of the VDU snapshot.
- **Management** contains actions that can be performed on the VDU snapshot.

Creating a VDU snapshot

We do not recommend storing snapshots for a long time because their existence reduces the performance of the VDU.

To take a VDU snapshot:

1. On the self-service portal, go to the **Catalog** menu section.

   The network service management page is displayed.

2. In the **Network services** pane, click the deployed network service to whose topology the virtual network function has been added.

   The topology is displayed.

3. Click the virtual network function that includes the VDU.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃. By default, the **Flavors** tab is selected, which displays flavours.

4. Select the **VDU management** tab.

   A table of VDUs is displayed.

5. Click **Power** → **Snapshot** next to the VDU for which you want to create a snapshot.

   This opens a window with the table of VDU snapshots.

6. In the **Name** field, enter a name for the VDU snapshot.

7. In the **Description** field, enter a brief description of the VDU snapshot.

8. Click **Create**.

A snapshot of the VDU is created and displayed in the table.

Restoring VDU settings using a snapshot

To restoring VDU settings using a snapshot:

1. On the self-service portal, go to the **Catalog** menu section.

   The network service management page is displayed.

2. In the **Network services** pane, click the deployed network service to whose topology the virtual network function has been added.

   The topology is displayed.

3. Click the virtual network function that includes the VDU.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃. By default, the **Flavors** tab is selected, which displays flavours.

4. Select the **VDU management** tab.

   A table of VDUs is displayed.

5. Click **Power** → **Snapshot** next to the VDU whose settings you want to restore using the snapshot.

   This opens a window with the table of VDU snapshots.

6. Click **Management** → **Revert** next to the snapshot which you want to use to restore the VDU settings.

7. In the confirmation window, click **Revert**.

The VDU settings are restored in accordance with the snapshot.

Editing a VDU snapshot

To edit a VDU snapshot:

1. On the self-service portal, go to the **Catalog** menu section.

   The network service management page is displayed.

2. In the **Network services** pane, click the deployed network service to whose topology the virtual network function has been added.

   The topology is displayed.

3. Click the virtual network function that includes the VDU.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃. By default, the **Flavors** tab is selected, which displays flavours.

4. Select the **VDU management** tab.

   A table of VDUs is displayed.

5. Click **Power** → **Snapshot** next to the VDU whose snapshot you want to edit.

   This opens a window with the table of VDU snapshots.

6. Click **Management** → **Edit** next to the VDU snapshot that you want to edit.

7. This opens a window; in that window, if necessary, edit the name and/or description of the VDU snapshot.

8. Click **Save**.

The VDU snapshot is modified and updated in the table.

Deleting a VDU snapshot

Deleted VDU snapshots cannot be restored.

To delete a VDU snapshot:

1. On the self-service portal, go to the **Catalog** menu section.

   The network service management page is displayed.

2. In the **Network services** pane, click the deployed network service to whose topology the virtual network function has been added.

   The topology is displayed.

3. Click the virtual network function that includes the VDU.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃. By default, the **Flavors** tab is selected, which displays flavours.

4. Select the **VDU management** tab.

   A table of VDUs is displayed.

5. Click **Power** → **Snapshot** next to the VDU whose snapshot you want to delete.

   This opens a window with the table of VDU snapshots.

6. Click **Management** → **Delete** next to the VDU snapshot that you want to delete.

7. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

The VDU snapshot is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

Managing physical network functions

To manage a physical network function, do one of the following:

- On the administrator portal, go to the **Catalog** section, and in the **Catalog** pane, click the physical network function.
- When creating or editing a network service template in the topology, click the physical network function.
- When creating or editing a network service in the topology, click the physical network function.

You can manage physical network function settings on the following tabs:

- **Flavors** contains flavours of the physical network function.
- **VNF settings** contains basic settings of the physical network function.

The following tabs are displayed if you clicked the physical network function in the topology of a deployed network service:

- **Monitoring** contains monitoring results of the physical network function.
- **Problems** contains problems that occurred during the operation of the physical network function. In case of any problems, a red exclamation mark is displayed next to the tab.

Additionally, the tabs that you specified in the `user_configurations` section of the PNF descriptor may be displayed.

Selecting the flavour of a physical network function

You can specify flavours in the `flavours` section of the PNF descriptor.

To select a physical network function flavour:

1. Navigate to the topology in one of the following ways:
   - Start creating or editing a network service template.
   - Start creating or editing a network service.
2. Click the physical network function for which you want to select a flavour.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, the **Flavors** tab is selected, which displays flavours.
3. Select a flavour for the physical network function.
4. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save physical network function settings.

Basic settings of a physical network function

To edit basic settings of the physical network function:

1. Navigate to the topology in one of the following ways:
   - Start creating or editing a network service template.
   - Start creating or editing a network service.
2. Click the physical network function for which you want to configure basic settings.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, the **Flavors** tab is selected, which displays flavours.
3. Select the **PNF settings** tab.

   Basic settings of the physical network function are displayed.
4. In the **Name** field, enter the name of the physical network function.
5. In the **Description** field, enter a brief description of the physical network function.

6. In the **Order** field, enter the sequence number for deploying the physical network function. When you deploy a network service, the physical network function with the lowest number is the first to be deployed. If none of the physical network functions added to the topology have a sequence number specified, all physical network functions are deployed simultaneously.

7. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save physical network function settings.

Configuring a P2P service

To configure a P2P service:

1. Navigate to the topology in one of the following ways:

   - Start creating or editing a network service template.

   - Start creating or editing a network service.

2. Click the P2P service that you want to configure.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃⌃.

3. In the **Name** field, enter the name of the P2P service.

4. If necessary, in the **Description** field, enter a brief description of the P2P service.

5. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save P2P service settings.

Configuring a P2M service

To configure a P2M service:

1. Navigate to the topology in one of the following ways:

   - Start creating or editing a network service template.

   - Start creating or editing a network service.

2. Click the P2M service that you want to configure.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃⌃.

3. In the **Name** field, enter the name of the P2M service.

4. If necessary, in the **Description** field, enter a brief description of the P2M service.

5. In the **Connection points** field, enter the maximum number of P2M service connection points. Range of values: 2 to 9999. If you do not specify a value for this setting, the number of connection points is unlimited.

6. In the **Mode** drop-down list, select whether the P2M service uses a DFI (Default Forwarding Interface), to which unknown unicast traffic is sent:

   - **Classic** if you do not want to use DFI. This is the default setting.
   - **DFI with FIB on root and leafs** if you want to use DFI on the service interface with the root role.
   - **DFI with FIB on leaf** if you want to use DFI on the service interface with the root role. You need to create service interfaces with the leaf role on the same CPE device. Backup service interfaces with the leaf role must be created on the same CPE device, which must be different from the CPE device on which the primary service interfaces are created.

7. In the **MAC age (sec)** field, enter the time period in seconds during which entries are kept in the MAC table of the controller. Range of values: 10 to 65,535. Default value: `300`.

8. In the **MAC learn mode** drop-down list, select the action that you want to apply to a series of frames when the first frame is sent to the controller to learn the source MAC address:

   - **Learn and flood** means the controller remembers the MAC address of the source and checks for the presence of the destination MAC address in the MAC table. If the destination MAC address is not in the MAC table, the series of frames is sent to all service interfaces added to the P2M service, except for the service interface on which the series of frames originally arrived. This is the default setting.
   - **Learn and drop** means the controller remembers the MAC address of the source and checks for the presence of the destination MAC address in the MAC table. If the destination MAC address is not in the MAC table, the series of frames is dropped.

   If the destination MAC address is present in the MAC table, the series of frames is sent to the destination service interface.

9. In the **MAC table size** field, enter the maximum number of entries in the MAC table on the controller. Range of values: 0 to 65,535. `0` means the number of entries is not limited. Default value: `100`.

10. In the **MAC table overload** drop-down list, select the policy for processing new MAC addresses when the MAC table of the controller is full:

    - **Flood** means traffic with destination MAC addresses that have not been learned is transmitted as BUM traffic (Broadcast, unknown-unicast, and multicast). This is the default setting.
    - **Drop** means that traffic with destination MAC addresses that have not been learned is dropped.

11. If you want to configure the assignment of IP address to virtual network functions using DHCP:

    a. In the **OpenStack DHCP** drop-down list, select **Enabled**. The default value is **Disable**.

    b. In the **CIDR** field, enter the IPv4 prefix of the OpenStack subnet that assigns IP addresses to virtual network functions.

    c. If you want the OpenStack subnet to assign a particular gateway to virtual network functions, enter the IPv4 address of the gateway in the **Gateway** field.

    d. Specify the range of IP addresses from which the OpenStack subnet assigns IP addresses to virtual network functions: To do so, under **Pools**, click **+ Pool** and enter the starting and ending values of the IP address range.

    The range of IP addresses is specified and displayed in the **Pools** section. You can specify multiple IP address ranges or delete IP address ranges. To delete an IP address range, click **Delete** next to it.

    e. Specify the DNS server that the OpenStack subnet assigns to virtual network functions. To do so, under **DNS**, click **+ DNS** and enter the IPv4 address of the DNS server.

    The DNS server is specified and displayed in the **DNS** section. You can specify multiple DNS servers or delete DNS servers. To delete a DNS server, click **Delete** next to it.

12. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save P2M service settings.

Configuring an M2M service

To configure an M2M service:

1. Navigate to the topology in one of the following ways:

    - Start creating or editing a network service template.
    - Start creating or editing a network service.

2. Click the M2M service that you want to configure.

    The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃⌃.

3. In the **Name** field, enter the name of the M2M service.

4. If necessary, in the **Description** field, enter a brief description of the M2M service.

5. In the **Connection points** field, enter the maximum number of M2M service connection points. Range of values: 2 to 9999. If you do not specify a value for this setting, the number of connection points is unlimited.

6. In the **MAC age (sec)** field, enter the time period in seconds during which entries are kept in the MAC table of the controller. Range of values: 10 to 65,535. Default value: `300`.

7. In the **MAC learn mode** drop-down list, select the action that you want to apply to a series of frames when the first frame is sent to the controller to learn the source MAC address:

   - **Learn and flood** means the controller remembers the MAC address of the source and checks for the presence of the destination MAC address in the MAC table. If the destination MAC address is not in the MAC table, the series of frames is sent to all service interfaces added to the P2M service, except for the service interface on which the series of frames originally arrived. This is the default setting.

   - **Learn and drop** means the controller remembers the MAC address of the source and checks for the presence of the destination MAC address in the MAC table. If the destination MAC address is not in the MAC table, the series of frames is dropped.

   If the destination MAC address is present in the MAC table, the series of frames is sent to the destination service interface.

8. In the **MAC table size** field, enter the maximum number of entries in the MAC table on the controller. Range of values: 0 to 65,535. `0` means the number of entries is not limited. Default value: `100`.

9. In the **MAC table overload** drop-down list, select the policy for processing new MAC addresses when the MAC table of the controller is full:

   - **Flood** means traffic with destination MAC addresses that have not been learned is transmitted as BUM traffic (Broadcast, unknown-unicast, and multicast). This is the default setting.

   - **Drop** means that traffic with destination MAC addresses that have not been learned is dropped.

10. If you want to configure the assignment of IP address to virtual network functions using DHCP:

    a. In the **OpenStack DHCP** drop-down list, select **Enabled**. The default value is **Disable**.

    b. In the **CIDR** field, enter the IPv4 prefix of the OpenStack subnet that assigns IP addresses to virtual network functions.

    c. If you want the OpenStack subnet to assign a particular gateway to virtual network functions, enter the IPv4 address of the gateway in the **Gateway** field.

    d. Specify the range of IP addresses from which the OpenStack subnet assigns IP addresses to virtual network functions: To do so, under **Pools**, click **+ Pool** and enter the starting and ending values of the IP address range.

    The range of IP addresses is specified and displayed in the **Pools** section. You can specify multiple IP address ranges or delete IP address ranges. To delete an IP address range, click **Delete** next to it.

    e. Specify the DNS server that the OpenStack subnet assigns to virtual network functions. To do so, under **DNS**, click **+ DNS** and enter the IPv4 address of the DNS server.

    The DNS server is specified and displayed in the **DNS** section. You can specify multiple DNS servers or delete DNS servers. To delete a DNS server, click **Delete** next to it.

11. If you want to use an M2M service to create a shared network service, select the **Share network service** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

12. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save M2M service settings.

Configuring a shared network (OS 2 SHARED)

To configure a shared network in the topology:

1. Navigate to the topology in one of the following ways:
   - Start creating or editing a network service template.
   - Start creating or editing a network service.
2. Click the shared network that you want to configure.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃⌃.
3. In the **Name** field, enter the name of the shared network.
4. If necessary, in the **Description** field, enter a brief description of the shared network.
5. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save shared network settings.

Configuring a virtual router (OS vRouter)

To configure a virtual router:

1. Navigate to the topology in one of the following ways:
   - Start creating or editing a network service template.
   - Start creating or editing a network service.
2. Click the virtual router that you want to configure.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃⌃.
3. In the **Name** field, enter the name of the virtual router.
4. If necessary, in the **Description** field, enter a brief description of the virtual router.
5. If you want to set the 'up' value for the operating state of the virtual router, select the **Administrative state** check box. This check box is cleared by default.
6. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save virtual router settings.

Configuring a VLAN

To configure a VLAN:

1. Navigate to the topology in one of the following ways:
   - Start creating or editing a network service template.
   - Start creating or editing a network service.
2. Click the VLAN that you want to configure.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃⌃.
3. In the **Name** field, enter the name of the VLAN.
4. If necessary, in the **Description** field, enter a brief description of the VLAN.
5. If you want to configure the assignment of IP address to virtual network functions using DHCP:
   a. In the **OpenStack DHCP** drop-down list, select **Enabled**. The default value is **Disable**.
   b. In the **CIDR** field, enter the IPv4 prefix of the OpenStack subnet that assigns IP addresses to virtual network functions.
   c. If you want the OpenStack subnet to assign a particular gateway to virtual network functions, enter the IPv4 address of the gateway in the **Gateway** field.
   d. Specify the range of IP addresses from which the OpenStack subnet assigns IP addresses to virtual network functions: To do so, under **Pools**, click **+ Pool** and enter the starting and ending values of the IP address range.

      The range of IP addresses is specified and displayed in the **Pools** section. You can specify multiple IP address ranges or delete IP address ranges. To delete an IP address range, click **Delete** next to it.
   e. Specify the DNS server that the OpenStack subnet assigns to virtual network functions. To do so, under **DNS**, click **+ DNS** and enter the IPv4 address of the DNS server.

      The DNS server is specified and displayed in the **DNS** section. You can specify multiple DNS servers or delete DNS servers. To delete a DNS server, click **Delete** next to it.
6. If you want to use the VLAN to create a shared network service, select the **Share network** check box. This check box is cleared by default.
7. If you want to assign a VLAN tag to virtual network functions, in the **Segmentation ID** field, enter the VLAN tag.
8. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save VLAN settings.

Configuring a VXLAN

To configure a VXLAN:

1. Navigate to the topology in one of the following ways:

   - Start creating or editing a network service template.

   - Start creating or editing a network service.

2. Click the VXLAN that you want to configure.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃.

3. In the **Name** field, enter the name of the VXLAN.

4. If necessary, in the **Description** field, enter a brief description of the VXLAN.

5. If you want to configure the assignment of IP address to virtual network functions using DHCP:

   a. In the **OpenStack DHCP** drop-down list, select **Enabled**. The default value is **Disable**.

   b. In the **CIDR** field, enter the IPv4 prefix of the OpenStack subnet that assigns IP addresses to virtual network functions.

   c. If you want the OpenStack subnet to assign a particular gateway to virtual network functions, enter the IPv4 address of the gateway in the **Gateway** field.

   d. Specify the range of IP addresses from which the OpenStack subnet assigns IP addresses to virtual network functions: To do so, under **Pools**, click **+ Pool** and enter the starting and ending values of the IP address range.

      The range of IP addresses is specified and displayed in the **Pools** section. You can specify multiple IP address ranges or delete IP address ranges. To delete an IP address range, click **Delete** next to it.

   e. Specify the DNS server that the OpenStack subnet assigns to virtual network functions. To do so, under **DNS**, click **+ DNS** and enter the IPv4 address of the DNS server.

      The DNS server is specified and displayed in the **DNS** section. You can specify multiple DNS servers or delete DNS servers. To delete a DNS server, click **Delete** next to it.

6. If you want to use the VXLAN to create a shared network service, select the **Share network** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

7. If you want to assign a VXLAN tag to virtual network functions, in the **Segmentation ID** field, enter the VXLAN tag.

8. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save VXLAN settings.

Configuring a flat network

To configure a flat network:

1. Navigate to the topology in one of the following ways:
   - Start creating or editing a network service template.
   - Start creating or editing a network service.
2. Click the flat network that you want to configure.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃⌃.
3. In the **Name** field, enter the name of the flat network.
4. If necessary, in the **Description** field, enter a brief description of the flat network.
5. If you want to configure the assignment of IP address to virtual network functions using DHCP:
   a. In the **OpenStack DHCP** drop-down list, select **Enabled**. The default value is **Disable**.
   b. In the **CIDR** field, enter the IPv4 prefix of the OpenStack subnet that assigns IP addresses to virtual network functions.
   c. If you want the OpenStack subnet to assign a particular gateway to virtual network functions, enter the IPv4 address of the gateway in the **Gateway** field.
   d. Specify the range of IP addresses from which the OpenStack subnet assigns IP addresses to virtual network functions: To do so, under **Pools**, click **+ Pool** and enter the starting and ending values of the IP address range.

      The range of IP addresses is specified and displayed in the **Pools** section. You can specify multiple IP address ranges or delete IP address ranges. To delete an IP address range, click **Delete** next to it.
   e. Specify the DNS server that the OpenStack subnet assigns to virtual network functions. To do so, under **DNS**, click **+ DNS** and enter the IPv4 address of the DNS server.

      The DNS server is specified and displayed in the **DNS** section. You can specify multiple DNS servers or delete DNS servers. To delete a DNS server, click **Delete** next to it.
6. If you want to use the flat network to create a shared network service, select the **Share network** check box. This check box is cleared by default.
7. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save flat network settings.

Configuring a UNI

To configure a UNI:

1. Navigate to the topology in one of the following ways:
   - Start creating or editing a network service template.
   - Start creating or editing a network service.
2. Click the UNI that you want to configure.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃⌃.
3. In the **Name** field, enter the name of the UNI.
4. If necessary, in the **Description** field, enter a brief description of the UNI.
5. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save UNI settings.

Monitoring solution components

An external Zabbix monitoring system is used for monitoring of CPE devices, as well as virtual network functions and physical network functions. You must deploy a Zabbix server on one of your locations, or connect an existing Zabbix server, and deploy Zabbix proxy servers.

Zabbix proxy servers are used for receiving monitoring results at individual locations and sending these monitoring results to the Zabbix server. The Zabbix server processes the monitoring results, after which they are displayed in the web interface of the orchestrator.

The orchestrator uses an API to integrate with the Zabbix server. When you register a CPE device or deploy a virtual network function or physical network function in a network service, a corresponding host is automatically created on the Zabbix server. You can specify the groups on the Zabbix server in which hosts are to be placed. The host on the Zabbix server is automatically deleted if you delete the corresponding CPE device, the virtual network function or physical network function.

Two monitoring methods are supported:

- Monitoring using Zabbix agents involves a component automatically sending monitoring data to a Zabbix proxy server.
- Monitoring via SNMP involves the Zabbix proxy server automatically connecting to a component via SNMP and receiving monitoring data.

For details about configuring the monitoring system, see the official documentation of the Zabbix solution.

Specifying the Zabbix server

To specify the Zabbix server:

1. In the menu, go to the **System** section.

   By default, the **Monitoring** tab is selected, which displays the Zabbix server connection settings.

2. Select the **Monitoring** tab.

   The settings for connecting to the Zabbix server are displayed.

3. In the **URL** field, enter the URL of the Zabbix API. The orchestrator sends HTTP requests to the specified URL to receive monitoring results and display then as charts.

   The URL consists of the address of the Zabbix web interface and the api_jsonrpc.php file name, which is used for API calls. For example, if the Zabbix web interface is located at http://192.168.2.1, enter `http://192.168.2.1/api_jsonrpc.php`.

4. In the **Username** field, enter the user name for connecting the orchestrator to the Zabbix API. You must enter the user name of an account that has read and write permissions to groups on the Zabbix server, as well as permission to create groups.

5. In the **Password** field, enter the password for connecting to the Zabbix API.

6. In the **Grouping by Zabbix** drop-down list, select a method for grouping CPE device hosts, as well as virtual network functions and physical network functions on the Zabbix server:

   - **By specified groups** to place hosts of CPE devices, virtual network functions, and physical network functions into the specified groups. If you select this option, do the following:

     a. In the **VNF/PNF group** field, enter a group name for the hosts of virtual network functions and physical network functions.

     b. In the **CPE group** field, enter a group name for CPE device hosts.

   - **By tenant** to place hosts of CPE devices, virtual network functions, and physical network functions into automatically created groups. Groups correspond to tenants to which the CPE devices are added, and virtual network functions and physical network functions are assigned.

7. In the **Trigger synchronization (sec)** field, enter the interval in seconds for receiving notifications about problems from the Zabbix server on the orchestrator. Range of values: 5 to 600. Default value: `600`.

8. Below the **Token** field, click **Generate** to generate a token that API requests from the Zabbix server to the orchestrator must contain. If an API request does not contain the token, the orchestrator does not accept such an API request. Security is also protected by TLS certificates.

   You can enter the token manually or view it by clicking the view icon.

9. If you want to check the availability of the Zabbix server, click **Test connection**.

10. Click **Apply**.

The Zabbix server is specified.

Specifying the Zabbix proxy server

To specify a Zabbix proxy server:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of SD-WAN Controllers.

2. In the **Resources** pane, select the created domain, then select the added data center for which you want to specify a Zabbix proxy server.

3. Select the **System resources** tab.

   The settings for connecting to the Zabbix proxy server and VNFM are displayed.

4. Under **Zabbix proxy**, in the **Name** field, enter the name of the Zabbix proxy server. The name must match the name specified in the Zabbix server settings.

5. In the **IP address** field, enter the IP address of the Zabbix proxy server. The entered IP address must be accessible for the CPE devices and virtual network functions and physical network functions that you want to monitor.

6. Click **Apply**.

The Zabbix proxy server is specified.

You can delete the Zabbix proxy server connection settings by clicking **Delete**.

Configuring CPE device monitoring

You can configure monitoring in a CPE template. Monitoring settings specified in the CPE template are automatically propagated to all CPE devices that use this CPE template.

To configure CPE device monitoring:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** section.

   A table of CPE templates is displayed.

2. Click the CPE template in which you want to configure monitoring.

   The settings area is displayed in the lower part of the page. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, the **Information** tab is selected, which displays general information about the CPE template.

3. Select the **Monitoring** tab.

   The CPE device monitoring settings are displayed.

4. In the **Monitoring type** drop-down list, select a monitoring method for the CPE device:

   - **SNMP** means monitoring using the SNMP protocol.
   - **Agent** means monitoring using Zabbix agents.

5. In the **Zabbix template** field, enter the name of the Zabbix template.

6. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save CPE template settings.

Viewing monitoring results

You can view monitoring results for an SD-WAN instance, CPE device, a virtual network function, or a physical network function:

- To view the monitoring results for an SD-WAN instance, go to the **SD-WAN→SD-WAN instances** section, the SD-WAN instance, and select the **Monitoring** tab.
- To view monitoring results for a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** section, click the CPE device, and select the **Monitoring** tab.
- To view monitoring results for a virtual network function or a physical network function, log in to the self-service portal, go to the **Catalog** menu section, in the **Network services** pane, click the deployed network service, click the virtual or physical network function, and select the **Monitoring** tab.

In the drop-down list in the upper part of the settings area, you can select the parameter for which the monitoring results are displayed. To view monitoring results for a selected period, you can use the following time filters:

- **Real-time**
- **Day**
- **Week**
- **Month**

You can also specify the time period manually.

Viewing problems

The monitoring settings on the Zabbix server determine which problems warrant notifications and how these problems are classified according to their severity levels. You can view the table of problems on the CPE device and in virtual or physical network function settings:

- To view the table of problems for a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, and select the **Problems** tab.
- To view the table of problems for a virtual or physical network function, log in to the self-service portal, go to the **Catalog** menu section, in the **Network services** pane, click the deployed network service, click the virtual network function or physical network function, and select the **Problems** tab.

Information about problems is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Name** is the name of the problem.
- **Level** is the severity level of the problem:
  - **Average**
  - **Disaster**
  - **High**
  - **Information**
  - **Not classified**
- **Time** is the time when the problem occurred.
- **Duration** is the duration of the problem in seconds.

Viewing the status of the solution and its components

To view the status of solution components:

1. In the menu, go to the **Dashboard** section.

   The following blocks of information are displayed:

   - **Event errors** contains errors that occurred during events.
   - **Task errors** contains errors that occurred when performing custom tasks.
   - **Active sessions** contains active user sessions.
   - **Resources** contains information about computing resource usage by solution components.
   - **Service requests** contains service requests.
   - **Disconnected CPE** contains CPE devices to which access has been lost.
   - **Errors on CPE** contains errors encountered by CPE devices.
   - **Problems on CPE** contains problems encountered by CPE devices.
   - **Problems on VNF/PNF** contains problems encountered by virtual network functions and physical network functions.

   If a solution component is operating correctly, the corresponding widget displays the *Everything is running smoothly* message. An update icon is displayed in the upper part of a block; when this icon is clicked, the displayed information is refreshed. You can drag blocks with the mouse to change the layout.

2. If you want to configure which blocks are displayed by default, in the upper part of the page, click the settings icon → **Reset to default layout**.

3. If you want to set a different time interval for updating information in blocks:

   a. In the upper part of the page, click the settings icon → **Set update interval**.

   b. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Update dashboard every (sec)** field, enter the interval in seconds for updating information in blocks. Range of values: 5 to 86,400. The default setting is `60`.

   c. Click **Ok**.

   The interval for updating information in blocks is modified.

Viewing logs

You can view the logs of solution components for technical support purposes. Kaspersky SD-WAN does not send logs outside the perimeter of your organization's information infrastructure.

To view the logs:

1. In the menu, go to the **Logs** section.

   The log management page is displayed.

2. In the **Data centers** pane, select the created data center to which the solution components belong.

3. In the **Resources** pane, select the solution component whose log you want to view.

   The log is displayed. By default, the **Tasks** tab is selected, which displays the table of custom tasks. Information about custom tasks is displayed in the following columns of the table:

   - **Task action** is the action of the custom task.
   - **Object** is the solution component associated with the custom task.
   - **SR** is a link to the service request associated with the custom task.
   - **Object ID** is the ID of the solution component associated with the custom task.
   - **Object name** is the name of the solution component associated with the custom task.
   - **Initiator** is the name of the user that ran the custom task.
   - **Initiator IP** is the IP address of the user that ran the custom task.
   - **Start time** is the date and time when the custom task began running.
   - **End time** is the date and time when the custom task finished running.

4. If you want to view information about events that occurred during the operation of a solution component, select the **Events** tab.

   A table of events is displayed. Information about events is displayed in the following columns of the table:

   - **Event action** is the action of the event.
   - **Object** is the solution component associated with the event.
   - **SR** is a link to the service request associated with the event.
   - **Object name** is the name of the solution component associated with the event.
   - **Object ID** is the ID of the solution component associated with the event.
   - **Initiator** is the name of the user whose action caused the event.
   - **Time** is the date and time when the event was created.

5. If you want to view the service requests of a solution component, select the **Service requests** tab.

   A table of service requests is displayed. Information about service requests is displayed in the following columns of the table:

   - **Service request** is the name of the service request.
   - **Status** is the status of the service request.
   - **Initiator** is the name of the user whose action caused the service request.
   - **Time** is the date and time when the service request was created.

The actions you can perform with the tables are described in the Managing solution component tables instructions.

Viewing and deleting service requests

Service requests are tasks that are performed while solution components are working and are automatically created as a result of user actions. For example, when a user applies a CPE template to a CPE device, a corresponding service request is created. Each service request consists of several steps that are executed in sequence.

Viewing service requests

You can view the service requests of a tenant, a CPE device, and an SD-WAN instance:

- To view service requests for a tenant, go to the **Tenants** section and under **Tenants**, select a tenant.

  The list of service requests is displayed under **Service requests**.

- To view the service requests for an SD-WAN instance, go to the **SD-WAN→SD-WAN instances** section, the SD-WAN instance, and select the **Service requests** tab.

  A table of service requests is displayed.

- To view service requests for a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** section, click the CPE device, and select the **Service requests** tab.

  A table of service requests is displayed.

The list of service requests of a tenant displays the name and ID of the service request, as well as its creation date and time. Information about service requests of an SD-WAN instance and CPE device is displayed in the following table columns:

- **Name** is the name of the service request.
- **Created** is the date and time when the service request was created.
- **Task ID** is the ID of the service request.
- **Time** is the duration of the service request in seconds.
- **Status** is the status of the service request:
  - **Executing** means the service request is being executed.
  - **Not executed** means an error occurred while executing the service request.
  - **Executed** means the service request was successfully executed.
  - **Reverting** means an error occurred while executing one of the steps of the service request, so the steps that already have been executed are now being reverted.
  - **Not reverted** means an error occurred while reverting one of the previously executed steps of the service request.
  - **Reverted** means the previously executed steps of the service request have been successfully reverted.
  - **Suspended** means that an error occurred while executing the service request to register the CPE device, and the CPE device registration was not completed. You can resume the registration of the CPE device.
- **Actions** contains the actions can be performed with the service requests.

You can open the log of the service request:

- If you want to open the log of a tenant's service request, click the name of the service request.
- If you want to open the log of a service request for an SD-WAN instance or CPE device, click the ID of the service request.

A log of the service request is displayed.

The log contains information about the steps at which errors occurred. You can click the step at which the error occurred to view a detailed description of that error.

Deleting service requests

You can delete service requests of an SD-WAN instance or a CPE device. Deleting a service request stops the associated operation.

Deleted service requests cannot be restored.

To delete a service request, do one of the following:

- If you want to delete an individual service request, click **Delete** next to it.
- If you want to delete all service requests, in the upper part of the settings area, under **Actions**, click **Delete all service requests**.

  The service requests are deleted and are no longer displayed in the table.

Sending CPE device notifications to users

Kaspersky SD-WAN supports sending notifications to user email addresses with the following information about CPE devices:

- Events from the log:
  - Enabling and disabling a CPE device
  - Connecting or disconnecting a port
  - Connecting or disconnecting a link
- Problems:
  - Encountered problems
  - Resolved problems

Information is accumulated for five seconds before the notification is sent. For example, if disconnecting a port causes five links to be disconnected, this information must be accumulated and sent to the user in the same notification.

Specify the SMTP server to be used by all tenants for sending notifications. On the administrator portal, you can configure notifications about events and problems for all tenants. On the self-service portal, you can configure notifications about events and problems for an individual tenant.

Specifying the SMTP Server

To specify an SMTP server:

1. In the menu, go to the **System** section.

   By default, the **Monitoring** tab is selected, which displays the Zabbix server connection settings.

2. Select the **Notification** → **SMTP** tab.

   The SMTP server connection settings are displayed.

3. Select the **Enable** check box to use the SMTP server. This check box is cleared by default.

4. In the **SMTP server** field, enter the IP address or domain name of the SMTP server.

5. In the **SMTP server port** field, enter the port number of the SMTP server. Range of values: 0 to 65,535. Default value: `25`.

6. In the **Sender email** field, enter the email address from which the SMTP server sends notifications to users.

7. If you want to configure encryption of the connection between Kaspersky SD-WAN and the SMTP server, in the **SSL/TLS** drop-down list, select one of the following values:

   - **None** to leave the connection unencrypted. This is the default setting.
   - **STARTTLS** to determine the encryption method and then establish an encrypted connection.
   - **SMTPS** to establish an encrypted connection straight away.

8. If you want to enable Kaspersky SD-WAN authentication on the SMTP server:

   a. Select the **Authentication** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

   b. In the **Username** field, enter the user name that Kaspersky SD-WAN uses to authenticate on the SMTP server. The maximum length of the name is 64 characters.

   c. In the **Password** field, enter the password that Kaspersky SD-WAN uses to authenticate on the SMTP server. The maximum length of the password is 64 characters. To see the entered password, you can click the show icon 👁.

9. If you want to send a test message using the SMTP server:

   a. Click **Test**.

   b. This opens a window; in that window, enter the email address to which you want the SMTP server to send a test message.

   c. Click **Send**.

   A test message is sent to the specified email address with *Notification test* in the subject and body.

10. Click **Apply**.

The SMTP server is specified.

Configuring notifications

The platform administrator must specify the SMTP server to enable sending notifications to the user.

To configure notifications:

1. In the menu, go to the **System** section.

   By default, the **Monitoring** tab is selected, which displays the Zabbix server connection settings.

2. Select the **Notification** → **Alert** tab.

   Notification settings are displayed.

3. Select the **Enable** check box to send notifications to the user. This check box is cleared by default.

4. In the **Receiver email address** field, enter the email address to which you want to send notifications.

5. In the **Subject** field, enter the subject text of the notification email messages. The maximum length of the topic is 64 characters.

6. Click **Apply**.

Notifications will be sent to the specified email address.

Selecting the Docker container log verbosity

Kaspersky SD-WAN automatically keeps logs of the Docker containers of the controller and orchestrator. You can select Docker container log verbosity.

To select Docker container log verbosity:

1. Select the verbosity level of Docker container logs in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to select Docker container log verbosity for the controller, in the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section, click **Management → Configuration menu** next to the controller, and go to the **Logs** section.

   - If you want to select Docker container log verbosity for the orchestrator, in the menu, go to the **System** section and select the **Orchestrator log** tab.

   This opens a page displaying a table of Docker containers. Information about Docker containers is displayed in the following columns of the table:

   - **Module name** is the name of the Docker container.

   - **Logging level** is the Docker container log verbosity:

   You can find the Docker container by entering its name in the **Filter** field.

2. Select the Docker container verbosity level in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to select the verbosity level of all Docker containers, click the corresponding button in the **General logging level** section.

   - If you want to select the verbosity level for an individual Docker container, click the corresponding button next to it.

   You can select the following verbosity levels for Docker containers:

   - **TRACE** to have the log include the most complete information about the operation and condition of the module and its variables. You can use this level of detail for observing code execution, as well as for diagnostics and detailed analysis of errors that occur during development.

   - **DEBUG** to have the log include the information necessary for debugging the module, such as the status of operations and values of variables. You can use this level of detail to diagnose errors and analyze module behavior.

   - **INFO** to have the log include general information necessary for understanding the functioning of the module, for example, confirmations of operations. You can use this level of detail to track the progress of the execution of the module. This level of detail is selected by default for all containers.

   - **WARN** to have the log include information about incidents that are not errors, but may compromise the operation of the container and require your intervention, such as problems with settings and deprecated functions. You can use this level of detail to prevent potential errors.

   - **ERROR** to have the log include information about errors that occur during the execution of the code and require your intervention. An error message can contain information about the part of the container in which the error occurred, as well as detailed information about the error. You can use this level of detail to resolve occurring errors.

The Docker container log verbosity level is modified.

Monitoring CPE, VNF, and PNF devices using SNMP

You can use SNMP to monitor CPE devices as well as virtual network functions and physical network functions. You need to install an SNMP agent on the component that you want to monitor. The SNMP agent gathers monitoring data and sends it to the SNMP manager for processing. In Kaspersky SD-WAN, the Zabbix proxy server acts as the SNMP manager.

The SNMP manager and SNMP agents exchange requests and notifications. By default, SNMP agents receive requests from the SNMP manager on port 161. However, the SNMP manager can send requests through any available port. The response arrives on the same port from which the request was sent.

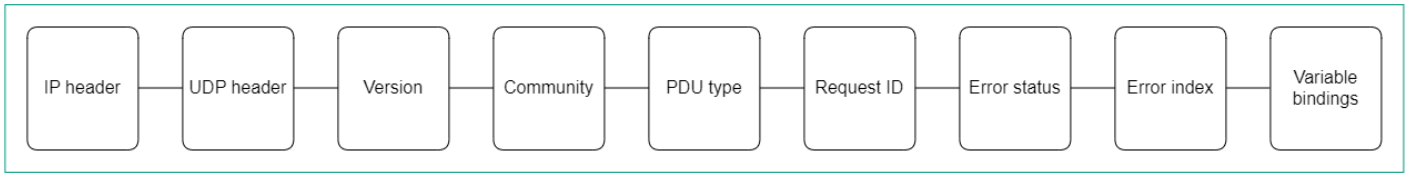
By default, the SNMP manager receives notifications from SNMP agents on port 162. However, SNMP agents can send notifications through any available port. Two types of notifications exist:

- *Traps* are notifications about events that the SNMP agent sends without a prior request from the SNMP manager. When a specified event occurs, such as a shutdown of a CPE device or one of its network interfaces, the SNMP agent generates a trap and sends it to the SNMP manager as a UPD message. Traps allow automatically informing the SNMP manager about events without waiting for a request.

- *Inform requests* are notifications similar to traps, which differ in that they require additional confirmation from the SNMP manager. When the SNMP agent sends an inform request to the SNMP manager, the SNMP agent waits to receive an acknowledgment. If the SNMP manager successfully receives and processes the inform request, it sends an acknowledgment message to the SNMP agent. The acknowledgment mechanism allows you to ensure the reliability of delivery of notifications.

When using the TLS or DTLS protocol, traps arrive on port 10162 of the SNMP manager, and information requests arrive on port 10161.

All basic protocol data units (PDUs) have the same structure (see figure below). The IP header and UDP header are used for encapsulation and are not actually part of the protocol data unit.



SNMP Protocol Data Unit diagram

To view the table of traps, go to the **Infrastructure** menu section, click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller to which the components that you want to monitor are connected, and go to the **SNMP** section. Information about traps is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **#** is the serial number of the trap.

- **Manager IP** is the IP address or host name of the SNMP manager.

- **Manager port** is the port number of the SNMP manager.

- **Community** is the SNMP community string.

- **Allowed traps** are traps that SNMP agents must send to the SNMP manager.
- **Description** is a brief description of the trap.

Configuring the connection of the SNMP manager to SNMP agents

You must specify the settings for connecting the SNMP manager to SNMP agents installed on CPE devices, as well as on the virtual network functions and physical network functions. The specified settings are used for all SNMP agents.

To configure the connection of the SNMP manager to SNMP agents:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of SD-WAN Controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller to which the components that you want to monitor are connected.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **SNMP** section.

   A table of traps is displayed.

4. In the upper part of the page, under **Manager parameters**, click **Edit**.

5. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Address** field, enter the IP address or host name of the equipment on which the SNMP agent is installed, in the `< transport protocol >:< IP address or host name >/< port number >` format. For example, you can enter `udp:192.168.2.0/24`.

6. In the **Community** field, enter the SNMP community string. The SNMP community string is used as a password which the SNMP manager uses to connect to SNMP agents. Default value: `public` means read-only access is granted. We recommend changing the default to a unique community string to ensure the security of communication between the SNMP manager and the SNMP agents.

   > You must specify the same community string when configuring the SNMP manager connection to SNMP agents and when creating or editing traps.

7. Click **Save**.

The connecting of the SNMP manager to agents is configured.

Creating a trap

You can create a trap that SNMP agents must send to the SNMP manager.

To create a trap:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of SD-WAN Controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller to which the components that you want to monitor are connected.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **SNMP** section.

   A table of traps is displayed.

4. Under **Trap parameters**, click **Edit**.

5. This opens a window; in that window, click **+ Add** to create a trap.

6. In the **Manager IP** field, enter the IP address or host name of the SNMP manager. Range of values: 1 to 255.

7. In the **Manager port** field, enter the port number of the SNMP manager. Range of values: 1 to 65,534. Default value: `162`.

8. In the **Community** field, enter the SNMP community string. The SNMP community string is used as a password which the SNMP manager uses to connect to SNMP agents. Default value: `public` means read-only access is granted. We recommend changing the default to a unique community string to ensure the security of communication between the SNMP manager and the SNMP agents.

   > You must specify the same SNMP community string when configuring the SNMP manager connection to SNMP agents and when creating or editing traps.

9. In the **Allowed traps** field, click **Edit** and clear the following check boxes to specify which traps SNMP agents do not send to the SNMP manager:

   - Clear the **Trap, when an interface is active** check box to prevent the SNMP agent from sending a trap to the SNMP manager when one of the ports of the component on which the SNMP agent is installed becomes active.
   - Clear the **Trap, when an interface is inactive** check box to prevent the SNMP agent from sending a trap to the SNMP manager when one of the ports of the component on which the SNMP agent is installed becomes inactive.
   - Clear the **Trap, when equipment is active** check box to prevent the SNMP agent from sending a trap to the SNMP manager when the component on which the SNMP agent is installed becomes active.
   - Clear the **Trap, when equipment is inactive** check box to prevent the SNMP agent from sending a trap to the SNMP manager when the component on which the SNMP agent is installed becomes inactive.

   By default, the check boxes are selected.

10. Click **Back** to continue specifying trap settings.

11. In the **Description** field, enter a brief description of the trap.
12. Click **Save**.

The trap is created and displayed in the table.

Editing a trap

To edit a trap:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of SD-WAN Controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller to which the components that you want to monitor are connected.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **SNMP** section.

   A table of traps is displayed.

4. Under **Trap parameters**, click **Edit**.

5. This opens a window; in that window, if necessary, edit the trap settings. For a description of the settings, see instructions for creating a trap.

6. Click **Save**.

The trap is modified and updated in the table.

Deleting a trap

Deleted traps cannot be restored.

To delete a trap:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of SD-WAN Controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller to which the components that you want to monitor are connected.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **SNMP** section.

   A table of traps is displayed.

4. Under **Trap parameters**, click **Edit**.

5. This opens a window; in that window, click **Delete** next to the trap that you want to delete.

6. Click **Save**.

The trap is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

Link monitoring

To enable link monitoring:

1. Enable link monitoring in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to enable monitoring for a link that was established from a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** section, click the CPE device, select the **Links** tab, and click **Management → Set thresholds** next to the link.

   - If you want to enable monitoring of one of the links in the table of all links, go to the **Infrastructure** section, click **Management → Configuration menu** next to the controller, go to the **Links** section, and click **Management → Set thresholds** next to the link.

   - If you want to enable monitoring of one of the links in the graphic topology with all links, go to the **Infrastructure** section, click **Management → Configuration menu** next to the controller, go to the **Topology** section, click the link, and click **Set thresholds**.

2. Select the **Enable threshold monitoring** check box to enable link monitoring. This check box is cleared by default.

3. If you want to specify link monitoring thresholds:

   a. To set default link monitoring thresholds, click **Set to default**.

   b. If you want the controller to use the link as the last resort when calculating paths, regardless of monitoring thresholds, select the **Last resort** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

   c. In the **Interval for processing errors and utilization rate (sec)** field, enter the time interval in seconds for measuring the number of errors on the link and its level of utilization. Range of values: 1 to 300. Default value: `60`.

   d. If you want to specify a threshold for the number of errors per second on the link, select the **Enable error monitoring** check box and in the **Critical error level (errors/sec)** field, enter the threshold value. Range of values: 1 to 1,000,000. This check box is cleared by default, and the value in the field is `1000`.

   e. If you want to specify a threshold for link utilization as a percentage of the bit rate of the source service interface, select the **Enable utilization monitoring** check box and in the **Critical utilization level (%)** field, enter the threshold value. This check box is cleared by default, and the value in the field is `95`.

   f. In the **Interval for processing latency, jitter, and packet loss (sec)** field, enter the time interval, in seconds, for measuring latency, jitter, and packet loss on the link. Range of values: 1 to 600. Default value: `30`.

   g. If you want to specify a threshold for latency in milliseconds for transmitting traffic over the link, select the **Enable latency monitoring** check box and in the **Critical latency level (ms)** field, enter the threshold value. Range of values: 5 to 1000. This check box is cleared by default, and the value in the field is `100`.

   h. If you want to specify a threshold for jitter time in milliseconds for transmitting traffic over the link, select the **Enable jitter monitoring** check box and in the **Critical jitter level (ms)** field, enter the threshold value. Range of values: 5 to 1000. This check box is cleared by default, and the value in the field is `100`.

   i. If you want to specify a threshold for the percentage of lost traffic packages on the link, select the **Enable packet loss monitoring** check box and in the **Critical packet loss level (%)** field, enter the threshold value. Range of values: 1 to 100. This check box is cleared by default, and the value in the field is `2`.

   The specified monitoring thresholds are used by the threshold constraints.

4. Save the link monitoring settings in one of the following ways:

   - To save the link monitoring settings, click **Save**.
   - If you want to save the link monitoring settings and specify the same settings on the opposite-direction link, click **Save for both links**.

5. If you have specified link monitoring settings for a link established from the CPE device, click **Save** in the upper part of the settings area to save the CPE device settings.

Building an SD-WAN network between CPE devices

To transfer traffic, you need to build an SD-WAN network between CPE devices using links that are established on top of the underlay network. CPE devices establish links from all available SD-WAN interfaces of the WAN type. The links are unidirectional. This means that when establishing a link from CPE 1 to CPE 2, a link is automatically established also from CPE 2 to CPE 1. Before building an SD-WAN network, you must ensure connectivity between CPE devices.

Links are established based on the roles that you assign to CPE devices. You can assign the SD-WAN Gateway role or the standard CPE device role to a CPE device. SD-WAN Gateways establish links with all standard CPE devices and other SD-WAN Gateways. Standard CPE devices establish links only with SD-WAN Gateways. By default, all CPE devices have the standard CPE device role.

If you want a link to be established between two standard CPE devices, you need to assign the same topology tag to them. You can make a standard CPE device a transit device to allow other CPE devices to establish links through it.

The links between CPE devices form a topology. The following topologies are the most commonly used in Kaspersky SD-WAN:

- In a Hub-and-Spoke topology, links between CPE devices are established through SD-WAN gateways.
- In Full-Mesh and Partial-Mesh topologies, links between CPE devices are established directly, or some links are established directly, while others are established through SD-WAN gateways.

Within the SD-WAN network, traffic between CPE devices can take multiple paths. The paths go through the links between CPE devices. The totality of all possible paths between two CPE devices is called a *segment*. The segment source CPE device can distribute the traffic bound to the segment destination CPE device across multiple paths. One segment can contain 2 to 16 paths.

The following path types are supported:

- *Auto-SPF* (Shortest-Path Forwarding) is a path that is automatically calculated by the controller. You can forward traffic along Auto-SPF paths in two modes:
  - In *Active/Active* mode, multiple Auto-SPF paths are used simultaneously to forward traffic between CPE devices.
  - In *Active/Standby* mode, one Auto-SPF path with the lowest cost is used to forward traffic between CPE devices. If the Auto-SPF path being used becomes unavailable, the Auto-SPF path with the next lowest cost is used. The path cost is calculated by adding up the cost of every link traversed by the path. You can manually specify link cost.

  You can configure the traffic forwarding mode along Auto-SPF paths when configuring the paths.
- *Auto-TE* (Traffic Engineering) is a path automatically calculated by the controller, taking into account the threshold constraints you specified.
- *Manual-TE* is a path that you create manually. When creating a Manual-TE path, specify the links that the path passes through on the way from the segment source CPE device to the segment destination CPE device.

About the Hub-and-Spoke topology

In a Hub-and-Spoke topology, the hub site is connected to multiple spoke sites to exchange traffic. This topology is the most common for SD-WAN network design because it simplifies network management and provides a higher level of security by routing traffic through the hub site where traffic analysis and categorization is performed. The Hub-and-Spoke topology also enables more efficient use of bandwidth by optimizing and prioritizing traffic at the hub site.

To build a Hub-and-Spoke topology, you need to assign the SD-WAN gateway and standard CPE roles to CPE devices. In this case, SD-WAN gateways establish links with other SD-WAN gateways and standard CPE devices, while standard CPE devices establish links only with SD-WAN gateways.

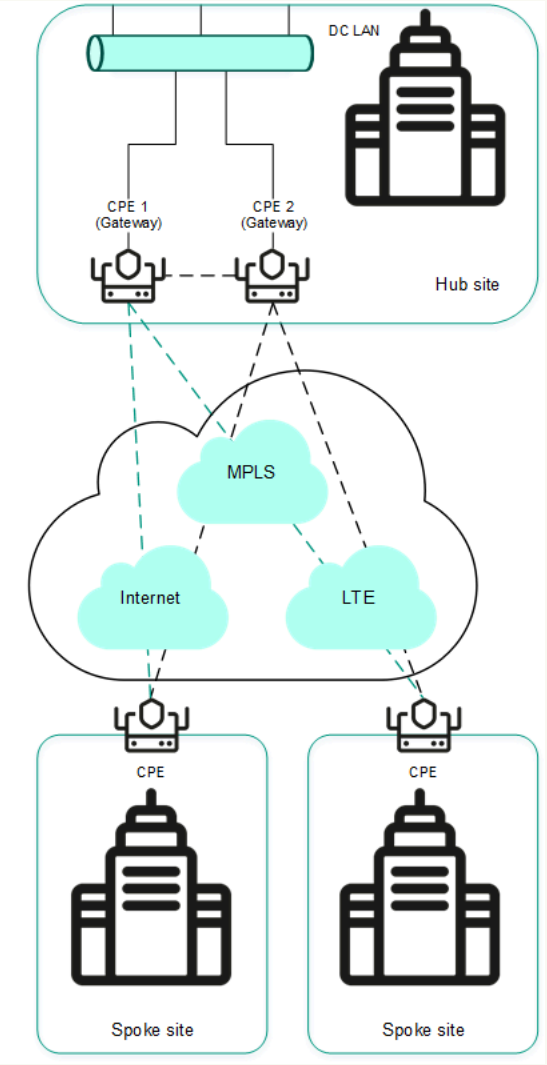
You can use quality of service to limit bandwidth for CPE devices or traffic classes.

Examples of Hub-and-Spoke topologies:

- Hub-and-Spoke topology without connection between spoke sites

  The figure below shows a Hub-and-Spoke topology in which spoke sites communicate with the hub site, but not with each other. SD-WAN networks built using this topology are easy to design and maintain, because all necessary network services and applications are located in the same data center.

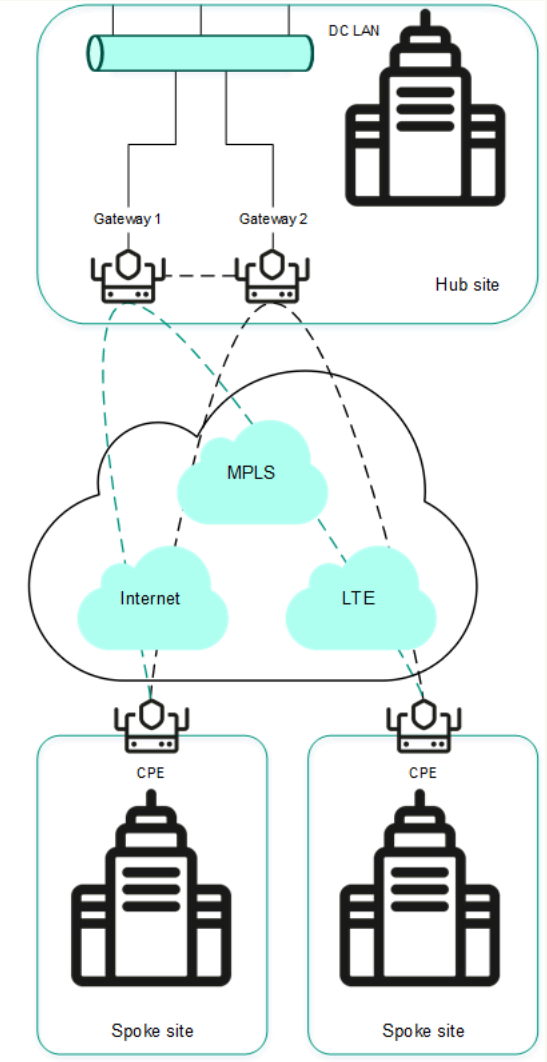
  CPE devices being registered are automatically included in the management transport service with the Leaf role and can be behind NAT (Network Address Translation) and PAT (Port Address Translation). In such a Hub-and-Spoke topology, traffic cannot be transmitted directly between CPE devices.



Hub-and-Spoke topology without connection between spoke sites

- Hub-and-Spoke topology with connection between spoke sites through the hub site.

The figure below shows a Hub-and-Spoke topology in which spoke sites can communicate with each other through the hub site. CPE devices being registered are automatically added to the management transport service and may be behind NAT and PAT.



Hub-and-Spoke topology with connection between spoke sites through the hub site

About Full-Mesh and Partial-Mesh topologies

In Full-Mesh and Partial-Mesh topologies, links are established between standard CPE devices. Establishing links between standard CPE devices has the following advantages over a Hub-and-Spoke topology in which standard CPE devices must communicate with each other through SD-WAN gateways:

- Improved aspects of link quality, such as delay, packet loss, and jitter.
- Higher bandwidth of links.
- Economy of hardware resources of SD-WAN gateways.

To build a Full-Mesh topology, you need to assign the standard CPE device role to the CPE devices and assign the same topology tag to the standard CPE devices. In this case, standard CPE devices with the same topology tags establish links with each other.

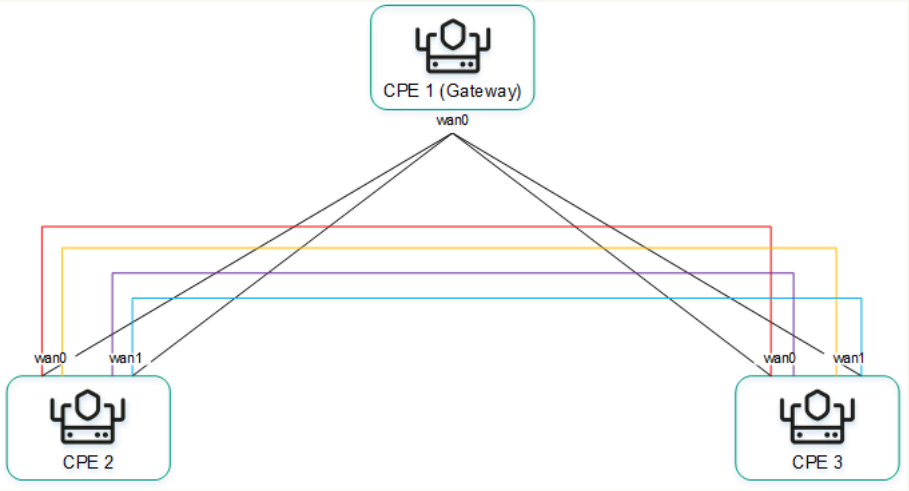
To build a Partial-Mesh topology, you need to assign the SD-WAN gateway and standard CPE device roles to the CPE devices and assign the same topology tag to the standard CPE devices. In this case, SD-WAN gateways establish links with other SD-WAN gateways and with standard CPE devices, while the standard CPE devices establish links with SD-WAN gateways and with each other provided the same topology tag is assigned to the standard CPE devices. If you want to divide the standard CPE devices into groups, you need to assign a unique topology tag to all standard CPE devices in each group, and also assign a topology tag to be shared by at least one standard CPE device in each group.

You can use quality of service to limit bandwidth for CPE devices or traffic classes.

Full-Mesh and Partial-Mesh topology examples:

- Full-Mesh topology.

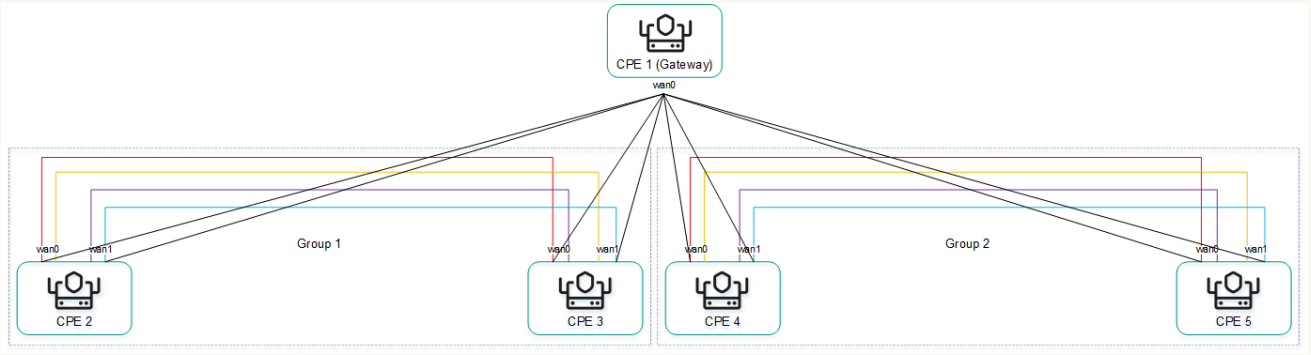
  The figure below shows a Full-Mesh topology in which all CPE devices establish links with each other. Traffic between CPE 2 and CPE 3 devices is forwarded directly. With a large number of CPE devices and links, this topology can be extremely taxing on the resources of the controller.



Full-Mesh topology

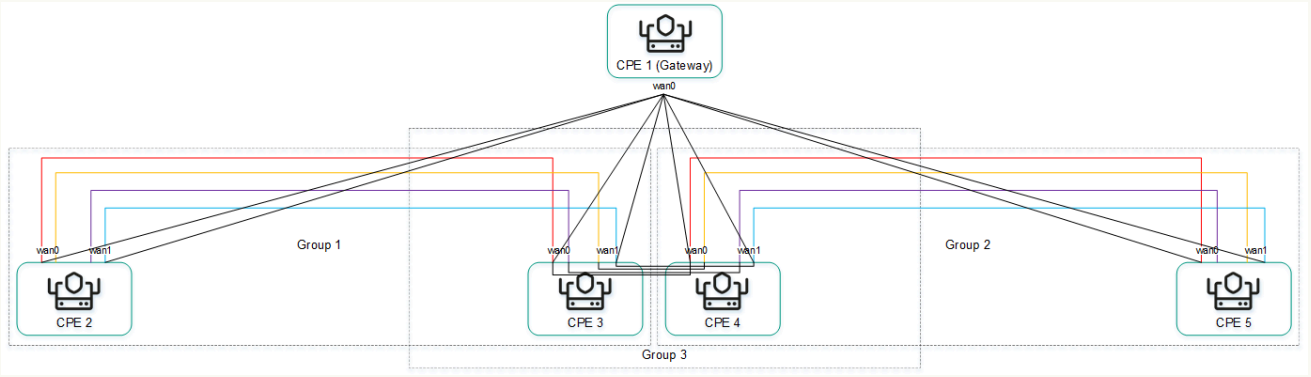
- Partial-Mesh topology.

The figure below shows a Partial-Mesh topology. This topology is used when direct links between some CPE devices may be undesirable for administrative reasons, or impossible for technical reasons. In this topology, you can group CPE devices in such a way that CPE devices in the same group communicate directly with each other and communicate with CPE devices from other groups through a transit CPE device.



Partial-Mesh topology

A CPE device can belong to multiple groups at the same time, as shown in the figure below.

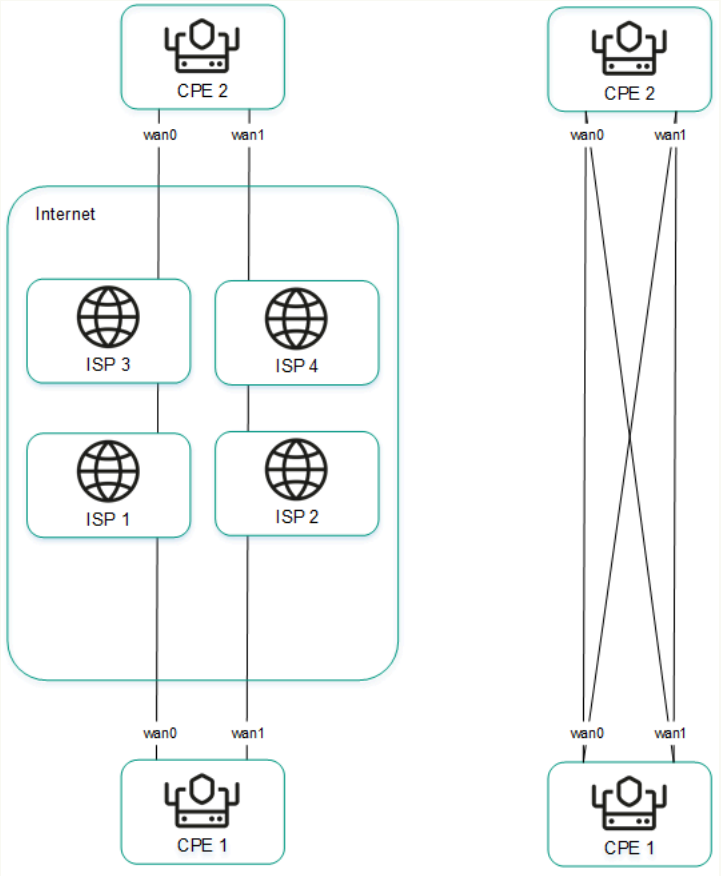


Partial-Mesh topology, CPE devices in multiple groups

When creating direct links between CPE devices, depending on the type of connectivity of the CPE devices through physical links, the following variants of overlay connectivity are possible:

- All physical links have direct IP connectivity to each other.

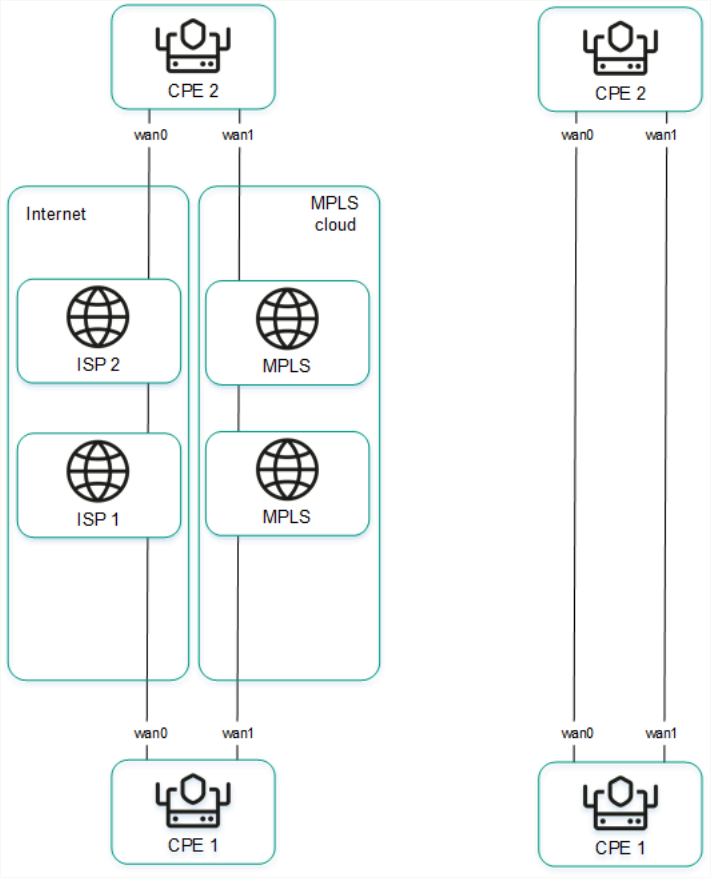
  Thanks to the connectivity within the internet, CPE devices can establish the maximum number of links with each other (see the figure below).

  Full physical connectivity between CPE devices

- Physical links have partial IP connectivity to each other.

In the figure below, the internet cloud and the MPLS cloud are not connected to each other, so links can only be established through SD-WAN interfaces of the WAN type that belong to the same cloud. CPE1:WAN0 → CPE2:WAN1 and CPE1:WAN1 → CPE2:WAN0 links cannot be established.



Other overlay network connectivity scenarios are also possible if IP connectivity between SD-WAN interfaces of the WAN type of CPE devices within the same cloud is impossible for other reasons, for example, when using an MPLS topology that does not support direct communication between CPE devices, or due to the presence of NAT/PAT or ACL on the internet.

Assigning a role to a CPE device

You can assign a role to a CPE template or a CPE device. A role assigned to a CPE template is automatically assigned to all CPE devices that use this CPE template.

To assign a role to a CPE device:

1. Assign a role to a CPE device in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to assign a role to a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **Topology** tab.

   - If you want to assign a role to a CPE device, do one of the following:

     - In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** section, click the CPE device, select the **Topology** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

     - In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section, click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller, go to the **Topology tags** section, and in the **Switch** drop-down list, select the CPE device.

2. In the **Role** drop-down list, select the role of the CPE device:

   - **CPE** for a standard CPE device. This is the default setting.

   - **Gateway** for an SD-WAN Gateway. You cannot assign topology tags to SD-WAN gateways.

3. Save the CPE device role in one of the following ways:

   - If you have assigned a role to a CPE template or a CPE device in the **SD-WAN** section, in the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

   - If you have assigned a role to a CPE device in the **Topology tags** section, click **Save**.

   The role is assigned to the CPE device.

Assigning a topology tag to a CPE device

You can assign a topology tag to a CPE template or a CPE device. A topology tag assigned to a CPE template is automatically assigned to all CPE devices that use this CPE template. CPE devices with the same topology tags automatically establish links with each other. A topology tag cannot be assigned to a CPE device if you have assigned the SD-WAN Gateway role to the CPE device.

To assign a topology tag to a CPE device:

1. Assign a topology tag to a CPE device in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to assign a topology tag to a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **Topology** tab.

   - If you want to assign a topology tag to a CPE device, do one of the following:

     - In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** section, click the CPE device, select the **Topology** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

     - In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section, click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller, go to the **Topology tags** section, and in the **Switch** drop-down list, select the CPE device.

   Topology tags are displayed.

2. In the **Topology tags** field, enter the topology tag that you want to assign to the CPE device and click the add icon +.

   The topology tag is assigned to the CPE device. You can assign multiple topology tags or remove a topology tag. To remove a topology tag, click the remove icon ✕ next to it.

3. Save the topology tags of the CPE device in one of the following ways:

   - If you have assigned a topology tag to a CPE template or a CPE device in the **SD-WAN** section, in the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

   - If you have assigned a topology tag to a CPE device in the **Topology tags** section, click **Save**.

Configuring paths

You can configure paths in a segment, CPE template or on the CPE device. Path settings specified in a segment or a CPE template are automatically propagated to all CPE devices that belong to this segment or use this CPE template. Path settings specified on a CPE device are automatically propagated to all CPE devices that belong to the same segment as that CPE device.

To configure paths:

1. Configure paths in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to configure paths in a segment, go to the **Infrastructure** section, click **Management** →**Configuration menu** next to the controller, go to the **Segments** section, and click **Management** → **Edit** next to the segment.

   - If you want to configure paths in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **Multipathing** tab.

   - If you want to configure paths on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, and select the **Multipathing** tab.

   Path settings are displayed.

2. In the **Maximum number of paths** field, enter the maximum number of paths supported by the CPE device or segment. Range of values: 1 to 16. Default value: `8`.

3. In the **Auto-SPF maximum** field, enter the maximum number of Auto-SPF paths supported by the CPE device or segment. Auto SPF paths are automatically calculated by the controller. Range of values: 1 to 8. Default value: `2`.

   If you want traffic to be transmitted between CPE devices in Active/Active mode, enter a value greater than `1` in this field. If you want traffic to be transmitted between CPE devices in Active/Standby mode, enter `1` in this field.

4. In the **Cost variance multiplier** field, enter the maximum ratio of the cost of this path to the lowest cost of any path on your SD-WAN network; if the cost of the path is below this limit, the path can be added to the segment. Range of values: 1.0 to 10.0. Default value: `10`. You cannot enter a value in this field if the **Multi-weight balancing** check box is selected.

   For example, if you enter `2` in this field, and the lowest path cost in your SD-WAN network is 10,000, paths with a cost of up to 20,000 can be added to the segment. In Active /Standby mode, the value in this field determines which Auto-SPF path is used if the previous Auto-SPF path becomes unavailable.

5. If you want paths to be added to the segment regardless of their cost, select the **Multi-weight balancing** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

6. Save the path settings in one of the following ways:

   - If you have configured paths in the segment, click **Save** to save the segment settings.

   - If you have configured paths in a CPE template or on a CPE device, in the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

   Path settings are saved.

Managing links

You can view the links in one of the following ways:

- To view the table of links established from a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, and select the **Links** tab.
- To view the table of all links, go to the **Infrastructure** menu section, click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller, and go to the **Links** section.
- To view the graphical topology with all links, go to the **Infrastructure** menu section, click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller, and go to the **Topology** section.

When viewing the table of links, information about the links is displayed in the following table columns:

- **Source** is the name, DPID, and OpenFlow port number of the CPE device that is the link source.
- **NAT/Disjoint src** is the IP address and port of the link source, separated by a colon.
- **Source IP/port** is the topological attribute of the link source, responsible for sending information about SD-WAN interfaces to the controller. Possible values:
  - **N** (Disabled. SD-WAN interface information is not sent to the controller).
  - **NAT/PAT** (the SD-WAN interface is behind NAT or PAT).
  - **WAN disjoint** (the SD-WAN interface is connected to an isolated network).
- **Destination** is the name, DPID, and OpenFlow port number of the CPE device that is the link destination.
- **NAT/Disjoint dst** is the IP address and port of the link destination, separated by a colon.
- **Destination IP/port** is the topological attribute of the link destination, responsible for sending information about SD-WAN interfaces to the controller. Possible values:
  - **N** (Disabled. SD-WAN interface information is not sent to the controller).
  - **NAT/PAT** (the SD-WAN interface is behind NAT or PAT).
  - **WAN disjoint** (the SD-WAN interface is connected to an isolated network).

  If necessary, you can hide all columns except **Source**, **Source IP/port**, **NAT/Disjoint src**, **Destination**, **Destination IP/port**, **NAT/Disjoint dst** by clicking the settings icon and selecting **Show tunnel IPs** in the menu.
- **Last resort** indicates whether the controller uses this link as the last resort when calculating the path, regardless of the monitoring indicators:
  - **Y**
  - **N**

- **Threshold monitoring** determines whether threshold monitoring on links is used. Possible values:
  - **Y** (monitoring enabled).
  - **N** (monitoring disabled).
- **Encryption** is the link encryption status. Possible values:
  - **Configured**
  - **On**
  - **Off**
- **CFM** is the time interval for sending control packets when Connectivity Fault Management is running. This column displays two values in the **<value 1>/<value 2>** format:
  - **<value 1>** is the time interval for sending control packets that you specified when you enabled CFM on the CPE device.
  - **<value 2>** -is the time interval for sending control packets that is currently being used. One of the following time intervals can be used for sending control packets:
    - The time interval for sending control packets that you specified when you enabled CFM on the CPE device. If you specify different time intervals for sending control packages on CPE devices, the largest of the specified time intervals is used. For example, if you specified 300 milliseconds as the control packet interval on CPE 1, and one second on CPE 2, the control packet interval is 1 second.
    - The time interval for sending control packets that you specified when you enabled CFM on the link. The time interval for sending control packets set for the link overrides the time intervals for sending control packets set on CPE devices. For example, if you specified 300 milliseconds as the control packet interval on CPE 1, one second on CPE 2, and 10 seconds on the link between CPE 1 and CPE 2, the resulting time interval for sending control packets is 10 seconds.

  Manually specified values in this column are underlined.
- **MTU** is the MTU value of the link.
- **Errors/second** is the number of errors per second on the link.
- **Utilization (%)** is the load of the link as a percentage of the bandwidth of the source service interface.
- **Latency (ms)** is the delay time in milliseconds for traffic transmitted through the link.
- **Jitter (ms)** is the jitter time in milliseconds for traffic transmitted through the link.
- **Packet loss (%)** is the percentage of traffic packet loss on the link.
- **Speed (Mbit/sec)** is the speed of traffic transmission through the link in Mbps.
- **Cost** is the link cost.

The actions that you can perform with the table are described in the Managing solution component tables article.

Specifying the cost of a link

To specify the cost of a link:

1. Specify the link cost in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to specify the cost of a link that was established from a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** section, click the CPE device, select the **Links** tab, and click **Management → Set cost** next to the link.

   - If you want to specify the cost of one of the links in the table of all links, go to the **Infrastructure** section, click **Management → Configuration menu** next to the controller, go to the **Links** section, and click **Management → Set cost** next to the link.

   - If you want to specify the cost of one of the links in the graphic topology with all links, go to the **Infrastructure** section, click **Management → Configuration menu** next to the controller, go to the **Topology** section, click the link, and click **Set cost**.

2. This opens a window; in that window, select the **Override** check box to specify the cost of the link. This check box is cleared by default.

3. In the **Link cost** field, enter the cost of the link. If you want to specify the same cost for the opposite-direction link, select the **Save for both links** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

4. Click **Save**.

   The link cost is specified.

5. If you have specified the link cost for a link established from the CPE device, click **Save** in the upper part of the settings area to save the CPE device settings.

Enabling Dampening

Dampening is a configurable mechanism that excludes unstable links whose state changes too frequently from path calculation. When determining link instability, the following state changes are taken into account:

- UP/LIVE → DOWN/NOT-LIVE.
- DOWN/NOT-LIVE → UP/LIVE.
- UP/LIVE → UP/NOT-LIVE.
- UP/NOT-LIVE → UP/LIVE.

When Dampening is enabled on a link, each state change of the link increases the Penalty value. If the Penalty reaches the threshold within the specified time, access to the link is restricted (its cost is increased 10,000 times for the specified period of time). The value of each of these parameters is specified when you enable Dampening. By default, access to the link is resumed if the state of the link does not change for 10 minutes.

To enable Dampening:

1. Enable Dampening in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to enable Dampening for a link that was established from a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** section, click the CPE device, select the **Links** tab, and click **Management → Dampening** next to the link.

   - If you want to enable Dampening for one of the links in the table of all links, go to the **Infrastructure** section, click **Management → Configuration menu** next to the controller, go to the **Links** section, and click **Management → Dampening** next to the link.

   - If you want to enable Dampening for one of the links in the graphic topology with all links, go to the **Infrastructure** section, click **Management → Configuration menu** next to the controller, go to the **Topology** section, click the link, and click **Dampening**.

2. This opens a window; in that window, select the **Enable** check box to enable Dampening on the link. This check box is cleared by default.

3. In the **Maximum suppress time (ms)** field, enter the time, in milliseconds, for which access to the link can be restricted. When the specified time elapses, all Dampening counters on the link are reset. Default value: `600000`.

4. In the **Penalty** field, enter the number by which Penalty is incremented when the link changes state. Default value: `1`.

5. In the **Suppress threshold** field, enter the Penalty value at which access to the link is restricted. Default value: `4`.

6. In the **Update interval (ms)** field, enter the time in milliseconds during which Penalty must attain the value specified in the **Suppress threshold** field for access to the link to be restricted. Default value: `120000`.

7. If you want to view Dampening statistics for a link, click **Load statistics**.

8. Click **Save**.

   Dampening is enabled for the link.

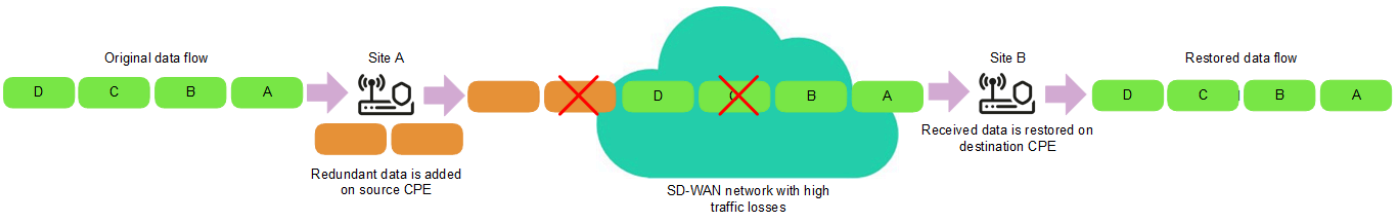
9. If you enabled Dampening for a link established from the CPE device, click **Save** in the upper part of the settings area to save the CPE device settings.

Enabling Forward Error Correction

The *Forward Error Correction (FEC)* functionality reduces the loss of traffic packets in links, especially for UDP applications, and the number of retransmissions, which lead to delays, and also recovers received data on the CPE device. Data recovery is provided by redundant encoding of the data stream on the device on the source CPE device.

If FEC is enabled on a link, the source CPE device encodes the traffic packet stream transmitted through the link and adds redundant traffic packets. Encoding on CPE devices may cause delays due to extra data processing.

The destination CPE device buffers traffic packets received through the link and decodes them, recovering lost traffic packets, if possible. We recommend using FEC on noisy links to reduce the packet loss and increase the speed of TCP connections. The general diagram of FEC is shown in the figure below.



FEC diagram

To enable FEC:

1. Enable FEC in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to enable FEC for a link that was established from a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** section, click the CPE device, select the **Links** tab, and click **Management → FEC/reordering** next to the link.

   - If you want to enable FEC for one of the links in the table of all links, go to the **Infrastructure** section, click **Management → Configuration menu** next to the controller, go to the **Links** section, and click **Management → FEC/reordering** next to the link.

   - If you want to enable FEC for one of the links in the graphic topology with all links, go to the **Infrastructure** section, click **Management → Configuration menu** next to the controller, go to the **Topology** section, click the link, and click **FEC/reordering**.

2. This opens a window; in that window, select the **Override** check box to enable FEC on the link. This check box is cleared by default.

3. In the **Redundancy ratio (original/redundant packet)** drop-down list, select the ratio of original traffic packets to extra traffic packets with redundant code. Default value: **0:0 (FEC off)** means FEC is not used. You can also specify the ratio of original traffic packets to redundant traffic packets by using the `topology.link.fec.ratio` controller property.

4. In the **Timeout** field, enter the time, in milliseconds, during which a traffic packet can stay in the queue for FEC to apply. Range of values: 1 to 1000.

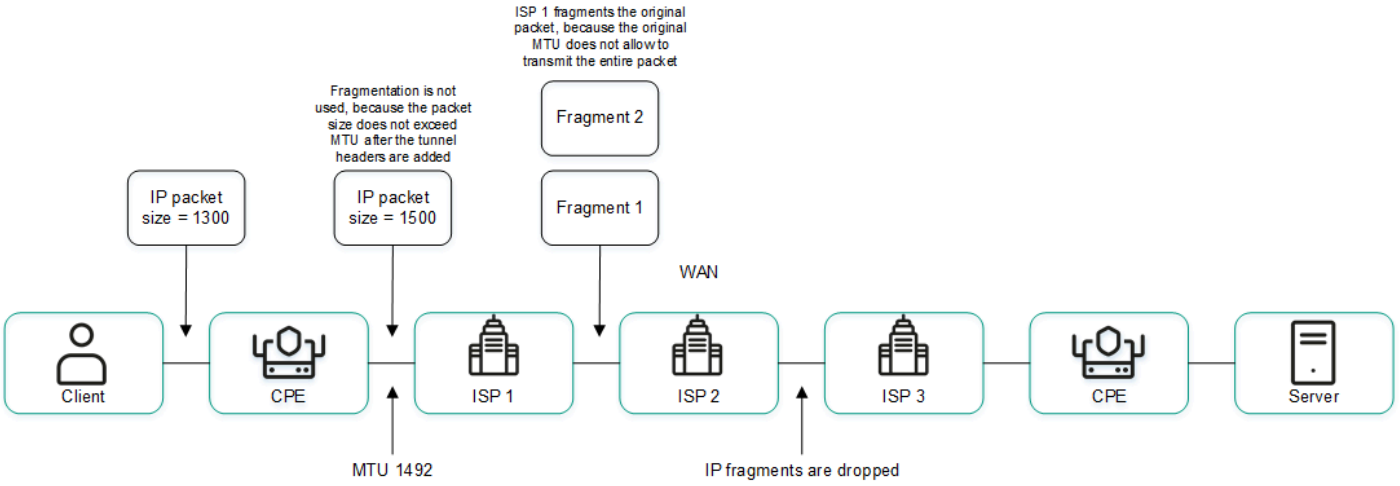
5. Click **Save**.

   FEC is enabled.

6. If you enabled FEC for a link established from the CPE device, click **Save** in the upper part of the settings area to save the CPE device settings.

Determining the MTU value

You can determine the MTU value of a link to find out why fragmented packets are being blocked on the link (see the figure below).



Links with a reduced MTU size and fragmented packet getting dropped

The MTU value is determined by sending LLDP packets with a variable payload size through the link. The minimum detectable MTU size is 1280 bytes, and the maximum is 1500 bytes. The MTU value is determined automatically when CPE devices are enabled and periodically at an interval specified in the topology.link.pmtud.scheduler.interval.sec `controller property`.

You can determine the MTU value manually.

To manually determine the MTU value,

Determine the MTU value in one of the following ways:

- If you want to manually determine the MTU value for a link that was established from a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** section, click the CPE device, select the **Links** tab, and click **Management** → **Check MTU** next to the link.
- If you want to manually determine the MTU value for one of the links in the table of all links, go to the **Infrastructure** section, click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller, go to the **Links** section, and click **Management** → **Check MTU** next to the link.

The MTU value is displayed in the **MTU** column.

Traffic encryption

Traffic encryption is a mechanism of securing the exchange of traffic between CPE devices through links. For example, you can encrypt traffic that is transmitted over unsecured links.

Traffic encryption does not replace the need to use other information security measures, such as TLS, LDAPS, and other protocols that protect traffic within the overlay network.

The controller automatically generates keys for encrypting and decrypting traffic and sends the keys to CPE devices. Traffic is encrypted on the source CPE device using the encryption key. The destination CPE device decrypts the traffic using the decryption key.

The keys are regularly updated to deprive third parties of the opportunity to encrypt or decrypt the transmitted traffic if a key is intercepted. You can specify the length of time after which the keys are updated on CPE devices using the `topology.link.encryption.key.update.interval.minutes` controller property.

Traffic encryption is supported only on CPE devices running Kaspersky SD-WAN software.

You can enable traffic encryption on a CPE device or on a link. A CPE device with traffic encryption enabled forwards encrypted traffic over all of its links, including new links that will be established in the future. When traffic encryption is enabled on a link, the CPE device transmits encrypted traffic over that link. When traffic encryption is disabled, the keys generated by the controller for encrypting and decrypting traffic are deleted from all attached CPE devices. By default, traffic encryption is disabled on CPE devices and links.

For example, you can enable traffic encryption on a CPE device and disable traffic encryption on one of the links of that CPE device. In this case, the CPE device transmits encrypted traffic over all its links, except for the link on which traffic encryption is disabled.

Enabling traffic encryption on a CPE device

A CPE device with traffic encryption enabled forwards encrypted traffic over all of its links, including new links that will be established in the future. You can enable or disable traffic encryption in a CPE template or on a CPE device. Traffic encryption settings specified in the CPE template are automatically propagated to all CPE devices that use this CPE template.

To enable traffic encryption on a CPE device:

1. Enable traffic encryption on the CPE device in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to enable traffic encryption in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **Link encryption** tab.
   - If you want to enable traffic encryption on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **Link encryption** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

   The traffic encryption policy is displayed.

2. In the **Enable encryption** drop-down list, select **Enabled**. The default value is **Disabled**.

3. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Enabling traffic encryption on a link

When traffic encryption is enabled on a link, the CPE device transmits encrypted traffic over that link.

To enable encryption of traffic on a link:

1. Enable traffic encryption on the link in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to enable traffic encryption for a link that was established from a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** section, click the CPE device, select the **Links** tab, and click **Management → Set encryption** next to the link.

   - If you want to enable traffic encryption for one of the links in the table of all links, go to the **Infrastructure** section, click **Management → Configuration menu** next to the controller, go to the **Links** section, and click **Management → Set encryption** next to the link.

   - If you want to enable traffic encryption for one of the links in the graphic topology with all links, go to the **Infrastructure** section, click **Management → Configuration menu** next to the controller, go to the **Topology** section, click the link, and click **Set encryption**.

2. This opens a window, in that window, select the **Override** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

3. Select the **Enable encryption** check box to enable traffic encryption for the link. This check box is cleared by default.

4. Click **Save**.

   Traffic encryption is enabled on the link.

5. If you enabled traffic encryption for a link established from the CPE device, click **Save** in the upper part of the settings area to save the CPE device settings.

Connectivity Fault Management (CFM)

The *Connectivity Fault Management* (hereinafter also CFM) functionality allows detecting unavailable links between CPE devices. When CFM is enabled, the CPE device sends Continuity Check Message (CCM) control packets over its links at the specified intervals, and listens for response control packets on opposite-direction links. If response control packets do not arrive, the CPE device considers the link unavailable and starts transmitting traffic over a randomly selected available link.

The response timeout is equal to the control packet sending interval times 3.5. The time it takes to switch a CPE device over to a new connection when no response packets are received is equal to the control packet sending interval multiplied by a number in the range from 3.5 to 7. For example, if you specified 300 milliseconds as the time interval for sending control packets, the response timeout is 1.05 seconds, and the time it takes to switch the CPE device to a new link is 1.05 to 2.1 seconds.

When using the CFM mechanism, we recommend configuring the CFM interval and the `core.link.liveness.timeout` controller property such that `core.link.liveness.timeout` >= CFM interval * 10.

You can enable CFM on a CPE device or link:

- A CPE device with CFM enabled sends control packets over all of its links, including new links that will be established in the future. If you specify different time intervals for sending control packages on CPE devices, the largest of the specified time intervals is used. For example, if you specified 300 milliseconds as the control packet interval on CPE 1, and one second on CPE 2, the control packet interval is 1 second.

  When CFM is enabled on one CPE device and disabled on the other CPE device, the CPE device with CFM enabled takes precedence. In this case, CPE devices send control packets to each other over all of their links.

- When CFM is enabled for a link, the CPE device sends control packets over that link only. When you enable CFM for a link, you must also enable CFM on the opposite-direction link. The time interval for sending control packets set for the link overrides the time intervals for sending control packets set on CPE devices. For example, if you specified 300 milliseconds as the control packet interval on CPE 1, one second on CPE 2, and ten seconds on the link between CPE 1 and CPE 2, the resulting time interval for sending control packets is ten seconds.

For example, you can enable CFM on a CPE device and disable CFM on one of the links of that CPE device. In this case, the CPE device sends control packets over all its links, except for the link on which CFM is disabled. By default, CFM is disabled on CPE devices and links.

Changing CFM settings on an active connection may cause traffic interruptions.

Enabling CFM on a CPE device

A CPE device with CFM enabled sends control packets over all of its links, including new links that will be established in the future. You can enable or disable CFM in a CPE template or on a CPE device. CFM settings specified in the CPE template are automatically propagated to all CPE devices that use this CPE template.

When CFM is enabled on one CPE device and disabled on the other CPE device, the CPE device with CFM enabled takes precedence. In this case, CPE devices send control packets to each other over all of their links.

Changing CFM settings on an active connection may cause traffic interruptions.

To enable CFM on a CPE device:

1. Enable CFM on the CPE device in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to enable CFM in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **CFM** tab.

   - If you want to enable CFM on a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN** → **CPE** menu section, click the CPE device, select the **CFM** tab, and select the **Override** check box.

2. In the **CFM** drop-down list, select **Enabled**. The default value is **Disabled**.

3. In the **Interval** drop-down list, select the time interval for sending control packets:

   - **300 ms**.
   - **1 s**. This is the default setting.
   - **10 s**.
   - **1 min**.

   The response timeout is equal to the control packet sending interval times 3.5. The time it takes to switch a CPE device over to a new connection when no response packets are received is equal to the control packet sending interval multiplied by a number in the range from 3.5 to 7. For example, if in the **Interval** drop-down list, you selected **300 ms**, the response timeout is 1.05 seconds, and the time it takes to switch the CPE device to a new link is 1.05 to 2.1 seconds.

   If you specified different control packet intervals on CPE devices, the largest of the specified intervals is used. For example, if in the **Interval** drop-down list for CPE 1, you selected **300 ms**, and for CPE 2 you selected **1 s**, the time interval for sending control packets is 1 second.

4. In the lower part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the CPE template or CPE device.

Enabling CFM on a link

When CFM is enabled for a link, the CPE device sends control packets over that link only. When you enable CFM for a link, you must also enable CFM on the opposite-direction link.

Changing CFM settings on an active connection may cause traffic interruptions.

To enable CFM on a link:

1. Enable CFM on the link in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to enable CFM for a link that was established from a CPE device, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE** section, click the CPE device, select the **Links** tab, and click **Management → Set CFM** next to the link.
   - If you want to enable CFM for one of the links in the table of all links, go to the **Infrastructure** section, click **Management → Configuration menu** next to the controller, go to the **Links** section, and click **Management → Set CFM** next to the link.

2. If you want to enable CFM for one of the links in the graphic topology with all links, go to the **Infrastructure** section, click **Management → Configuration menu** next to the controller, go to the **Topology** section, click the link, and click **Set CFM**.

3. This opens a window, in that window, select the **Override** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

4. Select **Save for both links** to enable CFM on the opposite-direction link. This check box is cleared by default.

5. In the **CFM** drop-down list, select **Enabled**. The default value is **Disabled**.

6. In the **Interval** drop-down list, select the time interval for sending control packets:

   - **300 ms**.
   - **1 s**. This is the default setting.
   - **10 s**.
   - **1 min**.

   The response timeout is equal to the control packet sending interval times 3.5. The time it takes to switch a CPE device over to a new connection when no response packets are received is equal to the control packet sending interval multiplied by a number in the range from 3.5 to 7. For example, if in the **Interval** drop-down list, you selected **300 ms**, the response timeout is 1.05 seconds, and the time it takes to switch the CPE device to a new link is 1.05 to 2.1 seconds.

   The time interval for sending control packets set for the link overrides the time intervals for sending control packets that you specified when enabling CFM on CPE devices. For example, if in the **Interval** drop-down list for CPE 1, you selected **300 ms**, for CPE 2 you selected **1 s**, and for the link between CPE 1 and CPE 2 you selected **10 s**, the resulting time interval for sending control packets is 10 seconds.

7. Click **Save**.

   CFM is enabled for the link.

8. If you enabled CFM for a link established from the CPE device, click **Save** in the upper part of the settings area to save the CPE device settings.

Managing segments

To view the table of segments, go to the **Infrastructure** menu section, click **Management → Configuration menu** next to the controller, and go to the **Segments** section. Information about segments is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **From** is the name and DPID of the CPE device of the segment source.
- **To** is the name and DPID of the CPE device of the segment destination.
- **Paths/maximum** is the number of paths created and the maximum number of paths supported by the segment.
- **#** is the sequential number of the path. The lower the path number, the earlier the path was built.
- **Path type** is the type of the path:
  - **Auto SPF**
  - **Auto TE**
  - **Manual TE**
- **Paths** are names, DPIDs, and numbers of OpenFlow ports of CPE devices through which the path passes.

- **Administrative state** is the administrative state of the path:
  - **up**
  - **down**
- **Operational state** is the operational state of the path:
  - **up**
  - **down**
- **Cost** is the cost of the path.
- **Hop count** is the number of hops in the path.

The actions that you can perform with the table are described in the Managing solution component tables article.

When creating or editing a Manual-TE path in a segment, you can view the table of hops added to the Manual-TE path. Information about hops is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **#** is the sequential number of the hop. The lower the number of the hop, the earlier the hop was added.
- **From** is the name, DPID, and OpenFlow port number of the CPE device that is the hop source.
- **To** is the name, DPID, and OpenFlow port number of the CPE device that is the hop destination.
- **Cost** is the cost of the hop.

The total cost of the Manual-TE path is displayed in the lower part of the table.

Creating a Manual-TE path

When creating a Manual-TE path, you must manually specify the links that the path passes through on the way from the segment source CPE device to the segment destination CPE device. Two types of Manual-TE paths are supported:

- A *fully defined Manual-TE path* specifies each CPE device and service interface through which the Manual-TE path passes.
- A *hybrid Manual-TE path* specifies one or more CPE devices and service interfaces through which the Manual-TE path passes. In this case, traffic between sections of the Manual-TE path that are not manually specified is transmitted automatically (an Auto-SPF path is used).

You can use Manual-TE constraints to add Manual-TE paths to transport services.

Examples of possible Manual-TE paths:
In the examples, an OpenFlow port number is specified after the CPE device number, separated by a colon.

Fully defined Manual-TE path: CPE 1:3 → CPE 2:1, CPE 2:2 → CPE 4:1, CPE 4:5 → CPE N:2.

Hybrid Manual-TE path: CPE 1 → CPE 5, CPE 5:3 → CPE 4:3, CPE 4 → CPE N. In this case, the path from CPE 1 to CPE N is built as an Auto-SPF path CPE 1 → CPE 5, a Manual-TE path CPE 5:3 → CPE 4:3, and an Auto-SPF path CPE 4 → CPE N.

To create a Manual-TE path:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **Segments** section.

   A table of segments is displayed.

4. Click **Management** → **Edit** next to the segment in which you want to create a Manual-TE path.

   The settings and the path table are displayed.

5. Click **+ Manual-TE path**.

   The Manual-TE path settings and the hop table are displayed.

6. In the **Name** field, enter the name of the Manual-TE path.

7. In the **Maximum number of hops** field, enter the maximum number of hops in the Manual-TE path. Range of values: 1 to 8. Default value: `4`.

8. Add the hop to the Manual-TE path:

   a. In the **From** drop-down list on the left, select the source CPE device for the hop.

      If you are adding the first hop to the Manual-TE path, you can select only the CPE device of the segment source as the source CPE device of the hop. If you have added at least one hop to the Manual-TE path, you can only select the destination CPE device of the previous hop as the source CPE device of the current hop.

   b. If necessary, in the **Port** drop-down list on the left, select the OpenFlow port of the hop source. Default value: **Automatically** means the OpenFlow port is determined automatically.

   c. In the **To** drop-down list on the right, select the CPE device at the end of the hop.

      If in the **Port** drop-down list you selected **Automatically** as the hop source CPE device, you can select any CPE device that is not being used in other hops as the hop destination. In this case, in the **Port** drop-down list, **Automatically** is selected for the hop destination CPE device, and the OpenFlow port is detected automatically. Thus, the hop uses an Auto-SPF path.

      If in the **Port** drop-down list, you selected an OpenFlow port for the hop source CPE device, for the hop destination CPE device, you can only use a CPE device that has a link built from that OpenFlow port. In this case, in the **Port** drop-down list, the OpenFlow port to which the link is built is automatically selected as the hop destination CPE device. Thus, the hop uses the link specified between the two CPE devices.

   d. If necessary, in the **Port** drop-down list on the right, select the OpenFlow port of the hop destination CPE device. Default value: **Automatically** means the OpenFlow port is determined automatically.

   e. Click **Add**.

      The hop is created and displayed in the table. You can add multiple hops or delete hops. To delete a hop click **Delete** next to it.

9. Click **Create**.

   A check is performed to make sure the destination CPE device of the last hop matches the destination CPE device of the segment in which you are creating the Manual-TE path. If the check is successful, the Manual-TE path is created and displayed in the table, and the column **Cost** displays the cost of the Manual-TE path, which is the sum total of the cost of all hops that you added to this Manual-TE path.

10. Click **Save** to save the settings of the segment.

Editing a Manual-TE path

To edit a Manual-TE path:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **Segments** section.

   A table of segments is displayed.

4. Click **Management** → **Edit** next to the segment in which you want to edit a Manual-TE path.

   The settings and the path table are displayed.

5. Click **Edit** next to the Manual-TE path that you want to edit.

   The Manual-TE path settings and the hop table are displayed.

6. If necessary, edit the Manual-TE path settings. For a description of the settings, see the instructions for creating a Manual-TE path.

7. Click **Save**.

   The Manual-TE path is modified and updated in the table.

8. Click **Save** to save the settings of the segment.

Deleting a Manual-TE path

Deleted Manual-TE paths cannot be restored.

To delete a Manual-TE path:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **Segments** section.

   A table of segments is displayed.

4. Click **Management** → **Edit** next to the segment in which you want to delete a Manual-TE path.

   The settings and the path table are displayed.

5. Click **Delete** next to the Manual-TE path that you want to delete.

   The Manual-TE path is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

6. Click **Save** to save the settings of the segment.

Quality of Service (QoS)

A *Quality of Service* (QoS) policy ensures data transfer in accordance with the requirements set for traffic classes. In Kaspersky SD-WAN, the following components contribute to the quality of service:

- Traffic classes - indicate the priority of traffic processing and distribute traffic among queues. For example, you can use one of the traffic classes for real-time traffic that requires minimizing packet loss. You can map traffic to traffic classes when creating or editing a traffic classifier.

- Traffic classifiers determine whether or not the DSCP values specified in the traffic packet header fields must be trusted. If a traffic classifier does not trust DSCP values, it maps them to traffic classes. You can specify a traffic classifier when creating or editing a quality of service rule to make the quality of service rule use this traffic classifier.

- Quality of service rules determine whether the bandwidth of traffic processed by traffic classifiers is limited. You can specify a quality of service rule when you create or edit a transport service to make the transport service use this quality of service rule.

- *Constraints* are used to configure how the paths are built in transport services. You can create two types of constraints:

  - Manual-TE constraints add Manual-TE paths to transport services.

  - Threshold constraints specify link monitoring thresholds that are used to build Auto-TE paths in transport services.

  You can specify a constraint when creating or editing a transport service to make the transport service use this constraint.

- Traffic classification rules identify traffic with particular values of the L2 – L4 header fields, as well as traffic of specified applications, in the overall stream of traffic. You can specify a traffic classification rule when creating or editing a traffic filter to make the traffic filter use this traffic classification rule.

- Traffic filters filter traffic based on specified traffic classification rules. You can specify a traffic filter when creating or editing a transport service or ACL interface to make the transport service or ACL interface use this traffic filter.

Managing traffic classes

About traffic classes

You can view the table of traffic classes in an SD-WAN instance template or in the controller configuration menu.

- To view the table of traffic classes in an SD-WAN instance template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **SD-WAN instance templates** section, click the SD-WAN instance template, and select the **Traffic classes** tab.

- To view the table of traffic classes in the controller settings menu, go to the **Infrastructure** menu section, click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller, and go to the **QoS** section.

By default, the following traffic classes are created:

- **Best effort**
- **Business normal**
- **Business critical**
- **Video**
- **Conference**
- **Signaling**
- **Real time**
- **Network control**

Information about traffic classes is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Name** is the name of the traffic class.
- **Internal tag** is the internal tag of the traffic class.
- **Queue** is the number of the queue to which traffic from the traffic class goes.
- **KOver** is the overcommitment ratio of the traffic bandwidth, which sets the multiplier by which the bandwidth dedicated to the traffic class can be increased if the total bandwidth is not fully utilized.
- **Exclude when computing path** indicates whether the bandwidth available to the traffic class is taken into account when calculating the route:
  - **Yes**.
  - **No**.

The following parameters are displayed in the lower part of the table:

- **Default traffic class** is the traffic class in which all traffic is placed that is not included in other classes.
- **Control traffic class** is the traffic class in which control traffic is placed that is used to manage solution components. We recommend assigning the highest priority to control traffic to make sure the network works reliably.
- **Maximum reserved bandwidth (%)** is the percentage of the maximum traffic transfer rate that can be available for the traffic class.

Kaspersky SD-WAN does not support creating traffic classes, but you can edit the default traffic classes in the SD-WAN instance template or in the controller configuration menu.

Editing a traffic class

You can edit a traffic class in an SD-WAN instance template or in the controller configuration menu. If you edit a traffic class in an SD-WAN instance template, that traffic class is not modified in the controller configuration menu of already deployed SD-WAN instances.

> Default traffic classes are suitable for most deployment scenarios, and we do not recommend editing them.

To edit a traffic class:

1. Edit a traffic class in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to edit the traffic class in an SD-WAN instance template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **SD-WAN instance templates** section, click the SD-WAN instance template, and select the **Traffic classes** tab.
   - If you want to edit the traffic class in the controller settings menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section, click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller, and go to the **QoS** section.

   A table of traffic classes is displayed.

2. Click **Edit**.
3. In the **Name** column, enter the name of the traffic class.
4. In the **Queue** column, select the number of the queue into traffic of the selected class goes. The higher the value, the higher the priority of the traffic class. You cannot specify the same priority for multiple traffic classes.
5. In the **KOver** column, select the overcommitment ratio of the traffic bandwidth, which sets the multiplier by which the bandwidth dedicated to the traffic class can be increased if the total bandwidth is not fully utilized.
6. If you want to ignore the bandwidth available to the traffic class when building the route, select the **Exclude when computing path** check box. When this check box is selected, you cannot select the **KOver** ratio for the traffic class. By default, this check box is selected next to the **Best effort** traffic class.
7. In the **Default traffic class** drop-down list, select the traffic class in which all traffic is placed that is not included in other classes. By default, the **Best effort** traffic class is selected.
8. In the **Control traffic class** drop-down list, select the traffic class in which you want control traffic is placed. By default, the **Network control** traffic class is selected.
9. In the **Maximum reserved bandwidth (%)** drop-down list, select the percentage of the maximum traffic transfer rate that can be available for the traffic class. Range of values: 10 to 90. Default value: **90**.
10. Click **Ok**.

    The traffic class is modified.

11. If you have modified a traffic class in the SD-WAN instance template, in the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the SD-WAN instance template settings.

Managing traffic classifiers

You can view the table of traffic classifiers in an SD-WAN instance template or in the controller configuration menu.

- To view the table of traffic classifiers in an SD-WAN instance template, go to the **SD-WAN → SD-WAN instance templates** section, click the SD-WAN instance template, and select the **Traffic classifiers** tab.
- To view the table of traffic classifiers in the controller settings menu, go to the **Infrastructure** menu section, click **Management → Configuration menu** next to the controller, go to the **QoS** section and select the **Traffic classifiers** tab.

By default, the **Untrust-BE-Classifier** is created, which does not trust DSCP values in traffic packet header fields and puts all traffic in the **Best effort** traffic class. Information about traffic classes is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Name** is the name of the traffic classifier.
- **Type** indicates whether the classifier trusts the DSCP values set in the header fields of traffic packets:
  - **Yes**.
  - **No**.
- **Traffic class** are traffic classes into which the traffic classifier puts traffic.
- **Packet field** are traffic packet headers.
- **External tag** is the DSCP value that the traffic packet headers must contain for the traffic classifier to put traffic in the traffic class.

The actions that you can perform with the table are described in the Managing solution component tables article.

Creating a traffic classifier

You can create a traffic classifier in an SD-WAN instance template or in the controller configuration menu. If you create a traffic classifier in an SD-WAN instance template, that traffic classifier is not created in the controller configuration menu of already deployed SD-WAN instances.

To create a traffic classifier:

1. Create a traffic classifier in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to create a traffic classifier in an SD-WAN instance template, go to the **SD-WAN → SD-WAN instance templates** section, click the SD-WAN instance template, and select the **Traffic classifiers** tab.

   - If you want to create a traffic classifier in the controller settings menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section, click **Management → Configuration menu** next to the controller, and go to the **QoS** section and select the **Traffic classifiers** tab.

   A table of traffic classes is displayed.

2. Click **+ Classifier**.

3. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Name** field, enter the name of the traffic classifier.

4. In the **Type** list, select one of the following values:

   - **Trust** means that the traffic classifier trusts the DSCP values set in the header fields of traffic packets. This is the default setting.

   - **Untrust** means that the traffic classifier does not trust the DSCP values set in the header fields of traffic packets.

5. If you selected **Trust** in the **Type** list, map the traffic classes to DSCP values in the traffic packet headers:

   a. In the **Traffic class** column, select the traffic class into which the traffic classifier puts traffic.

   b. In the **External tag** column, click **Select** next to the traffic packet header field.

   c. Select the check boxes next to the displayed DSCP values that must be present in the traffic packet header field for the traffic classifier to put traffic in the traffic class.

   d. Click **Ok**.

6. If in the **Type** list you selected **Untrust**, select the traffic class in which the traffic classifier places all traffic in the **Traffic class** drop-down list.

7. Click **Create**.

   The traffic classifier is created and displayed in the table.

8. If you have created a traffic classifier in the SD-WAN instance template, in the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the SD-WAN instance template settings.

You can specify a traffic classifier when creating or editing a quality of service rule to make the quality of service rule use this traffic classifier.

Editing a traffic classifier

You can edit a traffic classifier in an SD-WAN instance template or in the controller configuration menu. If you edit a traffic classifier in an SD-WAN instance template, that traffic classifier is not edited in the controller configuration menu of already deployed SD-WAN instances.

To edit a traffic classifier:

1. Edit a traffic classifier in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to edit a traffic classifier in an SD-WAN instance template, go to the **SD-WAN → SD-WAN instance templates** section, click the SD-WAN instance template, and select the **Traffic classifiers** tab.

   - If you want to edit a traffic classifier in the controller settings menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section, click **Management → Configuration menu** next to the controller, and go to the **QoS** section and select the **Traffic classifiers** tab.

   A table of traffic classes is displayed.

2. Click **Management → Edit** next to the traffic classifier that you want to edit.

3. This opens a window; in that window, if necessary, edit the traffic classifier settings. For a description of the settings, see the instructions for creating a traffic classifier.

4. Click **Save**.

   The traffic classifier is modified and updated in the table.

5. If you have edited a traffic classifier in the SD-WAN instance template, in the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the SD-WAN instance template settings.

Deleting a traffic classifier

You can delete a traffic classifier in an SD-WAN instance template or in the controller configuration menu. If you delete a traffic classifier in an SD-WAN instance template, that traffic classifier is not deleted in the controller configuration menu of already deployed SD-WAN instances.

Deleted traffic classifiers cannot be restored.

To delete a traffic classifier:

1. Delete a traffic classifier in one of the following ways:

   - If you want to delete a traffic classifier in an SD-WAN instance template, go to the **SD-WAN → SD-WAN instance templates** section, click the SD-WAN instance template, and select the **Traffic classifiers** tab.

   - If you want to delete a traffic classifier in the controller settings menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section, click **Management → Configuration menu** next to the controller, and go to the **QoS** section and select the **Traffic classifiers** tab.

   A table of traffic classes is displayed.

2. Click **Management → Delete** next to the traffic classifier that you want to delete.

3. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

   The traffic classifier is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

4. If you have deleted a traffic classifier in the SD-WAN instance template, in the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the SD-WAN instance template settings.

Managing quality of service rules

You can view the table of quality of service rules in an SD-WAN instance template or in the controller configuration menu.

- To view the table of quality of service rules in an SD-WAN instance template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **SD-WAN instance templates** section, click the SD-WAN instance template, and select the **QoS rules** tab.
- To view the table of quality of service rules in the controller settings menu, go to the **Infrastructure** menu section, click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller, go to the **QoS** section and select the **QoS rules** tab.

By default, the **Unlimited-QoS** quality of service rule is created that uses the default traffic classifier, **Untrust-BE-Classifier**, does not limit the bandwidth, and provides 100% of the total bandwidth to the **Best effort** traffic class. Information about quality of service rules is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Name** is the name of the quality of service rule.
- **MBR** is the maximum bandwidth allowed by the quality of service rule.
- The following columns display the percentage of the total bandwidth available to traffic classes:
  - **Best effort**
  - **Business normal**
  - **Business critical**
  - **Video**
  - **Conference**
  - **Signaling**
  - **Real time**

The actions that you can perform with the table are described in the Managing solution component tables article.

Creating a quality of service rule

You can create a quality of service rule in the SD-WAN instance template or in the controller configuration menu. If you create a quality of service rule in an SD-WAN instance template, that quality of service rule is not created in the controller configuration menu of already deployed SD-WAN instances.

To create a quality of service rule:

1. Create a quality of service rule:

   - If you want to create a quality of service rule in an SD-WAN instance template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **SD-WAN instance templates** section, click the SD-WAN instance template, and select the **QoS rules** tab.

   - If you want to create a quality of service rule in the controller settings menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section, click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller, and go to the **QoS** section and select the **QoS rules** tab.

   The table of quality of service rules is displayed.

2. Click **+ QoS rule**.

3. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Name** field, enter the name of the quality of service rule.

4. In the **Classifier** drop-down list, select the created traffic classifier that you want to use in the quality of service rule.

5. If you want the quality of service rule to limit the bandwidth for traffic processed by the traffic classifier, clear the **Unlimited** check box. This check box is selected by default.

6. If you cleared the **Unlimited** check box, configure the traffic bandwidth limit:

   a. In the **MBR** field, enter the maximum bit rate. Default value: `1`.

   b. In the **Speed type** drop-down list, select the units of measurement for the maximum bit rate:

      - **Kbit/sec**. This is the default setting.

      - **Mbit/sec**

      - **Gbit/sec**

   c. If in the **Classifier** drop-down list, you have selected a classifier of the **Trust** type, in the **Maximum reserved bandwidth (%)** column, specify the percentage of the total bit rate available to traffic classes. The sum total of the specified values must equal 100%.

7. Click **Create**.

   The quality of service rule is created and displayed in the table.

8. If you have created a quality of service rule in the SD-WAN instance template, in the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the SD-WAN instance template settings.

You can specify a quality of service rule when you create or edit a transport service to make the transport service use this quality of service rule.

Editing a quality of service rule

You can edit a quality of service rule in an SD-WAN instance template or in the controller configuration menu. If you edit a quality of service rule in an SD-WAN instance template, that quality of service rule is not modified in the controller configuration menu of already deployed SD-WAN instances.

To edit a quality of service rule:

1. Edit a quality of service rule:

   - If you want to edit a quality of service rule in an SD-WAN instance template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **SD-WAN instance templates** section, click the SD-WAN instance template, and select the **QoS rules** tab.

   - If you want to edit a quality of service rule in the controller settings menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section, click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller, and go to the **QoS** section and select the **QoS rules** tab.

   The table of quality of service rules is displayed.

2. Click **Management Edit** next to the quality of service rule that you want to edit.

3. This opens a window; in that window, if necessary, edit the quality of service settings. For a description of the settings, see the instructions for creating a quality of service rule.

4. Click **Save**.

   The quality of service rule is modified and updated in the table.

5. If you have edited a quality of service rule in the SD-WAN instance template, in the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the SD-WAN instance template settings.

Deleting a quality of service rule

You can delete a quality of service rule in an SD-WAN instance template or in the controller configuration menu. If you delete a quality of service rule in an SD-WAN instance template, that quality of service rule is not deleted in the controller configuration menu of already deployed SD-WAN instances.

Deleted quality of service rules cannot be restored.

To delete a quality of service rule:

1. Delete a quality of service rule:

   - If you want to delete a quality of service rule in an SD-WAN instance template, go to the **SD-WAN** → **SD-WAN instance templates** section, click the SD-WAN instance template, and select the **QoS rules** tab.

   - If you want to delete a quality of service rule in the controller settings menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section, click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller, and go to the **QoS** section and select the **QoS rules** tab.

   The table of quality of service rules is displayed.

2. Click **Management** → **Delete** next to the quality of service rule that you want to delete.

3. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

   The quality of service rule is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

4. If you have deleted a quality of service rule in the SD-WAN instance template, in the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the SD-WAN instance template settings.

Managing Manual-TE constraints

To view the table of Manual-TE constraints, go to the **Infrastructure** menu section, click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller, and go to the **Constraints** section. Information about Manual-TE constraints is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Name** is the name of the Manual-TE constraint.
- **Segment** is the segment of the Manual-TE paths added to the Manual-TE constraint.
- **Paths** are the Manual-TE paths that have been added to the Manual-TE constraint.

The actions that you can perform with the table are described in the Managing solution component tables article.

Creating a Manual-TE constraint

To create a Manual-TE constraint:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **Constraints** section.

   The **Manual-TE** tab with the table of Manual-TE constraints is selected by default.

4. In the upper part of the page, click **+ Manual-TE constraint**.

5. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Name** field, enter the name of the Manual-TE constraint.

6. Select the **Use Manual-TE path** check box next to the created Manual-TE paths that you want to add to the Manual-TE constraint. These check boxes are cleared by default.

7. If you want to allow using an Auto-SPF path when the specified Manual-TE paths are not available, select the **Ignore if no constrained path is found** check box next to the Manual-TE paths. You can only select the check box next to a Manual-TE path that have the **Use Manual-TE path** check box selected. These check boxes are cleared by default.

8. Click **Create**.

The Manual-TE constraint is created and displayed in the table.

You can specify a Manual-TE constraint when creating or editing a transport service to make the transport service use this Manual-TE constraint.

Editing a Manual-TE constraint

To edit a Manual-TE constraint:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **Constraints** section.

   The **Manual-TE** tab with the table of Manual-TE constraints is selected by default.

4. Click **Management** → **Edit** next to the Manual-TE constraint that you want to edit.

5. This opens a window; in that window, if necessary, edit the Manual-TE constraint settings. For a description of the settings, see the instructions for creating a Manual-TE constraint.

6. Click **Save**.

The Manual-TE constraint is modified and updated in the table.

Deleting a Manual-TE constraint

Deleted Manual-TE constraints cannot be restored.

To delete a Manual-TE constraint:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **Constraints** section.

   The **Manual-TE** tab with the table of Manual-TE constraints is selected by default.

4. Click **Management** → **Delete** next to the Manual-TE constraint that you want to delete.

5. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

The Manual-TE constraint is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

Managing threshold constraints

To view the table of threshold constraints, go to the **Infrastructure** menu section, click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller, go to the **Constraints** section, and select the **Thresholds** tab. Information about threshold constraints is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Name** is the name of the threshold constraint.
- **Last resort** indicates whether the threshold constraint excludes a link from Auto-TE path calculation if the **Last resort** check box is selected in link monitoring settings:
  - Y
  - N
- **Error level** indicates whether the threshold constraint excludes a link from Auto-TE path calculation if the errors-per-second threshold is reached on the link:
  - Y
  - N
- **Utilization** indicates whether the threshold constraint excludes a link from Auto-TE path calculation if the utilization threshold is reached on the link, as a percentage of the bandwidth of the source service interface:
  - Y
  - N
- **Latency** indicates whether the threshold constraint excludes a link from Auto-TE path calculation if the delay threshold (in milliseconds) is reached for traffic passing through the link:
  - Y
  - N
- **Jitter** indicates whether the threshold constraint excludes a link from Auto-TE path calculation if the jitter threshold (in milliseconds) is reached for traffic passing through the link:
  - Y
  - N
- **Packet loss** indicates whether the threshold constraint excludes a link from Auto-TE path calculation if the packet loss threshold (as a percentage value) is reached on the link:
  - Y
  - N

You can specify monitoring thresholds when configuring link monitoring.

The actions that you can perform with the table are described in the Managing solution component tables article.

Creating a threshold constraint

To create a threshold constraint:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **Constraints** section.

   The **Manual-TE** tab with the table of Manual-TE constraints is selected by default.

4. Select the **Thresholds** tab.

   A table of threshold constraints is displayed.

5. In the upper part of the page, click **+ Threshold constraint**.

6. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Name** field, enter the name of the threshold constraint.

7. Select the **Do not use links with threshold reached** check box next to link monitoring indicators to have the threshold constraint exclude links that have reached the threshold value of these monitoring indicators from the Auto-TE path calculation. This check box is cleared by default.

8. If you do not want the threshold constraint to exclude links with reached thresholds from Auto-TE path calculation when alternative links do not exist, select the **Ignore if no constrained path is found** check box next to the monitoring values. This check box is cleared by default. You can only select the check box next to monitoring values that have the **Do not use links with threshold reached** check box selected.

   For example, if you have selected the **Do not use links with threshold reached** check box next to the **Error level** monitoring value, the threshold constraint excludes a link on which the errors-per-second threshold is reached from Auto-TE path calculation. If you have also selected the **Ignore if no constrained path is found** check box and all links have reached the errors per second threshold, the threshold constraint does not exclude the link from the Auto-TE path calculation.

9. Click **Create**.

The threshold constraint is created and displayed in the table.

You can specify a threshold constraint when creating or editing a transport service to make the transport service use this threshold constraint.

Editing a threshold constraint

To edit a threshold constraint:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **Constraints** section.

   The **Manual-TE** tab with the table of Manual-TE constraints is selected by default.

4. Select the **Thresholds** tab.

   A table of threshold constraints is displayed.

5. Click **Management** → **Edit** next to the threshold constraint that you want to edit.

6. This opens a window; in that window, if necessary, edit the threshold constraint settings. For a description of the settings, see the instructions for creating a threshold constraint.

7. Click **Save**.

The threshold constraint is modified and updated in the table.

Deleting a threshold constraint

Deleted threshold constraints cannot be restored.

To delete a threshold constraint:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **Constraints** section.

   The **Manual-TE** tab with the table of Manual-TE constraints is selected by default.

4. Select the **Thresholds** tab.

   A table of threshold constraints is displayed.

5. Click **Management** → **Delete** next to the threshold constraint that you want to delete.

6. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

The threshold constraint is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

Managing traffic classification rules

To view the table of traffic classification rules, go to the **Infrastructure** menu section, click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller, and go to the **Traffic filters** section. Information about traffic classification rules is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Name** is the name of the traffic classification rule.
- **L2 fields** are L2 fields whose values the traffic classification rule uses to identify traffic in the overall data stream.
- **L3 fields** are L3 fields whose values the traffic classification rule uses to identify traffic in the overall data stream.
- **L4 fields** are L4 fields whose values the traffic classification rule uses to identify traffic in the overall data stream.

The actions that you can perform with the table are described in the Managing solution component tables article.

Creating a traffic classification rule

To create a traffic classification rule:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **Traffic filters** section.

   By default, the **Rules** tab is selected, which displays the table of traffic classification rules.

4. In the upper part of the page, click **+ Qualification rule**.

5. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Name** field, enter the name of the traffic classification rule.

6. On the **L2 fields** tab, select the check boxes next to the L2 fields whose values the traffic classification rule uses to identify traffic in the overall data stream. If the check box is selected, enter or select the field value. You can use the values of the following fields to identify traffic in the overall data stream:

   - **Outer VLAN ID**. Range of values: 1 to 2094.
   - **Outer VLAN PCP**. Range of values: 0 to 7.
   - **Source MAC**.
   - **Source MAC mask**.
   - **Destination MAC**.
   - **Destination MAC mask**.
   - **Ethertype**:
     - **0x0800**. This is the default setting.
     - **0x86dd**
     - **0x0806**

7. On the **L3 fields** tab, select the check boxes next to the L3 fields whose values the traffic classification rule uses to identify traffic in the overall data stream. If the check box is selected, enter or select the field value. You can use the values of the following fields to identify traffic in the overall data stream.

   - **Protocol**:
     - **IPv4**
     - **IPv6**
   - **Source IP**.
   - **Source IP prefix length**. Range of values for the IPv4 address: 0 to 32; for IPv6 address: 0 to 128
   - **Destination IP**.
   - **Destination IP prefix length**. Range of values for the IPv4 address: 0 to 32; for IPv6 address: 0 to 128
   - **DSCP**
   - **TOS**

8. On the **L4 fields** tab, select the check boxes next to the L4 fields whose values the traffic classification rule uses to identify traffic in the overall data stream. If the check box is selected, enter or select the field value. You can use the values of the following fields to identify traffic in the overall data stream:

   - **IP protocol**
   - **Source port list**
   - **Destination port list**
   - **ICMP type number**

9. On the **DPI** tab, select the **Application** check box and select the application whose traffic the traffic classification rule identifies in the overall data stream.

10. Click **Create**.

    The traffic classification rule is created and displayed in the table.

You can specify a traffic classification rule when creating or editing a traffic filter to make the traffic filter use this traffic classification rule.

Example of a created traffic classification rule:
You can create a traffic classification rule with the following parameters:

- On the **L2 fields** tab, in the **Outer VLAN ID** field, enter `1`.
- On the **L2 fields** tab, in the **Outer VLAN PCP** field, enter `3`.
- On the **L3 fields** tab, in the **Protocol** drop-down list, select **IPv4**.
- On the **L3 fields** tab, in the **Source IP** field, enter the `192.168.2.0/24` IP address.

The traffic classification rule identifies traffic with the following properties in the overall data stream:

- Outer VLAN tag — 1
- Outer PCP tag — 3
- Protocol — IPv4
- Source IP address — 192.168.2.0/24

The traffic classification rule does not identify traffic that lacks at least one of these properties in the overall data stream.

Editing a traffic classification rule

To edit a traffic classification rule:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management → Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **Traffic filters** section.

   By default, the **Rules** tab is selected, which displays the table of traffic classification rules.

4. Click **Management** → **Edit** next to the traffic classification rule that you want to edit.

5. This opens a window; in that window, if necessary, edit the traffic classification rule settings. For a description of the settings, see the instructions for creating a traffic classification rule.

6. Click **Save**.

The traffic classification rule is modified and updated in the table.

Deleting a traffic classification rule

Deleted traffic classification rules cannot be restored.

To delete a traffic classification rule:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **Traffic filters** section.

   By default, the **Rules** tab is selected, which displays the table of traffic classification rules.

4. Click **Management** → **Delete** next to the traffic classification rule that you want to delete.

5. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

The traffic classification rule is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

Managing traffic filters

To view the table of traffic filters, go to the **Infrastructure** menu section, click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller, go to the **Traffic filters** section, and select the **Filters** tab. Information about traffic filters is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Name** is the name of the traffic filter.
- **Added rules** are traffic classification rules that have been added to the traffic filter.
- **Action** is the action that the traffic filter applies to the traffic:
  - **Permit** — Allow further routing of the traffic.
  - **Deny** — Block further routing of the traffic.

The actions that you can perform with the table are described in the Managing solution component tables article.

Creating a traffic filter

To create a traffic filter:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **Traffic filters** section.

   By default, the **Rules** tab is selected, which displays the table of traffic classification rules.

4. Select the **Filters** tab.

   A table of traffic filters is displayed.

5. In the upper part of the page, click **+ Traffic filter**.

6. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Name** field, enter the name of the traffic filter.

7. Add the created traffic classification rule to the traffic filter:

   a. In the **Sequence** field, enter the sequential number of the traffic classification rule. The first traffic classification rule that the traffic filter applies to traffic is the rule with the lowest sequence number. Range of values: 1 to 998. Default value: `10`.

      You cannot specify the same sequence number for multiple traffic classification rules.

   b. In the **Qualification rule** drop-down list, select the traffic classification rule that you want to add to the traffic filter.

   c. In the **Action** drop-down list, select the action that the traffic filter applies to traffic:

      - **Permit** — Allow further routing of the traffic. This is the default setting.
      - **Deny** — Block further routing of the traffic.

   d. Click **Add**.

   The traffic classification rule is added. You can add multiple traffic classification rules or delete traffic classification rules. To delete a traffic classification rule, click **Delete** next to it.

8. In the **Default action (if sequence=999)** drop-down list, select the action that the traffic filter applies to all other traffic:

   - **Permit** — Allow further routing of the traffic. This is the default setting.
   - **Deny** — Block further routing of the traffic.

9. Click **Create**.

The traffic filter is created and displayed in the table.

You can specify a traffic filter when creating or editing a transport service or ACL interface to make the transport service or ACL interface use this traffic filter.

Editing a traffic filter

To edit a traffic filter:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management → Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **Traffic filters** section.

   By default, the **Rules** tab is selected, which displays the table of traffic classification rules.

4. Select the **Filters** tab.

   A table of traffic filters is displayed.

5. Click **Management** → **Edit** next to the traffic filter that you want to edit.

6. This opens a window; in that window, if necessary, edit the traffic filter settings. For a description of the settings, see the instructions for creating a traffic filter.

7. Click **Save**.

The traffic filter is modified and updated in the table.

Deleting a traffic filter

Deleted traffic filters cannot be restored.

To delete a traffic filter:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **Traffic filters** section.

   By default, the **Rules** tab is selected, which displays the table of traffic classification rules.

4. Select the **Filters** tab.

   A table of traffic filters is displayed.

5. Click **Management** → **Delete** next to the traffic filter that you want to delete.

6. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

The traffic filter is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

Transmission of traffic between CPE devices and client devices using transport services

About transport services

You can use *transport services* to transmit traffic between CPE devices and client devices connected to them. Transport services are built on top of segments and consist of service interfaces. Kaspersky SD-WAN supports creating the following transport services:

- L2:
  - Point-to-Point (E-line in the MEF classification, hereinafter also referred to as P2P service) is a static transport service in which traffic is transmitted between two service interfaces.
  - Point-to-Multipoint (E-tree in the MEF classification, hereinafter also referred to as P2M service) is a transport service in which traffic is transmitted between multiple service interfaces in accordance with a tree topology. To each service interface added to the P2M service, you must assign one of the following roles:
    - **Root** means the service interface can send traffic to service interfaces with any role.
    - **Leaf** means the service interface can send traffic only to service interfaces with the **Root** role.
  - Multipoint-to-Multipoint (E-LAN in the MEF classification, hereinafter also referred to as M2M service) is a transport service in which traffic is transmitted between multiple service interfaces without a hierarchy.

  The P2P service is a static transport service and does not use the MAC learning mechanism to populate the MAC table on the Controller. MAC addresses are automatically added to the MAC table on the controller when a P2P service is created or modified. The MAC address learning mechanism is used for P2M services and M2M services.
- IP multicast (hereinafter also referred to as IP multicast service) is a transport service in which a multicast tree is built for traffic distribution between multiple service interfaces.
- L3 VPN (hereinafter also referred to as L3 VPN service) is a transport service in which traffic is routed between multiple L3 interfaces, which are mapped to service interfaces or M2M services.

When creating or editing transport services, you can add backup service interfaces. A backup service interface makes it possible to continue data transfer in the event of a failure of the primary service interface. Backup and primary service interfaces can be created on the same CPE device or on different CPE devices.

Traffic can be mirrored or forwarded between service interfaces of CPE devices. In this case, service interfaces can be added to the transport service.

Managing transport services in an SD-WAN instance template or in a CPE template

You can create P2M services and M2M services as well as L3 VPN services in an SD-WAN instance template and then use it when deploying an SD-WAN instance. Transport services created in the SD-WAN instance template are automatically created for the deployed SD-WAN instance. In this way, you can create transport services before you deploy the SD-WAN instance.

Transport services created for a deployed SD-WAN instance can be added to a CPE template, and then you can specify the template when adding or manually registering CPE devices. This automatically creates service interfaces that are mapped to OpenFlow ports, which are mapped to SD-WAN interfaces of the LAN type of CPE devices. Automatically created service interfaces are added to the transport services that you added to the CPE template. In this way, you do not have to manually connect each CPE device to transport services.

Management transport service

When a CPE device is registered, it automatically connects to a management transport service. The management transport service transmits SSH console traffic, runs scripts, and sends API commands to manage the VIM deployed on a uCPE device.

By default, a P2M management transport service is created in each SD-WAN instance template. When creating or editing a P2M service or an M2M service in the SD-WAN instance template, you can make that P2M service or M2M service the management service.

If necessary, Zabbix monitoring traffic, as well as syslog and NetFlow protocol traffic can be transmitted through the management transport service. Zabbix monitoring traffic is encrypted by default, but to have syslog and NetFlow traffic encrypted, such traffic must be transmitted through the management transport service. Transmission of syslog and NetFlow traffic through the management transport service is governed by routing and forwarding table settings of the CPE device.

Traffic packet duplication

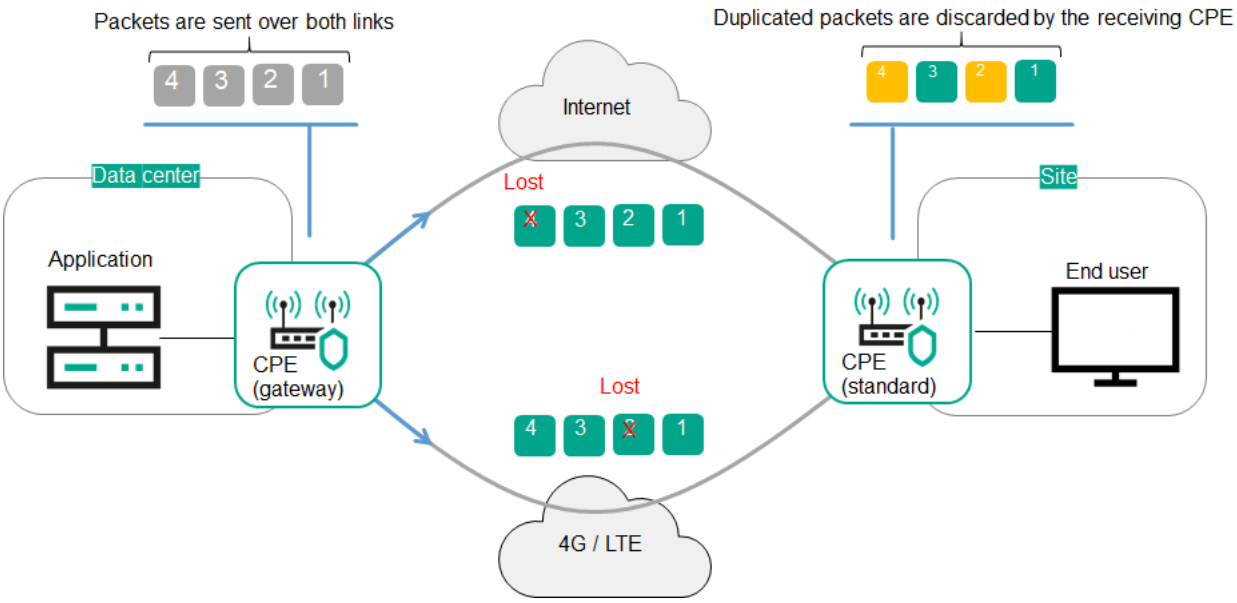
You can enable traffic packet duplication to prevent loss when transmitting traffic packets through the following transport services:

- P2P services
- P2M services
- M2M services
- L3 VPN services
- TAP services

If traffic packet duplication is enabled for a transport service, the source CPE device duplicates traffic packets and sends them through all connections. The destination CPE device receives the traffic packets and drops superfluous traffic packets. If a traffic packet sent through a connection becomes lost, the destination CPE device can receive that traffic packet through a different connection. Duplicating traffic packets can be used for applications that are in high demand, such as ATMs and POS terminals.

To enable traffic packet duplication, select **Broadcast** in the **Balancing mode** drop-down list when creating or editing a transport service.

For example, the figure below shows a CPE device with the gateway role in a data center; this CPE device uses two connections to send traffic packets to a standard CPE device at a remote location. The standard CPE device at the remote location then relays the traffic packets to end users. Both CPE devices are added to a transport service that has traffic packet duplication enabled, which means that traffic packets are duplicated and transmitted simultaneously through two connections.



Duplication of traffic packets between CPE devices

Scenario: Directing application traffic to a transport service

The scenario for directing application traffic to a transport service involves the following steps:

1. **Creating a transport service**

   Create a transport service to which you want to direct application traffic. You can use the following instructions to complete this step:

   - Creating a P2P service
   - Creating a P2M service
   - Creating an M2M service
   - Creating an IP multicast service
   - Creating an L3 VPN service

2. **Creating a traffic classification rule**

   Create a traffic classification rule to identify the traffic of the application in the overall data stream. When creating a traffic classification rule, you must select the L3 protocol on the **L3 fields** tab, and select the application whose traffic you want to direct to the transport service on the **DPI** tab.

   If you want to direct traffic of multiple applications to a transport service, you must create a traffic classification rule for each application.

3. **Creating a traffic filter**

Create a traffic filter to determine if routing the application traffic is allowed. When creating a traffic filter, you must add the traffic classification rules that you created for the application traffic to the traffic filter.

4. **Creating an ACL interface**

   Create an ACL interface to apply the traffic filter to traffic that is transmitted through this ACL interface. When creating an ACL interface, you must select a traffic filter that you created for the application traffic.

5. **Adding the ACL interface to the transport service**

   Edit the transport service to add the ACL interface that you created for the application traffic. You can use the following instructions to complete this step:

   - Editing a P2P service
   - Editing a P2M service
   - Editing an M2M service
   - Editing an IP multicast service
   - Editing an L3 VPN service

Application traffic is directed to the transport service.

Scenario: Establishing L2 connectivity between CPE devices

You can establish L2 connectivity between CPE devices for the following purposes:

- Creating an L2 domain that includes multiple remote locations.
- Transmitting L2 traffic for keepalive links between CPE devices installed at different remote locations.
- Implementation of custom traffic mirroring scenarios.

The scenario for establishing L2 connectivity between CPE devices involves the following steps:

1 **Creation of OpenFlow ports on virtual switches of CPE devices**

1. When creating or editing a network interface without an IP address on CPE devices between which you want to establish L2 connectivity, select the **L2 mode** check box. When the check box is selected, an OpenFlow port mapped to the network interface is automatically created on the virtual switch of the CPE device. This check box is cleared by default. You cannot select this check box in the following cases:

   - You selected the following check boxes when creating a network interface:
     - **Bridge**
     - **NetFlow**
     - **Force IP address, route, and gateway**
   - The network interface is used in a static route.
   - The network interface is used by BGP.
   - The network interface is used by the OSPF protocol.
   - The network interface is used by the VRRP protocol.
   - The network interface is used to transmit multicast traffic.
   - The network interface is used by a virtual routing and forwarding table (VRF).
   - The network interface is used for CPE device diagnostics using the ping, traceroute, tcpdump, and/or sweep utility.

   Number of the OpenFlow port automatically created on the virtual switch of the CPE device is displayed in the **OpenFlow port** field. You can change the OpenFlow port number. Range of values: 11 to 20.

1 **Creating service interfaces mapped to OpenFlow ports**

Create service interfaces mapped to OpenFlow ports that were automatically created at the previous step of this scenario. You must select the OpenFlow port that the service interface is mapped to in the **Port** drop-down list.

2 **Adding service interfaces to the transport service**

Add the service interfaces that you created at the previous step of this scenario to the transport service that you want to use to establish L2 connectivity between CPE devices. You can use the following instructions to complete this step:

- Creating a P2P service and Editing a P2P service.
- Creating a P2M service and Editing a P2M service.
- Creating a M2M service and Editing a M2M service.
- Creating an L3 VPN service and Editing an L3 VPN service.
- Creating an IP multicast service and Editing an IP multicast service.
- Creating a TAP service and Editing a TAP service.

L2 connectivity between CPE devices is established.

Managing Point-to-Point (P2P) transport services

To view the table of P2P services, go to the **Infrastructure** menu section, click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller, and go to the **P2P services** section. Information about P2P services is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Name** is the name of the P2P service.
- **Source** contains information about the source service interface of the P2P service:
  - Name and DPID of the CPE device on which the service interface was created
  - The number of the OpenFlow port which the service interface is mapped to
- **Destination** contains information about the destination service interface of the P2P service:
  - Name and DPID of the CPE device on which the service interface was created
  - The number of the OpenFlow port which the service interface is mapped to
- **QoS** is the quality of service rule specified for the source service interface of the P2P service.
- **Backup service interface** contains information about the backup service interface of the P2P service:
  - Name and DPID of the CPE device on which the service interface was created
  - The number of the OpenFlow port which the service interface is mapped to
- **Status** is the status of the P2P service:
  - **Up**
  - **Down**

The actions that you can perform with the table are described in the Managing solution component tables article.

Creating a P2P service

To create a P2P service:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **P2P services** section.

   A table of P2P services is displayed.

4. In the upper part of the page, click **+ P2P service**.

5. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Name** field, enter the name of the P2P service.

6. In the **Constraint** drop-down list, select the created Manual-TE constraint or threshold constraint that you want to add to the P2P service.

7. In the **Balancing mode** drop-down list, select the balancing mode for distributing traffic among the links:

   - **Per-flow** means the traffic streams (5-Tuple) are distributed among the links in accordance with the link cost. This is the default setting.
   - **Per-packet** means the traffic packets are distributed among the links in accordance with the link cost.
   - **Broadcast** means the traffic packets are duplicated and transmitted simultaneously through all links to avoid loss.

   You can manually specify link cost.

8. If necessary, in the **Description** field, enter a brief description of the P2P service.

9. In the **Switch** and **Service interface** drop-down lists on the left, select the CPE device and the created service interface that you want to use as the source service interface of the P2P service.

10. In the **Switch** and **Service interface** drop-down lists on the right, select the CPE device and the created service interface that you want to use as the destination service interface of the P2P service.

11. If you want to display service interfaces that were added to transport services in the **Service interface** drop-down lists, select the **Show used interfaces** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

12. If you want to swap the values selected in the **Service interface** drop-down lists, select the **Switch interfaces** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

13. If you want to add a reserve service interface of the P2P service source through which traffic is transmitted if the primary service interface fails:

    a. Select the **Use backup interface** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

    b. In the **Backup switch** and **Backup service interface** drop-down lists, select the CPE device and the created service interface that you want to use as the reserve service interface.

    c. If you want to display service interfaces that were added to transport services in the **Backup service interface** drop-down list, select the **Show used interfaces** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

    If the primary source service interface of the P2P service goes up again, the P2P service keeps using the backup source service interface.

14. In the **Inbound filter** drop-down lists on the left and right, select the created traffic filter for the source and destination interfaces of the P2P service.

15. In the **QoS** drop-down list, select the created quality of service rule for the service interface of the P2P service source.

16. If you want to track the status of the source and destination service interfaces of the P2P service and when one of the interfaces goes down, automatically disable the other, select the **Propagate interface status** check box. This check box is cleared by default. This check box cannot be selected when the **Use backup interface** check box is selected.

    When the service interface that was disabled first goes back online, the second service interface that was automatically disabled also resumes operation. This functionality works only on service interfaces with Access traffic classification. You can select the type of traffic classification when creating a service interface.

17. Click **Create**.

The P2P service is created and displayed in the table.

Viewing statistics of a P2P service

To view the statistics of a P2P service:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **P2P services** section.

   A table of P2P services is displayed.

4. Click **Management** → **Statistics** next to the P2P service whose statistics you want to view.

This opens a window with statistics of the P2P service.

Viewing and configuring the display of a P2P service topology

To view and configure the display of a P2P service topology:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **P2P services** section.

   A table of P2P services is displayed.

4. Click **Management** → **Service topology** next to the P2P service whose topology you want to view.

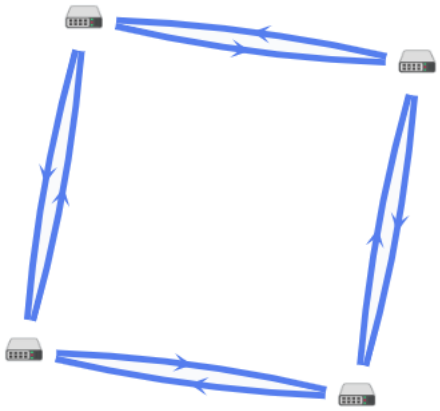
   This opens a window with the P2P service topology.

5. If you need to move CPE devices, do one of the following:

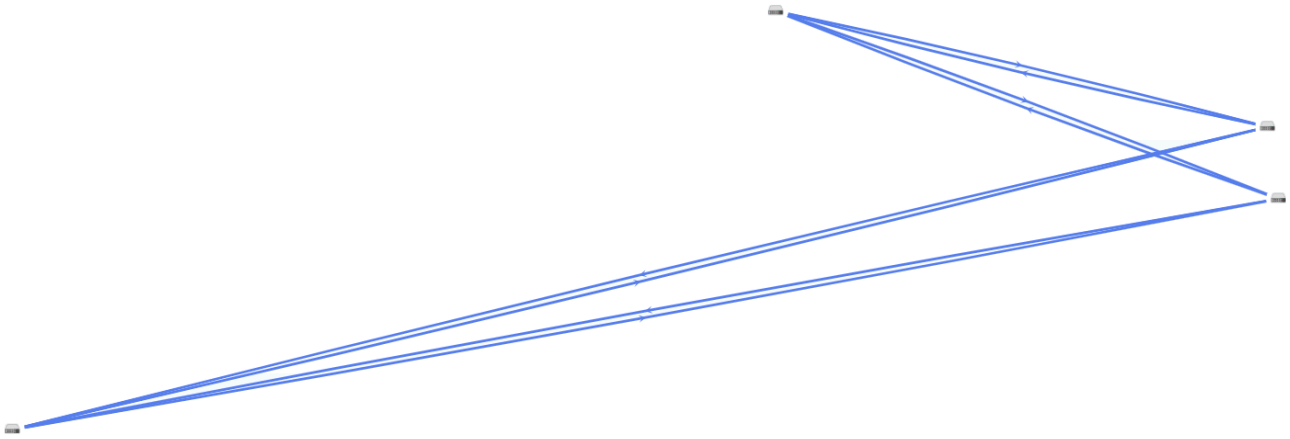
- If you want to manually change the position of CPE devices, click **Manual** and adjust the position of CPE devices.

- If you want to automatically arrange CPE devices, click **Automatically** and select one of the following values from the displayed drop-down list:

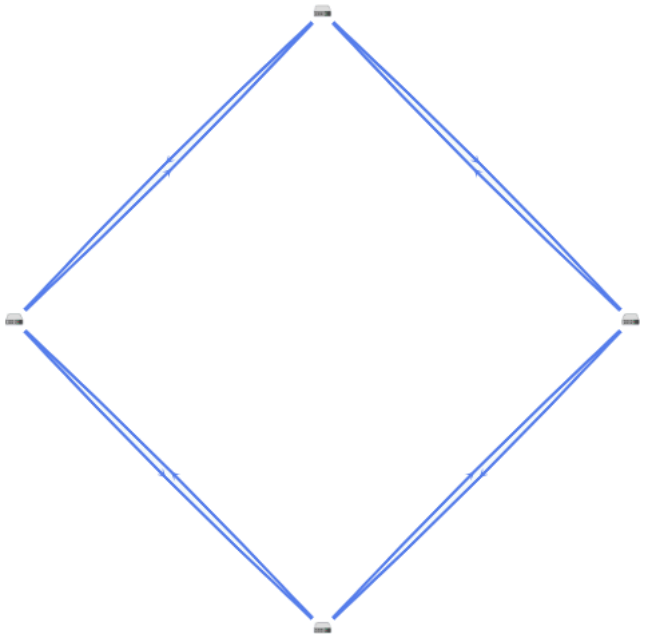
  - **Physical simulation** — CPE devices are arranged approximately in accordance with their actual location relative to each other, for example:



  - **Random** — The arrangement of CPE devices is randomized, for example:

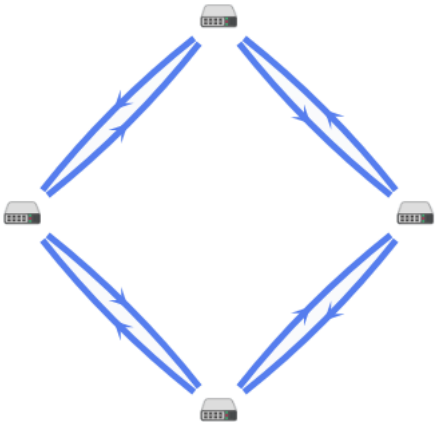


  - **Circle** — CPE devices are arranged in accordance with a ring topology, for example:



- **Breadth first** — CPE devices are arranged horizontally, for example:

- **Concentric** — CPE devices are arranged concentrically, for example:



- **Grid** — CPE devices are arranged in accordance with a grid topology, for example:

6. If you want to display information about CPE devices, select the following check boxes:

   - **Name** displays the names of CPE devices.
   - **IP address** displays the IP addresses of CPE devices.

   These check boxes are cleared by default.

7. If you want to display a segment between two CPE devices:

   a. Select the **Segments** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

   b. In the displayed drop-down lists, select the source and destination CPE devices of the segment.

   The segment between the CPE devices is displayed.

Editing a P2P service

To edit a P2P service:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **P2P services** section.

   A table of P2P services is displayed.

4. Click **Management** → **Edit** next to the P2P service that you want to edit.

5. This opens a window; in that window, if necessary, edit the P2P service settings. For a description of the settings, see the instructions for creating a P2P service.

6. Click **Save**.

The P2P service is modified and updated in the table.

Restarting a P2P service

You can restart a P2P service to restore it in case of malfunctions. When you restart a P2P service, the controller automatically deletes and re-creates the rules associated with this P2P service in the OpenFlow tables of CPE devices. This affects CPE devices whose service interfaces are added to the P2P service.

To restart a P2P service:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **P2P services** section.

   A table of P2P services is displayed.

4. Click **Management** → **Reprovision** next to the P2P service that you want to reprovision.

5. In the confirmation window, click **Reprovision**.

The P2P service is restarted.

Deleting a P2P service

Deleted P2P services cannot be restored

To delete a P2P service:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **P2P services** section.

   A table of P2P services is displayed.

4. Click **Management** → **Delete** next to the P2P service that you want to delete.

5. To delete the service interfaces added to the P2P service, select the **Delete associated service interfaces** check box in the confirmation window. This check box is cleared by default.

6. Click **Delete**.

The P2P service is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

Managing Point-to-Multipoint (P2M) transport services

To view the table of P2M services, go to the **Infrastructure** menu section, click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller, and go to the **P2M services** section. Information about P2M services is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Name** is the name of the P2M service.
- **Mode** indicates whether a DFI (Default Forwarding Interface) is used in the P2M service, to which unknown unicast traffic is sent:
  - **Classic** if you do not want to use DFI. This is the default setting.
  - **DFI with FIB on root and leafs** if you want to use DFI on the service interface with the root role.
  - **DFI with FIB on leaf** if you want to use DFI on the service interface with the root role. Service interfaces with the leaf role must be created on the same CPE device. Backup service interfaces with the leaf role must be created on the same CPE device, which must be different from the CPE device on which the primary service interfaces are created.
- **MAC age (sec)** is the time period in seconds during which entries are kept in the MAC table of the controller.
- **MAC learn mode** is the action applied to a series of frames when the first frame is sent to the controller to learn the source MAC address:
  - **Learn and flood** means the controller remembers the MAC address of the source and checks for the presence of the destination MAC address in the MAC table. If the destination MAC address is not in the MAC table, the series of frames is sent to all service interfaces added to the P2M service, except for the service interface on which the series of frames originally arrived.
  - **Learn and drop** means the controller remembers the MAC address of the source and checks for the presence of the destination MAC address in the MAC table. If the destination MAC address is not in the MAC table, the series of frames is dropped.

  If the destination MAC address is present in the MAC table, the series of frames is sent to the destination service interface.
- **MAC table size** is the maximum number of entries in the MAC table on the controller.

- **MAC table overload** is the policy for processing new MAC addresses when the MAC table of the controller is full:
  - **Flood** means traffic with destination MAC addresses that have not been learned is transmitted as BUM traffic (Broadcast, unknown-unicast, and multicast).
  - **Drop** means that traffic with destination MAC addresses that have not been learned is dropped.
- **Endpoints** is the information about service interfaces that have been added to the P2M service:
  - Names and DPIDs of the CPE devices on which the service interfaces were created
  - Numbers of OpenFlow ports which the service interfaces are mapped to
  - Roles of the service interfaces:
    - **Root** means the service interface can send traffic to service interfaces with any role.
    - **Leaf** means the service interface can send traffic only to service interfaces with the **Root** role.
- **Status** is the status of the P2M service:
  - **Up**
  - **Down**
- **Description** is a brief description of the P2M service.

The actions that you can perform with the table are described in the Managing solution component tables article.

Creating a P2M service

To create a P2M service:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **P2M services** section.

   A table of P2M services is displayed.

4. In the upper part of the page, click **+ P2M service**.

5. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Name** field, enter the name of the P2M service.

6. In the **Constraint** drop-down list, select the created Manual-TE constraint or threshold constraint that you want to add to the P2M service.

7. In the **Balancing mode** drop-down list, select the balancing mode for distributing traffic among the links:

   - **Per-flow** means the traffic streams (5-Tuple) are distributed among the links in accordance with the link cost. This is the default setting.
   - **Per-packet** means the traffic packets are distributed among the links in accordance with the link cost.
   - **Broadcast** means the traffic packets are duplicated and transmitted simultaneously through all links to avoid loss.

   You can manually specify link cost.

8. In the **Mode** drop-down list, select whether the P2M service uses a DFI (Default Forwarding Interface), to which unknown unicast traffic is sent:

   - **Classic** if you do not want to use DFI. This is the default setting.
   - **DFI with FIB on root and leafs** if you want to use DFI on the service interface with the root role.
   - **DFI with FIB on leaf** if you want to use DFI on the service interface with the root role. Service interfaces with the leaf role must be created on the same CPE device. Backup service interfaces with the leaf role must be created on the same CPE device, which must be different from the CPE device on which the primary service interfaces are created.

9. In the **MAC learn mode** drop-down list, select the action that you want to apply to a series of frames when the first frame is sent to the controller to learn the source MAC address:

   - **Learn and flood** means the controller remembers the MAC address of the source and checks for the presence of the destination MAC address in the MAC table. If the destination MAC address is not in the MAC table, the series of frames is sent to all service interfaces added to the P2M service, except for the service interface on which the series of frames originally arrived. This is the default setting.
   - **Learn and drop** means the controller remembers the MAC address of the source and checks for the presence of the destination MAC address in the MAC table. If the destination MAC address is not in the MAC table, the series of frames is dropped.

   If the destination MAC address is present in the MAC table, the series of frames is sent to the destination service interface.

10. In the **MAC age (sec)** field, enter the time period in seconds during which entries are kept in the MAC table of the controller. Range of values: 10 to 65,535. Default value: `300`.

11. In the **MAC table overload** drop-down list, select the policy for processing new MAC addresses when the MAC table of the controller is full:

    - **Flood** means traffic with destination MAC addresses that have not been learned is transmitted as BUM traffic (Broadcast, unknown-unicast, and multicast). This is the default setting.
    - **Drop** means that traffic with destination MAC addresses that have not been learned is dropped.

12. In the **MAC table size** field, enter the maximum number of entries in the MAC table on the controller. Range of values: 0 to 65,535. `0` means the number of records in the MAC table of the controller is not limited. Default value: `100`.

13. If necessary, in the **Description** field, enter a brief description of the P2M service.

14. Click **Next** to proceed to the next group of settings.

15. Add the service interface to the P2M service:

    a. Click **+ Add**.

    The service interface settings are displayed.

    b. In the **Switch** and **Service interface** drop-down lists on the right, select the CPE device and the created service interface that you want to add to the P2M service.

    c. In the **QoS** drop-down list, select the created quality of service rule for the service interface.

    d. In the **Inbound filter** drop-down list, select the created traffic filter for the service interface.

    e. In the **Role** drop-down list, select the role of the service interface:

    - **Root** means the service interface can send traffic to service interfaces with any role.
    - **Leaf** means the service interface can send traffic only to service interfaces with the **Root** role.
    - **Root, default forwarding interface** means the service interface can send traffic to service interfaces with any role, and the DFI role is assigned to this service interface.

    f. If you want to add a backup service interface through which traffic must be sent when the primary service interface fails, in the **Backup switch** and **Backup service interface** drop-down lists, select the CPE device and the created service interface that you want to use as a backup service interface.

    If the primary service interface goes back online, the P2M service continues to use the backup service interface.

    The service interface is added and displayed in the lower part of the window. You can add multiple service interfaces or delete service interfaces. To delete a service interface, click the delete icon ✕ next to it.

16. Click **Next** to proceed to the next group of settings.

17. If you want to add multiple network interfaces to a P2M service at the same time, you need to add a group of OpenFlow ports. To do so:

    a. Click **+ Add**.

    Settings of the OpenFlow port group are displayed.

    b. In the **Group** drop-down list, select the created OpenFlow port group that you want to add to the P2M service. When you save the settings of the P2M service, service interfaces are automatically created that are mapped to OpenFlow ports in the OpenFlow port group, and then these service interfaces are automatically added to the P2M service.

    c. In the **QoS** drop-down list, select the created quality of service rule for automatically created service interfaces mapped to OpenFlow ports.

    d. In the **VLAN ID** field, enter the outer VLAN tag value for automatically created service interfaces mapped to OpenFlow ports. Service interfaces with the VLAN traffic classification type can only be created automatically. The same outer VLAN tag is assigned to each service interface.

    e. In the **Role** drop-down list, select the role for automatically created service interfaces mapped to OpenFlow ports:

    - **Root** means the service interface can send traffic to service interfaces with any role.
    - **Leaf** means the service interface can send traffic only to service interfaces with the **Root** role.

    The OpenFlow group is added and displayed in the lower part of the window. You can add multiple OpenFlow port groups or delete OpenFlow port groups. To delete a group of OpenFlow ports, click the delete icon ✕ next to it.

18. Click **Create**.

The P2M service is created and displayed in the table.

Viewing statistics of a P2M service

To view the statistics of a P2M service:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **P2M services** section.

   A table of P2M services is displayed.

4. Click **Management** → **Statistics** next to the P2M service whose statistics you want to view.

This opens a window with statistics of the P2M service.

Viewing the MAC table of a P2M service

To view the MAC table of a P2M service:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **P2M services** section.

   A table of P2M services is displayed.

4. Click **Management** → **MAC table** next to the P2M service whose MAC table you want to view.

   This opens a window with the MAC table of the P2M service. Information about MAC addresses is displayed in the following columns of the table:

   - **MAC** is the MAC address.
   - **Hostname** is the DPID of the switch behind which the MAC address is located.
   - **Port** is the number of the port behind which the MAC address is located.
   - **VLAN** is the segment of the VLAN on which the MAC address is located.
   - **Age (sec)** is the time in seconds for which the MAC address has been present in the table of MAC addresses.

5. If you want to find a specific MAC address, enter it in the field and click **Find by MAC**.

6. If you want to clear the MAC table, click **Clear**.

Viewing and configuring the display of a P2M service topology

To view and configure the display of a P2M service topology:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **P2M services** section.

   A table of P2M services is displayed.

4. Click **Management** → **Service topology** next to the P2M service whose topology you want to view.

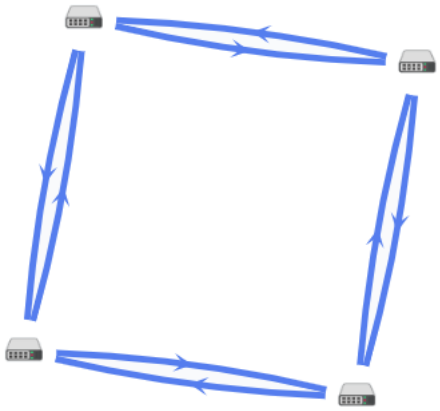
   This opens a window with the P2M service topology.

5. If you need to move CPE devices, do one of the following:

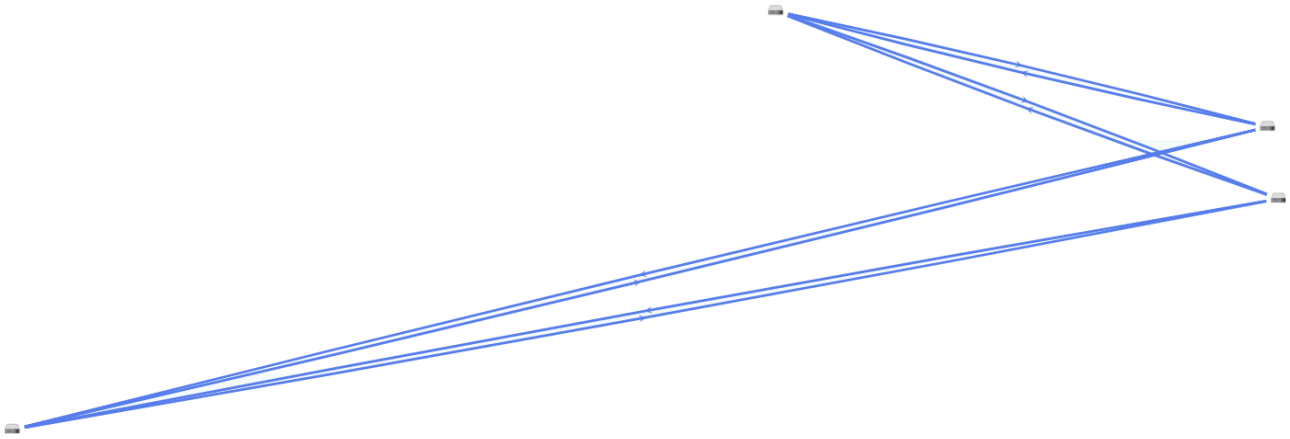
- If you want to manually change the position of CPE devices, click **Manual** and adjust the position of CPE devices.

- If you want to automatically arrange CPE devices, click **Automatically** and select one of the following values from the displayed drop-down list:

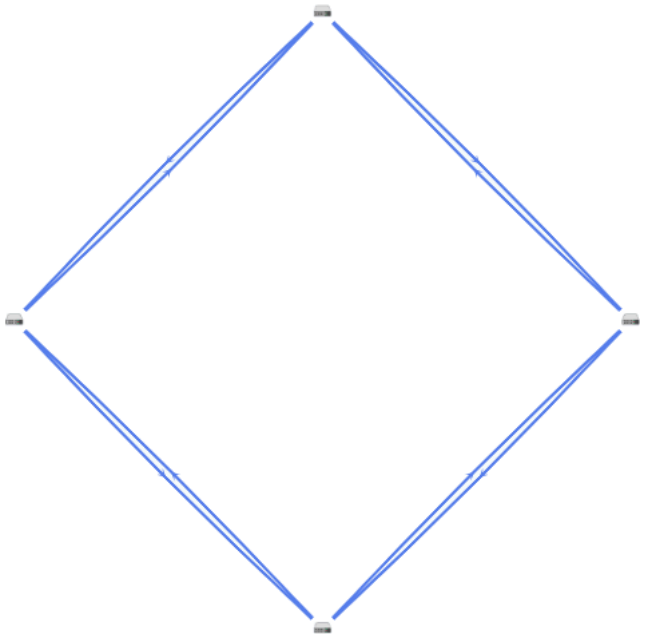
  - **Physical simulation** — CPE devices are arranged approximately in accordance with their actual location relative to each other, for example:



  - **Random** — The arrangement of CPE devices is randomized, for example:

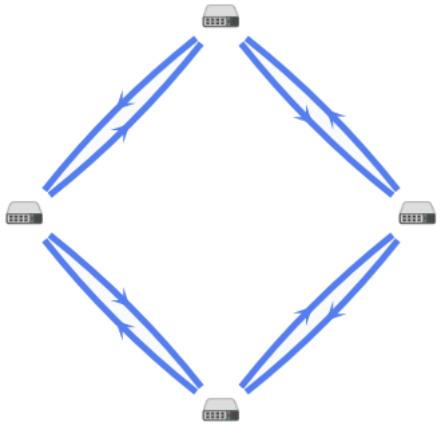


  - **Circle** — CPE devices are arranged in accordance with a ring topology, for example:



- **Breadth first** — CPE devices are arranged horizontally, for example:

- **Concentric** — CPE devices are arranged concentrically, for example:



- **Grid** — CPE devices are arranged in accordance with a grid topology, for example:

6. If you want to display information about CPE devices, select the following check boxes:

   - **Name** displays the names of CPE devices.
   - **IP address** displays the IP addresses of CPE devices.

   These check boxes are cleared by default.

7. If you want to display a segment between two CPE devices:

   a. Select the **Segments** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

   b. In the displayed drop-down lists, select the source and destination CPE devices of the segment.

   The segment between the CPE devices is displayed.

Editing a P2M service

To edit a P2M service:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **P2M services** section.

   A table of P2M services is displayed.

4. Click **Management** → **Edit** next to the P2M service that you want to edit.

5. This opens a window; in that window, if necessary, edit the P2M service settings. For a description of the settings, see the instructions for creating a P2M service.

6. Click **Save**.

The P2M service is modified and updated in the table.

Restarting a P2M service

You can restart a P2M service to restore it in case of malfunctions. When you restart a P2M service, the controller automatically deletes and re-creates the rules associated with this P2M service in the OpenFlow tables of CPE devices. This affects CPE devices whose service interfaces are added to the P2M service.

To restart a P2M service:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **P2M services** section.

   A table of P2M services is displayed.

4. Click **Management** → **Reprovision** next to the P2M service that you want to reprovision.

5. In the confirmation window, click **Confirm**.

The P2M service is restarted.

Deleting a P2M service

Deleted P2M services cannot be restored.

To delete a P2M service:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **P2M services** section.

   A table of P2M services is displayed.

4. Click **Management** → **Delete** next to the P2M service that you want to delete.

5. If you want to delete the service interfaces added to the P2M service, select the **Delete associated service interfaces** check box in the confirmation window. This check box is cleared by default.

6. Click **Delete**.

The P2M service is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

Managing Multipoint-to-Multipoint (M2M) transport services

To view the table of M2M services, go to the **Infrastructure** menu section, click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller, and go to the **M2M services** section. Information about M2M services is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Name** is the name of the M2M service.
- **MAC age (sec)** is the time period in seconds during which entries are kept in the MAC table of the controller.
- **MAC learn mode** is the action applied to a series of frames when the first frame is sent to the controller to learn the source MAC address:
  - **Learn and flood** means the controller remembers the MAC address of the source and checks for the presence of the destination MAC address in the MAC table. If the destination MAC address is not in the MAC table, the series of frames is sent to all service interfaces added to the M2M service, except for the service interface on which the series of frames originally arrived.
  - **Learn and drop** means the controller remembers the MAC address of the source and checks for the presence of the destination MAC address in the MAC table. If the destination MAC address is not in the MAC table, the series of frames is dropped.

  If the destination MAC address is present in the MAC table, the series of frames is sent to the destination service interface.
- **MAC table size** is the maximum number of entries in the MAC table on the controller.
- **MAC table overload** is the policy for processing new MAC addresses when the MAC table of the controller is full:
  - **Flood** means traffic with destination MAC addresses that have not been learned is transmitted as BUM traffic (Broadcast, unknown-unicast, and multicast). This is the default setting.
  - **Drop** means that traffic with destination MAC addresses that have not been learned is dropped.
- **Endpoints** is the information about service interfaces that have been added to the M2M service:
  - Names and DPIDs of the CPE devices on which the service interfaces were created
  - Numbers of OpenFlow ports which the service interfaces are mapped to
  - Roles of the service interfaces

- **Status** is the status of the M2M service:
  - **Up**
  - **Down**
- **Description** is a brief description of the M2M service.

The actions that you can perform with the table are described in the Managing solution component tables article.

Creating an M2M service

To create an M2M service:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **M2M services** section.

   A table of M2M services is displayed.

4. In the upper part of the page, click **+ M2M service**.

5. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Name** field, enter the name of the M2M service.

6. In the **Constraint** drop-down list, select the created Manual-TE constraint or threshold constraint that you want to add to the M2M service.

7. In the **Balancing mode** drop-down list, select the balancing mode for distributing traffic among the links:
   - **Per-flow** means the traffic streams (5-Tuple) are distributed among the links in accordance with the link cost. This is the default setting.
   - **Per-packet** means the traffic packets are distributed among the links in accordance with the link cost.
   - **Broadcast** means the traffic packets are duplicated and transmitted simultaneously through all links to avoid loss.

   You can manually specify link cost.

8. In the **MAC learn mode** drop-down list, select the action that you want to apply to a series of frames when the first frame is sent to the controller to learn the source MAC address:

   - **Learn and flood** means the controller remembers the MAC address of the source and checks for the presence of the destination MAC address in the MAC table. If the destination MAC address is not in the MAC table, the series of frames is sent to all service interfaces added to the M2M service, except for the service interface on which the series of frames originally arrived. This is the default setting.

   - **Learn and drop** means the controller remembers the MAC address of the source and checks for the presence of the destination MAC address in the MAC table. If the destination MAC address is not in the MAC table, the series of frames is dropped.

   If the destination MAC address is present in the MAC table, the series of frames is sent to the destination service interface.

9. In the **MAC age (sec)** field, enter the time period in seconds during which entries are kept in the MAC table of the controller. Range of values: 10 to 65,535. Default value: `300`.

10. In the **MAC table overload** drop-down list, select the policy for processing new MAC addresses when the MAC table of the controller is full:

    - **Flood** means traffic with destination MAC addresses that have not been learned is transmitted as BUM traffic (Broadcast, unknown-unicast, and multicast). This is the default setting.

    - **Drop** means that traffic with destination MAC addresses that have not been learned is dropped.

11. In the **MAC table size** field, enter the maximum number of entries in the MAC table on the controller. Range of values: 0 to 65,535. `0` means the number of records in the MAC table of the controller is not limited. Default value: `100`.

12. If necessary, in the **Description** field, enter a brief description of the M2M service.

13. Click **Next** to proceed to the next group of settings.

14. Add the service interface to the M2M service:

    a. Click **+ Add**.

    The service interface settings are displayed.

    b. In the **Switch** and **Service interface** drop-down lists on the right, select the CPE device and the created service interface that you want to add to the M2M service.

    c. In the **QoS** drop-down list, select the created quality of service rule for the service interface.

    d. In the **Inbound filter** drop-down list, select the created traffic filter for the service interface.

    e. If you want to add a backup service interface through which traffic must be sent when the primary service interface fails, in the **Backup switch** and **Backup service interface** drop-down lists, select the CPE device and the created service interface that you want to use as a backup service interface.

    If the primary service interface goes back online, the M2M service continues to use the backup service interface.

    The service interface is added and displayed in the lower part of the window. You can add multiple service interfaces or delete service interfaces. To delete a service interface, click the delete icon ✕ next to it.

15. Click **Next** to proceed to the next group of settings.

16. If you want to add multiple network interfaces to an M2M service at the same time, you need to add a group of OpenFlow ports. To do so:

    a. Click **+ Add**.

    Settings of the OpenFlow port group are displayed.

    b. In the **Group** drop-down list, select the created OpenFlow port group that you want to add to the M2M service. When you save the settings of the M2M service, service interfaces are automatically created that are mapped to OpenFlow ports in the OpenFlow port group, and then these service interfaces are automatically added to the M2M service.

    c. In the **QoS** drop-down list, select the created quality of service rule for automatically created service interfaces mapped to OpenFlow ports.

    d. In the **VLAN ID** field, enter the outer VLAN tag value for automatically created service interfaces mapped to OpenFlow ports. Service interfaces with the VLAN classification type can only be created automatically. The same outer VLAN tag is assigned to each service interface.

    The OpenFlow group is added and displayed in the lower part of the window. You can add multiple OpenFlow port groups or delete OpenFlow port groups. To delete a group of OpenFlow ports, click the delete icon ✕ next to it.

17. Click **Create**.

The M2M service is created and displayed in the table.

Viewing statistics of an M2M service

To view the statistics of an M2M service:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **M2M services** section.

   A table of M2M services is displayed.

4. Click **Management** → **Statistics** next to the M2M service whose statistics you want to view.

This opens a window with statistics of the M2M service.

Viewing the MAC table of an M2M service

To view the MAC table of an M2M service:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **M2M services** section.

   A table of M2M services is displayed.

4. Click **Management** → **MAC table** next to the M2M service whose statistics you want to view.

   This opens a window with the MAC table of the M2M service. Information about MAC addresses is displayed in the following columns of the table:

   - **MAC** is the MAC address.
   - **Hostname** is the DPID of the switch behind which the MAC address is located.
   - **Port** is the number of the port behind which the MAC address is located.
   - **VLAN** is the segment of the VLAN on which the MAC address is located.
   - **Age (sec)** is the time in seconds for which the MAC address has been present in the table of MAC addresses.

5. If you want to find a specific MAC address, enter it in the field and click **Find by MAC**.

6. If you want to clear the MAC table, click **Clear**.

Viewing and configuring the display of an M2M service topology

To view and configure the display of an M2M service topology:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **M2M services** section.

   A table of M2M services is displayed.

4. Click **Management** → **Service topology** next to the M2M service whose topology you want to view.

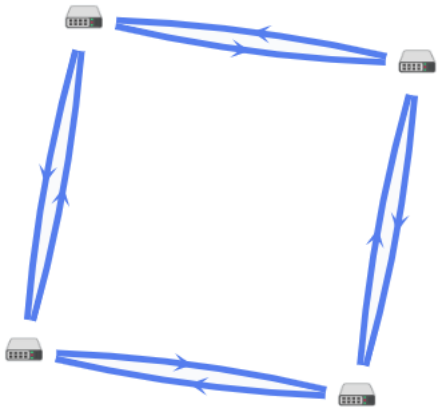
   This opens a window with the M2M service topology.

5. If you need to move CPE devices, do one of the following:

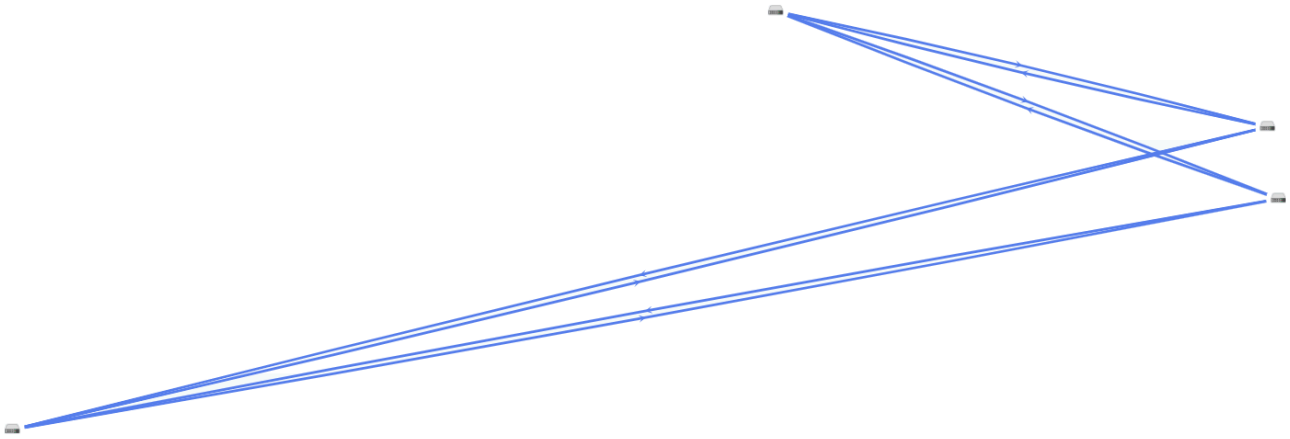
- If you want to manually change the position of CPE devices, click **Manual** and adjust the position of CPE devices.

- If you want to automatically arrange CPE devices, click **Automatically** and select one of the following values from the displayed drop-down list:

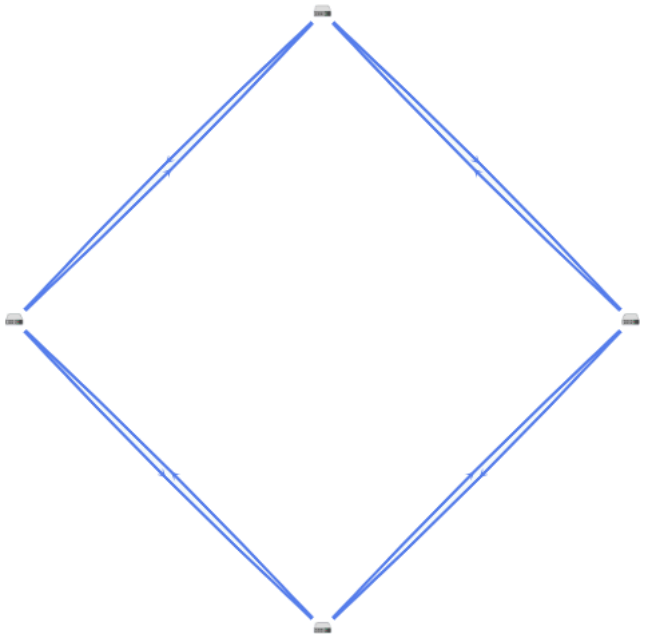
  - **Physical simulation** — CPE devices are arranged approximately in accordance with their actual location relative to each other, for example:



  - **Random** — The arrangement of CPE devices is randomized, for example:

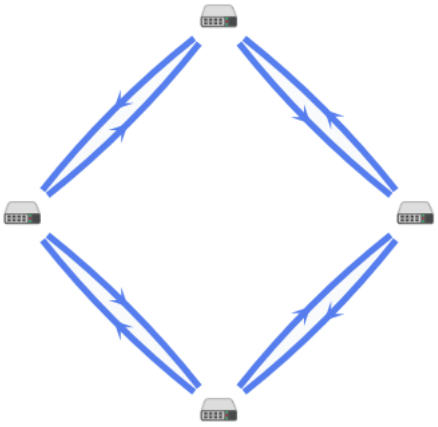


  - **Circle** — CPE devices are arranged in accordance with a ring topology, for example:



- **Breadth first** — CPE devices are arranged horizontally, for example:

- **Concentric** — CPE devices are arranged concentrically, for example:



- **Grid** — CPE devices are arranged in accordance with a grid topology, for example:

6. If you want to display information about CPE devices, select the following check boxes:

   - **Name** displays the names of CPE devices.
   - **IP address** displays the IP addresses of CPE devices.

   These check boxes are cleared by default.

7. If you want to display a segment between two CPE devices:

   a. Select the **Segments** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

   b. In the displayed drop-down lists, select the source and destination CPE devices of the segment.

   The segment between the CPE devices is displayed.

Editing an M2M service

To edit an M2M service:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **M2M services** section.

   A table of M2M services is displayed.

4. Click **Management** → **Edit** next to the M2M service that you want to edit.

5. This opens a window; in that window, if necessary, edit the M2M service settings. For a description of the settings, see the instructions for creating an M2M service.

6. Click **Save**.

The M2M service is modified and updated in the table.

Restarting an M2M service

You can restart an M2M service to restore it in case of malfunctions. When you restart an M2M service, the controller automatically deletes and re-creates the rules associated with this M2M service in the OpenFlow tables of CPE devices. This affects CPE devices whose service interfaces are added to the M2M service.

To restart an M2M service:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **M2M services** section.

   A table of M2M services is displayed.

4. Click **Management** → **Reprovision** next to the M2M service that you want to reprovision.

5. In the confirmation window, click **Confirm**.

The M2M service is restarted.

Deleting an M2M service

Deleted M2M services cannot be restored.

To delete an M2M service:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **M2M services** section.

   A table of M2M services is displayed.

4. Click **Management** → **Delete** next to the M2M service that you want to delete.

5. If you want to delete the service interfaces added to the M2M service, select the **Delete associated service interfaces** check box in the confirmation window. This check box is cleared by default.

6. Click **Delete**.

The M2M service is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

Managing IP multicast transport services

To view the table of IP multicast services, go to the **Infrastructure** menu section, click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller, and go to the **IP multicast services** section. Information about IP multicast services is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Name** is the name of the IP multicast service.
- **Source service interface** contains information about the source service interface of the IP multicast service:
  - Name and DPID of the CPE device on which the service interface was created
  - The number of the OpenFlow port which the service interface is mapped to
- **Backup service interface** contains information about the backup source service interface of the IP multicast service:
  - Name and DPID of the CPE device on which the service interface was created
  - The number of the OpenFlow port which the service interface is mapped to
- **Querier IP** is the IP address of the source service interface of the IP multicast service.
- **Consumer service interfaces** contains information about the destination service interfaces of the IP multicast service:
  - Names and DPIDs of the CPE devices on which the service interfaces were created
  - Numbers of OpenFlow ports which the service interfaces are mapped to
- **Groups** contains information about multicast groups that have been added to the IP multicast service:
  - IP addresses of multicast groups
  - Prefix lengths of multicast groups
  - Guaranteed bandwidth for multicast groups

- **Status** is the status of the IP multicast service:
  - **Up**
  - **Down**
- **Errors** are errors that occurred while the IP multicast service was running.

The actions that you can perform with the table are described in the Managing solution component tables article.

Creating an IP multicast service

To create an IP multicast service:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **IP multicast services** section.

   A table of IP multicast services is displayed.

4. In the upper part of the page, click **+ IP multicast service**.

5. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Name** field, enter the name of the IP multicast service.

6. In the **Source switch** and **Source service interface** drop-down lists, select the CPE device and the created service interface that you want to use as the source service interface of the IP multicast service.

7. If you want to display service interfaces that were added to transport services in the **Source service interface** drop-down list, select the **Show used interfaces** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

8. In the **Querier IP** field, enter the IP address of the source service interface of the IP multicast service.

9. If you want to add a reserve service interface of the IP multicast service source through which traffic is transmitted if the primary service interface fails:

    a. Select the **Use backup interface** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

    b. In the **Backup switch** and **Backup service interface** drop-down lists, select the CPE device and the created service interface that you want to use as the reserve service interface.

    c. If you want to display service interfaces that were added to transport services in the **Backup service interface** drop-down list, select the **Show used interfaces** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

    d. If you want the IP multicast service to use the primary source service interface again when that service interface goes up again, select the **Recovery auto-return** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

    e. If you want the multicast traffic distribution tree to be built on the backup service interface, select the **Backup multicast tree** check box. As long as the primary service interface remains active, traffic packets on the backup service interface are dropped. This check box is selected by default.

10. Select the **IGMP proxy** check box to use an IGMP proxy server. This allows you to maintain traffic transmission to active multicast groups to which at least one destination service interface of the IP multicast service is connected. This check box is cleared by default.

11. In the **QoS** drop-down list, select the created quality of service rule for the service interface of the IP multicast service source.

12. Click **Next** to proceed to the next group of settings.

13. Add the destination service interface to the IP multicast service:

    a. In the **Consumer switch** and **Consumer service interface** drop-down lists, select the CPE device and the created service interface that you want to use as the destination service interface of the IP multicast service.

    b. If you want to display service interfaces that were added to transport services in the **Consumer service interface** drop-down list, select the **Show used interfaces** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

    c. Click **+ Add**.

    The service interface is added and displayed in the lower part of the window. You can add multiple service interfaces or delete service interfaces. To delete a service interface, click **Delete** next to it.

14. Click **Next** to proceed to the next group of settings.

15. Add the multicast group to the IP multicast service:

    a. In the **IP address** field, enter the IP address of the multicast group. Range of values: 224.0.0.0 to 239.255.255.255.

    b. In the **Mask** drop-down list, select the length of the multicast group prefix. Range of values: 24 to 32.

    c. In the **GBR** drop-down list, select the guaranteed bit rate (GBR) for the multicast group.

    d. Click **+ Add**.

    The multicast group is added and displayed in the lower part of the window. You can add multiple multicast groups or delete multicast groups. To delete a multicast group, click **Delete** next to it.

16. Click **Create**.

The IP multicast service is created and displayed in the table.

Viewing statistics of an IP multicast service

To view the statistics of an IP multicast service:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **IP multicast services** section.

   A table of IP multicast services is displayed.

4. Click **Management** → **Statistics** next to the IP multicast service whose statistics you want to view.

This opens a window with statistics of the IP multicast service.

Editing an IP multicast service

To edit an IP multicast service:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **IP multicast services** section.

   A table of IP multicast services is displayed.

4. Click **Management** → **Edit source interfaces**, **Edit consumer interfaces**, or **Edit multicast groups** next to the IP multicast service that you want to edit.

5. This opens a window; in that window, if necessary, edit the IP multicast service settings. For a description of the settings, see the instructions for creating an IP multicast service.

6. Click **Save**.

The IP multicast service is modified and updated in the table.

Deleting an IP multicast service

Deleted IP multicast services cannot be restored.

To delete an IP multicast service:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **IP multicast services** section.

   A table of IP multicast services is displayed.

4. Click **Management** → **Delete** next to the IP multicast service that you want to delete.

5. If you want to delete the service interfaces added to the IP multicast service, select the **Delete associated service interfaces** check box in the confirmation window. This check box is cleared by default.

6. Click **Delete**.

The IP multicast service is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

Managing L3 VPN transport services

To view the table of L3 VPN services, go to the **Infrastructure** menu section, click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller, and go to the **L3 VPN services** section. Information about L3 VPN services is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Name** is the of the L3 VPN service.
- **Type** is the topology type of the L3 VPN service.

- **Inter-spoke through hub** indicates whether communication is possible between spoke sites through the hub site:
  - **Yes**.
  - **No**.
- **Endpoints** is the information about the L3 interfaces that have been added to the L3 VPN service:
  - If the L3 interfaces are mapped to M2M services, the M2M service names are displayed.
  - If the L3 interfaces are mapped to service interfaces, the following information is displayed:
    - Names and DPIDs of the CPE devices on which the service interfaces were created
    - Numbers of OpenFlow ports which the service interfaces are mapped to
    - Quality of service rules specified for the service interfaces
    - Traffic filters specified for the service interfaces
  - Lengths of L3 interface prefixes.
  - MAC addresses of the L3 interfaces
  - Time period in seconds during which entries are kept in the ARP table on the controller
- **Routes** is the information about static routes that have been added to the L3 VPN service:
  - Destination IPv4 prefixes of static routes
  - Gateway IPv4 addresses for routing traffic packets to destination IPv4 prefixes of static routes
  - L3 interfaces behind which the destination IPv4 prefixes of static routes are
  - Metrics of the static routes
- **Status** is the status of the L3 VPN service:
  - **Up**
  - **Down**
- **Errors** are errors that occurred while the L3 VPN service was running.

The actions that you can perform with the table are described in the Managing solution component tables article.

Creating an L3 VPN service

To create an L3 VPN service:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **L3 VPN services** section.

   A table of L3 VPN services is displayed.

4. In the upper part of the page, click **+ L3 VPN service**.

5. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Name** field, enter the name of the L3 VPN service.

6. In the **Constraint** drop-down list, select the created Manual-TE constraint or threshold constraint that you want to add to the L3 VPN service.

7. In the **Balancing mode** drop-down list, select the balancing mode for distributing traffic among the links:

   - **Per-flow** means the traffic streams (5-Tuple) are distributed among the links in accordance with the link cost. This is the default setting.
   - **Per-packet** means the traffic packets are distributed among the links in accordance with the link cost.
   - **Broadcast** means the traffic packets are duplicated and transmitted simultaneously through all links to avoid loss.

   You can manually specify link cost.

8. Click **Next** to proceed to the next group of settings.

9. Add the L3 interface to the L3 VPN service:

   a. In the **Mode** drop-down list, select the type of the L3 interface:

      - **M2M service** means the L3 interface is mapped to an M2M service.
      - **Service interface** means the L3 interface is mapped to a service interface.

   b. If in the **Mode** drop-down list, you selected **M2M service**, in the **M2M service** drop-down list, select the created M2M service mapped to the L3 interface.

   c. If in the **Mode** drop-down list, you selected **Service interface**, configure the service interface:

      1. In the **Switch** and **Service interface** drop-down lists, select the CPE device and the created service interface to which the L3 interface is mapped.
      2. In the **QoS** drop-down list, select the created quality of service rule for the L3 interface.
      3. In the **Inbound filter** drop-down list, select the created traffic filter for the L3 interface.
      4. If you want to display service interfaces that were added to transport services in the **Service interface** drop-down list, select the **Show used interfaces** check box. This check box is cleared by default.

   d. In the **IP address** field, enter the IP address of the L3 interface.

   e. In the **Prefix length** field, enter the length of the L3 interface prefix. Range of values: 0 to 32.

   f. In the **MAC address** field, enter the MAC address of the L3 interface. You can generate a MAC address by clicking **Generate**.

   g. In the **ARP age (sec)** field, enter the time period in seconds during which entries are kept in the ARP table on the L3 VPN service. Range of values: 1 to 65,535. Default value: `200`.

   h. Click **+ Add**.

   The L3 interface is added and displayed in the lower part of the window. You can add multiple L3 interfaces or delete L3 interfaces. To delete an L3 interface, click **Delete** next to it.

10. Click **Next** to proceed to the next group of settings.

11. If you want to add a static route to the L3 VPN service:

    a. In the **IP address** field, enter the destination IPv4 address of the static route.

    b. In the **Prefix length** field, enter the length of the IPv4 prefix of the static route. Range of values: 0 to 32.

    c. In the **SVI** drop-down list, select the added L3 interface followed by the IPv4 prefix of the static route destination. You added an L3 interface at step 9 of these instructions.

    d. In the **Gateway** field, enter the IPv4 address of the gateway for routing traffic packets to the IPv4 prefix of the static route destination.

    e. In the **Metric** field, enter a metric for the static route. Default value: `0`.

    f. Click **+ Add**.

    The static route is added and displayed in the lower part of the window. You can add multiple static routes or delete static routes. To delete a static route, click **Delete** next to it.

12. Click **Create**.

    The L3 VPN service is created and displayed in the table.

Managing the ARP table of an L3 VPN service

To view the ARP table of the L3 VPN service, go to the **Infrastructure** section, click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller, go to the **L3 VPN services** section, and click **Management** → **ARP table** next to the L3 VPN service. Information about records is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **IP address** is the IP address of the service interface.
- **MAC** is the MAC address of the service interface.
- **Service interface** is the information about the service interface:
  - Name and DPID of the CPE device on which the service interface was created
  - The number of the OpenFlow port which the service interface is mapped to
- **Maximum timeout (sec)** is the time in seconds that has elapsed since the record was created.

The actions that you can perform with the table are described in the Managing solution component tables article.

Creating a static record in the ARP table of an L3 VPN service

To create a static record in the ARP table of an L3 VPN service:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **L3 VPN services** section.

   A table of L3 VPN services is displayed.

4. Click **Management** → **ARP table** next to the L3 VPN service in whose ARP table you want to create a static record.

   The page with the ARP table of the L3 VPN service is displayed.

5. In the upper part of the page, click **+ Static ARP record**.

6. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Switch** and **Service interface** drop-down lists, select the CPE device and the created service interface for which you want to specify an IP address and a MAC address.

7. In the **IP address** field, enter the IP address of the service interface.

8. In the **MAC** field, enter the MAC address of the service interface.

9. Click **Create**.

The static record is created and displayed in the ARP table of the L3 VPN service.

Editing a static record in the ARP table of an L3 VPN service

To edit a static record in the ARP table of an L3 VPN service:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **L3 VPN services** section.

   A table of L3 VPN services is displayed.

4. Click **Management** → **ARP table** next to the L3 VPN service in whose ARP table you want to edit a static record.

   The page with the ARP table of the L3 VPN service is displayed.

5. Click **Management** → **Edit** next to the static record that you want to edit.

6. This opens a window; in that window, if necessary, edit the IP address and/or MAC address of the service interface.

7. Click **Save**.

The static record is modified and updated in the table.

Deleting a static record in the ARP table of an L3 VPN service

Deleted static records in the ARP table of an L3 VPN service cannot be restored.

To delete a static record in the ARP table of an L3 VPN service:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **L3 VPN services** section.

   A table of L3 VPN services is displayed.

4. Click **Management** → **ARP table** next to the L3 VPN service in whose ARP table you want to delete a static record.

   The page with the ARP table of the L3 VPN service is displayed.

5. Click **Management** → **Delete** next to the static record that you want to delete.

6. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

The static record is deleted and no longer displayed in the table.

Viewing the routing and forwarding table of an L3 VPN service

To view the routing and forwarding table of an L3 VPN service:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **L3 VPN services** section.

   A table of L3 VPN services is displayed.

4. Click **Management** → **Routing table** next to the L3 VPN service whose routing table you want to view.

This opens a window with the routing and forwarding table of the L3 VPN service.

Editing an L3 VPN service

To edit an L3 VPN service:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **L3 VPN services** section.

   A table of L3 VPN services is displayed.

4. Click **Management** → **Edit** next to the L3 VPN service that you want to edit.

5. This opens a window; in that window, if necessary, edit the L3 VPN service settings. For a description of the settings, see the instructions for creating an L3 VPN service.

6. Click **Save**.

The L3 VPN service is modified and updated in the table.

Restarting an L3 VPN service

You can restart an L3 VPN service to restore it in case of malfunctions. When you restart an L3 VPN service, the controller automatically deletes and re-creates the rules associated with this L3 VPN service in the OpenFlow tables of CPE devices. This affects CPE devices whose service interfaces are added to the L3 VPN service.

To restart an L3 VPN service:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **L3 VPN services** section.

   A table of L3 VPN services is displayed.

4. Click **Management** → **Reprovision** next to the L3 VPN service that you want to reprovision.

5. In the confirmation window, click **Confirm**.

The L3 VPN service is restarted.

Deleting an L3 VPN service

Deleted L3 VPN services cannot be restored.

To delete an L3 VPN service:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **L3 VPN services** section.

   A table of L3 VPN services is displayed.

4. Click **Management** → **Delete** next to the L3 VPN service that you want to delete.

5. If you want to delete the service interfaces added to the L3 VPN service, select the **Delete associated service interfaces** check box in the confirmation window. This check box is cleared by default.

6. Click **Delete**.

The L3 VPN service is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

Managing transport services in an SD-WAN instance template

To view the table of P2M services and M2M services in an SD-WAN instance template, go to the **SD-WAN → SD-WAN instance templates** section, click the SD-WAN instance template, and select the **Transport services** tab. Information about P2M services and M2M services is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Name** is the name of the P2M service or M2M service.
- **Type** is the type of transport service:
  - **P2M**
  - **M2M**
- **Management transport service** indicates whether the P2M service or M2M service is a management service:
  - **Yes**.
  - **No**.
- **Mode** indicates whether a DFI (Default Forwarding Interface) is used in the P2M service, to which unknown unicast traffic is sent:
  - **Classic** if you do not want to use DFI. This is the default setting.
  - **DFI with FIB on root and leafs** if you want to use DFI on the service interface with the root role.
  - **DFI with FIB on leaf** if you want to use DFI on the service interface with the root role. Service interfaces with the leaf role must be created on the same CPE device. Backup service interfaces with the leaf role must be created on the same CPE device, which must be different from the CPE device on which the primary service interfaces are created.

  The value in this column is displayed only if the value in the **Type** column is **P2M**.
- **MAC age (sec)** is the time period in seconds during which entries are kept in the MAC table of the controller.

- **MAC learn mode** is the action applied to a series of frames when the first frame is sent to the controller to learn the source MAC address:

  - **Learn and flood** means the controller remembers the MAC address of the source and checks for the presence of the destination MAC address in the MAC table. If the destination MAC address is not in the MAC table, the series of frames is sent to all service interfaces added to the M2M service, except for the service interface on which the series of frames originally arrived.

  - **Learn and drop** means the controller remembers the MAC address of the source and checks for the presence of the destination MAC address in the MAC table. If the destination MAC address is not in the MAC table, the series of frames is dropped.

  If the destination MAC address is present in the MAC table, the series of frames is sent to the destination service interface.

- **MAC table size** is the maximum number of entries in the MAC table on the controller.

- **MAC table overload** is the policy for processing new MAC addresses when the MAC table of the controller is full:

  - **Flood** means traffic with destination MAC addresses that have not been learned is transmitted as BUM traffic (Broadcast, unknown-unicast, and multicast). This is the default setting.

  - **Drop** means that traffic with destination MAC addresses that have not been learned is dropped.

- **Actions** contains the actions can be performed with the transport service.

To view a list of L3 VPN services, select the **L3 services** tab.

Creating a P2M service or an M2M service in an SD-WAN instance template

To create a P2M service or an M2M service in an SD-WAN instance template:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN → SD-WAN instance templates** section.

   A table of SD-WAN instance templates is displayed.

2. Click the SD-WAN instance template in which you want to create a P2M service or an M2M service.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⌃⌃. By default, the **Information** tab is selected, which displays the name of the SD-WAN instance template.

3. Select the **Transport services** tab.

   The **X2M services** tab with the table of P2M services and M2M services is selected by default.

4. Click **+ Transport service**.

5. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Name** field, enter the name of the P2M or M2M service.

6. In the **Type** drop-down list, select the type of the transport service:

   - **P2M** If you select this option in the **Mode** drop-down list, select whether the P2M service uses a DFI (Default Forwarding Interface), to which unknown unicast traffic is sent:

     - **Classic** if you do not want to use DFI. This is the default setting.

     - **DFI with FIB on root and leafs** if you want to use DFI on the service interface with the root role.

     - **DFI with FIB on leaf** if you want to use DFI on the service interface with the root role. Service interfaces with the leaf role must be created on the same CPE device. Backup service interfaces with the leaf role must be created on the same CPE device, which must be different from the CPE device on which the primary service interfaces are created.

   - **M2M**

7. If you want to make a P2M or M2M service the management service, select the **Management transport service** check box. This check box is cleared by default. Only one transport service can be the management service.

8. In the **MAC learn mode** drop-down list, select the action that you want to apply to a series of frames when the first frame is sent to the controller to learn the source MAC address:

   - **Learn and flood** means the controller remembers the MAC address of the source and checks for the presence of the destination MAC address in the MAC table. If the destination MAC address is not in the MAC table, the series of frames is sent to all service interfaces added to the P2M service, except for the service interface on which the series of frames originally arrived. This is the default setting.

   - **Learn and drop** means the controller remembers the MAC address of the source and checks for the presence of the destination MAC address in the MAC table. If the destination MAC address is not in the MAC table, the series of frames is dropped.

   If the destination MAC address is present in the MAC table, the series of frames is sent to the destination service interface.

9. In the **MAC table size** field, enter the maximum number of entries in the MAC table on the controller. Range of values: 0 to 65,535. `0` means the number of records in the MAC table of the controller is not limited. Default value: `100`.

10. In the **MAC age (sec)** field, enter the time period in seconds during which entries are kept in the MAC table of the controller. Range of values: 10 to 65,535. Default value: `300`.

11. In the **MAC table overload** drop-down list, select the policy for processing new MAC addresses when the MAC table of the controller is full:

    - **Flood** means traffic with destination MAC addresses that have not been learned is transmitted as BUM traffic (Broadcast, unknown-unicast, and multicast). This is the default setting.

    - **Drop** means that traffic with destination MAC addresses that have not been learned is dropped.

12. Click **Create**.

    A P2M service or an M2M service is created and displayed in the table.

13. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the SD-WAN instance template.

Creating an L3 VPN service in an SD-WAN instance template

To create an L3 VPN service in an SD-WAN instance template:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **SD-WAN instance templates** section.

   A table of SD-WAN instance templates is displayed.

2. Click the SD-WAN instance template in which you want to create an L3 VPN service.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, the **Information** tab is selected, which displays the name of the SD-WAN instance template.

3. Select the **Transport services** → **L3 services** tab.

   A list of L3 VPN services is displayed.

4. Click **+ Transport service**.

5. This opens a window; in that window, enter the name of the L3 VPN service.

6. Click **Create**.

   The L3 VPN service is created and displayed in the table.

7. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the SD-WAN instance template.

Editing a transport service in an SD-WAN instance template

To edit a transport service in an SD-WAN instance template:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **SD-WAN instance templates** section.

   A table of SD-WAN instance templates is displayed.

2. Click the SD-WAN instance template in which you want to edit a transport service.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, the **Information** tab is selected, which displays the name of the SD-WAN instance template.

3. If you want to edit a P2M service or M2M service:

   a. Select the **Transport services** tab.

      The **X2M services** tab with the table of P2M services and M2M services is selected by default.

   b. Click **Edit** next to the P2M service or M2M service that you want to edit.

   c. This opens a window; in that window, if necessary, edit the P2M service or M2M service settings. For a description of the settings, see the instructions for creating a P2M service or M2M service in an SD-WAN instance template.

4. If you want to edit an L3 VPN service:

   a. Select the **Transport services** → **L3 services** tab.

      A list of L3 VPN services is displayed.

   b. Click **Edit** next to the L3 VPN service that you want to edit.

   c. This opens a window; in that window, if necessary, edit the L3 VPN service name.

5. Click **Save**.

   The transport service is modified and updated in the table.

6. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the SD-WAN instance template.

Deleting a transport service in an SD-WAN instance template

Transport services that are deleted in the SD-WAN instance template cannot be restored.

To delete a transport service in an SD-WAN instance template:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN** → **SD-WAN instance templates** section.

   A table of SD-WAN instance templates is displayed.

2. Click the SD-WAN instance template in which you want to delete a transport service.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, the **Information** tab is selected, which displays the name of the SD-WAN instance template.

3. If you want to delete a P2M service or M2M service:

   a. Select the **Transport services** tab.

      The **X2M services** tab with the table of P2M services and M2M services is selected by default.

   b. Click **Delete** next to the P2M service or M2M service that you want to delete.

   The P2M service or M2M service is deleted and no longer displayed in the table.

4. If you want to delete an L3 VPN service:

   a. Select the **Transport services** → **L3 services** tab.

      A list of L3 VPN services is displayed.

   b. Click **Delete** next to the L3 VPN service that you want to delete.

   The L3 VPN service is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

5. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save the settings of the SD-WAN instance template.

Managing transport services in a CPE template

To view the table of transport services in a CPE template, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** menu section, click the CPE template, and select the **Transport services** tab. Information about transport services is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Name** is the name of the transport service.
- **QoS name** is the name of the quality of service rule for the service interface, which is automatically created for connecting the CPE device to the transport service.
- **Stage** is the state in which the CPE device connects to the transport service:
  - **Before enabling** means that the CPE device connects to the transport service before this CPE device is enabled.
  - **After enabling** means that the CPE device connects to the transport service after this CPE device is enabled.

  You can select which state the CPE device is in after registration when adding a CPE device.
- **Type** is the type of the transport service:
  - **P2M**
  - **M2M**
  - **L3 VPN**

- **Connection settings** contains information about the service interface that is automatically created for connecting a CPE device to the transport service:
  - Role of the service interface:
    - **Leaf**
    - **Root**

    Displayed only if the value in the **Type** column is **P2M**.
  - Traffic classification type on the service interface:
    - **Access**
    - **VLAN**
    - **Q-in-Q**
  - Outer VLAN tag of the service interface. Displayed only if the traffic classification type on the service interface is **VLAN** or **Q-in-Q**.
  - Inner VLAN tag of the service interface. Displayed only if the traffic classification type on the service interface is **Q-in-Q**.
- **Actions** contains the actions can be performed with the transport service.

Adding a transport service to a CPE template

To add a transport service to a CPE template:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** subsection.

   A table of CPE templates is displayed.

2. Click the CPE template to which you want to add a transport service.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, the **Information** tab is selected, which displays general information about the CPE template.

3. Select the **Transport services** tab.

   A table of transport services is displayed.

4. Click **+ Transport service**.

5. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Name** field, enter the name of the created transport service. If the actual name of the transport service does not match the name specified in the CPE template, the CPE device does not connect to the transport service.

6. In the **QoS name** field, enter the name of the created quality of service rule for the service interface, which is automatically created for connecting the CPE device to the transport service. If the actual name of the quality of service rule does not match the name specified in the CPE template, the quality of service rule is not applied to the service interface.

7. In the **Stage** drop-down list, select the state in which the CPE device connects to the transport service:

   - **Before enabling** means that the CPE device connects to the transport service before this CPE device is enabled.
   - **After enabling** means that the CPE device connects to the transport service after this CPE device is enabled.

   You can select which state the CPE device is in after registration when adding or manually registering a CPE device.

8. In the **Type** drop-down list, select the type of the transport service:

   - **P2M** If you select this option in the **Role** drop-down list, select the role of the service interface that is automatically created for connecting the CPE device to the transport service:
     - **Leaf**
     - **Root**
   - **M2M**
   - **L3 VPN** If you select this option, do the following:
     a. In the **IP address** field, enter the IP address of the L3 interface.
     b. In the **Mask** field, enter the length of the L3 interface prefix. Range of values: 0 to 32.

   If the actual type of the transport service does not match the type specified in the CPE template, the CPE device does not connect to the transport service.

9. In the **Classification** drop-down list, select the traffic classification type on the service interface that is automatically created for connecting the CPE device to the transport service:

   - **Access** This is the default setting.
   - **VLAN** If you select this option, in the **VLAN ID** field, enter the outer VLAN tag of the service interface. Range of values: 1 to 4094.
   - **Q-in-Q** If you select this value, configure the L3 interface that is automatically created and mapped to the service interface:
     a. In the **VLAN ID** field, enter the outer VLAN tag of the service interface. Range of values: 1 to 4094.
     b. In the **Inner VLAN ID** field, enter the inner VLAN tag of the service interface. Range of values: 1 to 4094.

10. Click **Create**.

    The transport service is created and displayed in the table.

11. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save CPE template settings.

Editing a transport service in a CPE template

To edit a transport service in a CPE template:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** subsection.

   A table of CPE templates is displayed.

2. Click the CPE template in which you want to edit a transport service.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, the **Information** tab is selected, which displays general information about the CPE template.

3. Select the **Transport services** tab.

   A table of transport services is displayed.

4. Click **Edit** next to the transport service that you want to edit.

5. This opens a window; in that window, if necessary, edit the transport service settings. For a description of the settings, see the instructions for adding a transport service to a CPE template.

6. Click **Save**.

   The transport service is modified and updated in the table.

7. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save CPE template settings.

Deleting a transport service from a CPE template

Transport services that are deleted in the CPE template cannot be restored.

To delete a transport service in a CPE template:

1. In the menu, go to the **SD-WAN → CPE templates** subsection.

   A table of CPE templates is displayed.

2. Click the CPE template in which you want to delete a transport service.

   The settings area is displayed. You can expand the settings area to fill the entire page by clicking the expand icon ⩓. By default, the **Information** tab is selected, which displays general information about the CPE template.

3. Select the **Transport services** tab.

   A table of transport services is displayed.

4. Click **Delete** next to the transport service that you want to delete.

   The transport service is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

5. In the upper part of the settings area, click **Save** to save CPE template settings.

Traffic mirroring and forwarding between CPE devices

Kaspersky SD-WAN supports traffic forwarding and mirroring between CPE devices. You can redirect or mirror traffic from traffic collection points to the traffic destination using TAP services. Forwarding means sending traffic that arrives to traffic collection points to the traffic destination point, and mirroring means sending a copy of the traffic.

Service interfaces are used as collection points and destinations of traffic. Both individual service interfaces and service interfaces added to a transport service can be traffic collection points.

You need to create a traffic destination and then specify this traffic destination and traffic collection points when creating or editing a TAP service. You do not need to create traffic collection points in advance.

Managing traffic destinations

To view the list of traffic destinations, go to the **Infrastructure** menu section, click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller, and go to the **TAP services** section.

The actions you can perform with the list are described in the Managing solution component tables instructions.

Creating a traffic destination

To create a traffic destination:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **TAP services** section.

   By default, the **Mirroring destinations** tab is selected, which displays the table of traffic destinations.

4. In the upper part of the page, click **+ Mirroring destination**.

5. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Switch** and **Service interface** drop-down lists, select the CPE device and the created service interface that you want to use as the traffic destination.

6. Click **Create**.

The traffic destination is created and displayed in the table.

Deleting a traffic destination

Deleted traffic destinations cannot be restored.

To delete a traffic destination:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **TAP services** section.

   By default, the **Mirroring destinations** tab is selected, which displays the table of traffic destinations.

4. Click **Delete** next to the traffic destination that you want to delete.

5. In the confirmation window, click **Delete**.

The traffic destination is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

Managing TAP services

To view the table of TAP services, go to the **Infrastructure** menu section, click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller, go to the **TAP services** section, and select the **TAP services** tab. Information about TAP services is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Mirroring destination** contains information about the service interface used as the traffic destination:
  - Name and DPID of the CPE device on which the service interface was created
  - The number of the OpenFlow port which the service interface is mapped to
- **Mirror traffic** indicates whether the TAP service mirrors traffic from traffic collection points to the traffic destination:
  - **Yes**.
  - **No**.

- **Type** is the type of traffic collection points:
  - **SI** means individual service interfaces are used as traffic collection points.
  - If the service interfaces used as traffic collection points are added to a transport service, the type of the transport service is displayed:
    - **P2P**
    - **IP multicast**
    - **L3 VPN**
    - **P2M**
    - **M2M**
- **Transport service** is the transport service to which the service interfaces being used as traffic collection points have been added. The value in this column is displayed only if the **Source point type** column is displaying the type of the transport service.
- **Source points** contains information about service interfaces that are being used as traffic collection points:
  - Names and DPIDs of the CPE devices on which the service interfaces were created
  - Numbers of OpenFlow ports which the service interfaces are mapped to
- **Status** is the status of the TAP service:
  - **Up**
  - **Down**

The actions that you can perform with the table are described in the Managing solution component tables article.

Creating a TAP service

To create a TAP service:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **TAP services** section.

   By default, the **Mirroring destinations** tab is selected, which displays the table of traffic destinations.

4. Select the **TAP services** tab.

   A table of TAP services is displayed.

5. In the upper part of the page, click **+ TAP service**.

6. If you want the TAP service to mirror traffic from traffic collection points to the traffic destination, select the **Mirror traffic** check box. When this check box is selected, a copy of the traffic is sent to the destination; when the check box is cleared, the traffic is forwarded. This check box is cleared by default.

7. In the **Balancing mode** drop-down list, select the balancing mode for distributing traffic among the links:

   - **Per-flow** means the traffic streams (5-Tuple) are distributed among the links in accordance with the link cost. This is the default setting.
   - **Per-packet** means the traffic packets are distributed among the links in accordance with the link cost.
   - **Broadcast** means the traffic packets are duplicated and transmitted simultaneously through all links to avoid loss.

   You can manually specify link cost.

8. In the **Mirroring destination** drop-down list, select the created traffic destination.

9. In the **Source point type** drop-down list, select the traffic collection point type:

   - **Service interface** means individual service interfaces are used as traffic collection points.
   - **Transport service** means service interfaces that are added to a transport service are used as traffic collection points.

10. If in the **Source point type** drop-down list, you selected **Transport service**, follow these steps:

    a. In the **Type** drop-down list, select the type of the transport service:

       - **P2P**
       - **IP multicast**
       - **L3 VPN**
       - **P2M**
       - **M2M**

    b. In the **Transport service** drop-down list, select the transport service.

11. In the **Source points** drop-down list, select the created service interface that you want to use as a traffic collection point.

    The traffic collection point is added and displayed in the lower part of the window. You can add multiple traffic collection points or delete traffic collection points. To delete a traffic collection point, click **Delete** next to it.

12. Click **Next** and select the created traffic classification rules for traffic collection points.

13. Click **Create**.

The TAP service is created and displayed in the table.

Viewing statistics of a TAP service

To view the statistics of a TAP service:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **TAP services** section.

   By default, the **Mirroring destinations** tab is selected, which displays the table of traffic destinations.

4. Select the **TAP services** tab.

   A table of TAP services is displayed.

5. Click **Management** → **Statistics** next to the TAP service whose statistics you want to view.

This opens a window with statistics of the TAP service.

Editing a TAP service

To edit a TAP service:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **TAP services** section.

   By default, the **Mirroring destinations** tab is selected, which displays the table of traffic destinations.

4. Select the **TAP services** tab.

   A table of TAP services is displayed.

5. Click **Management** → **Edit** next to the TAP service that you want to edit.

6. This opens a window; in that window, edit the TAP service settings, if necessary. For a description of the settings, see the instructions for creating a TAP service.

7. Click **Save**.

The TAP service is modified and updated in the table.

Deleting a TAP service

Deleted TAP services cannot be restored.

To delete a TAP service:

1. In the menu, go to the **Infrastructure** section.

   This opens the resource management page. By default, the **Network resources** tab is selected, which displays the table of controllers.

2. Click **Management** → **Configuration menu** next to the controller.

   This opens the controller configuration menu. By default, you are taken to the **Controller nodes** section, which displays a table of controller nodes.

3. Go to the **TAP services** section.

   By default, the **Mirroring destinations** tab is selected, which displays the table of traffic destinations.

4. Select the **TAP services** tab.

   A table of TAP services is displayed.

5. Click **Management** → **Delete** next to the TAP service that you want to delete.

6. To delete the service interfaces added to the TAP service, select the **Delete associated service interfaces** check box in the confirmation window. This check box is cleared by default.

7. Click **Delete**.

The TAP service is deleted and is no longer displayed in the table.

Integration with Kaspersky CyberSecurity for Networks

You can integrate Kaspersky SD-WAN with Kaspersky Industrial CyberSecurity for Networks to forward SPAN traffic from service interfaces of CPE devices to network interfaces of Kaspersky Industrial CyberSecurity for Networks nodes. Before configuring the integration, you need to enable traffic encryption on CPE devices from whose service interfaces you want to forward SPAN traffic. We recommend putting CPE devices on a dedicated Kaspersky Industrial CyberSecurity network

https://support.kaspersky.com/help/KICSforNetworks/4.2/en-US/102350.htm
.
SPAN traffic is identified by VLAN tags added to traffic packets in accordance with the IEEE 802.1q standard. You must make sure that matching VLAN tags are used on the service interfaces of CPE devices and on the network interfaces of Kaspersky Industrial CyberSecurity for Networks nodes.

For effective integration of Kaspersky SD-WAN with Kaspersky Industrial CyberSecurity for Networks, you can raise the limit on the number of monitoring points by additionally configuring components of Kaspersky Industrial CyberSecurity for Networks. Maximum possible limits:

- Up to 100 monitoring points on a Kaspersky Industrial CyberSecurity for Networks node
- Up to 100 monitoring points in total in Kaspersky Industrial CyberSecurity for Networks node

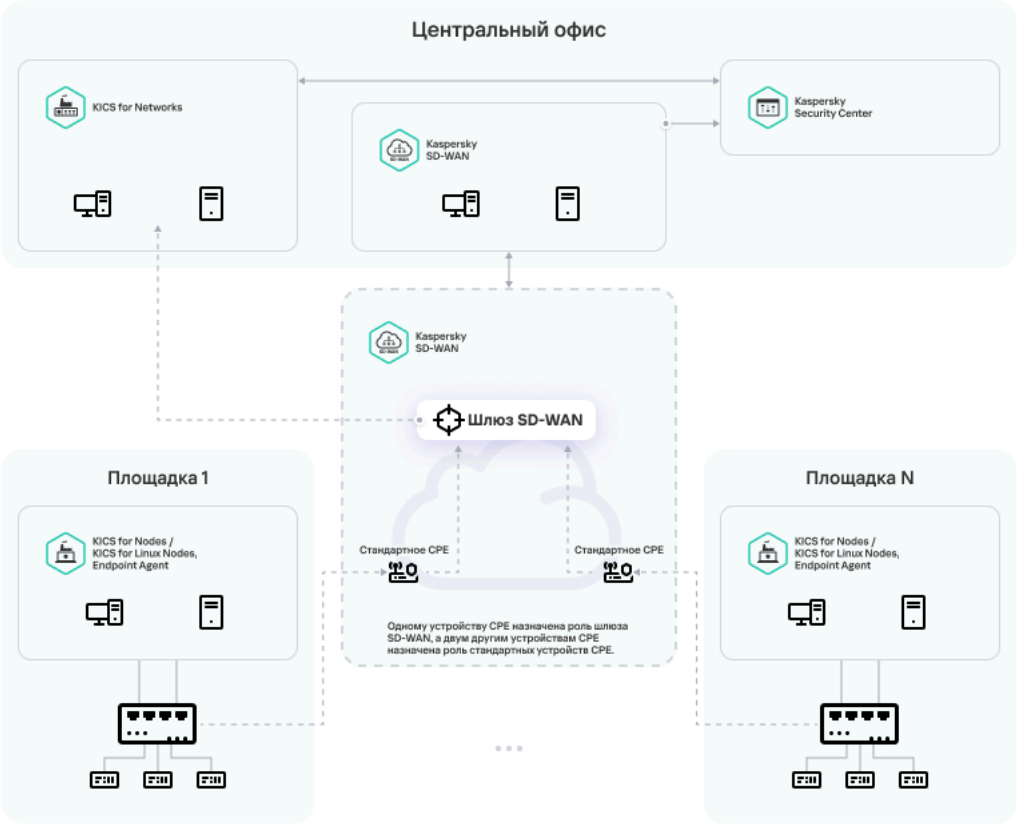
The rest of the requirements for the deployment of Kaspersky Industrial CyberSecurity for Networks components are similar to other deployment scenarios, for example, installation of a server without external sensors

https://support.kaspersky.com/help/KICSforNetworks/4.2/en-US/206298.htm
.

> If you need more information on configuring the components of Kaspersky Industrial CyberSecurity for Networks to integrate with Kaspersky SD-WAN, please contact your Technical Account Manager (TAM).

You can also get more information about the integration of Kaspersky SD-WAN and Kaspersky Industrial CyberSecurity for Networks in the Appendices section.

The figure below shows an example deployment scenario for Kaspersky SD-WAN and Kaspersky Industrial CyberSecurity for Networks. Dotted lines indicate the path of SPAN traffic. First, the network switches at remote locations 1 and N mirror traffic to CPE devices with the standard CPE device role. Then the standard CPE devices forward SPAN traffic to the CPE device with the SD-WAN gateway role, which in turn forwards SPAN traffic to the Kaspersky Industrial CyberSecurity for Networks server. The components of Kaspersky SD-WAN and Kaspersky Industrial CyberSecurity for Networks are located in the central office of the organization.



Example of integration of Kaspersky SD-WAN with Kaspersky Industrial CyberSecurity for Networks

Appendices

You can get additional information about Kaspersky SD-WAN from the following guides:

- Kaspersky SD-WAN testbed deployment guide for a VMware environment, part 1.
- Kaspersky SD-WAN testbed deployment guide for a VMware environment, part 2.
- KESR Model 1 User Manual.
- KESR Model 2 (version 1) User Manual.
- KESR Model 2 (version 2) User Manual.
- KESR Model 3 User Manual.
- KESR Model 4 (version 1) User Manual.
- KESR Model 4 (version 2) User Manual.
- KESR Model 5 (version 1) User Manual.
- KESR Model 5 (version 2) User Manual.
- Forwarding SPAN traffic through the SD-WAN fabric to test KICS scenarios.

Glossary

Control plane

The control part of the network that controls the transmission of traffic packets through CPE devices. Performs functions such as network discovery, route calculation, traffic prioritisation, and security policy enforcement. The control plane allows centrally managing the network by providing a full-scale view of all performed operations. Consists of an orchestrator and a controller.

Controller

Centrally manages the overlay network:

- Builds the network topology.
- Creates transport services.
- Manages CPE devices using the OpenFlow protocol.
- Balances traffic between links.
- Monitors links and automatically switches traffic to a backup link if the primary link fails.

To deploy the controller, you need to deploy the physical network function of the controller, which is contained in the installation archive. The controller is managed by the orchestrator.

Customer Premise Equipment (CPE)

Telecommunication equipment, including virtual machines, located at the client premises. Used to connect the client location to the SD-WAN network, establish links, and transfer traffic between client locations. Traffic can be sent to a data center to provide network functions such as routing protocols, intrusion prevention, or anti-virus protection.

Data plane

The part of the network that processes and transmits traffic between different locations and devices. The data plane uses network protocols and algorithms to efficiently route and deliver traffic over the network. Consists of CPE devices.

Open vSwitch (OVS)

The type of software switch that serves as the basis of the CPE device firmware. This implementation uses kernel-level packet processing and is suitable for most devices.

Orchestrator

Controls the solution infrastructure, functions as an NFV orchestrator (NFVO), and manages network services and distributed VNF managers (VNFMs). You can manage the orchestrator via the web interface or REST API when using external northbound systems.

Physical Network Function (PNF)

Network functions implemented as specialized hardware or virtual entities created using third-party virtualization environments. The orchestrator does not manage the lifecycle of physical network functions.

PNF package

A package, in TAR or ZIP format, that contains the data necessary for deploying and managing the PNF.

Port security

This function improves network security at the level of Ethernet ports of switches and prevents unauthorized access to the network by limiting the number of MAC addresses that can be associated with a single physical port. When enabled, only trusted devices with predefined MAC addresses can connect to the network.

SD-WAN Gateway

CPE device that has the SD-WAN gateway role. SD-WAN gateways establish links with all devices on the network, including other SD-WAN gateways, thus providing connectivity between all CPE devices and the controller. You can install multiple SD-WAN gateways for fault tolerance.

SD-WAN instance

A deployed Kaspersky SD-WAN solution for one of the tenants of your organization. It is an isolated entity and has its own network services, CPE devices, and quality of service parameters.

Software-Defined Networking (SDN)

Technology for building communication networks in which the control plane is separated from the data plane and is implemented in software using a centralized SDN controller.

Software-Defined Wide Area Network (SD-WAN)

Approach to building software-defined networks using a global computer network. SD-WAN networks allow connecting local area networks and users in geographically dispersed locations.

Switch Operating System (SWOS)

The type of software switch that serves as the basis of the CPE device firmware. This is an alternative implementation with DPDK-based packet processing. It can offer higher performance thanks to packet processing bypassing the kernel.

Tenant

A logical entity within which an individual SD-WAN instance is deployed. Solution components such as network service components, users, and CPE devices are assigned to a tenant, and subsequently, tenant administrators can manage the assigned components. For example, you can create a separate tenant for a customer of your organization.

Transport strategy

A transport service encapsulation mechanism that includes the algorithm for adding a stack of traffic packet header tags and the type of these tags. Kaspersky SD-WAN temporarily supports one transport strategy, **Generic VNI Swapping Transport**.

Universal CPE (uCPE)

CPEs with additional support for Virtual Network Function deployment. The uCPE device must have sufficient hardware resources to provide virtual network functions without involving the data center or the cloud.

Virtual Deployment Unit (VDU)

A virtual machine that acts as a VNF host and aggregates virtual computing resources, such as CPU and memory, required to run the VNF software, and also contains certain implementations of the network function, such as routing algorithms or load balancing logic.

Multiple VDUs can be combined into a single VNF to provide scalability and/or high availability. VDUs can be distributed across multiple physical servers; you can still manage them as a single VNF. VDUs interact with each other and other VNFs to perform their functions within a network service.

Virtual Infrastructure Manager (VIM)

Manages computational, networking, and storage resources within the NFV infrastructure. Serves to connect network functions with virtual links, subnets, and ports.

Can be deployed in the data center or on a uCPE device. Deploying the VIM in the data center implies centralized management of the VNF lifecycle, while a VIM deployed on a uCPE device allows delivering VNFs to remote locations and managing these VNFs locally. The deployed VIM must be added in the orchestrator web interface.

The OpenStack cloud platform is used as the VIM.

Virtual Network Function (VNF)

Network functions implemented as virtual machines on Commercial Off The Shelf (COTS) computer platforms. The lifecycle of virtual network functions is managed by an orchestrator. To deploy virtual network functions, you need the OpenStack cloud platform.

Virtual Network Function Manager (VNFM)

Manages the lifecycle of virtual network functions using SSH, Ansible playbooks, scripts, and Cloud-init attributes.

VNF Package

A package, in TAR or ZIP format, that contains the data necessary for deploying and managing a VNF.

Contacting Technical Support

This section describes the ways to get technical support and the terms on which it is available.

How to obtain Technical Support

If you cannot find a solution to your problem in the documentation, we recommend that you contact Technical Support. Technical Support staff will answer your questions about deploying and using Kaspersky SD-WAN.

Kaspersky provides support for Kaspersky SD-WAN throughout its life cycle (see application life cycle page). Before contacting Technical Support, please read the support rules.

You can contact Technical Support in one of the following ways:

- By sending a request to Kaspersky SD-WAN Technical Support at sdwan-support@kaspersky.com
- By visiting the Technical Support website
- By sending a request to Technical Support through the Kaspersky CompanyAccount portal.

Technical Support via Kaspersky CompanyAccount

Kaspersky CompanyAccount is a portal for organizations that use Kaspersky applications. The Kaspersky CompanyAccount portal is designed to facilitate interaction of users with Kaspersky staff via online requests. The Kaspersky CompanyAccount portal lets you monitor the progress of online requests as they are processed by Kaspersky staff, and keep a history of online requests.

You can register all of your organization's employees under a single account on Kaspersky CompanyAccount. A single account lets you centrally manage online requests to Kaspersky issued by registered employees and also manage the permissions of these employees using Kaspersky CompanyAccount.

The Kaspersky CompanyAccount portal is available in the following languages:

- English
- Spanish
- Italian
- German
- Polish
- Portuguese
- Russian

- French
- Japanese

You can learn more about Kaspersky CompanyAccount on the Technical Support website.

Information about third-party code

Information about third-party code is contained in the legal_notices.txt file in the application installation folder.

Trademark notices

Registered trademarks and service marks are the property of their respective owners.

Active Directory is a trademark of the Microsoft group of companies.

Ansible, CentOS, Red Hat are trademarks or registered trademarks in the United States and other countries of Red Hat, Inc. or its subsidiaries.

Arm is a registered trademark of Arm Limited (or its subsidiaries) in the USA and/or other countries.

Atom, Celeron, Intel, and Xeon are trademarks of Intel Corporation or its subsidiaries.

Debian is a registered trademark of Software in the Public Interest, Inc.

Docker and the Docker logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Docker, Inc. in the USA and/or other countries. Docker, Inc. and other parties may have rights to trademarks described with other terms used in this document.

Firefox is a trademark of the Mozilla Foundation in the USA and other countries.

Google Chrome is a trademark of Google LLC.

IBM is a trademark of International Business Machines Corporation registered in many jurisdictions around the world.

Intel, and Xeon are trademarks of Intel Corporation or its subsidiaries.

Kraftway is a registered trademark of AO Kraftway Corporation PLC.

Linux, LTS are registered trademarks of Linus Torvalds in the USA and other countries.

Microsoft Edge and Windows are trademarks of the Microsoft group of companies.

MIPS is a trademark or registered trademark of MIPS Technologies in the USA and other countries.

OpenStack is a registered trademark of the OpenStack Foundation in the USA and other countries.

OpenStreetMap is a trademark of the OpenStreetMap Foundation. This product is not affiliated with or endorsed by the OpenStreetMap Foundation.

Python is a trademark or registered trademark of the Python Software Foundation.

Safari is a trademark of Apple Inc.

SUSE is a trademark of SUSE LLC registered in the United States and elsewhere.

Ubuntu is a registered trademark of Canonical Ltd.

VMware is a registered trademark and/or trademark of VMware, Inc. in the United States and other countries.

Zabbix is a registered trademark of Zabbix SIA.